



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

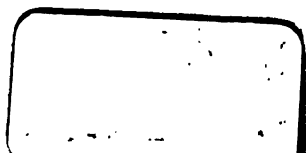
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

E Libris

Arturi S. Napier.



Oxford University
ENGLISH FACULTY LIBRARY
Manor Road
Oxford OX1 3UQ
Telephone: (0865) 249631

Opening Hours:

Monday to Friday: 9.30 a.m. to 7 p.m. in Full Term.

(9.30 a.m. to 1 p.m., and 2 p.m. to 4 p.m. in Vacations.)

Saturday: 9.30 a.m. to 12.30 p.m. in Full Term only (closed in Vacations).

The Library is closed for ten days at Christmas and at Easter, on
Encaenia Day, and for six weeks in August and September.

***This book should be returned on or before the latest date
below:***

***Readers are asked to protect Library books from rain, etc.
Any volumes which are lost, defaced with notes, or otherwise
damaged, may have to be replaced by the Reader responsible.***



300054587W

THE
Cambridge MS
OF
Chaucer's Canterbury Tales.

THE
Cambridge MS
(*University Library, Gg. 4. 27*)
OF
Chaucer's Canterbury Tales.

EDITED BY
FREDERICK J. FURNIVAL.



LONDON :
PUBLISHT FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

—
1868-1879.

First Series.

CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

CONTENTS OF THE CAMBRIDGE MS.

Group	Six-Text Pages	Cambr. Pages
A. § 1. General Prologue ¹	1	1
<i>Teseide</i> notes for the <i>Knight's Tale</i>	25	25
§ 2. Knight's Tale ² (of Palamon, Arcite, and fair Emelye. Pt. II, p. 40; Pt. III, p. 54; Pt. IV, p. 71)	26	26
§ 3. KNIGHT-MILLER LINK	89	89
§ 4. Miller's Tale (of Nicholas, Absolon, & the Oxford Carpenter's Wife)	92	92
§ 5. MILLER-REEVE LINK	111	111
§ 6. Reeve's Tale (of the Trumpington Miller and Cambridge Clerks. <i>With a cut of the Reeve</i>)	113	113
§ 7. REEVE-COOK LINK	125	125
§ 8. Cook's Tale (of the London Victual- ler's Apprentice: <i>unfynisht</i>) ³ (from Sloane MS. 1685) (<i>with</i> <i>a cut of the Cook</i>)	127	127
<hr/>		
B. § 1. MAN OF LAW'S HEAD-LINK ...	129	129
§ 2. Man of Law's (Proem and) Tale (of Constance and her boy. Pt. II, p. 142; Pt. III, p. 157) ...	132	132
[For the rest of Group B, see Appendix, p. 27*, and pp. 386—518 below.]		

¹ Has not the Friar lines 252 *b*, *c*, of the Hengwrt MS.

² For Appendix to Group A, the spurious *Tale of Gamelyn*, from Sloane MS. 1685, see Appendix 1, after, p. 676 *Cambr.*

³ In the margins of this Tale are marks showing what parts of it were taken by Chaucer from Boccaccio's *Teseide*: “:” means ‘englight from the *Teseide*’; “|” means ‘having a general likeness to it’; “;” means ‘having a slight likeness’.—See further, Dr John Koch's Essay in the Society's ‘Essays on Chaucer,’ vol. i.

Group	Six-Text Pages	Cambr. Pages
D. § 1. Wife of Bath's Preamble (of her 5 Husbands, &c.) ...	334	167
§ 2. Wife of Bath's Tale (of what Women most desire. <i>With a cut of the Wife</i>) ...	359	192
§ 3. WIFE-FRIAR LINK (from Harl. 1758) ...	371	204
§ 4. Friar's Tale (of the Sum'ner being carried off to Hell) ...	372	205
§ 5. FRIAR-SUM'NER LINK (from Harl. 1758) ...	383	216
§ 6. Sum'ner's Tale (of the Friar being tricked) ...	385	218
<hr/>		
E. § 1. CLERK'S HEAD-LINK (from Sloane MS. 1685) ...	403	235
§ 2. Clerk's (Proem from Sloane 1685, and) Tale (of Grisilde, Pt. II, p. 409 <i>S-T</i> ; Pt. III, p. 417 <i>S-T</i> ; Pt. IV, p. 422 <i>S-T</i> ; Pt. V, p. 428 <i>S-T</i> ; Pt. VI, p. 433 <i>S-T</i> ; Lenuoy de Chaucer, p. 440 <i>S-T</i>)	405	237
<i>Appendix to E, § 2: 1 Original, but rejected End-Link to the Clerk's Tale</i> ...	477	273*
§ 3. CLERK-MERCHANT LINK (from Cambr. Univ. MS. Dd. 4. 24)	442	274
§ 4. Merchant's Tale (of January and May) ...	443	275
§ 5. MERCHANT'S END-LINK (from Harl. MS. 7335) ...	476	308
<hr/>		
F. § 1. SQUIRE'S HEAD-LINK (from Harl. MS. 7335) ...	478	308*
§ 2. Squire's Tale (of the Magic Horse, &c. and the Falcon: <i>unfinisht</i>) (Pt. II, p. 488 <i>S-T</i>) ...	479	309
§ 3. SQUIRE-FRANKLIN LINK (from Sloane MS. 1685) ...	498	328
§ 4. Franklin's (Proem from Sloane MS. 1685, and) Tale ¹ (of Dorigen, Arviragus, and Aurilius) ...	500	330

¹ The Cambr. MS. has not the lines F 1455-6, 1493-8, known only in the Ellesmere MS.

Group	Six-Text Pages	Cambr. Pages
C. § 1. Doctor's Tale (of Virginia) ...	303	356
§ 2. DOCTOR-PARDONER LINK (from Sloane MS. 1685) ...	312	365
§ 3. Pardoner's Preamble (3rd from Sloane 1685) of his Preaching and Tricks ...	314	367
§ 4. Pardoner's Tale (of the Three Riot- ers. <i>With a cut of the Pardoner</i>)	318	371
[For B, § 1, 2, see p. 129-66; for B, § 3, MAN-OF-LAW-SHIPMAN LINK, see Appendix 2, p. 27*.]		
B. § 4. Shipman's Tale (of the Monk and the Merchant's Wife) ...	168	386
§ 5. SHIPMAN-PRIORESS LINK (from Sloane MS. 1685) ...	181	399
§ 6. Prioress's (Proem and) Tale (of the little murderd Boy) ...	182	400
§ 7. PRIORESS-THOPAS LINK ...	190	408
§ 8. Chaucer's Tale of Sir Thopas (<i>un- finisht</i>) ...	191	409
§ 9. THOPAS-MELIBE LINK (from MS. Reg. 18 C ii) ...	199	417
§ 10. Chaucer's Tale of Melibe ...	201	419
§ 11. MELIBE-MONK LINK ...	253	471
§ 12. Monk's Tale ¹ (of Men fallen from high estate. <i>With a cut of the Monk</i>) ...	256	474
§ 13. MONK—NUN'S-PRIEST LINK (from Sloane MS. 1685) ...	281	499
§ 14. Nun's Priest's Tale (of the Cock and Fox) ...	283	501
[For B, § 15, the NUN'S PRIEST'S END- LINK, see Appendix 3, p. 29*, after, p. 676 Cambr.]		
G. § 1. Second Nun's (Proem and) Tale (of St. Cecile) ...	527	519
§ 2. SECOND NUN—CANON'S-YEOMAN'S LINK ...	547	539
§ 3. Canon's Yeoman's Preamble (of Alchemy) ...	552	544
§ 4. Canon's Yeoman's Tale (of the ras- cally Alchemist-Canon) ...	560	552

¹ The four 'modern instances'—Peter the Cruel of Spain, Peter of Cyprus, Barnabo Visconti of Milan, and Count Ugolino of Pisa—are wrongly put at the end of the Tale, p. 495-8 *Cambr.*, instead of after Zenobia, p. 486 *Cambr.*, p. 268 *Six-Text*.

Group		Six-Text Pages	Cambr. Pages
H. § 1.	MANCIPLE'S HEAD-LINK ...	576	567
§ 2.	<i>Manciple's Tale</i> (of the Crow. <i>With</i> <i>a cut of the Manciple</i>) ...	580	571
<hr/>			
I. § 1.	BLANK-PARSON LINK ...	589	579
	<i>Contents of the Parson's Tale</i> ...	592	582
§ 2.	<i>Parson's Tale</i> (a prose treatise on Penitence. Pt. II, p. 612-678 <i>S-T</i> , p. 603-669 <i>Cambr.</i> ; Pt. III, p. 679-683 <i>S-T</i> , p. 670-4 <i>Cambr.</i> ; Leave-taking (from Harl. MS. 1758), p. 684 <i>S-T</i> , p. 675 <i>Cambr.</i> <i>With cuts of Envy</i> <i>& Charity, Gluttony & Absti-</i> <i>nence, Lechery & Chastity</i>) ...	593	584

Appendix.

1.	Appendix to Group A. The Spurious <i>Tale of Gamelyn</i> , from the Sloane MS. 1685, British Museum ...	1*-26*
2.	The genuine <i>Man-of-Law—Shipman Link</i> , Group B, § 3, from the Sloane MS. 1685 ...	167 27*
3.	The genuine <i>Nun's-Priest's End-Link</i> , Group B, § 15, from MS. Reg. 17 D xv, Brit. Mus. ...	301 29*
4.	Drawings of the 23 <i>Tellers of the 24 Can-</i> <i>terbury Tales</i> , copied from the Elles- <i>mere MS.</i> , and cut by Mr Hooper	

GROUP A. FRAGMENT I.

§ 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE.

CAMBRIDGE UNIV. MS. Gg. 4. 27.

(Its gaps are filled in from Harl. 1758 and Sloane 1685.)

[Prologua. Libri. [Harl. 1758, leaf 1]

[^h Ere begynneth the book . of tales of Caunterburye . compiled by Geffraie Chaucers . of Brytayne chef poete.

Whan that Aprille . with his schoures swote .
The drought of Marche . hath perced to þe rote .
And bathed euery veyne . in suche licoure .
Of whiche vertue . engendrid ys the floure . 4
And zephirus eke . with his swete breth .
Enspired hath . in euerie holt *and* heth .
The tandre croppes . *and* the yong sonne .
In to the Ram . his half cours ronne . 8

And smale fowles . maken melodye .
That slepen all the nyght . with open eye .
So priketh hem nature . in here corages .
Than longen folk . to goȝ in pilgrimages . 12
And palmers for to seke . straunge strondes
To ferne halwes . couthe in sondry londes .
And specially . from euerie schires ende .
Of Englund to Caunterburye thei wende . 16
The holy blisful martyr . for to seke .
That hem hath holpen . whan þat þei were seke .
Byfeſt that . in that sesoun on a daye .
In suthwerk . at the Thabard as I laye . 20
Redy to wenden . on my pilgrimage .
To Caunterbury . with full deuoute corage .
At nyght was come . in to þat hostelrye .
Weſt nyne *and* twenty . in a companye . 24
Of sondry folk . by auenture falle .
In felschip . *and* pilgrymes were þei alle .
That towards Cauntirbury . wolde ryde .

1 CAMBRIDGE 1 [this page, Harl. MS. 1758.]

2 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

[The chambres . and the stables weren wyde . [Hart. 1788] 28
 And weñ were esid . at the beste .
 And schortly . whan the sonne was to reste .
 So had I spoken . with hem euerychon .
 That I was . of here felaschip anon . 32
 And made forward . erly for to ryse .
 To take oure way . there as I you deuysse .
 But natheles . while I haue tyme and space .
 Or that I ferþer . in this tale pace .] 36
 Me thynketh it a-cordaunt to resoun [The Cambridge MS.,
 To telle þow / al the conchusoun [leaf 188, begins here.]
 Of eche of hem as it semyth me
 And whiche þey were & of what degre 40
 And ek in what aray þat they were inne
 And at a knyȝt þanne wale I ferst begynne
 ¶ A knyght þere was & that a worthy man Miles [on the
 That from the tyme that he ferst began left. On the right,
 To rydyn out he louede Chyualrye in a later hand, like
 Trouthe honour fredom & curteysie all the subsequent
 fful worthi was he in hese lordis werre names.] Knyth 46
 And therto hadde he / redyn noman ferre 48
 As wel in cristyndom as in hethnesse
 And euere honoured for hese worthynesse
 ¶ At Alisandir he was whan it was wonne
 And ofte tyme / he hadde þe bord begunne 52
 A-bouyn alle nacyounys in Puce
 In lectowe hadde he reysed & in reuce
 Non cristene man so ofte / of his degre
 In gernage at þe sege ek hadde he be 56
 Of Algazer & redyn in balmarye
 At leyeys was he & at satalye
 Whan they were wonne & in þe grete see
 At manye a nobil aryue hadde he be 60
 At mortal bataylis hadde he be fiftene
 And [foughten] for oure feith at tramessene
 In lystis thryis / & ay slayen his fo

CAMBRIDGE 2

This ilke worthi knyth hadde ben also	64
Sumtyme with þe lord of Palatye	
Ageyn anothir hethen / in Turkye	
And eueremor he hadde a souereyn prys	
And thow that he were worthy he was wys	68
And of hese port as meke as is a mayde	
He neuere ȝit non velany ne sayde	
In al his lyf vn to no maner wight	
He was a weray perfit gentil knyȝt	72
But for to telle ȝow of his aray	(leaf 122, back)
Hese hors were goode / but he was not gay	
Of fustien he werede a iopoun	
Al besloteryd with hese habiroun	76
for he was late come from hese vyage	
And wente for to don here pilgrymage	
¶ With hym pere was / hese sone a ȝong squyer	Squyer
A louere / & a lusty bacheleer	80
With lokkis crulle as þey were leyd in presse	
Of twenty ȝer / of age he was I gesse	
Of hese stature / he was of euene lenthe	
And wonderly delyuere / & of gret strenthe	84
And he hadde ben sumtyme In chynachie	
In flaunderis in artoys / & in pikardye	
And boryn wel as of so litil spase	
In hope to stondyn / in hese lady grace	88
Enbroudit was he / as it were a mede	
Al ful of frosche flourys white & rede	
Syngynge he was or floutynge al the day	
He was as frosch as is the monyth of may	92
Schort was his gouane / with aleuys longe & wide	
Wel coude he sitte on hors / & fayre ryde	
He coude songis make / & fayre endite	
Inste & ek daunse / & wel portreys & wryte	96
So hote he louede þat be nyghter tale	
He slepte no more than doth a nyghtyngale	
Curteis he was loueli & seruyisable	

4 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

And karf be-forn hese fadir at the table	100
¶ A zeman hadde he & seruauntys no moo	zeman
At that tyme / for he leste ryde soo	
And he was clad in cote & hod of grene	
A schef of pekok / arwys bryȝte & schene	104
Vndir his belte he bar ful thryftyly	
Wel coude he dresse hese takil zemanly	
Hese arwis droupede nought with federys lowe	
And in his hand he bare a myghty bowe	108
A not hed hadde he / with a broun vesage	(leaf 133)
Of wode craft wel coude he al þe usage	
Vp on his arm he bar a gay braser	
And by his side / a swerd & a bokeler	112
And on that oþer side a gay daggere	
Harneysed wel / & schrap as poynt of spere	
A Cristofere / on his brest of siluyr schene	
An horn he bar þe baudryk was of grene	116
A foster was he sothli as I gesse	
Ther was also a nunne a prieresse	Prieresse
¶ That of here smylyng was ful simple & coy	
Here gretteste oth was but be seynt loy	120
And sche was clepid Madame Eglentyne	
fful wel sche song / þe seruyse of deuyne	
Entuned in here nose so semely	
And french sche spak ful fayre & fetysely	124
As aftyr þe schole of stratforthe at the bowe	
ffor french of parys was to here onknowe	
¶ At mete wel I-taȝt / was sche with alle	
Sche let no morsel / from here lyppis falle	128
Ne wette here fyngyr / in here sause depe	
Wel couthe sche carye a morsel / & wel kepe	
That no drope ne fel vp on here brest	
In curteysie was set ful meche here lyst	132
Hire ouere lippe wipede sche so klene	
That in hire coppe þer was / no ferthyng sene	
Of gres / whan sche dronkyn / hadde her draught	

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 5

fful semely after here mete sche raught 136
 And sekylly sche was of gret disport
 And ful plesynge & amyable of port
 And peynede here to contyrfete chere
 Of court & to been / estatly of manere 140
 And to ben holde dygne of reuerence
 But for to spekyn of here concience
 Sche was so charytable & so pitous
 Sche wolde wepe ȝif that sche seye a mous 144
 Kanȝt in a trappe ȝif it were ded or bledde [leaf 133, back]
 Of smale houndis hadde sche þat sche fedde
 With rostid flesch or mylk or wastelbred
 But sore wepte sche ȝif on of hem were ded 148
 Or ȝif men smot it with a ȝerde smerte
 And al was concience & tendere herte
 ¶ fful semely here wimpil pynched was
 Here nose tretis here eyen greye as glas 152
 Here mouth ful smal & þerto softe & red
 But sekylly / sche hadde a fayr forhed
 It was almost a spanne brod I trowe
 ffor hardily sche was not vndir-growe 156
 fful fetys was here cloke as I was war
 Of smale corl aboute here arm sche bar
 A peyre of bedis I-gaudeit al with grene
 And þeron heng a broche of gold so kene 160
 On wich þere was wretyn a cround A
 And after Amor vincit omnia
 ¶ A nothir nonne with here hadde sche chapelyn
 ¶ That was here chapelen & prestis thre Nonne prest
 ¶ A monk þere was a fayr for the maystrye Monk
 An out ridere þat louede uenerye
 A manly man to ben an abbot able
 fful manye a deynte hors hadde he in stable 168
 And whan he rod men myȝte his brydil here
 Gyngelyn in a whistelyng wynd als clere
 And ek as loude as doth the chapel belle

6 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

There as this lord was kepere of the selle 172
 The reule of seynt Maur / & of seynt benyght
 Be cause that it was old & sumdel streyt
 This ilke monk let olde thynges pace
 And held aftyr the newe world the space 176
 He ȝaf not of that tixt a pulled henne
 That seith þat hunterys ben not holys menne
 Ne that a monk whan he is rekeles
 Is lykened to a fisch that is watyrlas 180
 This is to seyne a monk out of hese cloystre [leaf 134]
 But tilke tixt held he not worth an oystere
 And I seyde his opynyoun was good
 What schulde he stodie & make hymselfuyn wood 184
 Vp on a bok in cloystere alwey to poure
 Of swynkyn with hese hondis & laboure
 As Austyn bit how schal þe world be servid
 Let Austyn han his swynk to hym reseruid 188
 Therefore he was a prekasour aryȝt
 Grehou[n]dis he hadde as swift as foul in flyȝt
 Of prekyng & huntynges for the hare
 Was al hese lust for no cost wolde he spare 192
 I sey hese sleuys / purfilid at the hand
 With grys / & that the feyneste of a land
 And for to festene his hod vnder his schyn
 He hadde of gold I-wrouȝt a ful coryous pyn 196
 A loue knot in the grettere ende þere was
 His hed was ballyd that schon as ony glas
 And ek hese face as he hadde ben enoynt
 He was a lord ful fat & in good poynt 200
 Hese eyen stepe & rollynges in hese hed
 That stemyd as a furneis of a led
 Hese botis souple / his hors in gret estat
 Now serteynly he was a fayr prelat 204
 He nas not pale as a forpynnede gost
 A fat swan louede he best of ony rost
 His palfray was as broun as is a berye

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 7

A frere pere was a wantoun & a merye	208
¶ A lymytour a ful solempne man	frere
In alle the orderys foure is non that can	
So mekil of daliauns & fayr langage	
He hadde mad ful manye a maryage	212
Of zonge women at hese owene cost	
On to his ordere he was a noble post	
fful wel he louyd / & famyliar was he	
With frankeleynys / oueral in his cuntre	216
And with worthi women of the toun	[leaf 134, back]
ffor he hadde power of confessioun	
As seide hym self more than a curat	
ffor of hese ordere he was licencyat	220
fful swetli herde he confessioun	
And plesaunt was hese absolucyoun	
He was an esi man to zeue penaunce	
There as he wiste to han a good petouns	224
Vnto pore orderis for to zeue	
Is ¹ ygne that a man Is ¹ wel I-schreue	[? e by a later hand?]
ffor 3if he 3af he durste make anaunt	
He wiste that a man was repentaunt	228
ffor manye a man so hard is of hese herte	
He may not wepe though hym sore smerte	
Therfore in stede of wepyng & preyeris	
Men mote zeue siluer to the pore freres	232
¶ Hise tipet was ay farsed ful of knyuis	
And pynnys for to zeuyn fayre wywes	
And serteynli he hadde a merye throte	
Wel couthe he synge & pleyen on a rote	236
Of 3eddyngis he bar vttyrli the prys	
His nekke whit was as the flour de lis	
Therto he strong was as a chaumpioun	
He knew the tauernys wel in euery toun	240
And eueryche osteler & tapstere	
Bet than a laser or a bakystere	
ffor vn to swich a worthi man as he	

8 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

Acordith not as by his faculte 244
 To haue with swiche sike men a-queyntaunce
 It is not honest it may not auau[n]ce
 ffor to dele with non swich parayle
 But al with riche & selleris of vitayle 248
 And oueral there profit schulde aryse
 Curteys he was & louly of seruyse
 Ther was no man now so vertywous
 He was the beste begere in hese hous 252
 [.
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 ffor thow a wedewe hadde not a scho [leaf 135]
 So plesaunt was his in principio
 3it wolde he haue a ferthyng er he wente
 His purchas was wel betyr than hese rente 256
 And rage he couthe as it were ryzt a whelp
 In louedayis there couthe he mekil help
 ffor there he was not lik a cloysterer
 With a thredbare kope as is a scholer 260
 But he was lik a mystir or a pope
 Of double worstede was hese semeli kope
 Tha[t] rounded as a belle / out of the presse
 Sumwhat he lipsede for hese wantounnesse 264
 To make hese engelisch swete vp on his tunge
 And in hese harpynge whan that he hadde sunge
 Hese eyzyyn twynkeledyn in hese hed aryzt
 As don the sterrys / in the frosty nyght 268
 This worthi limytour / was cleped hobert
 A marchaunt was there with a forkede berd Marchaunt
 In motle an heigh on horse he sat
 Vp on his hed a flaunderich bemysch hat 272
 Hese botis clospede ful fetusely
 Hese resoun he spak ful plesauntly¹ [¹ in a late hand]
 Sounyng alwey the cres of hese wynnyng
 He wolde the se / were kept for ony thyng 276
 Be-twixe myddil-bourgh & orewelle

Wel couthe en eschaung schildis selle
 This worthi man ful wel his wit be-sette
 There wiste no man that he was in dette 280
 So estatli was he of hese gouernaunce
 With hese bargaynys & hese cheuysance
 fforsothe he was a worthy man withal
 But sothe to seyn I not how men hym cal 284
 A clerk there was of oxsenforthe also Clerk of Oxenforthe
 That vnto logyk hadde longe I-go
 As lene was hese hors as is a rake
 And he nas not / 'rygh fat / I vndyrtake¹ [→ later hand] 288
 fful thredbare was hese ouereste courtepy [leaf 135, back]
 [. a line blank]
 ffor he hadde getyn hym ȝit no benefys
 Ne was so wordely for to hauyn offys 292
 ffor hym was lefers to haue at hese bedis hed
 Twenty bokis I-clad in blak or red
 Of Aristotle & his philoso-phie
 þan robis ryche or fedele or gay sautrie 296
 But al be þat he was a philisofre
 þat hadde but lityl gold in cofre
 But al þat he myȝte of hese frendis hente
 On bokis & on lernynge he it spente 300
 And besily gan for þe soulys preye
 Of hem þat ȝaf hym wherwith to schole heye
 Of stodie tok he most kep & most hede
 Not a word spak he more þan was nede 304
 And þat was seyð in forme & reuerence
 And schort & quik & ful of hey sentence
 Sounynge in moral uertu was hese speche
 And gladly wolde he lerne & gladli te-che 308
 A seriaunt of the lawe bothe war & wys Sergeaus
 That oftyn hadde ben at þ^e parrys
 He was also ryche of excellence
 Discret he was & of gret reuerence 312
 He semede swich hese wordis were so wyse

10 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

Iustyse he was ful oftyn in asyse
 Be patent & be pleyn commyscioun
 ffor hese sience & for hese heye renoun 316
 Of feis & robis hadde he manyon
 So gret a purchasour was neuere non
 Al was fesymple to hym in effect
 His purchase myzte not ben enfect 320
 Neuere so beay a man as he þere nas
 And þat he semede besiere þan he was
 In termys hadde he cas & domys alle
 þat from the tyme of kyng welyam were falle 324
 Therto he coude endite & make a thyng [leaf 186]
 Ther coude no man pynche at hese writyng
 And euery statut coude he pleyn be rote
 He rod but homely in a medely cote 328
 Gyrt with a seynt of silk with barrys smale
 Of hese aray telle I no lengere tale
 A frañkeleyn was in hese cumpanye frankeleyn
 Whit was hese berd as is þe daysie 332
 Of complexioun he was sanguyn
 Wel louede be þ^e morwe a soppe in wyn
 To leuyn in delit was euere hese wone
 ffor he was epicurus owene sone 336
 Tha^{tt} held opynyoun þat pleyn delyt [1st in later hand]
 Was uery felicite parfyt
 An housholdere & þat a gret was he
 Seynt Ielion he was in that cuntre 340
 Hese bred hese ale was alwey aftyr on
 A betere enuynede man was nower non
 With-oute bake mete was neuere his hous
 Of fysch & flesch & þat so plentynous 344
 It snowede in his mouth of mete³ & drynk [2nd in late hand]
 Of alle deynteis that³ men coude þynk [3rd altered to at by a later hand]
 Aftyr þ^e sundery sesenys of the 3er
 So chaungede he hese mete & hese soper 348
 fful manye a fat perterych hadde he in mewe

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 11

And many a brem / & manye a luce in stewe
 Wo was hese cook / but ȝif hese sauce were
 Poynaunt & redy al hese geere 352
 His table dormaunt in hese halle alwey
 Stod redy keuered / al the longe day
 At sessionunys þere was he lord & syre
 fful ofte tyme he was kn[i]ght of the schyre 356
 An Anlas & a gipsier al of sylk
 Heng at hese gyrdil whit as morwyn mylk
 A schirreue hadde he ben & countour
 Was¹ nower swich a vanasour (1 as in a later hand) 360
 An habirdaschere & a carpenter [leaf 134, back]
 A webber a dyere & a taphiser
 And þey were clothid alle in on lyuere
 Of a ful solempne & a gret fraternyte 364
 ffrosch & newe here ger apikede was
 Here knyues were chapid not with bras
 But al with sylvir wrouȝt ful clene & wel
 Here gredelys & here pouchis euerydel 368
 Wel semede eche of hem a fayr burgeys
 To sittyn in a zilde halle on a deys
 Euerych for the wisdom that he can
 Was schaply for to ben an aldirman 372
 ffor catel hade þey I-now & ronte
 And ek here wyuys wolde it wel assente
 And ellis serteyn weryn þey to blame
 It is ful fayr to be clepid madame 376
 And gon to vigilis al be-fore
 And han a mental ryalliche I-bore
 A cok hadde þey with hem for þe nonys A Cook
 To boile the chekenys & the marye bonys 380
 And poudir Marchaunt tard & galyngale
 Wel coude he knowe a drauȝt of londen ale
 He couth roste & sethe & boyle & frye
 Makyn mortereus & wel bake a pye 384
 But gret harm was it as it semede me

12 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

That on hese schene a mormal hadde he
 ffor blankmanger þat made he at the beste
 A schipman was þere wonynge fer be weste a Shipman
 ffor ouȝt I wot he was of dertemouthe 389
 He rod up on a rouncy as he couthe
 In a gownne of faldynge to the kne
 A daggere hangynge on a lace hadde he 392
 Aboute his nekke vnder his arm adoun
 The hote somyr hadde mad his hew al broun
 And serteynli he was a good felawe
 fful manye a drauȝt of weyn hadde he I-drawe 396
 ffrom burdeux ward whil that the chapman slep [leaf 137]
 Of nyce consience tok he none kep
 ȝif that he fauȝt & hadde the hegere hand
 Be watyr he sente hem hom by euery land 400
 But of hese craft to rekene wel hese tydis
 Hese stremys & hese daungerys hym besyde
 His herberwe & hese mone his¹ lodmyngage [is in a later hand]
 There nas non swich from hul to cartage 404
 Hardy he was & wys to vndirtake
 With manye a tempest hadde his berd ben schake
 He knew alle þe hauenys as þey were
 ffor gotlond to the kape of fenystere 408
 And euery Cryk in bretayne & in spayne
 His barge clepid was de maudelayne
 With vs þere was a doctour of phisik Doctor de physik
 In al þis world was ther non hym lik 412
 To speke of phisik & of surgerye
 ffor he was groundit in astronomye
 Hepte hese pacient a ful gret del
 In houres by his Magik naturel 416
 Wel couthe he fortwene the ascendent
 Of hese ymagis / for hese pacient
 He knew the cause of euery maladye
 Were it hot or cold or moyst or dreye 420
 And where þey engendere & of what humour

He was a veray parfyt praktysour
 The cause I-knowe & of hese harm the rote
 Anon he ȝaf the sake man hese bote 424
 fful redy hadde he sese apotecaryis
 To syndyn hym hese droggis & hese letewaryis
 ffor eche of hem made opere for to wynne
 Here frenschepe was not newe to begyane 428
 Wel knew he the olde exculapijs
 And diascorides & ek Rufijs
 Olde ypocras lylve & galien
 Serapion Razis & Auycen 432
 Auerois damascyen & constantyn [leaf 157, back]
 Bernard & Gadesleyn & gilbertyn
 Of hese diete mesurable was he
 ffor it was of non superfluyte 436
 But of gret nuryshynge & digestible
 His stody was wol lytyl in the bible
 In sanguyn & in pers he clad was al
 lynede with taffata & sendal 440
 And ȝit he was but esy of dispence
 He kepte that he wan in pestelence
 ffor gold in phisik is a cardial
 Therefore he louede gold in special 444
 A good wif was there of beside bathe A wyf of bathe
 But sche was sumdel def & þat was skathe
 Of cloth makynge sche hade swich an hand
 Sche passed hem of ypres & of gaunt 448
 In al the parich wif was there non
 That to the offerynge to fore her schulde gon
 And ȝif þere dede serteyn so wroth was sche
 That sche was out of alle charite 452
 Here couercheis ful fyne were of ground
 I durste swere þey weyedyn a pound
 That on a sunday weryn vp on here hed
 Here hosyn weryn of fyn skarlet red 456
 fful streyte I-teyede & schois ful moyste & newe

14 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

Bold was here face & fayr & red of hewe
 Sche was a worthi woman al here lyue
 Husbondis at cherche dore sche hadde fyue 460
 With-outyn opere compayne in 3outhe
 But perof nedith not to speke as nouthe
 And thryes hadde sche ben at Ierusalem
 Sche hadde passed manye a strong stream 464
 At rome she hadde ben & at bolyne
 In galis at seynt Iame & at coloyne
 Sche couthe meche of wonderyng be þe weye
 Gat-toped was sche sothly for to seye 468
 Vp-on an aumbelere ful esily sche sat
 I-wympeled wel & on here hed an hat
 As brod as is a bokeler or a targe
 A fot-mental a-boute here hepis large 472
 And on here fet a peyre of sporys scharpe
 In felauschepe wel coude sche lawe & carpe
 Of remedijs of loue / sche knew per schaunce
 ffor sche coude of that art / the olde daunse 476
 A good man was there of religioun
 And was a pore persoun of a toun
 But riche he was of holy thougt & werk
 He was also a lerned man a clerk 480
 That cristis gospel trewely wolde teche
 Hese parischiens deuoutly wolde he teche
 Benyngne he was & wondyr delygent
 And in aduersite ful pacient 484
 And swich he was preuyd ofte sythis
 fful loth were hym to cursyn for hese tythis
 But rathere wolde he 3euyne out of doute
 Vnto hese pore parschens aboute 488
 Of hese offeryng & hese substau[n]ce
 He couthe in lityl thyng han suffisiaunce
 Wyd was hese parysch & housys fer asundir
 But he ne lyfte not for reyn ne thondir 492
 In seknesse nor in myschif to visite

The fertheeste in hese parich meche & lite
 Vp on hese fet & in hese hond a staf
 This noble ensaumple to hese schep he 3af 496
 That fyrst he wrou3te & aftyrward he tau3te
 Out of the gospel he to wordis cau3te
 And this figure he addede 3erto
 That 3if gold rustede what schal yryn do 500
 That 3if a pryst be foul on whom we truste
 No wondyr ist ¹ lewede men to ruste [1 MS. altered]
 And schame it is 3if a pryst take kep
 A schetyn schepperde & a clene schep 504
 Wel outhe a prest ensaumple for to 3eue [leaf 128, back]
 By hese clennesses how hese schep schulde leue
 He sette not hese benefys to hyre
 An let hese schep ² acumbrit in the myre [2 p in a later hand]
 And ran to lundene vn to seynt poulys 509
 To seke hym a chauntriye for soulys
 Or with a broperhed to be with holde
 But dwelte at hom & kepte wel hese folde 512
 So that 3e wolf ne made it not myscarie
 He was a schepherde & not a mersenarye
 And 3ow he holy were & vertuous
 He was not to synful men dispitous 516
 Ne of hese speche daungerous ne digne
 But in hese techynge ³ discreet & benygne ³ [2-3 in a later hand]
 To drawyn folk to heuyn be clennesses
 Be good ensaumple this was hese besynesse 520
 But 3if it were ony persone obstynat
 What⁴so he were of hey or low estat [4 t in a later hand]
 Hym wolde he snybbyn scharpli for the nonys
 A bettyr pryst I trowe neuere non is 524
 He waytid aftyr no pompe ne reuerence
 Ne makid [him ⁵] a spisede concience [5 in a later hand]
 But cristis lore & hese apostiff twelue
 He taughte but fyrst he folwede it hym selue 528
 With hym 3ere was a plowman that was hese broper

16 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

That hadde led of donge manye a fodir
 A trewe swynkere & a good was he
 leuyng in pes & parfit charite 532
 God louede he best with al hese hole herte
 At alle tymys thow hym gamenede or smerte
 And thanne his nyzhe-bour rizt as hym selue
 He wolde throsche & þerto dyke & delue 536
 ffor cristis sake for / eue[r¹]y pore wyght [1 r in a later hand]
 With-outyn hyre / 3if it leye in his myzt
 Hese tythis payede he ful fayre & wel
 Bothe of [his] propre swynk & his catel 540
 In a tabbard he rod vp on a mere [leaf 180]
 There was also a reue & a meller 7 a Reue. a. Meller.
 A somnour & a pardounner also a Suncour.
 A maunsiple & myn self there were no mo a Pardounner.
 The meller was a strong carl for the nonys 7 a Maunsiple
 ful big he was of braun & ek of bonys Chaucer
 That preuyd he wel for ouyr al pere he cam
 At wrastelynge he wolde haue alwey the ram 548
 He was schort schulderid brod & thikke knarre
 Ther nas no dore that he wolde heue of harre
 Oor breke it at a rennyng with hese hed
 His berd as ony sowe or fox was red 552
 And þerto brod as þow it were a spade
 Vp on the cop ryzt of hese nose he hade
 A wrete & theron stod a tust of herys
 Red as the brostalis of a sowys eryl 556
 Hese nosetherlis blake were & wide
 A swerd & a bokeler bar he bi hese syde
 His mouth as a¹ gret furneys [1 a in a later hand]
 He was a ganglere & a galiardeys 560
 And that was most of synne & harlotrye
 Wel coude he stele corn & tolle twye
 And that he hadde a tabbard² of good parte² [2 a in a later hand]
 A whit cote & a blew hod werede he 564
 A bagge pipe wel couthe he blowe & soune

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 17

And *per*withal he brouȝte / vs out of tounne
A gentyl maunciple was *pere* of a temple A Maunciple
Of whiche acatouris myȝte take exsaumple 568
for to ben wys in beyinge of uytayle
for where that he payede or tok be tayle
Algate he waytide so in hese acate
That he was ay be-forin & in good state 572
Now is not that of god / a ful fayr grace
That swich a lewede manys wit schal pace
The wisdam of an hep / of lernede men
Of maystrys¹ hadde he mo þan thryis¹ ten [1 a. hr: later] 576
That were of lawe expert & corious [leaf 180, back]
Of whiche *pere* were a doseyn in that hous
Worthi to ben styward of ²rente & lond² [2 a later]
Of ony lord that is in yngelond² 580
To make hym lyue / by his owene good
In honour detteles but he werere wod
Or lene as skarsely as hym liste desire
And able for to halpyn al a schyre 584
In ony cas that myȝte falle or happe
And ȝit this maunsiple / sette here allerys cappe
The reue was a sclendere colerik man A Reve
Hese berd was schaue as nygh as euere he can 588
His her was by hese erys ful rou[n]de I-schorn
His top was dokkyd as a pryst be-forin
fful longe were hese leggis & ful lene
y-lik a staf ther was no calf I-sene 592
Wel couthe he kepe a gerner & a bynne
There [was] non auditour couthe on hym wyne
Wel wiste he be þe droute & be the reyn
The ȝildynge of hese sed & of hese greyn 596
His lordis schep hese net hese deyerre
Hese swyn hese hors hese stoor & his pultrie
Was holly in þis revis gouernynge
And be þe couenaut ȝaf the rekenynge 600
Syn þat his lord was twenty ȝer of age

18 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

The[r] coude no man bryngyn hym in a-rerage
 Ther nas bayle herde ne oper hyne
 That he knew his aleythe & conynges 604
 The were adred of hym as of the deþ
 Hese wonyng was ful fayre / vp on an heth
 With grene treis I-schadewid was hese place
 He couthe betere þan hese lord purchase 608
 fful riche he was a-sterid preuily
 Hese lord. wel couthe he plesse subtilly
 To ȝeue & lene hym of hese owene good
 And haue a thank & ȝit a cote and hood¹. [1-2 nd, hood: later]
 In ȝouthes he hadde lernyd a good mystir [leaf 140] 613
 He was a wol good wryȝte a carpenter
 This reue sat vp on a ful good stot
 That was a pomeli grey & hyȝte skot 616
 A long surcote of pers vp on he hadde
 And bi hese syde he bar a rusty blade
 Of norfolke was þis reue of whiche I telle
 Be syde a toun men clepe baldiswelle 620
 Tukkede he was as is a frere aboute
 And euere he rod þ^e hemereste of oure route
 A somnour was þere with vs in that plase A Somenour
 That hadde a fer red cherubynys face 624
 for sausefleme he was with eyen narwe
 As hot he was & lecherous as a sparwe
 With skaled browys blake & pilid berd
 Of hese vesage chylderyn weryn a-ferid 628
 Ther nas quyk siluyr litarge ne bronston
 Boras seruse ne oyle of tartre non
 Ne oynement þat wolde clense & byte
 That hym myȝte helpyn of hese whelkys white 632
 Ne of the knobbis sittynge on hese scheke
 Wel louede he garlek onyouanys & ek lekys
 And for to drynkyn strong wyn red as blod
 Thanne wolde he speke & crye as he were wod 636
 And whan he wel dronkyn hadde þe wyn

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 19

Thanne wolde he spake no word but latyn
 A fewe termys hadde he to or thre
 That he hadde lernyd out of sum decre 640
 No wondir he herde it al the day
 And ek ȝe knowe wel that a Iay
 Kan clepe watte as wel as can the pope
 But who so couthe in opere þyngis hym grope 644
 Thanne hadde he spent al hese philosophie
 Ay questio quod Iurys wolde he crye
 He was a gentil harlot & a kynde
 A betere felawe schulde men not fynde 648
 He wolde suffere for a quart of wyn [leaf 140, back]
 A good felawe to haue hese concubyn
 A twelmonyth & excusyn hym at the fulle
 ffyl pryuyly a fynec ek couthe he pulle 652
 And ȝif he fond ower a good felawe
 He wolde techyn hym to haue non awe
 In swich cas of the erchedekenys curs
 But ȝif a manys soule were in hese pors 656
 ffor in hese purs he schulde ponyschid be
 Purs is the erchedekynys helle seyde he
 But wel I wot he lȝep ryȝt in dede
 Of cursyng owyth eche gilty man drede 660
 ffor curs wele sle ryȝt as asoylyng sauȝth
 And also war hym of a sygnifycaunȝth
 In daunger hadde he at hese owene gyse
 The ȝonge gerlys of the diosyse 664
 And knew here conseyll & was al here red
 A garlond hadde he set vp on hese hed
 As gret as it were for an ale stake
 A bokaler hadde he mad hym of a cake 668
 With hym there rod a Ioly pardounner A Pardounner
 Of rounceuaile his frend & his cumber
 That streȝt was comyn from the court of rome
 ffyl loude he song loue come hedir come 672
 This somnour bar to hym a stif bordoun

Was neuere triompe half of so gret a soun
 This pardounner hade her as ȝelw as ony wax
 But smothe it heng as doȝ a strik of flex 676
 Be ouncis heng hese lokkys þat he hadde
 And þerwith he hese schulderys ouerspradde
 But thenne it lay be culpounnys on & on
 And hod for Iolite werede he non 680
 ffor it was trussed vp in hese walet
 Hym thouȝte he rod al of the newe iet
 Discheuele saf his cappe he rod al bare
 Sweche glarynge. eyen. hadde. he as an hare 684
 A vernykele hadde he sowyd vp on hese cappe [leaf 141]
 Hese walet be-foryn hym in hese lappe
 Bret ful of pardoun come from rome hot
 A woys he hath as smal as haȝ a got 688
 No berd hadde he ne neuere schulde haue
 As smothe it was / as it were late schauē
 I trowe he were a geldyns or a mare
 But of hese craft from berewik in to ware 692
 Ne was swich a noȝer pardounnere
 ffor in his male he hadde a pilwe bere
 Wich þat he seyde was oure lady ueyl
 He seyde he hadde a gobet of þe seyl 696
 That seynt petyr hadde whan þat he wente
 Vp on þe se tyl that god¹ hym hente [! that god: later]
 He hadde a cros / of latoun. ful of stonys
 And in a glas he hadde piggis bonys 700
 But with þese relikys whan þat he fond². [s d: later]
 A pouere persoun vp on lond
 Vp on a day he gat hym more moneye
 Than þe persoun gat in moneȝis tweye 704
 And þus with feynede flaterye & Iapis
 He made the persoun & the puple hese apys
 But trewely to tellyn at the laste
 He was in cherche a noble ecclesiaste 708
 Wel couthe he rede a lessoun or a story

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 21

But aldirbest he song an offratory
 ffor wel he wiste whan that song was sunge
 He muste preche & wel affile hyse tunge 712
 To wyne syluer as he wel couthe
 Therfore he song the meryerely & loude
 Now haue I told 3ow sothly in a clause
 The estat tharay the noubre & ek the cause 716
 Whi assemblid was this cumpayny
 In southwerk at this ientil ostelry
 That hyte the tabbard faste by þe belle
 But now is tyme to 3ow for to telle 720
 How that we beryn vs that ilke nyzt [leaf 141, back]
 Whan that we were in that ostelrye alyzt
 And after wole I telle of oure viage
 And al the remenaunt of oure¹ pilgrymage [u: later] 724
 But fyrst I prey 3ow of 3oure curteysye
 That 3e narette not myn velanye
 Thow that I pleyndly speke in þis matere
 To telle 3ow here wordys & here cher 728
 Ne thow I speke here wordis properly
 ffor this 3e knowyn als so wel as i² [v: later]
 Who so schal telle a tale after a man
 He mote reheerse as nyh as euere he can 732
 Eueryche a word 3if it be in his charge
 Al speke he neuere so rewedely & large
 Or elle he mote telle his tale ontrewe
 Or feyne þyng or fyndyn wordis newe 736
 He may not spare al-they he wer' his broþer
 He mote as wel seyn on word as a noþer
 Crist spak hym self ful brode in holy wryt
 And wel 3e wote no velany is it 740
 Ek plato seyth ho so can hym rede
 The wordys³ mote be chose to the dede [s: later]
 Also I preye 3ow to forȝene it me
 Al haue I not set folk in here degre 744
 Here in this tale al as þey schulde stonde

22 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

Myn wit is schort 3e may wel vndyrstonde
 Gret chere mad oure ost vs eusrychon
 And to the soper sette he vs a-non 748
 He seruede vs with vitayle at the beste
 Strong was the wyn & wel to drynke vs liste
 A semely man oure ost was with al
 ffor to ben a marchal of an hal 752
 A large man he was with eyne stepe
 A fayrere burgeys is þere non in chepe.
 Bold of hese speche & wis & wel I-tauȝt
 And of manhod hym lakkede ryȝt noȝt! ^[1 noȝt: later] ^[Cambridge stops till l. 965]
 Eke therto he was right a mery man ^[Sloane MS. 1685, ll 2, back]
 And aftir soper pleyn he bygan.
 And spak of mirthe among and othere thingis
 Whanne that he hadde mad oure rykenynges 760
 And seide thus now lordyngis trewly
 Ye ben to me welcome ryȝht hertily
 ffor certis yf that I shal not lye
 I sawe nought this yere so mery a companye 764
 At ones in this herborowe as it now
 flayn wolde I don you myrthe wiste I how
 And of a myrthe I am right now bithought
 To don yow ese and it shal coste nought. 768
 Ye gon to Caunterbery god yow spede
 The blisful martir quyte you youre mede
 And wel I wote as ye gon by the weye
 Ye schapen yow to talen and to pleye 772
 ffor truly comfort ne mirthe is noon
 To riden by the weye doumbe as a stoon
 And therfore wole y maken you disport
 As I seide arst and don yow som comfort /. 776
 And if yow liketh alle by oon assent
 fforto stonden att my Iuggement
 And forto werken as I shal yow seye
 To morowe whanne ye riden by the weye 780
 Now so god saue me at my most nede

CAMBRIDGE 22 [this page, Sloane MS. 1685.]

GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 23

But ye be merie I wole yeue yow myn heede [Sloane MS. 1095]
 Holde up youre hondis withoute more speche
 Oure councel was not long^t forto seche 784
 Vs thought^t it was not worth to make to wys
 And grauntide hym withouten more avys.
 And bade hym seie his verdoit as hym liste
 Lordlyngis *quod* he herkeneth now for the beste 788
 But take it^t nought / I prairie 3ow in disdeigne
 This is the poynt^t to speke short and pleigne
 That^t eche of yow to short with oure weye
 In this viage shal telle tales tweye 792
 To caunterbury ward I mene it^t so
 And homward he shal tellen othier two
 Of auentoures that^t haue bifalle
 And which of yow that^t berith him best^t of alle 796
 That^t is to seyn that^t tellith in this cas
 Tales of best^t sentence and moost^t solas
 Shal haue a souper / at oure aldercost^t
 Here in this place sittynge bi this post^t 800
 Whanne that^t we comen ageyn fro Cauntirbury
 And forto make yow the more myry
 I wole my siluen goodly with 3ou ride
 Right at^t myn owne caste and be youre gyle 804
 And who so wole my iugement withseye
 Shal paye al that^t we spende by the weye
 And if ye vouche saaf that^t it^t be so
 Telle me anoon without^t ony word moo 808
 And I wole erly shape me therfore
 This thing^t was graunted *and* oure othes swore
 With ful glad herte and preien him also
 That^t he wolde vouche saaf forto do soo 812
 And that he wolde be oure gouernour
 And of oure tales Ingge and reportour /
 And sette a soper / at a certeyn prys
 And we wolen reuled ben at^t youre deuys 816
 In high and logh and thus by oon assent^t

CAMBRIDGE 23 [this page, Sloane MS. 1685.]

24 GROUP A. § 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

We ben acordid to the Iuggement^t [Sloane MS. 1685]
 And theruppon the wyn was fet^t anoon
 We dronken and to rest^t wente echon 820
 Withouten ony lenger / tariyng
 A morow whanne the day gan to springe
 Vp roos oure oost^t and was oure alde cok^t
 And gaderede us to gidre in a flok^t 824
 And forth we riden a litil more than pas
 Onto the watering^t of seynt Thomas
 And there oure oost gan his hors areste
 And seide lordis herkeneth if yow leste 828
 Ye wote youre forward and I it yow recorde [leaf 2, back]
 If euensong^t and morowe song accorde
 Let^t se now who shal telle the firste tale
 As euere mote I drynke wyn or ale 832
 Who so rebelle to my Iuggement^t
 Shal paye for all that^t by the weye is spent^t
 Now drawith Cutt^t er^t that^t ye ferther / twynne
 Which that^t hath the shortest shal bigynne 836
 Sir knyght quod he my maister / and my lord
 Now drawith Cutt^t for that^t is accord
 Cometh nere quod he my lady prioresse
 And ye Sir clerk lat^t be youre shamfastnesse 840
 Ne studieth noght^t leye hond to euery man
 Anoon to drawe euery wight^t bigan
 And shortly forto tellen as it was
 Were it^t by auenture or by sort or cas 844
 The sothe is the Cutt^t fel to the knyght
 Of which ful blythe and glad was euery wight
 And tellen he most his tale as it was resoun
 By forward and by composicioun 848
 As ye han herd what^t nedith wordes moo
 And whanne this gode man sawe that^t it was soo
 As he that^t wys was and obedient^t
 To kepen his forward by his fre assent^t 852
 He seide sithen I shal bigynne the game

CAMBRIDGE 24 [this page, Sloane MS. 1685.]

What welcome be the Cut a goddis name. [Sloane MS. 1685]

Now lat us ride and herkneth what I seie

And with that word we riden forth oure weye 856

And he bigan with rîzt a mery chere

His tale anoon and seide as ye may heere

Iamque domos patrias scithie post prelia gentis.
Prelia laurigero & cetera. ¶ Heere endith the prolog
of this book: and heere bigynneth the first tale which
is the knyghte tale

[Notes referred to in the references to the *Knights Tale*.]

[1. Boccaccio calls Teseo 'duca di Atene' (L 13), and says that his father Egeu was 're d'Atene' (L 6).

2. — in giubba laccata' (*en deshabelle*). III. 8.

3. 'Co' biondi crini avvolti alla sua testa.' III. 10.

4. The whole debate in prison is an imitation of the longer debate (in the *Teseide*) when they meet in the grove.

5. 'Love cannot be given up as thou deemest: and he loves but little, who ceases loving in order to keep a promise.' V. 51.

6. Comp. *Troilus and Cressida*, IV. st. 138:

— For some men saie, that God seeth all beforne,

Than mote it fallen, though men had it sworne,
That purveiaunce hath scene beforne to be—

7. Videvi storie per tutto dipinte

E'l grand Ercule vide tra costoro. VII. 62.

8. 'Richezza' is Porter in the *Teseide*, VII. 64: the *Roman de la Rose* is followed here.

9. See *H. of Fame*, 108; and Albricus Philosophus in Staſeren's *Auctores Mythographi*, 1702, vol. ii. p. 903.

10. Boccaccio makes the temple lighted by altar-fires, kindled from the flames of plundered cities. VII. 25.

11. 'Amydes of the' place sat 'la virtù tristissima.' VII. 24.

12. 'La Morte armata vide e lo stupore.' VII. 35.

13. 'Le navi bellatrici.' VII. 37. Neither Boccaccio, nor yet his prototype Statius, speaks of any ships as *burnt*, but merely as *trophies*.

14. The points marked VI. 21, 22, are taken from the description of 'Agamemnone'.

15. The points here are from the descriptions of 'Ippodamo' (VI. 29), of 'Peleo' (VI. 17, 16), and of 'Peritoo' (VI. 41).

16. Compare also stanza 42, 'con vittime piosse.'

17. 'Io il diletto, e tu n' abbia l' onore.' VII. 27.

18. Arita (in Boccaccio) comes from the quarter of 'Euro' (VII. 114): Palemone comes 'Dall' altra parte' (VII. 118). No mention is made by Boccaccio of their banners being *red* and *white*.

19. Boce. makes many of them slain: 'Artifillo,' 'Cornisso' (VIII. 15), 'Rifeo,' 'Arisone' (36), 'Narizio' (36), and others, and describes their funerals (X. 4-8).

20. Boccaccio makes only a general mention of the care and comfort bestowed on the wounded (X. 10).

21. 'But [of the wounded] Arita alone could not be cured: so much was he shattered inwardly by his fall' (X. 11).

22. Point from Boccaccio, differently turned (X. 12).

23. Points from Boccaccio, differently turned (X. 13, 19).

24. 'I await the last kisses from thee, oh dear spouse' (X. 65).

25. 'egil è gentile' (X. 62).

26. 'Niss potea racconsolar Teseo,' says Boccaccio (XI. 9), *not* excepting 'Egeu': but he immediately goes on to speak of the old man's attempt to console 'Palemone,' and the rest,—without the slightest success (XI. 11).—(See also XI. 33.)

27. Non men dolente, Emilia pur piangea,

I circostanti più pianger facca' (XI. 31).

28. Right and left of Palemone (XI. 40).

29. In the hands of the noblest of the Greeks (XI. 37).]

¶ *fabula militis*. [Sloane MS. 1685, leaf 4]*Boccaccio's
Teseide.*: means trans-
lated,
: general likeness,
: slight likeness.

W Hylom as olde stories tellen vs ¶ *fabula militis*.
 Ther was a Duk that hight Thesius* *Capitulum . Iii.*
 Of Athenes he was lord and gouvernour [* See p. 25, n. 1.]
 And in his tyme sich a conquerour
 That gretter was noon vnder the sonne
 fful many a riche Contre hadde he wonne 864

What with his wisdom and his Chiualrie
 He conqueride al the regne of femyny
 The whylom was clepid sithia
 And weddide the queene ypolita 868
 And brought hir hom with hym in his Contre
 With mich glorie and gret solempnyte
 And eke hir yonge sister Emelye
 And thus with victory and with melodie 872
 Lat I this noble Duk to Athenes ride
 And al his oost in armes hym biside
 And certis if it ne were to longe to heere
 I wolde haue told fully the manere 876
 How wymmen was the regne of femynye
 By Theseus and by his chyualrie
 And of the gret batayle for the nones
 Bitwixen athenes and Amazones 880
 And how assegid was ypolita
 The fair / hardi queene of scithia
 And of the feeste that was at hir wedding
 And of the . . . ¹ at hir / home comyng¹ [1 Rubbed] 884
 But al that [t]hing I moot as now forbere
 I haue god woot a large feld to ere
 And weyk ben the oxen in² my plough [2 Rubbed]
 The remenaunt of the tale is long ynough 888
 I wole not letten eke noon of this Route

Books I-III

CAMBRIDGE 26 [this page, Sloane MS. 1685.]

GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 27

Lat enery felowe telle his tale a-boute	[Sloane MS. 1685]	<u>Twofold.</u>
And lat se now who shal the soper wyne		
And ther as I left I wole bygynne	892	
¶ This Duk of whom I make mecioun	¶ Incipit narracio.	II. 24.
Whanne he was comen almost to the town		
In al his wele and his moost pride	[leaf 4, back]	
He was ware as he caste ey3e aside	896	
Where that ther knelide in the high weye		
A company of ladies tweye and tweye		
Ech aftir/ other/ cladde in 'clothes blake	[1 So in MS.]	
But sich a crie and sich a woo they make	900	
That in this world is creature lyuynge		
That herde sich another/ weymentyng		
And of this crie thei nolde neuere stente	904	II. 25. (before the car.)
Tyl they the reynes of his bridel hente		
What folk be ye that at myn hom comynge		• II. 26.
Disturblen so my feeste with crynge		•
Quod Theseus haue 3e so gret enuye		•
Of myn honour that thus compleyne and crie	908	•
Or who hath yow mysboden or offendid		
And telleth me if it may be amendid		
And whi that ye ben clothed thus in blak		•
The eldest lady of hem alle spak	912	
Whanne she hadde swouned with a deedly chere		
That it was reuthe forto seen and here		
She seide. lord to whom fortune hath 3yuen		
Victorie and as a conquerour/ to lyuen	916	
Not greueth vs youre glorie and youre honour/		• II. 27.
But we biseke mercy and socour		
Haue mercy on oure wo and oure distresse		
Sum drope of pite thorough thi gentilnesse	920	
Vppon vs wrecchid wymmen lat yow falle		
for certis lord ther is noon of vs alle		• II. 28.
That she nath ben a duchesse or a quene		•
Now be we caytifs as it is wel sene	924	
Thanked be fortune and hir/ fals wheel		

CAMBRIDGE 27 [this page, Sloane MS. 1685.]

23. GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

That noon estat ensureth forto ben wel	[Sloane MS. 1685]	<u>Tesside.</u>
Now certis lord to abide youre presence		
Heere in this temple of the goddess clemence	928	(mentioned in II. 17.)
We haue be waytyng al this fourte-nyght		
Helpe vs lord sith it is in thy myght.		
¶ I wrecche which that wepe and weyle thus	[leaf 5]	
Was whylom wif of kyng cappaneus	932	II. 28.
That starf at thebes cursid be that day		
And aft we that ben in this array		
And maken aft this lementacioun		
We losten aft oure hosbondis at that toun	936	
While þat the assege there abowte lay		II. 31.
And yet now the olde Creon weiloway		II. 32.
That lord is now of thebes citee		II. 31.
ffulfillid with ire and of iniquitee	940	
He for despite and for his tyrannye		
To don the dede bodies velonye		
Of alle oure lordes which that ben slawe		
Hath aft the bodies on a hepe I-drawe	944	
And wole not suffre hem by non assent		II. 31.
Neither/ to ben I-buried neither I-brent		
But makith houndis ete hem in dispite		
And with that word with outen more respite	948	II. 32.
Thei fyllen gruf and crieden pitously		
Haue on vs wrecchid wymmen sum mercy		
And lat oure sorowe synken in thyne herte		
¶ This gentil duke from his Coursour/ he sterte	952	
With herte pitous whanne he herde hem speke		
Hym thoughte that his hert wold breke		
Whanne he sawe hem so pitee and so mate		
That whilom were of so grete astate	956	II. 32.
And in his armes he hem vp hente		
And hem counfortith in ful good entente		
And swoor his othe as he was trewe knyght/		
He wole don so ferforthly his myght	960	
Vppon the treaunt Creon hem to wreke		

CAMBRIDGE 28 [this page, Sloane MS. 1685.]

That alle the puple of grece shold speke		<i>Troilus.</i>
How creon was of thebeus y-serued	963	
As he that hath his deth ful wel disserued		[Bloane extract ends.]
And ryȝt a-non with-oute more abod	[Cambr. MS. Gg. 4. 27, 1f 146]	II. 60.
Hese baner he displayeþ & forth rod		
To thebes-ward & al hese ost by hese side		
No ner athenys wolde he go ne ryde	968	II. 60.
Ne take hese ees fully half a day		
But onward on hese way þat nyȝt he lay		
And sente anon Ipolita the quene		II. 60-2.
And emelie here ȝynge systyr schene	972	
Vn to the toun of Athenys to dwelle		
And forth he rit ther is no more to telle		
The rede statue of mars with spere & targe		
So schynyth in hese white baner large	976	
That alle the feldis glederyn vp & doun		
And bi hese baner is born hese penoun		
Of gold ful ryche in whiche þere was I-bete		
The mynatour whiche þat he slow in Crete	980	
Thus ryȝt þis deuk þus ryȝt þis conquerour		
And in his cost of cheualrie the flour		
Til that he come to thebes & a-ligthe		
flayre in a feld there he thoute to fyghte	984	II. 63-78.
But schortli for to spekyn of this thyng		
Witht Creon which that was of thebes kyng		
He faught & slow hym manly as a knyght		
In playn batayle & putte the folk to fleyȝ	988	
And by assent he wan the sete after		
And rent a-doun bothe wal & spere ¹ & raffyr		[1 late a over e]
And to þe ladyis he restorede ageyn		
The bonys of here frendis þat were slayn	992	
To don obsequies as was þo the gyse		
But it were al to longe for to deuyse		II. 80-1
The grete clamour & the waymentyng		
That þe ladyis made at the brennyng	996	
Of the bodyis & the grete honour		

That thesūs the noble conquerour		<i>Troilus.</i>
Doth to þe ladijs whan þey from hym weynte		
But schortely for to telle is myn entente	1000	
Whan that this worthi duk this thesius	[leaf 145, back]	II. 74.
Hath Creon slayn & wonne thebes thus		
Stille in that feld he tok al nyȝt hese reste		
And dede with al the cuntre as hym leste	1004	
To ransake in the taas of bedijs dede		II. 85.
Hem for to strepe of harneys & of wede		
The pilouris dydyn besynesse & cure		
Afyr the batayle & discumfiture	1008	
And so bi-fel that in the taas was founde		• II. 85.
Thorgh girt with manye a bloody wounde		•
Two ȝonge knyȝtys liggyng by & by		•
Bothe in on armys wrouȝt ful richely	1012	
Of whiche too Arcita hyȝte þat on	Arcita.	
And that oper knyȝt hyȝte palomoun	Palamoun.	
Not fully queke ne fully dede þey were		
But by here cote armoure & by here gere	1016	II. 86.
Theroudis knew hem best in special		
As þey þat were of the blod ryal		
Of Thebes & of systeryn to I-born		
Out of the taas the pilouris han hem torn	1020	
And han hem caryed softe on to the tente		II. 87.
Of thesyus & ful sone hem sente		II. 88.
To Athenes to dwellyn in presoun		
Perpetually he nolde no raunsom	1024	
And whan this worthi deuk hap þus I-don		II. 90-91.
He tok hese Ost & hom he rit a-non		
With laurer crowned as a conquerour		
And there he lyuyth in ioye & in honour	1028	
Terme of lyf what nedip wordis mo		
And in a tour in angwisch & in wo		III. 2
This Palamoun & hese felawe Arcite		
ffor eueremor ther may mo gold hem quyte	1032	
This passeth ȝer be ȝer & day be day		

Til it fel onys in a monyth of may		
That emale that fayrere was to sene		<i>Tessida.</i>
Than is the lylic vp on hese stalke grene	1036	[See XII. 52.]
And frosscher than þe may with flourys newe	[leaf 146]	
ffor with the rose colour frosch here hewe		
I not whiche was fynere of hem too		
Er it were day as was here wone to do	1040	III. 10.
Sche was a-resin & al redy dyzt		
ffor may wele haue no slogardye on nyzt		
The sesyn prekyth euery gentyl herte		
And makyth it out of hese slep to starte	1044	
And seyth a-rys & do þyn obseruaunce		
This makith emalie to haue remembraunce		
To don honure to may & for to ryse		
I-cloped was sche fresch for to deuysel* [* See p. 25, n. 2.]	1048	III. 8.
Here þelwe her was broyded in a tresse† [† See p. 25, n. 3.]		III. 10.
Be-hynde here bak a 3erde long I gesse		
And in the gardyn at the sunne vp-riste		III. 9-10.
Sche walkyth vp & doun & as here lyst	1052	
Sche gaderith flouris party white & rede		
To make a suptyl garlond for here hede		III. 10.
And as an aungel heueneliche sche song		
The grete tour that was so thikke & strong	1056	III. 11.
Whiche of the castel was the chef donioun		
There as the knyztis weryn In presoun		
Of whiche I tolde 3ow & telle schal		
As euene ioynande to the castel wal	1060	
There as this emale hadde here pleying	Emelye.	
Bryzt was the sunne & cler in that morwenyng		
And palamoun þis woful prsoner		[<i>Arctis et levo</i> III. 11.]
As was hese wone be leue of hese gayler	1064	
Was resyn & romede in a chau[m]bre an hey		
In whiche he al the cete sey		
And ek the gardyn ful of braunchis grene		
There as this frosche Emelye the schene	1068	
Was in here walk & romede vp & doun		

32 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

This sorweful louere this palamoun		<i>Tessida.</i>
Goth in the chambre romynge to & fro		
And to hymselfe compleynynge of hese wo	1072	
That I was born ful ofte he seyde allas		[leaf 146, back]
And so be-fel be auenture & cas		
That þorow a wyndowe thikke of manye a barre		• III. 11.
Of yryn gret & squire as ony sparre	1076 .	
He caste his eye vp on emelyea		
And þerwithal he blenthe & cryede A		... tutto stordito, Gridd. Omé I
As thow he stongyn were to þ ^e herte		III. 17.
And with þat cry a-non arcite vp styrt	1080	
And seyde cosyn myn what eylith þe		
That art so pale & dedly on to se		
Whi cryestow who hath the don offense		
for goddys lone tak al in pacience	1084	
Oure prysoun for it may non oþer be		
fortune hap þouyn vs þis aduersite		[? o altered]
Sum wekede aspect or disposicioun		
Of saturne by sum constolacioun	1088	
Hath þouyn vs þis al-pow we hadde it sworn		
So stod the heuene whan that we were born		
We muste endure it þis is the schorte & pleyne		
This Palamoun onswerde & seyde a-geyn	1092	
Cosyn for sothe of this opynyoun		
þow hast a vayn ymagynacyoun		
This prisoun causede me not for to crye		
But I was hort ryȝt now thorgh-out myn ye	1096	III. 18.
In-to myn herte that wele myn bane be		III. 20.
The fayrenesse of myn lady þat I se		
þond in the gardyn romyn to & fro		
Is cause of al myn cryinge & myn wo	1100	
I ne wot wheþer sche be woman or godesse		
But venus it is sothly as I gesse		• III. 14.
And þerwithal on kneis down he fel		
And seyde Venus ȝif it be þyn wil	1104	
þow in this gardyn thus to transfigure		

Be-for me sorweful wreche cryature		<u>Troide.</u>
Out of this prysoun help þat we may skape		
And ȝif so be myn destene be schape	1108	
By eterne world to deyen in presoun	[ant 147]	
Of oure kynrede haue sum compassioun		
That is so lowe brouȝt be tyranye		
And with that word Arcite gan asspie	1112	
Where as this lady romede to & fro		
And with that syȝt here beute hurte hym so		
That ȝif þat Palamoun was woundede sore		
Arcite is hurt as wel as he or more	1116	III. 16-17. (reversing the or- der of the names.)
And with a sik he seyde pitously		
The frossche beute sloth me sodeynly		
Of here that romyth in the ȝondir plase		
And but I haue here mersy & here grase	1120	
That I may sen here at the leste weye		
I nam but ded þere nys no more to seye		
This Palamoun whan he þo wordis herde		
Dispitousli he lokede & answerde	1124	
Wheȝer seyst þou this in earnest or in play		
Nay quod arcyte in earnest be myn fey		
God help me so me lyst but euel pleye		
This palamoun gan knytte hese browis tweye	1128	
It were to the quod he no gret honour*	[* See p. 22, n. 4.]	V. 42.
ffor to be fals ne for to be traytour		
To me that am thyn cosyn & thyn brothir		
I-sworn ful depe & eche of vs to oþer	1132	
That neuere for to deyin in payne		
Til that the deth departe schal vs tweyne		
Neyȝer of vs in loue to hynderyn oþer		
Ne in non oþer cas myn leue broȝer	1136	
But þat þou schuldist trewely forþere me		
In euery cas & I schal forthere the		
This was pyn oth & myn also serteyn		
I wote it wel þou darist it not with-seyn	1140	
Thus art þou of myn conseyl out of doute		

And now þou woldist falsely ben aboute
 To loue myn lady whom I loue & serue
 And euere schal tyl that myn herte sterue 1144
 Now certis false arcite þou schat not so (leaf 147, back)
 I louede here fyrst & tolde þ^e myn wo
 As to myn conseyll & to myn br[o]þer sworn
 To forthere me as I haue told be-forne 1148
 ffor which þou art boundyn as a knyȝt
 To helpyn me ȝif it leye in þy myȝt
 Or elle art þou fals I dare wel seyn
 This arcite ful proudely spak a-geyn 1152
 þou schat *quod* he be rapere fals than I
 But þou art fals I telle þ^e vttyrly
 ffor paramour I louede here ferst er þou
 What wit þou seyn þou wyst no ȝit now 1156
 Wheþer sche be a woman or goddesse
 Thyn is affeccious of holynesse
 And myn is loue as to creature
 ffor whiche I telle þe myn auenture 1160
 As to myn cosyn & myn broþer sworn
 I pose that þou louedist here be-forne
 Wist þou not wel the olde clerkys sawe
 That ho schal ȝene a louere ony lawe 1164
 Loue is a grettere lawe be myn pan
 Than may ben ȝouyn to ony erthely man
 And perfore posityf lawe & swich decree
 Is brokyn alday for loue in eche degree 1168
 A man mote nedis loue mangre in hese hed
 He may not fien þat þogh he schulde be ded
 Al be sche mayde or wedew or elle wif
 And it is not likly al thyn lyf 1172
 To stondyn in here grace no more schal I
 ffarewel þou wist þyn seluyn verayly
 That þou & I ben dampned to presoun
 Perpetuelly vs geynyth no raunsun 1176
 We stryue as dede the houndis for the bon

[See V. 61.]

[See V. 46, 49.]

They fouȝte al day & ȝit here part was non		<u>Twelve.</u>
Ther cam a kete whil that þey were wrothe		
That bar away the bon be-twixe hem bothe	1180	
And þerfore at the kyngis court myn broþer	[leaf 148]	
Eche man for hym self ther is non oper		
Loue ȝif the lyst for I loue & ay schal		
And sothli leue broþer this is al	1184	
Here in this presoun mote we endure		
And euerych of vs take his auenture		
Gret was the stryf & long be-twixe hem tweye		
ȝif that I hadde leyser for to seye	1188	
But to þe effect it happede on a day		
To telle it ȝow as schortly as I may		
A worthi deuk that hyȝte perotheus		
That felawe was vn to deuk Theseu	1192	III. 47.
Syn thilke day þat þey were childeryn lite		
Was come to athenes hese falawe to visite		
And for to pleye as he was wone to do		
ffor in this world he louede no man so	1196	
And he louede hym as tendirly ageyn		
So wel þey louedyn as olde bokys seyn		
That whan that on was ded sothly to telle		
His felawe wente & souȝte hym doun in helle	1200	
But of that story liste me not to wryte		
Deuk Perotheus louede wel arcite		III. 48.
And hadde hym knowyn at thebes þer be ȝere		
And fynelli at requist & at preyere	1204	
Of perotheus with-outyn ony raunsoun		
Deuk Theseus hym let out of presoun		
ffrelī to gon whil that hym leste ouyral		
In swich agyse as I ȝow telle shal ¹	[¹ altered from caus]	1208
This was the forward pleyuly for tendit		
Be-twixe Theseus & hym Arcite		
That it were that Arcite were founde		
Euere in his lyf be day or nyȝt or stounde	1212	
In ony cuntre of this thesyus		

36 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

And hee were cauth it was acordit þus		• <i>Teacida.</i>
That with a swerd he wolde lese his hed		• III. 64.
Ther nas non oþer remedie ne red	1216	
But takyth his leue & homward he hym spedde		[leaf 148, back]
let hym be war his nekke lith to wedde		
How gret a sorwe sufferith now arcyte		
The deth he felyth thorgh his herte smyte	1220	
He wepith weyleth cryeþ pitously		
To slen hym self he waytyth priuily		
He seyde allas that day that I was bore		
Now is myn prisoun werse þan be-fore	1224	
Now is me schapyn eternally to dwelle		
Not in purgatory but in helle		
Allas that euere knew I perotheus		
ffor elle hadde I dwellid with thesytus	1228	
I-fetered in his prisoun euere mo		
Thanne hadde I ben in blysse & not in wo		
Only the syȝthe of her' whom that I serue		
Though I neuere here grace may disserue	1232	
Wolde han suffysed ryȝt I-now for me		
O dere cosyn palamoun quod he		
This is the victorie of this auenture		
fful blysful in prisoun mayst þow endure	1236	
In prysoun nay parde but in paradys		
Wel hath fortune I-turnede the deys		
That hast the syȝt of here & I the absens		
ffor possible is syn þow hast here presens	1240	
And art a knyȝt a worthi & able		
That by sum cas syn fortune is chaungable		
Thow mayȝt to þyn desyr sumtyme atteyne		
But I that am exiled & barayne	1244	
Of alle grace & in so gret dispeyr		
That þere nys erthe watyr fyre ne eyr		
Ne criatur that of hem makyd is		
That may me helpyn or don comfort in this	1248	
Wel ouȝte I sterue in wanhope & distresse		

(Gen. resembl.
See III. 76, &c.)

ffarwel myn lyf myn lust & myn gladnesse		<u>Trevisa.</u>
Allas whi pleyne men so in comune		
On puryaunce of god or of fortune	1252	
That ȝeuyth hem ful ofte in manye a gyse	(leaf 140)	
Wel betyr þan þey can hem self deuyse		
Sum man desiryth for to haue richesse		
That is cause of hese mordere or gret seknesse	1256	
And some wolde out of hese presoun fayn		
That in hese hous is of hese meyne slayn		
Infynyte harmys ben in this matere		
We wote not what þyng þat we preyen here	1260	
We farn as he þat dronke is as a mous		
A dronke man wot wel that he hath an hous		
But he not whiche the ryȝte weye is þedyr		
And to a dronke man the weye is sledyr	1264	
And sertys in þis world so faryn we		
We sekyn faste aftyr felycite		
But we gon wrong oftyn trewely		
Thus may we seyn alle & namely I	1268	
That wende & hadde a gret opynyoun		
That I myȝte skapyn from prysoun		
Thanne hadde I be in ioye & parfyt hele		
There now I am exilyd from myn wele	1272	
Syn that I may not sen ȝow emalye		• III 74.
I nam but ded þere nys non oþer weye		
Vp on that oþer syde palamoñ		
Whan that he woste Arcyte was a-goñ	1276	
Swich sorwe he makyth that þe grete tour		
Resounnyth of hese ȝoulyng & clamour		
The pure feterys of hese schenys grete		
Weryn of hese bittere salte terys wete	1280	
Allas quod he arcita cosyn myn		
Of al oure stryf god wot the freut is þyn		
Thow walkyst now in thebes at þyn large		
And of myn wo þou ȝeuyst lityl charge	1284	
Thu mayst sen þou hast wisdom & manhede		

38 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

Assemblyn alle the folk of oure kynrede	
And make a werre so scharp on this cyte	
That by <i>sum</i> auenture or <i>sum</i> trete	1288
Thw mayst haue here to lady & to wyf	[leaf 142, back]
ffor whom that I muste nedys lese myn lyf	
ffor as be weye of possibilitie	
Sithe þou art at thyn large of <i>prisun</i> fre	1292
And art a lord gret is thyn anauntage	
More than is myn that sterue here in a cage	
ffor I mot wepe & waile whil I leue	
With al the wo that <i>prisoun</i> may me ȝeue	1296
And ek with peyne that loue me ȝenyth also	
That dubelyth al myn turment & myn wo	
Therwith the fyr of ielusye vp sterte	
With-inne hese brest & hente hym by the herte	1300
So wodly that he lyk was to bi-holde	
The boxtere or the asschyn dede and colde	
Thanne seyde he O crewel goddis þat gouerne	
This word woth byndyng of ȝoure word eterne	1304
And wretyn in the table of athamaunte	
Thorw parlemen & ȝoure eterne graunte	
What is mankynde more on to ȝow holde	
Thus is the schep that rokiþ in the folde	1308
ffor slayn is man ryght as a nothir beste	
And dwellith ek in <i>prisoun</i> & areste	
And hath seknesse & gret aduersite	
And ofte tyme gilteles parde	1312
What gouernynge is in this <i>prescience</i>	
That gilteles turmentyth innocence	
And encreseth þis al myn penaunce	
That man is boundyn to hese obseruaunce	1316
ffor goddis sake to lettyn of hese wille	
Ther as a beste may al hese lust fulfyllen	
And whan a beste is ded he hath no peyne	
But man aftyr his ded hym muste wepe & pleyne	1320
Though in þis world he haue care & wo	

With-outyn doute it may stondyn so		<i>Troilus.</i>
The answer of pis lete I to deunys		
But wel I wot that in pis world gret peyne is	1324	
Allas I se a serpent or a thef	[leaf 180]	
That manye a trewe man hath don myschef		
Gon at hese large & wher hym liste may turne		
But I mot ben in prisoun þour saturne	1328	
And ek thorgh Iuno ielous & ek wood		
That hath distroyed wol ny al the blood		
Of thebes with hese waste wallys wyde		
And vennus aleth me on þat oper syde	1332	
fior ielousie & fer of hym Arcyte		" <i>parousa geicola</i> V. 2.
Now wele I stynte of palamoun a lite		
And late hym in hese prysoun styлле dwelle		
And of Arcyta forth I wele 3ow telle	Arctia	
The somyr passeþ & the nyȝtys longe		
Encresyn double wise the peynys stronge		
Bothe of the louere & the prisounner		
I not ho hath the wofulere ¹ myster	[¹ here: later.] 1340	
fior schorth for to seyn this palamoun		
Perpetuelly is dampned to prisoun		
In cheynys & in feterys to ben ded		
And Arcyte is exiled vp hese hed	1344	
fior eueremo as out of that cuntre		
Ne neuere mo schal hese lady se		
3ow louerys axe I now þis questioun		
Ho hath the werse arcyte or Palamoun	1348	
The ton may sen his lady day be day		
But in prisoun ho mot dwelle alway		
That othir where hym leste may ride or go		
But sen hese lady schal he neuere mo	1352	
Now demyth as 3ow lyste 3e þat can		
fior I wele telle forth as I be-gan		
[No gap in the MS.]		

[PART II. No gap in the MS.]

When that Arcyte to thebes comyn was
 fful ofte a day he swelte & seyde allas 1356
 ffor sen hese lady schal he neuere mo
 And schortly to concludyn al hese wo
 So meche sorwe hadde neuere creature
 That is or schal whil that þe world may dure 1360
 Hese slep hese mete // hese drynk is hym beraft [1f 156, bk] IV. 28, 27
 That lene he wex / & dreye as is a schaft
 Hese eyne holwe / & gresely to beholde • IV. 28.
 Hese hewe falwe / & pale as¹ asschen colde [1 as: later] 1364 • IV. 27.
 And solitarie he was / & euere alone
 And waylynge al the nyȝt makynge hese mone
 And ȝif he herde song or instrument
 Thanne myȝte he wepe he myȝte not be stent 1368
 So feble ek weryn hese spiritis & so lowe
 And chaungit so þat no man coude hym knowe
 Hese speche nor hese voys þow men it herde
 And in hese ger for al the world he ferde 1372
 Not only lik the louere maladye
 Of hereos but rathere lyk manye
 Engenderid of humourys malencolik
 Be-forn hese owene selle fantastik 1376
 And schortly turned was al vp so doun
 Bothe abit & ek² disposicioun [2 ek: later]
 Of his this woful louere daun Arcite
 What schulde i of hese wo alday endyt 1380
 Whan he endured hadde a ȝer or to
 This crewel turment & this peyne & wo
 At thebes in his court as I seyde
 Vp on a nyȝt in slep as he hym leyde 1384
 Hym thouȝte that the vengede god mercurye
 Be-forn hym stod & bad hym to be murye
 Hese slepi ȝerde in hond he bar vp ryȝt
 An hat he werede vp on hese herys bryȝt 1388

Arayed was þis god as he tok kep		<u>Textide.</u>
As he was whan that Argus tok hese slep		
And seyde hym thus to Athenys schat þou wynde		
There is the schapyn of thi wo an ende	1392	
And with that word Arcyte wok & styrtē		
Now trewely how sore that me smerte		
Quod he tathenys / rygh now wele I fare		
Ne for the dred-of deth schal I not spare	1396	
To se myn lady that I loue & serue	(leaf 151)	
In here presence I rekke not to sterue		
And with that word he cauȝte a gret myrour		
And saw that schauȝed was al hese colour	1400	
And say hese vesage al in anoþer kynde		
And ryȝt a-non It ran hym in hese mynde		IV. 22.
That siþe hese face was so disfyguryd		
Of maledye whiche he hadde endured	1404	
He myȝte wel ȝif that he bar hym lowe		
Leuyn in athenys euere more onknowe		
And sen hese lady wel ney day be day		
And ryȝt a-non he chaungede hese aray	1408	
And cladde hym as a pore labourer		pore valletto, IV. 22.
And al alone saue only a squyer		unil garzone, IV. 22.
That knew hese preuyteis & al hese cas		povero valletto, IV. 40.
Whiche was disguised porely as he was	1412	
Tatthenys is he gon þe nexte way		
And to the court he wente vp-on a day		
And at the gate he proferyth hese seruyse		
To drogge & drawe what so men wolde deuyse	1416	
And schortly of this mater for to seyn		
He fil in offys with a chaumbyrleyn		
The whiche that dwellynge was with emalye		
ffor he was wys & coude sone asprie	1420	
Of euery seruaunt whiche that seruyth here		
Wel coude he hewyn wode & watyr bere		
ffor he was ȝong & myȝty for the nonys		
And þerto he was long & big of bonys	1424	

To don that ony with can hym deuyse		
A 3er or too he was in þis seruyse		
Page of the chaumbere of emale þ ^e bryȝt		
And philostrate he seyde þat he hyȝt	1428	[Pentec IV. 3. &c.]
But half so wel be-louyd a man as he		
Ne was there neuer in court of hese degre		
He was so Ientyl of condicioun		
That þour-out al the court was hese renoun	1432	
They seydyn that it were a charite		[leaf 151, back]
That Thesius wolde enhaunsyn hese degre		
And puttyñ hym in worschepful seruyse		
There that he myȝte hese vertue excercise	1436	
And þus with-inne a while his name is spronge		IV. 59.
Bothe of hese dedis & hese goode tunge		
That Thesius hath takyn hym so ner		
That of hese chaumbere he made hym a squyer	1440	
And ȝaf hym gold to meyntene his degre		
And ek men brouȝtyn hym out of hese cuntre		
from ȝer to ȝer ful priuily hese rente		
But onestly & slyly he it spente	1444	
That no man wonderede how þat he it hadde		
And thre ȝer in this wise his lyf he ladde		
And bar hym so in pes & ek in werre		
Ther was no man that thesius hath derre	1448	IV. 60.
And in this blisse lete I now arcite		
And speke I wele of palamoun a lite		
In derknesse & horrible & strong prisoun		V. 1.
This seuene ȝer hath setyn palamoun	1452	
ffor-pynynd what for wo & for distresse		
Who feleth double sorwe & heynesne		V. 2.
But palamoun þat loue distreynyth so		
That wod of hese wit he goth for wo	1456	
And ek þerto he is a þressounner		
Perpetuelly not only for a ȝer		
Who coude ryme in englys properly		
His marterdam for sothe it am ¹ not I	[? MS.] 1460	

Therefore I passe as lyztely as I may		<i>Twelve.</i>
It fel that in the seuynte 3er In may		
The thredde nyzt as olde bokys seyn		
That al this story tallyn more & pleyn	1464	
Were it by auenture or destene		
As whan a þyng is schapyn it schal be		
That sone aftyr the mydnyzt palamoun		V. 25-7.
Be helpyng of a frend brak hese presoun	1468	
And fleth the cete faste as he may go	[leaf 158]	
ffor he hadde 3ouyn hese gayler dronkyn so		V. 21.
Of a clarre mad of certeyn wyn		
With nertotikes & opie of Thebes fyn	1472	
That al that nyzt though þat men wolde hym schake		
The gayler alep he myzte not wake		
And þus he fleth as faste as euere he may		
The nyzt was schort & faste by the day	1476	
That nedis cost / he muste hym seluyn hide		
And tyl a groue faste þere besyde		V. 22.
With dredful fot þanne stalkyth palamoun		
ffor schortely þis was hese opynnyoun	1480	
That in þat groue he muste hym hide alday		
And in the nyzt þanne wolde he take his way		
To thebes-ward hese frendis for to preye		
On Thesyus to helpe hym for to werye	1484	
And schortly oper he wolde lese ¹ hese lyf	[? MS. late]	
Or wynnyn emelye vn-to hese wyf		
This is theeffect & hese entente pleyn		
Now wale I turne vn-to Arcite ageyn	1488	
That lityl wiste how nygh that was hese care		
Tyl þat fortune hadde brought hym in þat snare		
The besye larke messenger of the day		
Salueth in here song the morwe gray	1492	
And fery phebus ryseth vp so bryght		
That al the oryent laugheeth of þ ^e lyght		
And with hese stremys dreyeth in þ ^e greuys		
The syluere dropis hangynge in the leuys	1496	

44 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

Troilus.

And arcita that is in þ^e court royal
 With Theseus is squyer pryncypal
 Is resyn & lokyth on the merye day
 And for to don hese obseruance to may 1500
 Remembrynge on the poynt of hese desyr
 He on a courser stertelynge as the fyr
 Is redyn in to þ^e feldis hym to pleye
 Out of the court were it a myle or tweye 1504
 And to þ^e grene of wheche þat I 3ow tolde [leaf 152, back]
 By auenture his weye he gan to holde
 To make hym a garlond of the greuys | iv. 62.
 Were it of wode-bynde or hawethorn leuys 1508
 And loude he song a-ȝen the sunne schene
 May with alle thynne flourys & thynne grene
 Welcome be þou fayre frosche may
 In hope þat I sum grene getyn may 1512
 And from hese courser with a lusty herte
 In-to the greue¹ ful hastyleche he sterte [1 MS. altered]
 And in a path he romede vp & down
 There as be auenture this palamoun 1516
 Was In a bosch that no man myȝte hym se
 ffor sore ofered of hese death was he
 Ne pyng ne knewe he that it was arcit
 God wot he wolde a trowed it ful lite 1520
 But soth is seyð gon sithe manye ȝerys
 That þe feld hath eyen & þe wode hath erys
 It is ful fayr a man to bere hym euene
 ffor al day metiþ men at vnset² stevene [2 meet: later] 1524
 fful lityl wot arcyte of hese felawe
 That was so nygh to heryn of hese tale
 ffor in the bosch he sittyth now ful styлле
 Whan þat Arcite hadde romede al hese fylle 1528
 And sungyn al the roundele lustyly
 In-to a stodye he fel sodeynly
 As don þese louerys in here queynte geres
 Now in the crop now doun in the brerys 1532

CAMBRIDGE 44

Now vp now doun as boket in a welle		<i>Tesside.</i>
Ryzt as the fryday sothly for to telle		
Now it schynyth now it reynnyth faste		
Ryzt so can gery venus ouercaste	1536	
The hertys of here folk ryzt as here 30 ¹ may		[1 30 ms: later]
Is gerful ryzt so chaungith sche aray		
Selde is the fryday al the wouke lyk		
Whanne that Arcyte hadde sunge he gan to sik	1540	
And sette hym doun with-outyn any more		[leaf 188]
Allas quod he that day þat I was bore		
How longe Iuno thorw þyn crewelte		
Wiltow werreyen Thebes the sete	1544	
Allas I-brouzt is to confusioun		See IV. 12, 14
The blod royal of Cadme & amphion		
Of Cadme wich þat was þ ^e ferste man		
That Thebes beelte ¹ / or fyrst þ ^e toun began	1548	[1 30 ms: later]
And of the Sete fyrst was crownede kyng		
Of hese lynage was I / and hese of-spryng		
By verray lyne / as of the stok royal		See IV. 21.
And now I am so kaytif & so thral	1552	
That he that is myn mortal enemy		See IV. 25.
I serue hym as hese squyer purely		
And ȝit doth Iuno me more schame		
ffor I dare not beknowe myn owene name	1556	
There as I was wone to hyȝte arcyte		See IV. 24.
Now highte I philostrate not worth a myȝte		[Pentec, IV. 24.]
Allas þou felle Mars allas Iuno		See IV. 27.
Thus hath ȝoure yre oure lynege fordo	1560	
Sane only me wrechede Palamoun		
That Thesys marteryth in presoun		
And oueral þis to slen me vttyrly		IV. 22.
Loue hath hese fery darte so brennyngely	1564	
I-stekid þour myn trewe carful herte		
That schapyn was myn dep ^r er þan myn scherte		
Ȝe slen me with ȝoure eyen emelye		
Ȝe ben the cause wherefore that I deye	1568	

Of al the remenaunt of myn oper care
 Ne sette I not the mountenauns of a tare
 So þat I coude don ouȝt to ȝoure plesaunse
 And with þat word he fyl down in a traunce 1572
 A long tyme & afterward he vp styrtē
 This palamoun þat thoute þat thorw hese herte
 He felte a cold swerd sodeynliche glyde
 ffor yre he quok / no lengere wolde he byde 1576
 And whan þat he hadde herd Arcytis tale [leaf 163, back]
 As hewere wod with face ded and pale
 He styrtē hym vp out of the boschis pikke
 And seyde arcite false traytour wikke 1580
 Now art þou hent þat louyst myn lady so
 for whom þat I haue al þis peyne and wo
 And art myn blod & to myn conseyl sworn
 As I ful oftyn haue seyð þe here be-forn 1584
 And hast beiapid here deuk Theysus
 And falsely chaunged þyn name thus
 I wele ben ded or ellys þou schat deye
 þou schat not loue myn lady Emalye 1588
 But I wele loue here only & no mo
 ffor I am palamoun þyn mortal fo
 And þow þat I no wepene haue in þis place
 But out of prisoun am styrt by grace 1592
 I drede not þat outhur þou schat deye
 Or þou ne schat not louyn emalye
 Ches which þou wit or þou schat not astarte
 This Arcyte with ful dispitous herte 1596
 Whan he hym knew & hadde hese tale herd
 As fers as lyoun pullede out a swerd
 And seyde þus bi god that set a-bone
 Nere it þat þou art sek & wod for loue 1600
 And ek for þou no wepen hast in þis place
 Thow schuldist neuere out of þis grene pase
 That þou ne schuldist deyen of myn hond
 ffor I defie the surete & the bond* 1604 | V. 51.

[* See p. 25, n. 5.]

Wiche þat þou seyst þat I haue mad to þe		<u>Tesside.</u>
What veray fol pink wel that loue is fre		V. 61.
And I wele loue here mangre al þyn myȝt		
But for as meche þou art a worthy knyȝt	1608	
And wilnyst to darrayne here be batayle		
Haue here myn trouthe to-morwe I nyl not fayle		
With-oute wetyng of ony oper whight		
That here I wele be foundyn as a knyght	1612	
And bryngyn harneys ryȝt I-now for the	[leaf 154]	
And ches the best & lef the werste to me		
And mete and drynk þis nyȝt wele I brynge		
I-nough for þ ^e & clothis for þyn beddyng	1616	
And gif so be þat þou myn lady wyne		
And ale me in þis wode þere I am inne		
þou mayst wel han þyn lady as for me		
This palamoun answerde I graunte it the	1620	
And þus þey be toparted til a morwe		
Whan eche of hem hadde leyd hese feyth to borwe		
O cupide out of alle charite		
O regne that wolde no felawe han with the	1624	
fful soth is it seyde that loue and lordschep		V. 12.
Wolde not hese þankys han no felauschep		
Wel fyndy þat arcite and palamoun		
Arcite is rydyn anon in to þe tour	1628	
And on þ ^e morwyn er it were day lyȝt		
fful fynly to harneys hap he dyȝt		
Bothe sufficiant & mete to darreesyne		
The batayle in the feld be-tweixe hem tweyne	1632	
And on hese horse alone as he was born		
He caryeth al þis harneys hym be-for		
And in the groue at tyme & place I-set		
This arcite & þis palamo[n] ben met	1636	
To chaunge gan the colour in here face		
Rygh as the hunterys in the regn ^e of trace		VII. 106.
That stondiþ at the gap with a spere		
Whan huntede is the lyoun or the bere	1640	

An herith hym come russchyng in the greuys
 And brekith bope the bowis & the leuys
 And þynkyth here comyth myn mortal enemy
 With-oute fayle he mote be ded or I 1644
 ffor eyþer I mote slen hym at the gap
 Or he slen me ȝif that me mys hap
 So ferdyn þey in chaungyng of here hewe
 As fer as eueryche of hem oþer knewe 1648
 Ther nas no good day ne no saluyng (leaf 154, back)
 But streyt with-oute word or rehersyng
 Eueryche of hem halp for to arme oþer
 As frendly as he were hese owene broþyr 1652
 And aftyr þat with scharpe sperys stronge
 They foynedyn eche at oþer wondyr longe
 Thow myztist wene þat þis palamoun
 In hese fyȝt were a wood lyoun 1656
 And as a cruel tygre was arcite
 As wilde borys gunne þey to smyte
 That frothyn white as fom for yre wod
 Vp to the anches foute þey in here blod 1660
 And in this wyse lete I hem fyghtyng dwelle
 And forth I wele of thesyus ȝow telle
 The destenye mynystere general • VI. 1.
 That executyth in the world oueral 1664
 The puruyauns þat god hath seyn be-forn* [* See p. 25, n. 2.]
 So strong it is þat thow þ^e world hadde sworn
 The contrarye of a thyng be ȝa or nay
 ȝit sumtyme it schal fallyn on a day 1668 • v. 11.
 That fallyth not eft with inne a thousent ȝere
 ffor certeynly oure aspectis here
 Be it of werre or pes or hate or loue
 Al is þis reuled be the siȝte a-boue 1672
 This mene I now be myȝty thesyus | v. 11.
 That for to huntyn is so desirous
 And namely at the grete hert in may
 That in hese bed þere dawede hym no day 1676

That he nys clad & redy for to ryde		
With hunte & horn & houndis hym besyde		<i>Teoride.</i>
ffor in hese huntynge hath he swych delyzt		V. 77.
That it is al hese Ioye & apetyt	1680	V. 78.
To ben hym self the grete hertys bane		
ffor ofte mars he seruyth now dyane		
Cler was þe day as I haue told or this		
And Thesys with alle Ioye & blys	[leaf 155]	
With hese ypolita the fayre quene		
And Emale clothod al in grene		[See XII. 66.]
On huntyng be þey redyn really		
And to the groue stod ful faste by	1688	
In which there was an hert as men him tolde		
Deuk thesytus þ ^e ryzte weye hath holde		
And to the launde he rydith hym ful ryzt		
ffor there was the hert wone to have his flyzt	1692	
And ouer a brok & so forth on hese weye		
This deuk wele han a cours with hym or tweye		
With houndis which as hym lyste eomaunde		
And whan This deuk was comyn vn-to þ ^e launde	1696	
Vndir the sunne he lokyth & þat a-non		
He was war of Arcite & Palamon		
That foutyn breame as it were boris too		
The bryzte swerdis wentyn to & fro	1700	
So hidously that with the leste strok		
It semede as it wolde felle an ok		
But what þey were no þyng he ne wot		
This deuk hese courser with the sporys smot	1704	V. 82.
And at a stert he was be-twixe hem too		
And pulle out a swerd & cryede hoo		
No more vp payne of lesyng of þoure hed		
Be myghti mars he schal a-non be ded	1708	
That smyth ony strok that I may sen		
But telle me what myster men ȝe ben		V. 82.
That ben so hardy for to fytyn here		
With-outyn luge or oper offiser	1712	

As it were in a listis ryal
 This Palamon answerde hastyly
 And seyde sere what nedith wordis mo
 We haue the deth deseruyd bothe two 1716
 Two woful wrechis ben we two caytyuys
 That ben encomberit of oure owene lyuys
 And as þou art a ryȝtful lord & Iuge
 Ne ȝif vs neythir mercy ne refuge 1720
 But sle me ferst for seynte charite [leaf 155, back]
 But sle myn felawe ek as wel as me
 Or sle hym ferst for þow þou knowist it lyte
 He is þyn dedly enemy arcyte 1724
 That fro þyn lond is banysschid on his hed
 ffor which he hath [de]seruyd to ben ded
 ffor this is he that come on to þyn ȝate
 And seyde that he hyte philostrate 1728
 Thus hath he Iapid þe ful manye a ȝer
 And þow hast makid hym þyn squyer
 And this is he that lounth Emelye
 ffor sithe the day is come that I schal deye 1732
 I make pleyn myn confessioun
 That I am thilke woful Palamoun
 That hath thyn presoun broke wekedel
 I am thi mortal fo / & it am I 1736
 That lounth so hote Emalia the bryȝte
 That I wele deye present in here syȝte
 Wherfore I aske deth & myn Iu-wise
 But sle myn felawe in the same wise 1740
 ffor bothe haue we disseruyd to ben slayn
 This worthi deuk answerde anon agayn
 And seyde þis is a schort conclusioun
 ȝoure owene mouth be ȝoure confessioun 1744
 Hath dampned ȝow & I wele it recorde
 It nedith not to pyne ȝow with the corde
 ȝe schul be ded be myȝty mars the rede
 The quene a-non for veray woman-hede 1748

Gan for to wepe & so dede emelye
 And alle the ladyis in the cumpanye
 Gret pete was it as it thoughte hem alle
 That euere swich a chawse schulde falle 1752
 ffor gentil men þey were of gret estat
 And noþyng but for loue was this debat
 And saw here bloody woundis wide & sore
 And alle criedyn both lasse & more 1756
 Hauē merci lord 'vpon vs wemen alle
 [leaf 158]
 [1 v: later]
 And on here bare kneis adoun þey falle
 And wilde a kisede hese fet þere as he stod
 Til at the laste a-slakede was hese mod 1760
 ffor pete rennyt sone in gentil herte
 And though he ferst for yre quok & sterte
 he hath consideryd schortely in a clause
 The trespass of hem bothe & ek the cause² [2 chance: altered]
 And al-thow that hese yre hese gilt acused 1765
 ȝit in hese rescoun he hem bothe excused
 As thus he thouthe wel that euery man
 Wele helpe hym selve in loue ȝif that he can 1768
 And delyuere hym self ȝif that he moun³ [3 moun: later]
 And ek hese herte hade compassioun
 Of wemen for þey wepyn euere in on
 And in hese gentil herte he thouȝte a-non 1772
 And softe to hym self he seyde fy
 Vpon a lord that wele haue no mercy
 But byn a lyoun bothe in word & dede
 To hem that ben in repentaunt & drede 1776
 As wel as to a proud dispitous man
 That wele meyntene that he ferst began
 That lord hath lityl discrecioun
 That in swich cas hath no dyuysioun 1780
 But weyeth pride & humblesse aftyr on
 And schortly whan hese yre is þus agon
 He gan to lokyn vp with eyȝyn lyȝte
 And spak these same wordis alle on hyȝte 1784

The god of loue a benedicite		
How myghti & how gret a lord is he		
A-ȝens hese myȝt þere geynyth none obstakeiȝ		
He may be clepid a god for hese myrakeliȝ	1788	
ffor he can makyn at hese owene gyse		
Of eueryche herte as he leste deuyse		
Lo here þis arcite & þis Palamoun		
That quytelȝ weryn out of presoun	1792	
And myȝtyn a leuyd in thebes really	[leaf 156, back]	
And wetyn I am here mortal enemy		
And that here deth lyth in myn myȝt also		
And ȝit hath loue maugry here eyȝyn two	1796	
Brought hem hedȝr bothe for to deye		
Now lokith is not this an hey folȝe		
Who may ben a fol but ȝif he loue		
Behold for godis sake that sit a-boue	1800	
Se how þey blede be þey not wel arayed		
Thus hath here lord the god of loue hem payed		
Here wagis & here feis for here seruyse		
And ȝit þey wene for to ben ful wyse	1804	
That seyn th loue for ouȝt that may be-falle		
But þis is ȝit the beste gise of alle		
That sen for whom they han this iolyte		
Kan hem therfore as meche thank as me	1808	
Sche wot no more of al this hote fare		
By god than wot a kokkow or an hare		
But al mote ben asayed hot or cold		
A man mot nede ben a fol or ȝong or old	1812	V. 92.
I wote it be myn self ful ȝore agon		
ffor in myn tyme a seruaunt was I on		
And þefore syn I knowe of loue peyne		
And wot how sore it can a man distreyne	1816	
As he that hath ofte be cauȝt in his las		
I ȝow for-ȝeue al holy this trespas		V. 92-3.
At request of the quen that knelith here		
And ek of emalye myn systir dere	1820	

And 3e schul bothe a-non vn-to me swere		<i>Twelve.</i>
That neuere mo 3e schul myn cuntre dere		
Ne mak werre vp-on me nyzt ne day		
But ben mynne frendys in al that 3e may	1824	
I 3ow for-3eue pis trespas euerydel		
And þey hym sworyn hise axinge fayre & wel		V. 98.
And hym of lordschepe & of mercy preyede		
And he hem grauntede grace & þus he seyde	1828	
To speke of ryal lynage & of rychesse	[leaf 157]	V. 98.
Thow that sche were a quen or a princesse		
Eche of 3ow bothe is worthi douteles		
To weddyn whan tyme is / but neuer the les	1832	
I speke as for myn sustyr Emalye		
ffor whom 3e han pis stryf of Ielousye		
3e wote 3oure self sche may not wedde two		. V. 98.
At onys þey 3e fyzte euere mo	1836	
To on of 3ow / al be hym loth or lef		
He mote go pipe in an yuy lef		
This is to seyn sche may not now han bothe		
Al be 3e neuere so Ielous ne so wrothe	1840	
And for-thi I 3ow putte in pis degre		
That eche of yow schal han hese destene		
As hym is schapyn & herkenyth in what wyse		
Lo here 3oure ende of that I schal 3ow deuyse	1844	
Myn wil is this for plat conclusioun		
With-outyn ony replicaeyoun		
3if that 3ow likyth tak it for the beste		
That eueryche of 3ow schal gon ryzt were hym leste	1848	
ffirely with-oute raunsum or daunger		
And þis day fifty woukis fer & ner		
Eueryche of 3ow schal brynge an hunderit knyghtis		'un anno intero, V. 98.
Armyd for lystis vp at alle ryghtis	1852	V. 97. 'nel teatro nostro.
Al redy to darrayne here by batayle		
And this be-hote I 3ow with-outyn fayle		
Vp on myn trouthe & as I am a knyzt		
That whethir of 3ow bothe that hath myght	1856	

54 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

This is to seyne that wheper he or þou May with hese hunderede as I spak of now Sle hese contrarye or out of lystis dryue Than schal I ȝeue Emalye to wyne	1860	<i>Tesside.</i> V. 98. [no slaying men- tioned.]
To whom that fortune ȝeuith so fayr a grace The lystis schal I make ryȝt here in þis plase And god so wisely on myn soule rewe That I schal euene Iuge ben & trewe	1864	
ȝe schul non oper ende with me make That on of ȝow schal be ded or take And ȝif ȝow þynkith þis is wel I-sayd Seyth ȝoure auys and holdith ȝow apayed	[leaf 187, back]	
This is ȝoure ende & ȝoure conclusyoun Who lokyth lyȝtely now but palamoun Who spryngyth vp for Ioye but arcite Who couthe telle or who couthe endite	1868	
The Ioye that is now schewid in the place Whan Thesius hath / don so fayr a grace But down on kneis wente euery man[er] wiȝt And þankede hym with al here herte & myȝt	1872	[ante grasia, V. 100.]
And nameliche the thebens ofte sythe And þus with god hope & with herte blythe They take here leue & homward þey gunne ryde To Thebes with olde wallys wyde	1876	
	1880	

[PART III. *No gap in the MS.*]

I trowe man wolde it deme negligence ȝif I forȝete to telle þ ^e dispence Of Thesius that goth so besily To makyn vp the listis ryally	the lystis	
That swich a noble theatre as it was I dar wel seyn in this world þere nas The Cyrcuyt a myle was aboute Wallyd of ston & dychild al with-oute	1884	
Round was the schap in maner of cumpas		• VII. 102. 1888. [no ditch.]

GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 55

fful of degraïs the heyȝte of sixty pas	• <i>Teseide.</i>
That whan a man was set on a degre	• VII. 110.
He lettȝth not his felawe for to se	1892 •
Estward þere stod a gate of marbil whit	• <i>Porta Marmoris</i> • VII. 100.
Westward swich a noþer in the opposit	• ^{1. ex opposito}
And schortly for to conclude swich a place	
Was non in erthe of so lytil space	1896
ffor in the lond þere nas no crafty man	
That iemetrye or arismetrik can	
Ne portretour ne keruere of ymagis	
That Thesȝus hym ȝaf mete & wagis	1900
The theatre for to makyn & deuyse	[leaf 106]
And for to don his ryte & sacryfise	
He est-ward hath vp on the gate a-boue	
In worschepe of venus goddeesse of loue	Venus
Don make an anter & an oratorye	1905
And on the westward in memorye	
Of mars he makȝd hat ryȝt swich a noþer	Mars
That coste of gold largely a fother	1908
And norward in a toret of the wal	
Of alabastre whit & red coral	
An oratorye ryche for to se	
In worschepe of Diane of chastite	Dyane
Hath Thesȝus don wrouȝt in noble wise	1913
But ȝit hadde I forȝetȝn to deuyse	
The noble keruyng & the portreyture	
The schap the contenance & the fygure	1916
That weryn in these oratoryis thre	
ffyrst in the temple of venus mayst þou se	
Wrouȝt on the wal ful pitous to be-hold	
The brokene slepis & the sikys colde	1920
The secret terys & þe waymentyng	
The fery strokys of the desyryng	VII. 110.
That louys seruauȝtys of this lyf enduren	
The Cothis that here couenauntys assuryȝn	1924
Plesauce hope desyr folhardynesse	See VII. 110. &c.

56 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

Bente & 3outhē baudrie richesse			<i>Teccide.</i>
Charmys & force lesynge & flaterye			See VII. 55, & 64.
Dispence besynesse & Ielousye	1928		See VII. 55-6, 58.
That werede of 3elwe flourys a garlond			
And a cokkow sittynge on hese hand			
ffestis instrumentis karolys daunsis			See VII. 53, & 57.
lust & aray & alle þe circumstancis	1932		
Of loue whiche that I reken & rekne schal			
Be ordere were peyntid on the wal			
And mo þan I can make of mencyoun			
ffor sothly al the mount of Cytheroun	1936		VII. 59.
There venus hath hese pryncipal dwellyng		[leaf 158, back]	
Was schewid in the wal in portreyng*		[* See p. 25, n. 7.]	
With al the gardyn & the besynesse			
Not was forzetyn the portyr ydilnesse †		[† See p. 25, n. 8.]	1940
Ne narcyus the fayre of 3ore a-gon			
And 3it the folye of kyng salamon			
And ek the grete strenthe of ercules ‡		[‡ See p. 25, n. 7.]	
Thenchauntementz of Media / & Circes	1944		
Ne of Turnes / with the hardy ferce corage			
The ryche Cresus caytyf in seruage			
Thus may 3e sen that wisdam ne rychesse			
Bente ne sleythe strenthe ne hardynesse	1948		
Ne may with wenus holde champardye			
ffor as here lust the world þanne may sche gye			
Lo alle these folk so cauzt were in here lase			
Til they for wo ful ofte seyde alas	1952		
Suffyseth here ensaumplys on or to			
And þow I couthe rekene a thousent mo			
The statue of Venus glorious for to se §		[§ See p. 25, n. 9.]	Venus
Was makyd fletynge in the large se	1956		
And from the nauelle down al couered was			
Which was grene & bryzt as ony glas			
A Cythole in here ryzt hand hadde sche			
And on here hed so semely for to se	1960		
A rose garlond froesch & wel smellynge			

A-boue here hed here dounnys flekerynge		<i>Tesside.</i>
By-forn here stod here sone cupido ¹	[¹ a second o added: later]	
Vp-on hese schulderys wyngis hadde he to ¹	1964	
And blynd he was as it is ofte sene		
A bowe he bar & arwys bryzte & kene		
Whi schulde I not as wel telle þow al		
The portreyture that was vp-on þ ^e wal	1968	
With-inne the wal of myzty mars the rede	[Mars]	
Al peyntid was the wal in lenthe & brede		• VII. 30.
Lyk to the Estrys of the gresely place		VII. 29, 30.
That hyzte the grete temple of Mars in Trace	1972	
In tylke colde frosty regyoun	[leaf 1.0]	
Ther as Mars hath hese souereyne mancyoun		
ffyrst on the wal was peynted a forest		• VII. 31.
In whiche þere dwellith neyþer man ne beste	1976	• [but a real forest there, not a painted one.]
With knotty knarry bareyne treis olde		
Of stubbis scharpe and, hidous to beholde		
In whiche þerein ran a rumbil in a swogh		
As þow a storm schulde brestyn euery bowgh	1980	
And down from an hyl vndyr a bente		
There stod the temple of Mars armypotente		• VII. 32.
Wrouȝt al of bornede stel of wheche thentre		•
Was long & stryt and gastely for to se	1984	•
And ther-out come a rage in swich a wese		• VII. 33.
That it made al the gate for to rese		•
The northren light In at the dorys shon *	[* See p. 26, n. 10.]	
ffor wyndow on the wal was there non	1988	
Thorw whiche men myghte ony lyth discerne		
The doris were ale of athamanutz eterne		• VII. 32.
I-clenchede ouerthwert & endelong		•
With yryn tough & for to make it strong	1992	•
Euery peler the temple to susteyne		• VII. 33.
Was tunne gret of yryn bryzt & schene		•
There saugh I fyrst the derke ymagynyng		•
Of falonye and the compassyng	1996	•
The crewel yre red as ony glede		•

The pike-purs & the pale drede		
The smylere with the knyf vndyr the cloke		• <i>Tessida.</i> VII. 33. (not the pickpurs.) VII. 34.
The shepne brennyng with the blake smoke	2000	
The tresoun & the morderyng in the bed		
The opene werre with woundis al be-bled'		
Contek with bloody knyf & scharp manace		• VII. 34.
Al ful of chyryng was that sory place	2004	
The sloere of hym self ȝit saw I þere		
Hese herte blod hath bathed al hese here		
The nayl I-dreue in the schod a nyȝt		
The colde deth with mouth gapyng vp ryȝt	2008	
In myddis of the temple there sat myschaunce *		[leaf 150, back] [* See p. 25, n. 11.]
With discomfort & sory cuntenauns		
ȝit saw I wodnesse laughyng in hese rage		VII. 35.
Armȳd compleynt / outes & fers corage †	2012	[† See p. 25, n. 12.]
The careyn in the bosch with throte I-korwe		
A thousent slayn & not of qualm I-storve		
The tyraunt with the pray by forse I-raft		
The toun distroyed there was no þyng laft	2016	VII. 35.
ȝit saw I brent the schepis hospesterys ‡		[‡ See p. 25, n. 12.]
The hunte strangeled with the wilde berys		
The sowe fretyn the child ryȝt in þe cradil		
The cook I-skaldit for al hese longe ladil	2020	
Nouȝt was for-ȝetyn by the infortune of marthe		
The cartere ouyr redyn with hese carte		VII. 37
Vndir the whil ful lowe lay he a-doun		
There were also of martyrs dyvysioun	2024	
The labourer the bocher & the amyth		
That forȝith scharpe swardis on the steyth		
And al a-boute depeyntid in a tour		
Saw I conquest sittynge in gret honour	2028	
With the scharpe sward ouyr his hed		
Hangyng by a sotyl twynede thred		
Depeyntid was the slantre of Iulyus		
Of grete nero & of antonyus	2032	
Al be that ilke tyme they were onborn		

3it was here deth depeyntid þere be-form
 By manasyng of mars ryȝt by fygure
 So was it schewid in that portreture 2036
 As is depeyntid in the sertres above
 Who schal be slayn or elle ded for loue
 Suffiseth on ensaunple in storyis olde
 I may not rekene hem thow I wolde 2040
 The statue of mars vp-on a carte stod
 Armyd & lokede grym as he were wod
 And ouer hese hed þere schynyn two figurs
 Of storyis þat ben clepid in scripturys 2044
 That on puella that othir Rubens
 (leaf 100)
 This god of armys was arayed thus
 A wolf there stod be-form hym at hese fet
 With eyȝyn rede & of a man he et. 2048
 With sotyl pensel was depeyntid þis story
 In redoutynge of mars & of hese glory
 Now to the temple of dyane the chaste
 Dyane
 As schortly as I can I wele me haste 2052
 To telle ȝow al the discripcioun
 Depeyntid ben the walle vp & doun
 Of huntyng & of schamfast schastite
 Ther saw I how woful Calistope 2056
 Whan that dyane agreuyd was with here
 Was turnyd from a woman til a bere
 And aftyr was sche mad the lode sterre
 That shynyth in the hevyn / from yow so férre [whole line later]
 Here sone is ek a sterre as men may se
 There saw I dane I-turnede til a tre
 I mene not the goddesse dyane
 But Pennyus douȝtyr whiche that hyȝte dane 2064
 There saw I. Attheon / an hert I-makid
 ffor vengauce that he saw dyane al nakyd
 I saw how that hese houndis han hym caut
 And fretyn hym for that þey knewe hym not 2068
 3it peyntid was a lityl ferþere more

60 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

How atthalaunte huntid þe wilde bore
 And Melyagre & manye a-noþer mo
 ffor whiche diane wrouzte hym care & wo 2072
 There saw I manye a-noþer wondir story
 The wheche me lyste not drawe to memory
 This goddesse on an hart¹ / wol hye set [1 art nearly erased]
 With smale hundys / al aboute here fet 2076
 And vndirnethe here fet / sche hadde a mone
 Waxinge it was & schulde wanye sone
 In gaude grene here statue clothede was
 With bowe in hond & arwis in a cas 2080
 Here eyzyn caste sche / ful lowe adoun [leaf 100, back]
 Ther pluto hath / here derke regioun
 A woman trauaylynge / hadde sche be-forn
 But for here child / so longe was on-born 2084
 ful pitusly lucyane gan sche calle
 And seyde help for þou mayst best of alle
 Wel coude he peynte lyfly that it wrouzte
 With manye a floreyne / heye it was bouzte 2088
 Now ben these lystis / made & thesyus
 That at hese grete cost arayed þus
 The temple & the theatre euerydel
 Whan it was don / it likede hym wondyr wel 2092
 But stynte I wele of Thesyus a lyte
 And speke of Palamoun & [of] Arcite
 The day a-prochith of here returnynge
 That eueryche schulde an hunderit knyztis brynge 2096
 The batayle to darrayn as I ȝou tolde
 And to atenys here couenaunt for to holde
 Hath eueryche of hem brouzt an hunderit knyztis
 Wel armede for to werre at alle ryztis 2100
 And sekyrly þere trowede manye a man
 That neuere sithe that the world be-gan
 As for to spe[ke] of knyght-hod of here hond
 As fer as god hath makyd se & sond 2104
 Nas of so fewe so noble a company

Twelve.

VL 7L

VL 7L

CAMBRIDGE 60

ffor euery wyȝt that louede chyualry		<i>Tesside. 1</i>
And wolde hese þank han a passaunt name		
Hath preyed that he myȝte ben of that game	2108	'giuoco,' VII. 4
And wel was hym that þerto schosyn was		
ffor ȝif there fel to-morwe swich a cas		
ȝe knowe wel that euery lusty knyȝt		
Th[a]t louyth paramouris & hath hese myȝt	2112	
Were it in yngelond or ellys where		
They wolden here thankys willyn to be there		
To fyghtyn for a lady benedicite		
It were a lusty syȝte for to se	2116	
And ryȝt so ferdyn þey with Palamoun	[leaf 161]	
With hym þere wentyn knyghtys manye on		
Some wele ben armede in an habirioun		
And in a brest plate & in a lyȝt Iopoun	2120	
And some wele haue a peyre platys large		
And some wele haue a pruce schild or a targe		
Some wele ben armyd on hese leggys wel		
And han an ax & some a mace of stel	2124	
There is non newe gyse that it nas old		
Armede were þey as I haue ȝow told		
Eueryche aftyr hese opynyoun		
Ther mayst þou sen / comynge with palamoun	2128	[on Arcita's aide, Tess.]
Ligurge hym selue / the grete kyng of trace		• VI. 14.
Blak was hese berd / & manlyche was hese face		VI. 21. (See p. 26, n. 14.)
The Cerkelys of hese eyen / in hese hed		
They glowedyn / by-twethyn ȝelw & red	2132	
And lyk a grefoun lokede he a-boute		
With kempe herys on hese browys stoute		•
His lemys grete / hese brawnys grete & stronge		• VI. 21.
Hese schuderys brode hese armys rounde & longe	2136	
And as the gyse was in his cuntre		
fful heye vp on a char of gold stod he		VI. 21.
With foure white bolys in the trays		
In stede of hese cote armour ouer hese harneys	2140	• VI. 22.
With naylys ȝelwe & bryghte as ony gold		•

He hadde a berys skyn / cole blak for old		• <i>Teseide.</i>
Hese longe her was kemb be-hynde his bak		VI. 22.
As ony rauenyis fedyr it schon for blak	2144	
A wrethe of gold / arm gret of heuge weighte		•
Vp-on hese hed set ful of stonys bryghte		
Of fynne rubeis & of dyamauntys		
A-boute hese char there wente whyzte Alauntis	2148	
Twenty & mo as grete as ony ster		
To huntyn at the lyoun or the der		
And folwede hym with mosel faste I-bounde		
Colerid of gold / & toretlys fylede rounde	2152	
An hunderit lordis hadde he in hese route	(leaf 161, back	
Armede ful wel with hertis sterne & stoute		
With arcyta in storyis as men fynde		
The grete emetreus the kyng of Inde	2156	
Vp-on a stede bay trappit in stel		
Couered in cloth of gold diapyrd wel		• VI. 29. (See p. 25.
Come rydyng liik the god of armys mars		n. 15.)
Hese cote armeure was of cloth of taris	2160	
Couchede with perlys white & rounde & grete		
Hese sadil was of brend gold newe bete		VI. 17.
A mantyl vp-on hese schuldyr hangyng		VI. 18.
Bret ful of Rubyis rede & fer sparkelyng	2164	
Hese crispe her lyk ryngis was I-roune		
And þat was 3elw / & glederit as the sonne		
Hese nose was hey hese eyzyn bryght sitryne		
Hese lyppis rounde hese colour was sanguyn	2168	
A fewe frakenys in hese face I-sprend		
Be-twixe 3elw / & sumdel blak I-meynd		
And as a lyoun he hese lokyng caste		
Of fyue & twenty 3er / hese age I caste	2172	
Hese berd was wel begunne for to spryng		
Hese voys was as a trumpe thonderyng		
Vp-on hese hed he werede a laurer grene		VI. 41.
A garlond frosch & lusti for to seene	2176	
Vp-on hese hond he bar for hes deduyt		

An egle tame as ony lylie whit		<i>Troilus.</i>
An hunderid lordys hadde he with hȳm there		
Alle armede sone / here hedis in al here gere	2180	
fful rychely in alle maner thyngis		
ffor trustyȝ wel that dukis erlys kyngis		VI. 66.
Were gaderid in this noble cumpanye		
ffor loue & for encres of chiualrye	2184	
A-bouthe this kyng / there ran on euery part		
fful manye a tame / lyoun & lebard		
And in this wise / these lordis alle & some		
Ben on the soneday / to the sete come	2188	
Aboute prime & in the toun a-light	(leaf 188)	
This thesyus this deuk this worthi knyght		VI. 66.
Whanne he hadde brouȝt hem in-to hese cete		
And innode hem / euerych at hese degre	2192	
He festith hem / & doth so gret labour		
To esyn hem / & don hem alle honour		
That ȝit men wenyȝ / that no manȝys wit		
Of non estat / ne coude amendyn it	2196	
The menstralcyȝe / the seruyse at the feste		VI. 66.7.
The grete ȝiftys to the meste & leste		
The ryche aray of thesyus palays		
Ne ho sat ferst or last vp-on the days	2200	
What ladyis fayrest ben or best daunsynge		
Or whiche of hem can daunsyn best or synge		VI. 70.
Ne who most felyngely / spekyth of loue		
What haukys syttyn on the perche a-boue	2204	VI. 8.
What houndys liggyn in the flou adoun		
Of al this make I now no mencyn		
But al theffect that pynkyth me the beste		
Now comyȝ the poynt / & herkenyȝ ȝif ȝow lyste	2208	
The soneday nyȝt er day be-gan to spyȝe		
Whan palamoun The larke herde synge		
Al-ȝey it were nought / day be ourys to		
ȝit song the larke / & palamoun also		palamoun to venus
With holy herte & with an hey corage	2213	

He ros to wendyn / on hese pilgrymage		<i>Twicida.</i>
Vn-to the temple blysfyl Cythera benygne		
I mene venus honourable & dygne	2216	
And in here hour he walkith forth a pas		
Vn-to the lystis there here temple was		
And doun he knelith & with vmble chere		
And herte sor / he seyde as 3e shal here	2220	
ffayreste of fayre / O lady myn venus		
Doughtyr to loue / & spouse of Vlcanus		. VII. 43.
Thow gladere of / the mount of Cytheroun		.
ffor thilke loue / pou haddyst to Adoun	2224 .	
Haue pete of myne bittere teris smerte		[leaf 162, back] .
And tak myn humble preyere at þyn herte		
Allas I ne haue no langage to telle		. VII. 44.
Theffectis ne the turmentis of myn helle	2228 .	
Myn herte may myn harm ¹ not bewreyen		[1 arm: later] .
I am so confus þat I can not seyen		. VII. 46.
But mercy lady brygh that knowyst wel		.
Myn thought & fest what harmys that I fel	2232 .	
Considerere al this & rew vp-on myn sor		
As wisely as I schal 3it eueremor		
Enforte myn my3t thi trewe seruauunt be		
And holdyn werre alwey with chastite	2236	
That make I myn owene so 3e me helpe		
I kepe not of armys for to 3elpe		. VII. 46.
Ne I ne axe not / to morwe to haue victorie		.
Ne renoun in this cas / ne ven glorye	2240 .	
Of prys of armys blowyn vp & doun		.
But I wolde haue fully possessioun		.
Of Emelye & deye / in þyn seruysse		.
ffynd pou the maner how & in what wyse	2244 . VII. 47.	
I reche not but I may betere be		.
To haue victorie of hem & pey of me		.
So that I haue myn lady in myne armys		.
ffor thow so be / that Mars I god of armys	2248	
3oure vertu is so gret in heuene a-boue		

That ȝif þou lyst I schal wel haue myn loue			<i>Twelve.</i>
Thyn temple wele I worschepe euer ^e mo			• VII. 49.
And on thyn auter where I ryde or go	2252		•
I wele don sacrifyse & ferys bete			•
And ȝif ȝe wele not so myn lady swete			• VII. 49.
Thanne prey I the to-morwe with a spere			•
That Arcitha / me þour the herte bere	2256		•
Than rekke I not whan I haue last myn lyf			•
Thow Arcithe / wyne here to hese wyf			•
This is theeffect / & ende of myn preyere			
ȝyf me myn loue þou blysful lady dere	2260		
Whan þ ^e orysoun was don of palamoun	[leaf 165]		VII. 49.
Hese sacrifyse he dede & þat a-non			
ful pitously with al circumstance*	[* See p. 25, n. 16.]		
Al telle I not as now hese obseruance	2264		
But at the laste the statwe of Venus schok	Venus		
And made a sygne wherby that he tok			
That hese preyere acceptid was that day			
ffor though the sygne schewede a delay	2268		
þo wiste he wel þat grauntid was hese bone			
And with glad herte he wente hym hom ful sone			
The threde hour inequal that Palamoun			
Began to Venus temple for to gon	2272		
Vp ros the sunne & vp ros Emalye	Emale		
And to the temple of dyane gan hye	Diane		
Here maydenys þat seche thidir with her ladde			VII. 71.
ful redyly þ ^e fuyr with hem þey hadde	2276		
Thensens the clothis & the remenaunt al			
That to the sacrifise longyn schal			
The hornys ful of mete / as was the gyse			VII. 71.
Ther lakkede not to don here sacryfise	2280		
Smokynge þ ^e temple ful of clothis fayre			VII. 72.
This Emalye with herte debonayre ¹	[¹ is altered from o]		
Here body weesch with watyr of a welle			VII. 72.
But how sche dede here ryte / I dar not telle	2284		
But ȝif it be only þyng / in general			

And ȝit it were a game to here it al		<i>Textide.</i>
To hym that menyth wel / it were no charge		
But it is good a man be at hese large	2288	
Here bryghte her was kempt vntrussed al		
A coroun of a grene ok cerial		• VII. 74.
Vp-on her hede was / set / ful fayre & mete		•
Too fyrys on the auter / gan sche bete	2292	•
And dede here thyngis as men may beholde		
In stace of Thebes & these bokys olde		
Whan kyndelit was this fuyr <i>with</i> pitous chere		• VII. 74.
Vn-to dyane sche spak / as ȝe may here	2296	•
O chaste goddesse of the wodys grene		[leaf 163, back] • VII. 74.
To whom hope heuene & erthe & se is sene		• VII. 77.
Quen of the regne / of pluto dirk and lowe		•
Goddesse of maydenys / þat myn herte hast knowe	2300	•
fful manye a ȝer and wost what I desire		
So kep me from þyn veniance & þyn yre		• VII. 79.
That attheon Aboughte crewelly		•
Chaste godesse wel wost þou that I	2304	
Desire to ben a maydyn al myn lyf		
Ne neuere wele I be no loue ne wyf		
I am þou wost ȝit / of thyn compaygnye		• VII. 81.
A mayde & loue huntyng & venery	2308	•
And for to walkyn in the wodys wilde		•
And not to ben a wyf & ben <i>with</i> chylde		
Not wele I knowe compaynye of man		VII. 81.
Now help lady sithe ȝe may [& ¹] can	2312	[1 erasure]
ffor to thre formeste that þou hast in þe		
And palamoun that hath swich loue to me		
And ek arcite that louth me so sore		
This grace I preie the <i>with</i> -oute more	2316	• VII. 84.
And send loue & pes be-twixe hem to		•
And from me turne a-vey here hertis so		•
That alle here hote loue & al here desyr		•
And al here besy turmant and here fyr	2320	•
Be queynt & turne in a noþer place		•

And ȝif so be þou wilt not do me grace	
Or ȝif myn destene be schapen so	<i>Twelve.</i> • VII. 84.
That I schal nedys han on of hem to	2324 .
As send me hym that most desyryth me	:
Be-hold goddesse of clene chastite	
The bittere terys that on myne che-kys falle	VII. 72.
Syn þou art maydyn & kepere of vs alle	2328
My maydynhed þou kepe & wel conserue	
And whil I leue / a mayde I wele þ ^e serue	
The fyrys brenne vp on the auter clere	• VII. 82.
Whyl Emalye was þus in here preyere	2332 .
But sodeynly sche sey a seyghte queynte	[leaf 164]
ffor ryght a-non [on] of the ferys queynte	• VII. 91.
And quekede a-geyn & aftyr that anon	.
That othyr fer was queynt & al a-gon	2336 .
And as it queynte it made a whistelyng	.
As don the wete brondis in here brennyng	• VII. 82.
Ant at the brondis ende out ran a-non	.
As it were blodi dropis many on	2340 .
ffor which so sore agast was emalye	
That sche was wol nygh mad & gan to crye	
ffor sche nyste what it sygnefyed	VII. 92.
But only for the fer þus hath sche cryed	2344
And wep þat it was pete for to here	
And þerwithal diane gan apere	• VII. 82.
With bowe in hond rygh as an hunteresse	.
And seyde doughtir stynt þyn heuynesse	2348
Among the goddys hye it is afermyd	• VII. 89.
And by eterne world wretyn and confermyd	[‘con eterne pa- rola,’ VII. 85.]
Thow schalt ben weddit vn-to on of two	• VII. 89.
That han for the so meche care & wo	2352
But vn-to whiche of hem I can not telle	• VII. 89.
ffarwel for I ne may no lengere dwelle	
The ferys whiche þat on myn auter brenne	VII. 89.
Schul the declaryn or that þou go henne	2356
Thyn auenture / of loue as in this cas	

68 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

And with þat word / þe arwis in the cas	• <i>Tessida.</i>
Of the goddesse clateryn faste & ryng	• VII. 90.
And forthe sche wente & made ananysschyng	2360 .
ffor wich / this emaly / a-stonyd was	
And seyde what amounthyth this allas	
I putte me in thyn proteccioun	
Dyane & in thyn dispocycoun	2364
And hom sche goth anon the nexte weye	• VII. 92.
This is theeffect þere is no more to seye	
The nexte hour of Mars folwyng this	Arcite . Mars
Arcite vn-to the temple walked is	2368
Of ferse Mars / to don his sacrificy	[leaf 164, back]
With al his rygh / of hese poyn devise	
With pitous herte & hey deuocoun	• VII. 92.
Rygh þus to Mars he seyde hese orysoun	2372 .
O stronge god / that in the regnys colde	• VII. 94.
Of trace honoured art & lord I-holde	•
And hast in euery regne and euery lond	
Of armys al the bridil in þyn hond	2376
And hem fortunyst as the lyst deuyse	
Accepte of me myn pitous sacrificy	
3if it so be that myn 3outhes may disserue	• VII. 96.
And that myn myght be worthi for to serve	2380 .
Thyn godhed that I may ben on of thyne	•
Thazne preye I the / to rewe vp-on myn pyne	
ffor thylke pyne & thylke hote fuyr	
In whiche whilhom þou brentist for desyr	2384
Whan that þou vsedest the beute	• VII. 96.
Of fayre 3outhes frossche venus fre	•
And haddist here in armys at þyn wille	
Al-though the onys on a tyme mysfyll	2388
Whan vlcanus hadde caught þe in hese las	• VII. 98.
And fond the lyggynge by his wife allas	
ffor thilkee sorwe / that was in thyn herte	
Haue routhe as wel vp-on myne peynys smerte	2392
I am 3ong / and oncunnyng as þou wyst	• VII. 98.

And as I trowe with loue offendit most		• <u>Tesside.</u>
That euere was ony / lyuys cryature		VII. 22.
ffor sche that doth me al this wo endure	2396	
Ne rechith neuere whedyr I synke or fleete		
And wel I wot er sche me mercy hete		
I mot with strenthe wyne here in the place		
And wel I wot / with-oute helpe or grace	2400	• VII. 22.
Of the : ne may myn strenthe not a-vayle		•
Than help me lord to morwe in myn batayle		• VII. 22.
ffor thilke fuyr that whilhom brente the		•
As wel as thilke fer / now brennyth me	2404	•
And do þat I to morwe haue victorie		[leaf 165]
Myn be þ ^e trauayle & thyn the glorye*		[* See p. 22, n. 17.]
Thyn souereyn templ wel I muste honoure		
Of ony place & alwey most laboure	2408	
In thyn pleasaunce & in thi craftys stronge		
And in thi temple I mowe myn baner honge		• VII. 22.
And alle the armys of myn cumpanye		•
And euere mo vn-to þat day I deye	2412	
Eterne fuyr I wele be-fore the fynde		• VII. 22.
And ek to this a-wow I wele me bynde		
Myn berd myn her that hangith long adoun		• VII. 22.
That neuere ȝit me felte offencyoun	2416	•
Of rasour ne of schere I wele the ȝeue		•
And ben thyn trewe seruaunt whil I leue		
Now lord haue routhe vp on mynne sorwis sore		
ȝif me the victorie I aske the no more	2420	
The preyer stynte of arcita the stronge		
The ryngis on the temple dore that henge		
And ek the doris clateredyn ful faste		• VII. 22.
Of which arcita sum-what hym gaste	2424	•
The fuyres brende vp on the autyr bryȝt		• VII. 22.
That it gan al the temple for to lyȝt		•
A swete smel a-non the ground vp ȝaf		•
And arcita anon hese hond vp haf	2428	• See VII. 22.
And more ensens in to the fuyr he ¹ caste		[1 e altered from st]

With othere ryztys mo and at the laste		<i>Twofold.</i>
The statue of mars be-gan hese hauberk ryngne		• VII. 40.
And with that soun he herde a murmurynge	2432 .	
fful lowe & dym þat seyde þus victorye		
ffor which he ȝaf / to Mars ¹ . the glorye ¹	[1-1 over victorye erased]	
And þus with Ioye & and hope wel to fare		• VII. 41.
Arcita anon vn-to his in is fare	2436	
As fayn as foul is of the bryzte surne		
And ryzt anon þere is swich stryf be-gunne		Murmur . VII. 47.
ffor thilke grauntyng in the heuene aboue		.
Be-twixe venus the goddesse of loue	2440 .	
And mars the sterne god Armypotent		[leaf 165, back] .
That Iupiter was besi it to stynte		
Til that þe pale saturne the colde		
That knowith so manye of auentouris olde	2444	
ffond in hese old experience an art		
That he ful sone hath plesid enery part		
As soth is seyd elde hat gret auauntage		
In elde is bothe wisdom & vsage	2448	
Men may the elde at-tenne & not at-rede		
Saturne a-non to stynte stryf & drede		
Al be it þat it is ageyn hese kynde		
Of al this stryf he gan remedie fynde	2452	
Myn dere douȝtyr venus quod saturne		
Myn course þat hath so wyde for to turne		
Hath more power than wit ony man		
Myn is the drenchyng in the se so wan	2456	
Myn is the prisoun in the derke cote		
Myn is the strangelyng & hangyng bi the throte		
The murmur & the cherle rebellyng		
The groynyng & the priue enpoysounyng	2460	
I do veniaunce and pleyn coreccioun		
Why I dwelle in the sygne of the lyoun		
Myn is the ruyne of the heye hallys		
The fallyng of the tourys & of the waliys	2464	
Vp-on the mynour or the carpenter		

I slow Samson schakyng þe piller	
And myne ben the maladijs colde	
The darke tresounys & the castis olde	2468
Myn lokyng is þe fadir of pestelence	
Now wep no more I schal don diligence	
That Palamoun that is þyn owene knyzt	
Schal han hese lady as þou hast hym hyzt	2472
Though Mars schal helpe hese knyzt ȝit neuerthales	
Be-twixen ȝow there may ben sumtyme pes	
Alle be ȝe not of on complexioun	
That causeth al day swich dyuysioun	2476
I am thyn aiel redi at thyn wille	[leaf 106]
Wep now no more I wil þyn lust fulfyllen	
Now wil I stynte of the goddis aboute	
Mars & venus goddesse of loue	2480
And tellyn ȝow as goodly as I can	
The grete effect for whiche þat I began	

[PART IV. No gap in the MS.]

Gret was the feste in Athenys þat day	
And ek the lusti sisen of þat may	2484
Made euery whit to ben in swich plessaunce	
That al that moneday lustene they & daunce	
And spendyn it in venus hey seruyse	
And by the cause that þey schulde ryse	2488
Erly for to sen the grete fyzt	
Vnto here reste wente þey þat nygh[t]	
And on the morwe whan þat day gan spryng	
Of hors & harneys noyse & claterynge	2492
There was in ostelleryis al aboute	
And to the paleys rod þere manye a route	
Of lordys vp-on stedis & palfreyis	
There mayst þou sen / deuysyng of harneys	2496
So vncouth & so ryche & wrough so wel	
Of gold smetheris / of broudyng & of stel	

(General imitation of VII. 95-99.)

72 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

The scheldys bryghte testers & trappuryz		
Gold hew helmys hauberkis cote armuryz	2500	<i>Twisted.</i>
lordis in paramentis on here courseryz		
Knyghtis of retenew & ek squeryz		
Naylynge the sperys & helmys bokelynge		
Giggyng of schyldys with lanyeryz la-syng	2504	
Ther as nede is þey were no þyng ydyl		
The fomy stedis on the goldene brydyl		• VII 97.
Gnawynge faste .the. armuryz also		•
With fyle & hamyr prikyng to & fro	2508	
Thanne on fote comounnys ¹ manye on		[MS altered]
With schorte stauns / as thikke as þey may gon		
Pypis trumpis nakeryz claryounnys		
That in the batayle blowyn bloody sounys	2512	
The paleys ful of peplys vp & doun		[leaf 166, back] VII 98.
Here thre þere ten / holdyng here questyoun		• VII 98.
Deuynynge of these / thebene knyghtis too		•
Some seyde thus / some seydyn it schulde be so	2516	
Some heldyn with hym with the blake berd		
Some with the ballede some with the thykke herid		
Some seyde he lokede grymme & he wolde fyghte		
He hath a sparth of twenty pound of weighte	2520	
Thus was the halle ful of dynynyng		
Longe after that the sunne began to sprynge		
The grete thesyus that of hese slep a-wakyd		• VII 98.
With mynstrelsy & noyse that was makyd	2524	
Held ȝit the chambre of hese paleys ryche		•
Tyl that the theben knyghtis bothe I-liche		
Honoure weryn / in-to the paleys fet		
Deuk thesyus is at a wyndowe set	2528	
Arayed wel as he were a god in trone		
The puple presede dedyrward ful sone		
Hym for to sen & don hey reuerence		
And ek to herkene his hest & his sentence	2532	
An heraud on a skaffald made an hoo		
Til al the noyse of the puple was I-do		

GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 73

And whan he say / the noyse of puple al styлле		<i>Tesside.</i>
The schewede he the myghty dukis wille	2536	
The lord hath of hese hey discrecyoun		See VII. 7-12.
Consyderit þat it were distructyoun		
To gentyl blod to fygtyn in the gyse		
Of mortel batayle now in this empryse	2540	VII. 7.
Wherefore to schapyn þat þey schul not dye		
He wele hese ferste purpos modyfye		
No man þerfore vp peyne of los of lyf		
No maner schort polax / no schort knyf	2544	VII. 12 [no lances allowed in Boccaccio].
In to the lystys sende ne dedyr brynge		
Ne schort swerd for to steke with poynt bytynge		
No man it drawe ne bere it by hese syde		
Ne no man schal vn to hese felawe ryde	2548	
But on cours with a scharp I-grounde spere	[leaf 167]	
ffayn ȝif hym lyst / on fote hym self to were		
And he that is at myschef schal be take		
And not slayn / but ben brought vn-to the stake	2552	VII. 121-122.
That schal ben ordeynyd on eyþer syde		
But dedir he schal be forse & þere abyde		
And ȝif so falle the cheynteyn be take		
On eythyr syde or allys slen hese make	2556	
No lengere schal the turnyng leste		
God spede ȝow. goth forth / & leyth on faste		
With long swerd & with macys fytyth ȝoure fylle		• VII. 12 [and with "bipenne"].
Goth now ȝoure wey / this is the lordys wille	2560	
The voys of peple touchede the heuene		• VII. 14.
So longe cryedyn þey with merye steuene		•
God sawe swich a lord þat is so good		•
He wynnyth non distructioun of blod	2564	•
Vp goth the trumpys & the melodye		
And to the lystis rit the cumpaynye		
By ordenaunce Throuout The sete large		
Hangit with cloth of gold & not with sarge	2568	
ful lyk a lord þis noble deuk gan ryde		• See VII. 100-102.
These too thebenys vp on eyþer syde		

74 .GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

And aftyr rod the quen & emelye			
And aftyr þat a noþer cumpanye	2572		<i>Teuocida.</i> VII. 113-4.
Of on & oper aftyr here degre			
And thus þey passyn thour out the cite			
And to the lystis come þey betyme			
It nas not of the day fully pryme	2576		
Whan set was Theysus ful ryche & hye			
Ypolita the quen & Emely			
And opere ladyis in degreis aboute			
Vnto the setis / presith al the route	2580		
And westwardis thorough þ ^e gatys vndyr marthe*		[* See p. 25, n. 18.]	VII. 114.
Arcite & ek the hunderit of hese parte			
With baner red is enteryd rygh a-non			
And in that selue moment Palamon	2584		VII. 118.
Is vndyr venus Estward in the place		[leaf 107, back]	
With baner whit & hardy cher & fac			
In al the world to sekyn vp & doun			VII. 12.
So euene with-oute variacyoun	2588		
There ne were sweche cumpanyis tweye			
ffor þere ne was non that coude seye			
That ony hadde of oper anauntage			
Of worthynesse ne of estat ne age	2592		
So euene were þey 'chosen for to gesse		[I altered from h]	
And too ryngis fayre þey hem dresse			
Whan that here namys rad were euerychon			
That in here noumbre gile was þere non	2596		
Tho were the gatys schette & cryed was loude			
Do now 3oure deuer 3ynge knyghtis proude			
The heroudys lefte here prykyng vp & doun			
Now ryngyn trompys loude & claryoun	2600		VIII. 8.
There is no more to seyne but west & est			
In gon the sperys ful gladly in at rest			
In goth the scharpe spere in to þ ^e syde			VIII. 7.
Ther sen men ho can Iuste & ho can ryde	2604		
There sleueryn sperys vp-on schildys pikke			
He felyth thorw the herte spon the prykke			

Vp spryngyn sperys twenty fote on heyghte		<i>Teocida.</i>
Out gon þ ^e swardis as the syluyr bryght	2608	
The helmys they hewyn & to-schrede		
Out brest the blod with sterne stremys rede		
With myghty macys the bonys they to-breste		See VIII. 14, 20,
He thour the thikkeste of the thrang gan threste	2612	33, 40, 60, 81, &c.
There semblyn stedys stronge & doun goth al		
He rollith vndyr fote as doth a bal		
He foynyth on hese feet with hese trunchoun		
And he hym hurtelith with hese hors adoun	2616	
He thour the body is hurt & sithe take		
Magry his hed & brough vn-to the stake		
As forward was / ryȝt þere he wolde abyde		
Anoper lad is on that oper syde	2620	
And sumtyme doth hem Thesius to reste	[leaf 108]	
Hem to frossche & drynkyn ȝif hem leste		
fful ofte a day han these Thebens two		VIII. 12.
To-gedere I-met & wrought hese felawys wo	2624	
Vn-horsede hath eche oper of hem tweye		
Ther nas no Tigre in the vale of Galgopheye		
Whan that here whelp is stole whil it is lyte		VIII. 22.
So crewel on the hunte as is arcyte	2628	
ffor Ielous herte vp-on this Palamoun		
Ne in Belmarye þere ne is non so fel lyoun		
That huntid is or for hese hungryr wod		
Ne of hese prey desyreth so the blod	2632	
As Palamoun to slen hese fo Arcyte		
The Ieluse strokys on here helmys byte		
Out rennyth blod on bope here sydis rede		
Sumtyme an ende þere is of eyper dede	2636	
ffor er the sunne vn-to þ ^e reste wente		
The strong kyng / emetryus gan hente		
This Palamoun as he faught with Arcyte		
And made his swerd depe in hese flesch to bite	2640	
And be the forse of twenty is he take		
Vn-ȝoldyn & Idrawyn to the stake		

And in the rescous of this palamoun		
The stronge kyng lygurge is born adoun	2644	
And kyng Emetrius for [al] hese strenthe		
Is born out of hese sadil a swardis lenthe		
So hitte hym palamoun or he were take		
But al for nought he was brought to the stake	2648	
Hese hardy herte myghte hym helpe nought		
He muste abyde whan that he was caught		
By forse & ek by compocycioun		
Who sorwith now but woful palamoun	2652	VIII. 123.
That may ¹ no more gon ageyn to fyghte		[¹ altered from mo]
And whan that Thesi ^{us} hadde seyn that syghte		
Vn-to the folk that foughtyn thus echon		
He cryede ho / no more for it is don	2656	
I wele be trewe iuge & no partye		[leaf 108, back]
Arcite of Thebes schal haue Emelye		
That bi hese fortune hath here fayre wonne		
A-non pere is a noyse of puple begunne	2660	
ffor ioye of this so loude & heye with al		
It semede pat the lystis schulde fal		
What can now fayre venus don aboue		
What seyth sche now / what doth this quen of loue	2664	
But wepith so / for wantynge of here wille		
Tyl pat here terys in the lystis fylle		
Sche seyde I am a-schamyd duteles		
Saturne seyde douztyr hold þyn pes	2668	
Mars hath his wille his knyght al hese bone		
And be myn hed þou schat ben esed sone		
The trumpis with the loude mestrelcye		
The heroudis pat ful loude zelle & crye	2672	
Ben in here wele for ioye of daun Arcyte		
But herkenyth me & styntyth now a lite		
Which a merakele pere be-fel a-non		
This ferse arcyte hath of hese helm I-don	2676	VIII. 124.
An[d] on a courser for to schewe hese face		
He prikyth endelong the same plase		

Lokyng vpward vp on pis Emelye		
And sche ageyn hym caste a frendely ye	2680	<i>Teseide.</i> VIII. 131. VIII. 124-6.
[.		
. no gap in the MS.]		
And was al hese cher as in hese herte		
Out of the ground a furey infernal sterte	2684	(a Fury, raised by Venus, IX. 4.)
ffrom pluto sent at request of saturne		
ffor which hese hors for fer gan to turne		IX. 7.
And lep a syde & founderede as he lep		
And er þat arcite may takyn kep	2688	
He pyghte hym on the pomel of hese hed		
That in þ ^e place he lay as he were ded		IX. 8.
His brest to-brostyn withe sadil bowe		
As blak he lay as ony cole or crowe	2692	
So was the blod ronnyng in hese face		
A-non he was I-born out of the place		IX. 47.
With herte sor to thesirus paleys	[leaf 100]	
Tho was he korvyn out of hese harneys	2696	IX. 13.
And in a bed I-broust ful fayre & blythe		IX. 48.
ffor he was ȝit in memory & alyue		
And alwey cryinge aftyr Emelye		
Duk Thesirus with al hese cumpanye	2700	IX. 38.
Is comyn hom to athenus hese cete		
With al blys & gret solempnete		
Al be it þat this / auenture was falle		
He nylde not discomfortyn hem alle	2704	
Men seyde ek that Arcita schal not deye		IX. 26.
He schal ben helyd of hese maladye		
And of a noþer þyng þey wern as fayn		
That of hem alle was þere non I-slayn * [* See p. 25, n. 19.]	2708	
Alle were þey sore I-hurt & namely on		
That with a spere was therlyd hese brest bon		
To othere woundis & to brokene armys		
Some haddyn saluys & some haddyn charmys † [† See p. 25, n. 20.]		
ffermacies of erbis & ek saue	2713	
þey dronken / for þey woldyn here lemys haue		

ffor which this noble deuk as he wel can			<i>Teutonic.</i>
Confortyth & honouref euery man	2716		
And made reuel al the longe nyght			IX. 61.
Vn to þo straunge ¹ lordis as was ryght		[¹ altered from stronge]	
Ne þere was holdyn non disconfitinge			
But as a iustis or a turneynynge	2720		
ffor sothely þere was non disconfiture			
ffor fallynge nys not but an auenture			
Ne to be lad be forse on to the stake			
Vnfoldyn & . with twenty knyghtis I-take	2724		
On persone a-lone with-oute mo			
And haried by arm fote & to			
And ek hese stede dreuyn forth with stauys			
With footmen bothe zemen & ek knavys	2728		
It nas arettyd hym no velanye			
There may no man clepe it cowardye			
ffor which a-non deuk Theseus let crye		[leaf 169, back]	
To styntyn alle rancure & enuye	2732		
The gre as wel on o syde as of othir			IX. 64.
And eythyr syde liche ² lyk a operis brothir		[² MS. altered]	
And zeue hem giftys aftyr here degre			XII. 80.
And fully held a feste dayis thre	2736		ffifteen daye.
And conneyed þ ^e kyng worthily			
Out of hese town a iurne largely			
And hom wente euery man the ryghe way			XII. 82.
þere was no more but farwel & heue good day	2740		
Of this batayle I wele no more endyte			
But speke we of palamoun & arcite			
Swelllyth the brest of Arcite & the sor [*]		[[*] See p. 25, n. 21.]	See X. 11.
Encreseth at hese herte more & mor	2744		
The cloterede blod for ony leche-craft			
Corupteth & is in hese bouk I-laft			
That neyþer veyne blod ne ventusynge			
Ne drynk of erbis may ben hese helpynge†		[† See p. 25, n. 22.]	
The vertu expulsyf of anymal	2749		
ffor thilke vertu clepe I natural			

Ne may the vertu voyde ne expelle		
The pypis of hese lungys guzne to swelle * [* See p. 25, n. 23.]	2752	
And euery lacerte in hese brest adoun		
Is schent with vertu & corupeyoun		
Hym gaynyth neyþer for to gete his lyf		
Vomyt vpwar ne douward laxatyf	2756	
Al is to-brostyn / thilke regioun		
Nature hath no domynacyoun †		[† See p. 25, n. 23.]
And serteynly þere nature wele not werch		
fiarwel fysyk go bere the man to scherche	2760	
This al and sum that arcite mot deye		x. 12.
ffor which he sendyth Aftyr Emalye		x. 27, 51.
And palamoun that was hese cosyn dere		
Thanne seyde he þus as 3e schul aftyr here	2764	
Nowt may the woful spyrt in myn herte		x. 54-5.
Declare on poynt of alle mynne sorwis smerte		
Do 3ow myn lady that I loue most		
But I be-quethe the spyrit of myne gost	[leaf 170] 2768	x. 64.
To 3ow a-bouyn euery cryature		
Syn that myn lyf may no lengere dure		
Allas the wo alas the peynys stronge		x. 102.
That I for 3ow haue suffered & so longe	2772	
Allas the deth alas myn Emelye		x. 102.
Allas the partynge of oure cumpaynye		
Allas myn hertis quene alas myn wif		
Myn hertis lady endere of myn lyf	2776	
What is this world what askyn men to haue		
Now with hese loue now in hese colde graue		
A-lone withoutyn ony cumpanye		
fiarwel myn swete fo myn emelye	2780	
And softe tak me in 3oure armys tweye ‡		[‡ See p. 25, n. 24.]
ffor loue of god & herkene what I schal seye		
I haue here with myn cosyn palamoun		x. 60-2.
Had strif & rancur manye a day agon	2784	
ffor loue of 3ow & for myn Ielusye		
And Iupiter so wisely myn soule gye		

To spekyn of a seruauunt proprely			<i>Tracide.</i>
With alle circumstauncys trewely	2788	X 62	
That is to seyne / strenth . honour . knyghede .			
Wisdam . vmblesse . estat . & hey kynrede .			
ffredom . & al that longith to that art			
So Iupiter haue of myn soule part	2792		
As in þis world now ne knowe I non		X 63	
So worthi to be louyd as palamon			
That seruyth ȝow & wele don al hese lyf			
And ȝif that euere ȝe schul be a wif	2796		
fforȝet not palamoun the gentyl man *		[* See p. 25, n. 25.]	
And with that word hese speche fayle gan			
ffor from hese herte vp to hese brest was come		X 111, 112	
The colde of deth þat hadde hym ouercome	2800		
And ȝit more ouyr for in hese armys two			
The vital strenthe is lost & al a-go			
Only the intellect with-outyn more		[leaf 170, back]	
That dwellede in hese herte syk & sore	2804		
Gan fayle whan the herte felte deth			
Dusked hese eyne þ° & faylede breth			
But on hese lady ȝit caste he hese eye			
Hese laste word was mercy Emelye	2808		
Hese spyrit schaugedede hous & wente þere			See XI. 1-3, and
As I cam neuere I can not telle where			the end of <i>Tristram</i>
There-fore I stynte I neam no dyuynystere			& <i>Cressida</i> .
Of soulys fynde I not in þis registre	2812		
Ne me ne leste thilke opynyounys to telle			
Of hem though they write / where þat þey dwelle			
Arcyte is cold there Mars hese soule gye			
Now wele I speke forth of Emelye	2816		
Schrikte Emelye & houlith palamoun		XI a	
And thesyrus hese sistyr tok a-non			
Swounnyng & bar here from the cors away			
Wha helpith it to tarie forth the day	2820		
To telle how sche wep bothe eue & morwe			
ffor in swich cas wemen haue swich sorwe			

Whan that here hosbondys ben from hem a-go		<i>Tenide.</i>
That for the more part þey sorwe so	2824	
Or ellys fallyn in swich maledye		
That at the laste serteynly þey deye		
Infynyte ben / the sorwis & þe terys		XI. a.
Of olde folk & folk of tendere ȝerys	2828	
In al the toun for deth of this Theban		
ffor hym there wepith boþ ^e child & man		
So gret a wepyng was there non sertayn		• XI. 7.
Whan Ettor ¹ was brought ¹ al frosch I-slayn	[14, t: modern]	•
To troye allas the pete þat was there	2833	
Crachynge of chekys / rentynge of ² here	[14: later]	
Whi woldist þou ben ded þese women crye		
And haddyst gold I-now & emelye	2836	
No man myghte glade Thesysus [*]	[* See p. 25, n. 25.]	• XI. 9.
Sauynge hese olde fadyr egyus		
That knew this worldis transmutacyoun	[leaf 171]	• XI. 10, 11.
As he hadde seyn it vp & doun	2840	•
Ioye aftyr wo & wo aftyr gladnesse		•
And schewede hem ensaumplys & lyknesse		•
Ryght ³ as þere deyede neuere man quod he	[14: later]	• XII. a.
That he ne leuede in erthe in sum degre	2844	•
Ryght so þere leuede neuere man he seyde		•
In al this world that sumtyme he ne deyede		•
This world is not but a thourfare ful of wo		
And we ben pilgrymys passynge to & fro	2848	
Deth is an ende of euery wordely sore		
And oueral þis ȝit seyde he mechil more		
To this effect ful wisely to enhort		
The pule that þey schulde hem reconforte	2852	
Deuk Thesysus with al hese besi cure		• XI. 13.
Cast now wher ⁴ þat þ ^e sepulture	[14: later]	•
Of goode Arcyt may best I-makyd be		•
And ek most honourable in hese degre	2856	•
And at the laste he tok conclusioun		
That þere as fyrst arcite & palamoun		

82 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

Haddyn for loue the batayle hem be-twene		<i>Tessida.</i>
That þ ^e selue groue sote & grene	2860	<i>XI. 12.</i>
Ther as he hadde hese amerouse desyres	.	
Hese compleynt & for loue hese hote fyres	.	
He wolde make a fyr in whiche thoffys	.	
funeral. he myghte al a-complice	2864	.
And let comaunde anon to hakke & hewe		<i>XI. 14.</i>
The okys olde & leyn hem on a rewe		
In culpounys wel arayed for to brenne		
Hese offysers with swifte feet þey renne	2868	.
And ryde a-non at hese comaundement	.	
And aftyr þis thesius hath sche sent	.	<i>XI. 15.</i>
Aftyr a bere & it al ouer-spradde	.	
With cloth of gold the rycheeste that he hadde	2872	.
And of the same sute he cladde arcite	.	
Vp-on hese hondis hese glouys whyte		
Ek on hese hed a coroune of laurer grene	[leaf 171, back] .	
And in hese hand a swerd ful brygh & kene	2876	
He leyde hym bare þ ^e vesage on the bere		
Therwith he wept þat pete was to here		
And for the puple schulde sen hym alle	.	<i>XI. 16.</i>
Whan it was day he broughte hym to þ ^e halle	2880	.
That roryth of þ ^e cryinge & þ ^e soun	.	<i>XI. 20.</i>
Tho cam þis woful Theban Palamur	.	
With flotery & rogi flateri herys	.	
In cloþys blake I-droppid al with terys	2884	.
And passynge opere of wepynge Emelye *	[* See p. 25, n. 27.]	<i>XI. 31.</i>
The reufuleste of al the cumpaynye		
In as meche as the seruyse schulde be		
The more noble & ryche in hese degre	2888	
Duk Thesyus let forth thre stedis brynge		<i>XI. 32.</i>
That trappede were al in stel al glederynge		
And keuened the armys of daun arcyte		
Vp-on þese stedis grete & white	2892	
There setyn folk of which on bar hese schyld		
Anothir hese spere vp on hese hondys held		

The thredde bar with hem hese bowe turkeys		<i>Teseide.</i>
Of brend gold was the cas & ek the harneys	2896	XI. 36.
And redyn forth a pas with sorweful chere		
Toward the groue as 3e schul aftyr here		
The nobileste of the grekys þat þere were		• XI. 38.
Vp on here schulderyn caryedyn the bere	2900	•
With slak pas & eighen . reede & wete		
Thorough-out the Cete / by the maystyr strete		
That sprad was al with blak & wondyr hye		
Ryght of the same is the strete I-wrye	2904	
Vp-on the ryght hand wente old egeus *	[* See p. 25, n. 28.]	• XI. 40.
And on that oper syde deuk Thesysus		•
With vessellys in here hondys of gold ful fyn †	[† See p. 25, n. 29.]	• XI. 57.
Al ful of. hony. mylk. blod & wyn.	2908	• XI. 40.
Ek Palamoun with ful gret cumpaynye		•
And aftyr that cam woful emelye		•
With fuyre in hond as was þat tyme þ° gyse	[leaf 178]	•
To don the offyse of feneral seruyse	2912	•
Hey labour & ful gret aparaylynge		• XI. 18.
Was at the seruyse & the fer makynge		
That with hese gret top the heuene raughte		XI. 26.
And twenty fademe of brede þ° armys straughte	2916	
This is to seyne þ° bowys were so brode		
Of treis fyrst þere were leyd manye a lode		XI. 27.
But how þ° fuyr was makyd vp on heighte		XI. 22-25.
Ne ek the namys what þ° treis hyghte	2920	
As. ook. fyrre. Birch. asp. Aldyr. Holm. Popeler		
Wylw. Elm. Plane. Aash. Box. chesteyn. lynde. laurer		
Mapil. thorn. Bech. hasil. Ew. Whippil. tre		
How þey were feld schal not be told for me	2924	
Ne how the goddys rannyn vp & down		
Dysheritid of here abitacyoun		
In wheche þey wendyn in reste & pes		
Nymphus ffaunes & amadries	2928	
Ne how the bestis & þ° bryddys alle		• XI. 21.
fleddyn for fer whan the wode was falle		•

84 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

Ne how the ground agast was of the lyght			<i>Teacide.</i>
That was not wont to sen the sunne brygh[t]	2932		XI. 21.
Ne how the fer was couche fyrst with stre			• XI. 27.
And þanne with dreye stikkis clounyn a thre			•
And þanne with grene wode & spicerye			•
An þanne with cloth of gold & with perrye	2936		• XI. 28.
And garlondis hangynge with mani ¹ a flour		[¹ ani: later]	• XI. 27.
The mirre ² þ ^e ensens with al so gret odour		[² irre: later]	• XI. 28.
Ne how arcite lay a-mong al ³ þis		[³ 1: later]	XI. 28.
Ne what richesse a-boute hese body Is	2940		
Ne how þat Emelye as was te gyse			XI. 28.
Putte in the fuyr of funeral seruyse			
Ne how sche swounnede whan men made þ ^e fuyr			XI. 41-42.
Ne what sche spak ne what was here desyr	2944		
Ne what Iewell men in the fuyr caste			XI. 42, 50.
Whan þat the fuyr was gret & brente faste			
Ne how some caste here schyld & some here spere		[172, bk]	• XI. 52.
And of here vestementis which þat they were	2948		• XI. 50.
And cuppis ful of wyn & mylk & blod			XI. 50, 51.
In-to the fuyr þat brente as it were wod			
Ne how the grekys with an heuge route			XI. 52.
Thryes redyn al the fuyre a-boute	2952		• XI. 52.
Vp-on the left half with a loud schoutynge			•
And thryes with here sperys claterynge		[line repeated and crossed out]	•
And thryes how the ladyis gunne crye			XI. 54.
Ne how that lad was hom-ward Emelye	2956		
Ne how Arcyte was brent to asschyn colde			XI. 57, 58.
Ne how that lyche / wake was I-holde			XI. 58-57.
Al thilke nyght ne how the grekys pleye			
The wake-pleyis ne kepe I not to seye	2960		
Who wrestelyth best nakyd with oille enoynt			
Ne who þat bar hym best in no disioynt			
I wele not tellyn ek how þat þey gon			
Hom to athenys whan the pley is don	2964		
But schortly to the poynt þanne wele I wende			
And makyn of myn longe tale an ende			

Be proces & be lenthē a certeyn jerys		• <i>Twelve.</i>
Al styntyd is the mournyng & the terys	2968	• XII. 2. 'glornit', instead of 'years'.
Of grekys be on general assent		•
Than semede me þere was a parlement		
At athenes vp on carteyn poyntys and cas		
A-mong the poyntys spokyn was	2972	
To haue with certeyn poyntys alyance		
And haue fully of thebanys obeissaunce		
fior which this nobil theseus anon		
Let sendyn aftyr gentil palamon	2976	• XII. 4.
Vnwist of hym what was the cause & why		•
But in hese blake cloþis sorwefully		•
He come at hese owene comaundement in hye		
To sente Theseus / for emelye	2980	
Whan þey were set & hust was al the place	[leaf 175]	• XII. 5.
And thesytys abedyn hadde a space		•
Er ony word cam from hese wyse brest		
Hese eynyn sette he þere as was hese lest	2984	
And with a sad visage he sikede stille		
And aftyr þat ryght þus he seyde hese wille		
The ferste mournere ¹ of the cause aboute	[? MS.]	IX. 51.
Whan he ferst made þe cheyne of loue	2988	mondo, for 'chains of love'.
Gret was theeffect & hy was hese entent		
Wel wiste he why & what þerof he ment		IX. 51.
fior with that fayre cheyne of loue he bond		
The fuyr the eyre the watyr & the lond	2992	
In certeyn boundys þat þey may not fle		
That same prince & þat same Moeuere quod he		[See IX. 51. 53, and XII. 4.]
Hath stablyschid in this wrechede world a doun		
Certeyn dayis & duracioun	2996	
To alle þat is engenderid in þis place		
Ouer the whiche day þey may not pace		
Alle mowe þey ȝit þe dayis wel a-bregge		
þere nedyth non autorite to legge	3000	
fior it is preuyd be experyence		
But þat me lystē to clare myn sentence		

Thanne may men by þis ordere wel diserne		
That tylke moeuere styлле & starne	3004	
Wel may men knowe but it be a fol		
That euery part dryuyth from hese hol		
ffor nature hath takyn hese begynnynge		
Of no party or of a cantel of a þyng	3008	
But of a þyng þat parfyt is & stable		
Dessendynge so til it be corumpable		
And perfore for hese wise puruynance		
He hath so wel be-set hese ordenaunce	3012	
That specyfie of þyngis & progressionys		
Shul endure be succesciounys		
And not eterne with-outyn ony lye		
This mayst þou vndyrstondyn & sen at eye	3016	
lo þ ^e ok that hath so long a norichynge	[leaf 172, back]	XII. 7.
from the tyme þat it first begynnynth to sprynge		
And hat so long a lyf as we may se		
þit at the laste wastyd is the tre	3020	
Considerith ek how that the harde ston		
Vndir oure fet on whiche we trede & gon		
þit wastith it as it lyth be the weye		
The brode reuyr sumtyme waxeth dreye	3024	
The grete tounys se we wane & wende		
Than may I say þat al þis thyng hath ende		
Of man & woman se we wel alsoo		XII. a.
That nedynth in on of þese termys too	3028	
This is to seyne in þouthe or ellys age		
He mote be ded the kyng as schal a page		
Some in his bed some in the depe se		XII. 10.
Some in the large feld as men may se	3032	
There helpith not al goth that ilke weye		
Thanne may I seyn al þis þyng mote nedis deye		
What makyth þis but Iupiter þ ^e kyng		
That is prynce & cause of alle thyng	3036	
Conuertynge al vn-to hese propre welle		
ffrom wiche it is deryvit soth to telle		

GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE Cambridge MS. 87

And here ageyn no cryatour on . lyue:		• <i>Tenebris.</i>
Of no degre a-uaylith for to stryue	3040	XII. 6.
Thanne is it wisdom as it pynty me		• XII. 11.
To makyn vertu of necessite		•
And take it wel that we may not eschewe		
And nameli that to vs alle is dewe	3044	
And ho so grochit out he doth folye		XII. 12.
And rebel is to hym þat al may gye		
And sertynly a man hath most honour		XII. 9, 12.
To deyen in hese excellence & flour	3048	
Whan he is sekyr of hese goode name		
Thanne hath he don hese frend ne hym no schame		
And gladdere owith hese frend to ben of deth		
Whan with honour is 3oldyn vp hese breth	3052	
Than whan his name apeyred is for age	[leaf 174]	
ffor al forgetyn is his wasseyllage		
Thanne is it best as for a worthi fame		
A man to deye whan he is best of name	3056	
The contrarie of al this is wilfulnes		XII. 13.
Why groche we why haue we heuynes		XII. 14-17.
That goode arcite of chyualrye flour		
Departid is with deynte & honour	3060	
Out of þis foule prysoun of þis lyf		
Why grochyn here his cosyn & his wif		
Of [his welfare that lousth hem so wel]	[Eleanore MS. 1685]	
Can he hem thank nay god wot neuere adel	3064	
That boþe hese soule & ek hym self offende		
And ȝit þey mowe here lustis not amende		
What may I conclude of þis longe serye		
But aftyr wo I rede vs to be merye	3068	XII. 19.
And thankyn Iupiter of al hese grace		
And er þat we departe from þis place		•
I rede we make of sorwys too		
On parfyt Ioye lastyng eueremo	3072	
And lokyth now where most sorwe is her inne		
There [wil I first bigynne	[Eleanore MS. 1685]	

88 GROUP A. § 2. KNIGHT'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

[Suster quod he this is my ful assent	[Sloane MS. 1685]	<i>Teutide.</i>
With alle thaues heere of my parlement	3076	
That gentyl palamon 3oure owne knyght		
That seruyth 3ou with wil herte and myght		
As euer hath don sithen 3e first hym knewe		
That 3e shul of 3oure [grace] vpon him rewe	3080	
And taken for husbond and for lord		
Lene me 3oure hond for this is oure acorde		
Lete see now if youre wommanly pitee		
He is a kingis brother sone parde	3084	
A[nd thouȝ he be a pore bachelere		
S[ithen he hath serued 3ou so many a 3ere		
A[nd had for 3ou so gret aduersite		
It [most be considered leuyth me]	[Sloane extr. ends] 3088	
ffor gentyl mercy owith to passyn ryght	[Cambridge Gg. iv. 27, leaf 174, back]	
Than seyde he þus to palamoun ful rygh[t]		
I trowe þere nedyth lytil sarmonyng		
To make 3ow assente to the thyng	3092	
Come ner & tak 3oure lady bi the hond		
By-tweþyn hem was mad anon the bond		XII. 66.
That hyghte matrymonye or mariage		
By al the cuntre & the barounnage	3096	
And þus with al blys & melody		XII. 72.
Hath Palamoun I-wedded emely		
And god þat al þis wyde word hath wrought		
Synde hym his loue þat hath it dere abought	3100	
ffor now is Palamoun in alle wele		XII. 82.
leuyng in blysse in richesse & in hela.		
And Emelye hym louyth so tenderely		
And he here seruyth so gentlylly	3104	
That neuere was þere no word hem be-twen		
Of Ielousye or any oþer teene ¹		
Thus endyth Palamoun & Emelye		[¹ teene: later]
And god saue al this flayre cumpaynye.	3108	

[rest of leaf nearly all cut out.]

SO whan þ^e knyght hath þus hese tale told [leaf 178]
 In al þ^e route nas þere ȝyng ne old
 That he ne seyde it nas a noble story
 And worthy for to drawe to memory 3112
 And nameli þ^e gentilis euerychon
 Our ost lough and swor so mote I gon
 Thys goth aryght onbokeled is the male
 Let sen now who schal telle a noþer tale 3116
 ffor trewely the game is wel begunne
 Now tellyth ȝe sere monk ȝyf þat ȝe cunne
 Sumwhat to quite with þ^e knyghtis tale
 The mellere that dronke was al pale 3120
 So that a-nethe vp on his hors he sat
 He nulde a-vale neythyr hod ne hat
 Ne abyde no man for hese curteysye
 But in pilat voys he gan to crye 3124
 And swor by armys & by blod & bouys
 I can a noble tale for thenonys
 With whiche he wele now quyte þe knyghtis tale
 Oure ost saw þat he was dronke of ale 3128
 And seyde a-byd Robyn myn leue brothyr
 Sum betere man schal telle vs fyrst a nothyr
 Onbyd & lat vs werke thryftyly
 By goddys soule / quod he þat wele nat I 3132
 ffor I wele speke or ellys gon myn wey
 Oure ost answerde telle on a delewey
 Thow art a fol thy wit is ouercome
 Now herkenygh quod the mellere alle & some 3136
 But fyrst I make a protestacyoun
 That I am dronke I knowe it be myn soun
 And þerfore ȝif I mys speke or seye
 Wite it the ale of Southwerk I preye 3140

ffor I wele telle a legende & a lyf
 Bothe of a carpenter & hese wyf
 How that a clerk hath set the wryghtis cappe
 The reue answerde & seyde stynt þyn clappe 3144
 let be þyn lewede dronke harlotrye (leaf 175, back)
 It is a synne & ek a gret folye
 To apeyre ony man or hym diffame
 And ek to bryngyn whyuys in swych fame 3148
 þou mayst I-now of opere thyngis sayn
 This dronkyn mellere spak ful sone ageyn
 And seyde leue brothyr Osewold
 Ho hath no wif he is no coukewold 3152
 But I seye not þerfore þat þou art on
 There ben ful goode wivis manyon
 And euer a thousent goode a-ʒens on badde
 That knowyst þou wel þyn self / but ʒif þou madde 3156
 Why art þou angry with myn tale now
 I haue a wif also as wel as þou
 ʒit nolde I not for the oxsyn in myn plow
 Takyn vp on me more þan I-now 3160
 As demyn in myn self þat þou were on
 I wele be-leue wel þat I ne am non
 An husbonde schal not ben inquysityf
 Of goddis priuyte nor of hese wyf 3164
 So he may fyndyn godis foyscounn there
 Of the remenaunt nedyth not tenquyre
 What schalde I seyn But this mellere
 He wolde hese wordys for no man forbere 3168
 But tolde hese cherlych tale in hese manere
 Me thynkyth I schal reherse it here
 And þerfore euery gentyl wygh I preye
 ffor goddis loue demyth not þat I seye 3172
 Of euyl entent but for I mot reherse
 Here talys al be þey betere or werse
 Or ellys fallyn sum of myn matere
 And þerfore who so leste it not here 3176

GROUP A. § 3. MILLER'S PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS. 91

Turne ouer the lef & ches a no^{per} tale
for he schal fynde I-nowe grete & smale
Of storyal thyng þat touchith gentillesse
An ek Morallite and holynesse 3180
Blamyth not me ȝif ȝe chesyn amys [leaf 176]
The mellere is a cherl ȝe knowe wel this
So was the reue & oþere manye mo
And harlotrye þey tolde bothe to 3184
Avyseth ȝow put me out of blame
And ek men schal not makyn ernest of game
here endith the prologe/
[No gap in the MS.]

& here begynnyth the tale.

Whilhom þere was dwellinge in Oxenforde
 A ryche gnoff þat gestis helde to borde 3188
 And of his craft a carpenter
 With hym þere was dwellynge a pore scoler
 Hadde lernede art but of hese fantasye
 Was turned for to lernyn astronomye 3192
 And coude a certyn of conclusiounys
 To demyn by interrogacyounys
 ȝif that men axsed hym in certeyn hourys
 Whan men schulde haue droughte or elle schourys 3196
 Or ȝif men axsede hym what schulde be-falle
 Of euery thyng I may not rekene hem alle
 This clerk was clepid hende nycholas
 Of derne loue he coude & of solas 3200
 And þerto he was sly & ful preue
 And lyk a mayde meke for to se
 A chambre hadde he in that ostelrye
 Alone with-outyn ony compaygnye 3204
 fful fetously I-dygh with erbis sote
 And he hym self as swete as is the rote
 Of licorys or ony Cetewale
 Hese almageste & bokys grete & smale 3208
 Hese augrym stonys lynge fayre apart
 Hese astellabre longynge for hese art
 On scheluys couchede at hese bedys hed
 Hese presse I-couered with a faldynge red 3212
 And al aboute þere lay a gay sautrye
 On whiche he made on nyghtis melodye
 So swetely þat al the chambere rong [leaf 176, back]
 And Angelus ad uirginem he song 3216
 And aftyr þat he song the kyngis note
 fful ofty n blyssede was hese mery throte

And þus this swete clerk hese tyme he spentē
 Aftyr hese frendys fyndyngē & hese rentē 3220
 This carpenter hadde weddid newe a wyf
 Whiche þat he louede more þan hese lyf
 Of eightene ȝer sche was of age
 Ielous he was & held here narwe in cage 3224
 ffor sche was wilde & ȝyng & he was old
 And demede hym self / ben lyk a coukewold
 He knew not catoun for hese wit was rude
 That bad men schulde wedde here symylitude 3228
 Men schulde wedde aftyr here estat
 ffor ȝoughte & elde ben oftyn at debat
 But sythyn þat he was fallyn in the snare
 He muste endure as opere folk hese care 3232
 ffayr was þis ȝonge wif & þerwith al
 As ony wesele here body gent & smal
 A seynt sche werede þ^e seynt al of sylk
 A barme cloth as whit as ony mylk 3236
 Vp on here lendis ful of manye a gore
 Whit was here smok I-brouded al be-fore
 And ek be-hyndyn on here coller aboute
 Of col blak silk with-inne & ek with-outē 3240
 The tapes of here white voluper
 Were of the same sute of here coller
 Hyre filet brod of silk I-set ful hye
 And sekyrly sche hadde a lycorous eye 3244
 fful smale I-pullede were hese browis to
 And þ^e were bent & blake as is a slo
 Sche was more blysful on to se
 Than is the newe pere Ionete tre 3248
 And softere than is the wolle of a wedyr
 And by here gerdil heng a purs of ledyr
 Tassellid with sylk & perlit with latoun [leaf 277]
 In al this world to sekyn vp & doun 3252
 There is no man so wys that coude thynche
 So gay a popelote or swych a wenche

fful bryght was the schynynge of here hewe
 Than in þ^e tour/ the noble forgit newe 3256
 But of here song it was as loude & 3erne
 As ony swalwe syttyng on a berne
 And þerto sche coude skippe & make game
 As ony kede or kalf folwende hese dame 3260
 Here mouth was swete as braket or the methe
 Or hord of appillis leyd in hay or hethe
 Wynynghe sche was as is a ioly colt
 Long as a mast & vp ryght as a bolt 3264
 A broche she bar vp on here lowe coler
 As brod as is the bos of a bokeler
 Here schois were laayd on here leggis hye
 Sche was a prymrole & a piggis nye 3268
 ffor ony lord to liggyn in hese bedde
 Or ek for ony good 3eman to wedde
 Now sere & eft sere so be-fel the cas
 That on a day this hendyn Nicholas 3272
 fill with þis 3ynghe wif rage & pleye
 Whil þat here husbonde was at Hoseneye
 As clerkys ben ful sotyl & ful queynte
 And priuily he caughte here bi þ^e queynte 3276
 And seyde I-wis but I mowe haue myn wille
 ffor derne loue of the lemman I spille
 And held here harde be the haunche bonys
 And seyde lemman loue me al at onys 3280
 Or I wele deyin al so god me saue
 And sche sprong as a colt doth in the traue
 And with here hed sche wrythed faste a-wey
 Sche seyde I wel not kysse þ^e be my fey 3284
 Whi let be *quod* sche let be nycholas
 Or I wele crye out harrow allas
 Do wey 3oure hondis for 3oure curteysy [leaf 177, back]
 This nycholas gan mercy for to cry 3288
 And spak so fayre & proferede hym so faste
 That sche here loue hym grauntede at þ^e laste

And swor here oth be seynt Thomays of kent
 That he wolde ben at hese comaundement 3292
 Whan þat sche may here layser wel asspye
 Myn husbonde is so ful of Ielousye
 That but 3e waite wel & ben priue
 I wot ryght wel I am but ded *quod* sche 3296
 3e muste ben ful derne as in þis cas
 Nay þerof care 3e not *quod* Nicholas
 A clerk hadde lethyrly be-set hese while
 But 3if he coude a carpenter be-gyle 3300
 And þus they ben acordit & I-sworn
 To wayte a tyme as I haue told be-forn
 Whan Nicholas hadde don þis euery del
 An thakkede here a-boute the lendis wel 3304
 He kyssith here swete & takyth hese sautrye
 And pleyeth faste & makyth melodye
 Thanne fel it thus þat to þ^e parich cherche
 Crystys owene werkys for to werche 3308
 This goode wyf wente on an haly day
 Here forehed schon as bryght as ony day
 So was it wasschyn whan sche let here werk
 Now was þere of that cherche a parysch clerk 3312
 The wheche þat was clepid absolon
 Crol was hese her & as þ^e gol it schon
 And strut as a fan large & brod
 fful streyt & euene lay hese Ioly schod 3316
 His rode was red hese ey3yn greye as gos
 With poulys wyndow I-korwyn on hese schois
 In hosyn rede he wente fetusly
 I-clad he was ful smal & properly 3320
 Al in a kyrtel of a lyght vachet
 fful fayre & thikke. ben the poyntis set
 And þerupon he hadde a gay surplys [leaf 178]
 As whit as is the blome on the rys 3324
 A merye chyld he was so god me saue
 Wel coude he letyn blod & wel schauē

And make a chartere of lond & aquitaunce
 In twenty manerys coude he trippe & daunce 3328
 Aftyr the skole of Oxenforthe þo
 And *with* hese leggis castyn to & fro
 And pleyen songys on a smal rubybe
 Therto he song sumtyme a loud quynyble 3332
 And as wel coude he pleye on a geterne
 In al the toun nas brew hous ne tauerne
 That he ne visityd *with* hese solas
 There ony galiard tapstere was 3336
 But soth to seyn he was sumdel coymous
 Of fartyng & of speche daungerous
 This absalon that Ioly was & gay
 Goth *with* a senser on the halyday 3340
 Sensynge þ^o wyuys of the parych faste
 And manye a louely lok on hem he caste
 And namely on þis Carpenterys wyf
 To loke on here he thouȝte a merye lyf 3344
 Sche was so propere & swete & lycurous
 I dar wel seyn ȝif sche hadde ben a mous
 And he a cat he wolde here hente a-non
 This parych clerk þis Ioly Absalon 3348
 Hath in hese herte swich a louelonyng
 That of no wif tok he non offerynge
 ffor curteysye he seyde he wolde non
 The mone whan it was nyght ful bryghte it schon 3352
 And absalon hadde hese geterne take
 ffor paramourys he thoughte for to wake
 And forth he goth Iolyf & ameraus
 Tyl he come to þ^o carpenterys hous 3356
 A lytil aftyr þ^o cokkys hadde crowe
 And dressede hym vp be a schot wyndowe
 That was vp on the carpenterys wal [leaf 178, back]
 He syngyth in hese wois¹ gentil & smal [corrected] 3360
 Now dere lady ȝif thyn wille be
 I preye ȝow that ȝe wele rewe on me

fful wel acordaunt to hese geternynge
 This carpentire a-wok & herde hym synge 3364
 And spak vn to hese wyf & seyde a-non
 What alysoun heryst not þou absalon
 That schautyth þus vndyr oure bouris wal
 And sche answerde here husbonde þerwithal 3368
 3is god wot Ihun I here it euerydel
 This passeth forth what wele 3e bet þan wel
 ffrom day to day this Ioly Absolon
 So wowith here þat hym is wo begon 3372
 He wakyth al the nyght & al the day
 He kempte hese lokys brode & made hym gay
 He wowith here be menys & procage
 And swor he wolde ben here owene page 3376
 He syngyth brokkyng as a nyghtyngale
 He sente here pyment mede & spicede ale
 And waferys pipinge hote out of the glede
 ffor sche was of tounne he proferede mede 3380
 ffor sum folk wele be wonne for richesse
 And some for strokys & some for gentillesse
 Sumtyme to schewe hese lyghtnesse & maystrie
 He pleyeth heroudis vp on a skafald hye 3384
 But what auaylyth hym in þis cas
 Sche louth so þis hende Nicolas
 That Absalon may blowe the bukkys horn
 He ne hadde for al hese labour but a skorn 3388
 And sche makyth Absalon here ape
 And al hese earnest is turnyd tyl a Iape
 fful soth is this prouerbe it is no lye
 Men seyth ryght þus the nyght slye 3392
 Makyth the chartere lef to be looth
 ffor thow that absalon be wod or wroth
 Be cause þat he fer was from here syght [leaf 170]
 This nyght Nicholas stod in hese lyght 3396
 Now bere the wel þou hende nycholas
 ffor absalon may wepe & synge allas

And so befel it on a satyrday
 This carpenter was gon to Osenay 3400
 And hende nycholas & Alysoun
 Acordede ben to this conclusioun
 That Nicholas schal schapyn hym a wile
 This sely Ielous husbonde to begyle 3404
 And ȝif so be this game wente aryght
 Sche schulde slepe in hese armys al nyght
 ffor this was here desyr & hese also
 And rygh a-non with-outyn wordys mo 3408
 This nicholas no lengere wolde tarye
 But doth ful softe vnto hese chambere carye
 Bothe mete & drynk for a day or tweye
 And to here husbonde bad here for to seye 3412
 ȝif that he axede aftyr Nicholas
 Sche schulde seye he nyste neuer wher he was
 Of al þe day sche say hym not with ye
 Sche trowyth þat he was in malady 3416
 ffor no cry here mayde coude calle
 He nulde answerre for no thyng that myghte falle
 This passeth forth al þat satyrday
 That Nicholas stille in hese chambere lay 3420
 And et & slep & dede what hym lyst
 Thil soneday þat the sunne goth to reste
 This sely carpenter hath so gret merueyle
 Of Nicholas or what thyng myghte hym eyle 3424
 And seyde I am adred be seynt thomays
 It stondyth not a-rygh with nycholas
 God schylde þat he deyede sodeynly
 This world is now ful tekyl sekyrly 3428
 I saw to day a cors boryn to scherche
 That now on moneday last I saugh hym werche
 Go vp quod he vn to hese knaue a-non [leaf 179, back]
 Clepe at hese dore or knokke with a ston 3432
 Loke how it is & telle me boldely
 This knaue goth hym vp ful sturdyly

And at the chambere dore whil that he stod
 He cryede & knockede as þey he were wod 3436
 What how what do ȝe Maystyr Nicholay
 How may ȝe slepen al the longe day
 But al for nought he herde not a word
 An hole he fond ful lowe vp on a bord 3440
 There as the cat was wont in for to crepe
 And at the hole he lokede in ful depe
 And at the laste he hadde of hym a sygh
 This Nicholas sat alwey gapynge vp rygh 3444
 As he hadde kykyd on the newe mone
 Adoun he goth & tolde hese maystyr sone
 In what aray he saw this ilke man
 This carpenter to blyssyn hym be-gan 3448
 And seyde helpe vs seynte frydiswyde
 A man wot lytyl what hym schal betyde
 This man is falle with hese astronemye
 In sum wodnesse or in sum agonye 3452
 I thoughte ay wel how þat it schulde be
 Men schulde not knowe of goddis priuete
 ȝe blyssede be alwey a lewede man
 That nought but only his bileue can 3456
 So ferde a nothyr clerk with astronomye¹ [r: later]
 He walkede in the feldis for to prie
 Vp on the sterrys what þere schulde befall
 Til he was in a marbil pyt I-falle 3460
 He say not that but ȝit be seynt Thomays
 Me rewyth sore of hende Nycholas
 He schal be ratyd of hese stodyng
 ȝif that I may be Ihesu heuene kyng 3464
 Get me a staf that I may vndyr spore
 Whil that þou robyn hevyst vp the dore
 He schal out of hese stodynge as I gesse [leaf 180]
 And to the chambere dore he gann hym dresse 3468
 Hese knave was a strong carl for the nonys
 And by the haspe he haf it of at onys

And in the flor the dore lay a-non
 This nycholas sat ay as style as ston 3472
 And euere gapede vpward in to the eyre
 This Carpenter wende he hadde ¹ben in dispeyre¹ [¹—¹ corrected]
 And hente hym by the schulderis myghtly
 And shok hym harde & cryede dispitously 3476
 What Nicholas what how loke adoun
 Awake & thynk on crystis pascioun
 I crouche the from elvys & from whitys² [² corr. to whichys]
 Therwith the nyght spel³ a-non ryghtis [³ corr. to spell] 3480
 On foure haluys of the hous aboute
 And on the throsschewald of the dore with-oute
 Ihesu cryst & seynt benedyt
 Blysse this hous from euery wede wygh 3484
 ffor the nyghtis verie / the white pater noster
 Where wonyst þou now seynte peterys systyr
 And at the laste þis hende Nicholas
 Gan for to syke sore & seyde allas 3488
 Schal al the world ben lost eftsonys now
 This carpente answerde what seynst þou
 What thynk on god as men don whan þey swinke
 This Nicholas answerde fet me drynke 3492
 And after wele I speke in priuyte
 Of serteyn thyng that touchith me & the
 I wele telle it non oþer man certeyn
 This carpentyr goth doun & comyth ageyn 3496
 And broughte of myghti ale a large quart
 And whanne that eche of hem hade dronke his part
 This Nicholas hese dore faste schette
 And doun the Carpenter by hym he sette 3500
 And seyde Ihun myn ost lef & dere
 Thow schat vp on thi trouthe swere me here
 That to no wyght þou schat þis conseil wreye [¹leaf 180, back]
 ffor it is crystis conseil that I seye 3504
 And gif þou telle it man þou art forlore
 ffor this veniaunce þou schat han þerfore

That ȝif þou wreye me þou schat ben wod
 Nay cryst forbede for hese holy blood 3508
 Quod þ^e this selye man I nam no labbe
 Ne þow I seye I ne am not lef to gabbe
 Sey what þou wylt I schal it neuere telle
 To chyld ne wyf by hym that harwede helle 3512
 Now Iohn quod Nicholas I nyl not lye
 I haue I-foundyn in myn astronemye
 As I haue lokyd in the mone bryght
 That now a moneday nest at quarter nyght 3516
 Schal falle a reyn & that so wilde & wod
 That half so gret was neuere Noyes flod
 This world he seyde in more thn an oure
 Schal be drenk so hydous is the schour 3520
 Thus schal mankynde drenche & lese here lyf
 This carpenter answerede allas myn wif
 And schal sche drenche allas myn alysoun
 ffor sorwe of this he fel almost a doun 3524
 And seyde is there no remedye in this cas
 Whi ȝis for gode / quod hende Nichola
 ȝif þou wilt werkyn aftyr lore & red
 Thow mayst not werkyn aftyr þyn owene red 3528
 ffor thus seyth salamon that was for trewe
 Werk al be conseyll & þou schalt not rew
 And ȝif þou werke wylt be good conseyll
 I vndyrtake withoute mast or sayl 3532
 ȝit schal I schaue here & the & me
 Hast þou not herd how sauyn was noe
 Whan þat oure lord hadde warnede hym befor
 Tha al the word with wayr schulde be lorn 3536
 ȝis quod this carpenter ful ȝore ago
 Hast þou not herd quod Nicholas also
 The sorwe of Noe with hese felauschepe [leaf 181]
 E[r] þan he myghte gete hese wyf to schepe 3540
 Hym hadde ben lefere I dar wel vndyrtake
 Al thilke tyme than hese wederis blake

That sche hadde had a schep here self a lone
 And þerto wost þou what is best to done 3544
 This askyth haste & of an hasty thyng
 Men may not preche ne make taying
 Anon go gete vs faste in to þys in
 A knedyng trow or ellys a kemelyng 3548
 ffor eche of vs but loke that þey be large
 I wheche we mowe sweme as in a barge
 And han þerinne vitayle sufficiaunt
 But for a day fy on the remenaunt 3552
 The watyr schal aslake & gon away
 Aboute pryme on the nexte day
 But robyn may not wetyn of this thyn knave
 Ne ek thym maydyn gille I may not sve 3556
 Axe not whi for thou þou axe me
 I wele not telle godis priuyte
 Suffyseth þe but zif thy wit madde
 To han as gret a grace as Noe hadde 3560
 Thyn wif schal I wel saue out of doute
 Go now thyn wey / & sped the here aboute
 But whan þou hast for here & þe & me
 I-getyn vs these knedyng tubbys thre 3564
 Thanne schat þou hangyn hem in the rof ful hye
 That no man of oure puruyauunce aspye
 And whan þou hast þus don as I haue seyde
 And hast oure vitayle fayre in hem leyde 3568
 And ek an ax to smyte the corde a two
 Whan that the watyr comyth þat we may goo
 And breke an hole an hey vp on the gable
 Into the gardynward ouer the stabele 3572
 That we mowe frely passe forth ore way
 Whan that the grete schour is gon a-way
 Than schat þou sweme as merye I vndyrtake [leaf 181, back]
 As doth the white doke after the drake 3576
 Thanne wele I clepe how alisoun how Ion
 Be merye for the flod wele passe a-non

And þou wit seyn heyl maystyr Nicholay
 Good morwe for I se þ^e wel for it is day 3580
 And thanne schul we be lordys al oure lyue
 Of al the world as Noe was & hese wyue
 But of a¹ thyng I warne the ful ryght [1 a later]
 Be wel auysed on þat ilke nyght 3584
 That we ben enteryd in to schepys bord
 That non of vs ne speke not a word
 Ne clepe ne crye but ben in hese preyere
 ffor it is goddys owene heste dere 3588
 Thyn wyf & þou motyn hangyn fer a twen
 ffor that be-twixe ȝow schal ben no syn
 No more in lokynge þan þere schal in dede
 This ordenaunce is seyde go god þ^e spede 3592
 To morwe at nyght whan we ben alle aslepe
 In to oure knedyng tulbis we schul crepe
 And sittynge þere abydyng goddys grace
 Go now þyn way I ne haue no lengere space 3596
 To make of this no lengere sarmounnyng
 Men seyth þus / synd þ^e wyse & sey no þyng
 Thow art so wys it nedyth þ^e not teche
 Go saue oure lyf & that I þ^e beseche 3600
 This sely carpenter goth forth hese way
 fful ofte he seyde alas & welle away
 And to hese wif he tolde hese priuyte
 And sche was war & knew it bet þan he 3604
 What al this queynte cast was for to say
 But neuertheles sche ferde as sche wolde day
 And seyde alas go forth þyn waye a-non
 Help vs to skape / er we ben dede eche on 3608
 I am thyn verray trewe weddede wyf
 Go dere spouse & help to saue oure lyf
 Lo which a gret thyng is affeeyoun [leaf 182]
 Men may deye thour Imagynacyoun 3612
 So depe may impressioun be take
 This sely Carpenter begynnith to quake

Hym thynkyth verayly þat he may se
 Noyous flod come walwyng as the se 3616
 To drenchyn alysoun hese hony dere
 He wepyth waylyth makyth sory chere
 He sykyth *with* manye a sory swough
 And goth & getyth hym a knedyng trough 3620
 And aftyr a tubbe & a kemelyn
 And pryuyly he sente hem to hese in
 And hyng hem in the rof in priuyte
 With his owene hand he made ladderys thre 3624
 To klymbyn bi þ^e roungis & the stalkys
 On to the tubbe hangyng in the balkis
 And hem vitaylede bothe trow & tubbe
 With bred & chese with good alle in a tubbe 3628
 Suffysynge rygh I-now as for a day
 But er he hadde mad al thys aray
 He sente hese knaue & ek hese wenche also
 Vp on hese nedis to lundene for to go 3632
 And on the moneday whan it drow to nyght
 He schette hese dore *with*-outyn candele lygh
 And dressede alle thyng as it schulde be
 And schortly vp they clumbe alle thre 3636
 They setyn styлле wel a furlong wey
 Now pater noster clum seyde Nicholay
 And clum *quod* Ion & clum *quod* Alysoun
 This carpentyr seyde hese deuocoun 3640
 And styлле he sit & biddyth hese preyere
 Awaytyng on the reyn ȝif he it here
 The dede slep for verray besynesse
 ffel on this Carpentyr rygh as I gesse 3644
 A-boute corfeu tyme or lyte more
 ffor trauayl¹ of hese gost he groynede sore
 And efft he routyth for hese hed mys lay
 Doun on the laddere stalkyth Nicholay [leaf 182, back] 3648
 And Alysoun ful softe a doun sche spedde
 With-outyn wordys mo þey gon to bedde

There as the carpentyr is wone to lye
 There was the reuel & the melodye 3652
 And þus lyth alysoun & Nycholas
 In besynesse of merthe & of solas
 Tyl þat the belle of laudis gan to ryng
 And frerys in the schauusel gunne syng 3656
 Thys parich clerk this Amerouse Absalon
 That is for loue alwey so wo begon
 Vp on the moneday was at oseneye
 With cumpanye hym to disporte & pleye 3660
 And axede vp on cas a cloysterer
 fful priuily aftyr Ion the carpenter
 And he drow hym a part out of the cherche
 And seyde I saw here not werche 3664
 Syn saturday I trowe that he be went
 ffor tymbyr þere oure abbot hath hym sent
 ffor he is wont for tymbyr for to go
 And dwellyn at the graunge a day or too 3668
 Or eff he is at hese hous serteyn
 Where that he be I can not sothly seyn
 This absalon ful Ioly was & lyght
 And thoughte now is tyme to wakyn al nygh 3672
 ffor sekyrly I say hym not sterynge
 A-boutyn hese dore tyl day be-gan to spryng
 So mot I the I schal at cokkys crowe
 fful priuily knocke at hese wyndowe 3676
 That stant ful lowe vndyr hese bourys wal
 To alysoun now wele I tellyn al
 Myn loue longyng for ȝit I schal not mysse
 That at the leste weye I schal here kysse 3680
 Sum maner confort schal I haue parfay
 Myn mouth hath ȝechid al þis longe day
 That is a sygne of kyssyng at the leste (leaf 185) 3684
 Al nyght me mette I was at a feste
 Therfore I wele go slepe an oure or tweye
 And al the nyght þanne wele I wake & pleye

Whan that the ferste Cok hath crowe a-non
 Vp rist this Ioly louere this absalon 3688
 And hym arayeh gay at poyn deuyse
 But fyrst he schewith greyn & licorys
 To smelle sote er he hadde kemb his her
 Vndyr hese tunge a trewe loue he ber 3692
 ffor therby wende he to be gracious
 He romyth to the carpenterys hous
 And stille he stant vndyr the schot wyndowe
 Vn to hese brest it raught it was so lowe 3696
 And softe he coude with a semy soun
 What do 3e hony komb 3e swete alysoun
 Myn fayre bryd myn swete synamome
 Awakyth leman myn & spekyth to me 3700
 Wol lytil thynkyn 3e vp on myn wo
 That for 3oure loue I swete pere I go
 No wondyr ist þow I swalte & swete
 I morne as doth a lamb aftyr þ^e tete 3704
 I-wis leman I haue so meche loue longyng
 That lik a turtele I trowe is myn mornyng
 I may not ete no more þan a mayde
 Go from the wyndowe lakke fol sche sayde 3708
 As helpe me god it wele not be cumpame
 I loue a-nothir & eft I were to blame
 Wel bet þan þ^e be Ihesu Absalon
 Go forth þyn way or I wele caste a ston 3712
 And let me slepe a twenty dele wey
 Allas quod absalon & wellesaway
 That trewe loue was euere so euele be-set
 Than kys me syn it may be no bet 3716
 ffor Ihesus¹ loue & for the loue of me [MS Ihe]
 Wilt þou þanne go thyn wey therewith quod sche
 3a certis lemman quod þis absalon [leaf 183, back]
 Thanne mak þ^e redi quod sche I come anon 3720
 [.
 no gap in the MS.]
 This Absalon sette hym down on hese kneis

And seyde I am a lord at alle degreis 3724
 ffor after this I hope þere comyth more
 leman thyn grace & swete bryd þyn ore
 The wyndowe sche ondoth & that in haste
 Hauē don *quod* sche come of & sped þ^e faste 3728
 Lest that thyn neyhebouris þ^e aspye
 This absalon gan wype his mouth ful drye
 Derk was the nyght as pouche or as the cole
 And out at the wyndowe sche putte here ars hole 3732
 And absalon fel neyþer bet noþer wers
 But with hese mouth he kyste here nakede ars
 fful sauourly er he were war of this
 A bakke he styrtē & thouthe it was a mys 3736
 ffor wel he wiste a woman hadde no berd
 He felte a thyng al row & long I-heryd
 And seyde fy allas what haue I do
 Te he *quod* sche & claptte here wyndowe to 3740
 And absalon goth forth a sory pas
 A berd a berd *quod* hynde Nicholas
 Bi goddis corpus this goth fayre & wel
 This sely absalon herde euerydel 3744
 And on his lippe he gan for angyr bite
 And to hym self he seyde I schal þ^e quyte
 Who rubbyth now ho frotyth now hese lippis
 With dust with sond with straw with cloth with schippis
 But absolon þat seyth ful ofte allas
 Myn soule be-take I onto saternas
 But me were betere þan al this toun *quod* he
 Of þis dispyt a-wrokyn for to be 3752
 Allas *quod* he allas why ne hadde I bleynt
 Hese hote lone was cold & al I-queynt
 ffor from that tyme that he hadde kyst his ers
 Of paramour he sette not a kres 3756
 ffor he was heled of hese maladye [leaf 184]
 fful ofte paramouris he gan defye
 And wepte as doth a chyld þat is I-bete
 A softe pas he wente ouer the strete 3760

Vn tyl a smyth men clepedyn daun Ieruya
 That in hese forge he smethede plow harneys
 He scharpith schar & cultyr besyly
 This absalon knokyth al besyly 3764
 And seyde ondo Geruays & þat a-non
 What ho art þou it am I Absalon
 What Absalon what crystis swete tre
 Whi ryse 3e so rathe ey benedicyte 3768
 What eylyth 3ow sum gay gerl god it wot
 Hath brouȝt 3ow þus vp on the merytot
 This Absolon ne rouȝhte not a bene
 Be seynte note 3e wete wel what I mene 3772
 Of al this pley no word he ne spak
 He hadde more tow on hese rak
 Whan geruays knew & seyde fren so dare
 That hote cultyr in the chemene here 3776
 As lene it me I haue þerwith to done
 I wele bryngyn it þ^e a-geyn ful sone
 Gerueys answerede sertis were it gold
 Or in a poke nobellys al ontold 3780
 Thu schuldyst haue as I am trewe smyth
 Ey cristis foo what wele 3e do þerwith
 Ther-of *quod* Alsalon be as be may
 I schal wel telle it þ^e to morwe day 3784
 And caughte þ^e cultyr by the colde stele
 fful softe out at þ^e dore hym gan stele
 And wente vnto þ^e carpenterys wal
 He knokyth fyrst & kallyth¹ þerwithal [corr.] 3788
 Vp on þ^e wyndowe rygh as he dede er
 This alysoun answerde ho is ther
 That knokyst so I warent the a thef
 Why nay *quod* he god wot myn swete lef 3792
 I am thyn absalon myn derelyng [leaf 184, back]
 Of gold *quod* he I haue þ^e brought a ryng
 Myn modyr ȝaf it me so god me saue
 fful fyn it is & þerto wel I-graue 3796

This wele I ȝeuen þ^e ȝif I þ^e kysse
 This Nicholas was resyn for to pysse
 And thoute he wolde a-mendyn al þ^e Iape
 He schulde kysse hese ars er þan he spake 3800
 And vp the wyndowe dede he hastyly
 And out hese ars he puttyth pryuyly
 Ouer the buttoke / to þ^e haunche bon
 And þerwith spak this absolon 3804
 Spek swete brid I not where þou art
 This Nicholas a-non let flye a fart
 As gret as it hadde ben a thondyr dent
 And with þ^e strok he was almost I-blent 3808
 And he was redy with hese gryn hot
 And Nicholas a mydde þ^e ars he smot
 Off goth the skyn¹ / an hande brede aboute (1 corrected)
 The hote cultyr / brende so hese toute 3812
 And for the smert he wende for to deye
 As he were wod / for wo he gan to crye
 Help watyr watyr / help for godys herte
 This carpenter / out of hese slombir starte 3816
 And herde on cryen / watyr as he were wod
 And thoughte allas now comyth Neweþ flod (1 ? Nowel)
 He sit hym vp with/oute wordys mo
 And with hese ax / he smette the corde on to 3820
 A doun he² fel.³ he fond no² thyng² to selle (2 corrected)
 Neyþer bred ne ale / Ne no thyng elle
 Vp on the flor / & þere aswounne he lay
 Vp styrt here Alysoun & nycholay 3824
 And cryedyn out / harrow in the strete
 The neygheborys boþ^e smale & grete
 In ronne for to gauryn on þis man.
 That ȝit a swounne he lay boþ^e pale & wan. [Cambridge stops III
 I. 3891.]
 ffor with that fal he brusten hath his arme [Kleine MS 1685,
 leaf 45]
 But stonden he must vnto his owne harme
 ffor whanne he spak he was anon bore doun
 With hynde Nicholas and Alisoun 3832

Thei tolde euery man that he was wood
 He was a-gast' so of' the Nowels flood
 Thurgh fantasie that of his vanyte
 He hadde bought hym kneding' tubbes three 3836
 And hadde hem hanged in the roof aboue
 And that he praiede hem for goddis loue
 To sitten in the roof' par companye
 The folk gan laughwen at his fantasie 3840
 And to the roof' thei kiken and thei gape
 And turned al his harm vnto a Iape
 ffor what' this carpentere answerde
 It was for nought' no man his resoun herde 3844
 With othes gret' he was sworne adoun
 That he was holden wood in al that' toun
 ffor euery clerk anoon right' helde with other
 Thei seide the man is wood my leue brother 3848
 And euery wight' gan laughwen at his stryf
 Thus swyued was the carpenters wyf
 ffor al his keypyng' and his Ialousie (leaf 48, back)
 And Absolon hath kist' hir' nethir ye 3852
 And Nicholas is scaldid in his toute
 This tale is don and god saue al the route
Explicit fabula molendinarij.

[No break in the MS.]

[Of leaf 85, the Cambridge MS has only cas l. 3855, pleye, l. 3858,
and greue l. 3859.]

¶ Heere bigynneth the prolog^e of the Reues Tale.^[Sloane MS 1685]

WHanne folk han laughwen at this nyce cas
 Of Absolon and hynde Nicholas 3856
 Dyuerse folk dyuersely they seide
 But for the more part thei lough and pleyde
 Ne at this tale I saw no man him greue
 But it were onoly Oswold the Reue 3860
 By cause he was of Carpenteres craft
 A litel ire is in his herte laft
 He gan to grucche and blamede it a lite
 So the yk quod he ful wel kouthe I 3ou quite 3864
 With blering of a proude mellers ye
 If that me list to speke of rybaudye
 But yk am old me list not pleye for age
 Gras tyme is don my foddere is forage 3868
 This white top writeth myn olde 3eres
 Myn herte is al so mouled as myn heres
 But if I fare as doth an openers
 That ilk fruyt is euere lenger the were 3872
 Til it be roten in mullok or in stree
 We olde men I drede so fare we
 Til we be roten can we nought be ripe
 We hoppen alweye while the world wil pipe 3876
 ffor in oure wille ther stiketh euere a naile
 To haue an hoor her / and a grene taile
 As hath a leek . for though oure might be gon
 Oure wille desireth folye euere in oon 3880
 ffor whanne we may nought don than wil we speke
 3it in oure asshen old is fire reke
 ffoure gledes haue we whiche I shal diuise
 Anauntynge . liyng . Angre . Coueitise 3884
 These foure sparkles longith vnto elde [leaf 40]
 Oure olde lymes mowe wel be vnwelde

CAMBRIDGE 111 [this page, Sloane 1685]

But wille ne shal not failen that is soth [Sloane MS 1085]
 And ȝit haue I alwey a coltes toth 3888
 As many a ȝere as it is passed henne
 Sith that my tappe of lyf bigan to renne [Sloane extract ends.]
 ffor sekyrly whan I was boryn anon [Cambr. MS. Gg 4. 27, 1f 186]
 Deth drow þ^e tappe of lyf & let it gon 3892
 And euere sithe hath so þ^e tappe Ironne
 Til þat almost al emty is þ^e tunne
 The strem of lyf now droppith on þ^e chymbe
 The sely tunge may wel ryng & chymbe 3896
 Of wrechedenesse þat passede is ful ȝore
 With olde folk saue dotage is no more
 Whan þat þ^e ost hadde herd this sarmounnyng
 He gan to spek as lordly as a kyng 3900
 He seyde what amounthyth al þis wit
 What schul we speke al day of holy writ
 The deuyl made a reue for to preche
 And of a souter schipman or a leche 3904
 Sey forth thyn tale & tarye not þ^e tyme
 Lo Depeforthe & it is half weye pryme
 Lo Grenewych þere manye a schrewe is inne
 It were hey tyme þyn tale to begynne 3908
 Now serys *quod* this Osewold the reue
 I preye ȝow alle þat ȝe nat ȝow greue
 Thow I answere & sumdel sette hese howe
 ffor lefful it is þat forse / forse of schowe 3912
 This dronkene mellere hath I-told vs here
 How þat begiled was a carpentere
 Paraenture in scorn for I am on
 And by ȝoure leue I schal ȝow quyte a-non 3916
 Ryght in hese cherlis termys wele I speke
 I preye to god his nelke mote breke
 He can wel in myn eye sen a stalke
 But in hese owene he can not sen a balke 3920

Here begynnith the <sup>Deed of
painting of
the Reeve</sup> Rene his tale

A T Trompyngtoun not fer fram cantabregge [leaf 186, back]
 þere goth a brok & ouer þat a bregge
 Vp on þ^e which brok þer stant a melle
 And this is veray soth þat I 3ou telle 3924
 A mellere was þer dwellynge many a day
 As ony pekok he was proud & gay
 Pype he coude and fyssche and netys beete
 And turne cuppis & wel wrestele & schete 3928
 Ay by hese belte he bar a long panade
 And of a swerd ful trenchaunt was the blade
 A Ioly poppere bar he in hese pouche
 Ther was no man for peryl durste hym touche 3932
 A sheffield Thwytel bar he in hese hose
 Round was hese face & kammede was hese nose
 As pelyd as an ape was hese skolle
 He was a markat betere at þ^e fulle 3936
 There durste no wygh hand vp on hym leye ^[? ye corrected]
 That he ne swor þat he schulde anon a-beye ¹
 A thef he was for sothe of corn & mele
 And þat a sly & vsaunt for to stele 3940
 And his name was hotyn deynous symkyn
 A wif he hadde comyn of noble kyn
 The persoun of the toun here fadyr was
 With here he 3af ful many a peny of bras 3944
 ffor þat Symkyn schulde in hese blod alye
 Sche was fostered in a nunnerye
 ffor Symkyn wolde no wyf as he seyde
 But sche were wel Inoryschid & a mayde 3948
 To sauyn hese estat of 3emanrye
 And sche was proud & pert as is a pye
 A ful fayr syghte was it on hem to
 On holye dayis be-forn here wolde he ge 3952

With hese typet boundyn a-boutyn hese hed
 And sche come aftyr in a gite of red
 And symkyn hadde hosyn of the same
 Ther durste no wygh clepyn here but dame 3956
 Was non hardy þat wente be þ^e weye [leaf 187]
 That durste with here rage or onys pleye
 But ȝif he wolde be slayn of symkyn
 With panade or knyf or boytekyn 3960
 ffor Ielous folk ben perelous euere mo
 Algate þey wolde here wyuys wenden so
 And ek for sche was sumwhat smotyrylych
 Sche was as dygne as watyr In a dich 3964
 And ful of hokyr & of bismerye
 Sche thoughte þat a lady schulde here spareye
 What for here kynrede & here Norterye
 That sche hadde lerned in þ^e nunnerye 3968
 A doughtyr hadde þey be-twixe hem too
 Of twenty ȝer with-outyn ony moo
 Sauynge a chyld þat was of sene ȝer age
 In cradil it lay & was a propre page 3972
 This wenche thikke & wel I-growyn was
 With cammuse nose & eyen greye as glas
 Buttokkys brode & brestis rounde & hye
 But rygh fayr was here her I wele not lye 3976
 This persoun of the toun for sche was so fayr
 In purpos was to makyn here hese eyr
 But of hese catel & hese mesewage
 And straunge he made it of here maryge 3980
 Hese purpos was for to be-stowe here hye
 In to sum worthi blod of aunceterye
 ffor holicherche good / mote ben dispendit
 On holy cherchis blod / þat is dessendit 3984
 þerfore he wolde / hese holy blod honoure
 Thow þat he holy cherche / schulde deuoure
 Gret sokene hath / this mellere out of doute
 With whete & malt / of al the lond a-boute 3988

And namely þere was a gret college
 Men clepyth þ^e soler halle at cantebregre
 There was heyre whete & here malt I-grounde
 And on a day it happede in a stounde 3992
 Sek lay þ^e mauncypele on a malady [leaf 187, back]
 Men wendyn wisely þat he schulde dey
 ffor which this mellere stal bothe mele & corn
 An hundere tyme more þan be-forn 3996
 ffor þere be-forn he stal but curteysly
 But now he was a thef outragiously
 ffor whych þe wardeyn schod & made fare
 But therof sette this mellere not a tare 4000
 He crakyth boost & swor it was not so
 þanne were there pore clerkys too
 That dwelledyn in þis halle of whiche I seyde
 Testyf þey were & lusty for to pleye 4004
 And only for here myrthe & reuerye
 Vp on þ^e wardeyn besily þey crye
 To ȝeue hem leue but a lite stounde
 To gon to melle / to sen here corn I-grounde 4008
 And hardely þey durste leyn here nekke
 The mellere schulde not stele hem half a pekke
 Of corn be sleighte ne be forse hem reue
 And at þ^e laste þ^e wardeyn ȝaf hem leue 4012
 Ion highte þat on & aleyn hyghte þat oper
 Of on toun were þey born þat hyghte strother
 ffer in the north I can not tellyn where
 This aleyn makyth redy al hese gere 4016
 And on an hors he caste þ^e sak a-non
 Forth goth aleyn þ^e clerk & also Ion
 With good swerd & bokeler bi here syde
 Ion knew þe weye hem nedyth no gyde 4020
 And at þ^e melle þ^e sak a-doun he leyth
 Aleyn spak fyrst alheyl symound in feyth
 How farys þyn fayre douȝtyr & thyn wif
 Aleyn wolcome quod symkyn be myn lyf 4024

And Iohn also how now what do ȝe here
 Symond *quod* Iohn bi god nede has no pere
 He muste serue hym self þat has no sweyn
 Or ellis he is a fol as clerkis seyn 4028
 Oure maunciple I hope he wele be ded [leaf 186]
 Swa werkis ay / þ^o wangis in hese hed
 And þerfore is I come & ek aleyn
 To grynde oure corn & carie it hom a-geyn 4032
 I prey ȝow spede vs hene as ȝe may
 It schal be don *quod* symkyn be myn fay
 What wel ȝe don whil þat it is in hande
 By god ryȝt by þ^o hopyr wele I stande 4036
 Quod Ion & sen how þ^o corn goth in
 ȝit saw I neuere be myn fadir kyn
 How þat þe hopir wagis to & fra
 Aleyn answerede & seyde wist þou swa 4040
 Thanne wele I be beneth bi myn croun
 And sen how þat þ^o mele fallyth don
 In to þe trow þat schal ben myn dysport
 ffor Iohn yfayth I may ben of ȝore sort 4044
 I is as ille a mellere as is ȝe
 This mellere smylede of here nysetee
 And thouȝte al þis it nys don but for a wyle
 They wene þat no man may hem be-gyle 4048
 But be myn thryft / ȝit wele I blere here ye
 ffor al þe sleyȝte in here filosofye
 The more queynte crokede þat þey make
 The more wele I stele whan I take 4052
 In stede of flour / ȝit wele I ȝeue hām bren
 The gretteste clerkys ben not wyseste men
 As whilom to þe wolf þus spak þe mare
 Of al here art I counte not a tare 4056
 Out at þe dore he goth ful pryuely
 Whan þat he saw hese tyme softly
 He lokyth vp & doun tyl he haue founde
 The clerkys hors þere as it stod I-bounde 4060

Be-hynde þe melle vndyr a leuesel
 And to þe hors he goth fayre & wel
 He strepith of þe brydil ryȝt a-non
 And whan þe hors was los he gynnyth gon . 4064
 Toward þe fen þere wilde marys renne [leaf 188, back]
 And forth with wehe þour theke & thorw thenne
 This melle gooth a-ȝen / no word he seyde
 But doth his note & with þe clerkis pleyede 4068
 Til þat here corn was wel & fayre grounde
 And whan þe mele is salkyd & I-bounde
 This Iohn goth out & fynt his hors away
 And gan to crye harow & weyleaway 4072
 Oure hors is lorn aleyn for godys bonys
 Step on thyn foot Aleyn come of atonys
 Allas oure wardeyn has hese palfrey lorn
 This aleyn for-gat bothe mele & corn 4076
 Al was out of hese mynde hese hosebondrye
 What whedir is he gon he gan to crye
 The wyf cam lepyng in ward with a ren
 Sche seyde alas þoure hors goth to þe fen 4080
 Wyth wyld marys as faste as sche may go
 Vn-thank come on hese hand þat bond hym so
 And he þat betere schulde a knyȝt þe reyne
 Allas quod aleyn for crystis peyne 4084
 Ley down þyn swerd / & I wele myn al swa
 I is ful wyȝt god woot as is a raa
 By goddis herte / he schal nat skape vs baþe
 Whi ne haddist þou pit þe capyl in þe lathe 4088
 Ille hayl aleyn be god þou is a fonne
 These sely clerkis han ful faste I-ronne
 Toward þe fen / bothe aleyn & ek Iohn
 And whan þe melle saw þat þey were gon 4092
 He half a buschel of here flour hath take
 And bad hese wif gon knede it in a kake
 He seyde I trowe þe clerkys were a-feryd
 ȝit can a melle make a clerkys berd 4096

for al here art now lat hem gon here woye
 Lo where he goth þat lat þe childeryn pleye
 They gete hym not so lyztely / be myn croun
 These sely clerkys rennen vp & doun 4100
 Wyth kep kep / stand stand stand Iossa ware þe rere (last 189)
 Ga whystele thow & I schal kepe hymm here
 But schortly til þat it was veray nyght
 They coude not Thow they don al here myzt 4104
 Here capil cache he ran al wey so faste
 Tyl in a dych þey caughte hym at þe laste
 Wery & wet as beste is in þe reyn
 Comyth sely ion & with hym comyth aleyne 4108
 Allas quod Iohn þe day þat I was born
 Now are we dreuyn tyl hethng & to scorn
 Oure corn is stole men wele vs folys calle
 Boþe þe wardayn & oure felas alle 4112
 And namely þe mellere weyleawey
 Thus pleynyth Iohn as he goth be þe wey
 Toward þe melle / & bayard in hese hond
 The mellere sittynge by þe fyr he fond 4116
 ffor it was nyzt & ferþere myzte þey nought
 But for þe loue of god þey hym be-sought
 Of herberwe & of ese for here peny
 The mellere seyde a-geyn ȝif þere be any 4120
 Swich as it is ȝit schal ȝe haue ȝoure part
 Myn hous is streyt but ȝe han lernede art
 ȝe cunne with argumentis make a place
 A myle brod of twenty fote of space 4124
 Let se now ȝif þis space may suffyse
 Or make it roum with speche as is ȝoure gyse
 Now symond seyde Iohn be seynt Cutbert
 Ay art þou merye & þis is fayre answeyrd 4128
 I haue herd seyð men schal tan of too thyngis
 Swich as he fynd or take swich as he bryngis
 But specially I preye þe hoot & deere
 Gete vs sum mete & drynk & make vs chere 4132

And we wele paye trewely at þe folle
 With emty hand men may none haukys tolle
 Lo here oure syluyr / redy for to spende
 This mellere in to þe touzne hese doughtyr sende 4136
 ffor ale & bred & rostede hem a goos (leaf 189, back)
 And bond here hors it schulde not gon loos
 And in hese owene chaumbir made a bed
 With schetis & with chaloznyns fayre I-spred 4140
 Not from his owene bed ten fote or twelve
 Hese douȝtyr hadde a bed al by here selue
 Rygh in þe same schaumbyr by & by
 It myȝte ben no bet & cause why 4144
 There was non roumure herberw in þe plase
 The soupe & þey speke hem to solase
 And dronkyn ay strong ale at þe beste
 Aboute medenyȝt wente þey to reste 4148
 Wel hath this mellere vernychid hese hed
 ful pale he was for-drunke & not red
 He ȝyksneth & spekyth þourw þe nose
 As he were on þe quakke or on þe pose 4152
 To bedde he goþ & with hym goth his wif
 As ony iay sche lyȝt was & iolyf
 So was here ioly whistele wel I-wet
 The cradil at here beddys feet is set 4156
 To rokke & to ȝeue þe child to souke
 And whan þat dronkyn al was in þe crouke
 To bedde wente þe douȝtyr ryȝt a-non
 To bedde goth aleyn & ek Ioħn 4160
 Ther nas no mor hem neded no dwale
 This mellere hath so wysely bibbit alle
 That as an hors he snortyth in hese slep
 Ne of hese tayl ne takyth he no kep 4164
 Hese wif bar hym a burdoun a ful strong
 Men myȝtyn here hyre route too furlong
 The wenche routyth ek par cumpaynye
 Aleyn þe clerk þat herde þis melodye 4168

He pokede ion & seyde slepist þou
 Herdist þou euere swich a song er now
 Lo swich a copil is a-mong hem alle
 A wylde fyr mote on here bodyis falle 4172
 Ho herkenyth euere swich a ferly thyng [leaf 190]
 3a þey schal haue þe flour of ille endyng
 This longe nyzt þere tydis me no reste
 But 3it no fors al schal ben for the beste 4176
 ffor Iohn seyde he as euere mote I thryue
 3if þat I may þe wenche wele I schryue
 Sum esement has lawe I-schapyn vs
 ffor Iohn þere is a lawe þat says þus 4180
 That 3if a man in a poynt be a-greuyd
 That in a noþer he schal ben releuyd
 Oure corn is stolin schortly it is non nay
 And we han had an ille fit al þis day 4184
 And syn I schal han non a-mendement
 A-geyn my los I wele haue eysement
 By godys sale it schal non oþer be
 This Iohn answerde Aleyn a-vise þe 4188
 The mellere is a perlyous man he seyde
 And 3if þat he out of hese slep a-breyde
 He myzte vs don bothe a velanye
 Aleyn answerde I counte hym not a flye 4192
 And vp he sterte & by þe wenche he crepte
 This wenche lay vp ryght & faste slepte
 Tyl he so nygh was er sche myghte aspye
 That it hadde be to late for to crye 4196
 And schortely for to seyn þey were at on
 Now pley aleyn for I wele speke of ion
 This Iohn lyth styлле a furlong wey or too
 And to hym self he makyth reuthe & woo 4200
 Allas quod he þis is a wekede iape
 Now may I seyn þat I is but an ape
 3it hath myn felawe sumwhat for hese harm
 He has þe melleris douztyr in hese arm 4204

He auntered hym & has hese nedis sped
 And I lye as a draf sek in myn bed
 And whan pis iape is told a noþer day
 I schal ben told a daffe a cokenay 4208
 I wele ryse & antere it be myn fay [leaf 190, back]
 Vn-hardi is vn-sely þus men say
 And vp he ros & softly he wente
 Vn to þe cradil & in hese hond it hente 4212
 And bar it softe vn to hese bedis feet
 Sone aftyr þis þe wyf here routyng let
 And gan to wake & lefte for to pysse
 And cam a-geyn & gan here cradil mysse 4216
 And gropede here & þere / but sche fond non
 Allas *quod* sche I hadde almost mys gon
 I hadde al most gon to þe clerkys bed
 Ey benedyste þanne hadde I foule I-sped 4220
 And forth sche goth tyl sche þe cradel fond
 Sche gropede alwey ferþere with here hond
 And fond þe bed & thouȝte not but good
 Be cause þat þe cradyl by it stod 4224
 And nyste where sche was for it was derk
 And fayre & wel sche crep in bi þe clerk
 And lyth ful styлле & wolde a cauȝt a alep
 With-inne a while þis Iohn vp lep 4228
 And on þis goode wif he leyth on sore
 So merye a fit ne hadde sche ful ȝore
 He prikyth harde & sore as he were mad
 This ioly lyf han þese too klerkis lad 4232
 Tyl þat þe fyrste kok be-gan to synge
 Aleyn wex wery in þe dawenyng
 ffor he hadde swonkyn al þe longe nyȝt
 And seyde farwel malyn swete wyȝt 4236
 The day is come I may no lengere byde
 But euere more where so I go or ryde
 I is þyn owene clerk so haue I sel
 Now dere leman *quod* sche go fare weel 4240

But er þou go on thyng I wele þe telle
 Whan þat þou wendyst homward be þe melle
 Ryȝt at þe entre of þe dore be-hynde [leaf 191]
 þou schat a cake of half a buschel fynde 4244
 þat was I-makyd ryȝt of þyn owene mele
 Which þat I halp myn fadyr for to stele
 And goode leman god þe saue & kepe
 And with þat word sche gan almost to wepe 4248
 Aleyn vp ryst & thoughte er þan it dawe
 I wele gon crepe in by myn felawe
 And fond þe cradyl with hese hand a-non
 By god þouȝte he al wrong I haue mys gon 4252
 Myn hed is toty of myn swynk to nyȝt
 þat makyth me þat I go not aryȝt
 I wot wel by þe cradyl I haue mys go
 Here lyth þe mellere & hese wyf also 4256
 And forth he goth a twenty deleway
 Vn to þe bed þere þat þe mellere lay
 He wende a crepid bi hese felawe Ion
 An by þe mellere in he crepede a-non 4260
 And cauȝte hym by þe nekke softe he spak
 He seyde þou Iohn þou sweuenyst a-wak
 ffor cristis soule & here a nobele game
 ffor by þat lord þat called is seynt Iame 4264
 As I haue thryes in þe schorte nyȝt
 Swyuyd þe melleris douȝtyr bolt vp ryȝt
 Whil þou hast as a coward been a-gast
 ȝa false harlot quod þe mellere hast 4268
 A false traytour false clerk quod he
 Thow schat ben ded be godis dynete
 Ho durste ben so bold to disparage
 Myn douȝtyr þat is comyn of swych lenage 4272
 And by the throte bolle he caughte aleyn
 And he hente hym dyspitously a-geyn
 And on þe nose he smot hym with hese fest
 Doun ran þe blod strem vp on hese brest 4276

And in þe floor with nose & mouth to-broke
 They walwe as don too piggis in a poke
 And vp þey gon & don a-geyn a-non [leaf 191, back]
 Tyl þat þ^e mellere spurnede aȝen a ston 4280
 And doun he fyl bakward vp on hese wif
 That wiste no þyng of þis nyse stryf
 ffor sche was falle a slepe a lyte wyȝt
 With Ioħn þe clerk þat wakede al nyȝt 4284
 And with þe fal out of here slep sche bryde
 Help holy croys of bromeholm sche seyde
 In manus tuas lord to þe I calle
 A-wake symond þe fend is on vs falle 4288
 Myn herte is brokyn allas I ne am but ded
 There lyth on vp on myn wombe & on myn hed
 Help symkyn for þe false klerkys fyȝte
 This Ioħn styrtē vp as faste as euere he myȝte 4292
 And graspith by the walle to & fra
 To fynde a staf & sche styrtē vp als wa
 And knew þe estis betere þan dede þis Ioħn
 And bi þe wal a staf sche fond a-non 4296
 And saw a lytyl schemeryng of a lyȝt
 ffor at an hole in schon þe mone bryt¹ [1 corrected]
 And by þat lyȝt sche say hem bope too
 But sekyrly sche nyste ho was who 4300
 But as sche say a whit thyng in here eye
 And whan sche gan þe whyte þyng espye
 Sche wende þe clerk hadde wered a wolyper
 And with the staf sche drow ay ner & ner 4304
 And wende an hit þes aleyn at þe fulle
 And smot þe mellere on þe pylede sculle
 And doun he goth harow I deye
 These clerkys bete hym wel & lete hym lye 4308
 And hastede hem & toke here leue a-non
 And ek here mele & on here woye þey gon
 And at þe melle ȝit þey toke here kake
 Of half a buschel flour wol wel I-bake 4312

Thus is þe proude mellere wel I-bete	
And hath I-lost the gryndyng of þe wete	
And payed for þe souper euery del	[leaf 192]
Of aleyn & of Iohn þat bete hym wel	4316
Hese wyf is swyuyd & hese doughtyr als	
Lo swich It is a mellere ¹ to ben fals	[1 re: later]
And þerfore this prouerbe is seyð ful soth ²	[2 noth: later]
Hym thar not wene wel þat euele doth	4320
A gylour schal ³ hym self begylede be	[3 1: later]
And god þat settyth hye in ⁴ mageste	[4 in: later]
Save all þese companyis grate ⁵ & smale	[5 1 corrected to grate]
Thus haue I quit þe mellere in myn tale	4324

[Break of 3 lines in the MS.]

THe cook of lundene whil þe reue spak
 ffor ioye hym thouzte he clawede hym on þ^e bak
 Ha ha ha for cristys passyoun
 This mellere hadde a scharp conclusyoun 4328
 Vp on his argument of herbergage
 Wel seyde salamon / on his langage
 Ne brynge not euery with in to þyn hous
 ffor herberwynges be nyzte is perlyous 4332
 Wel auzte a man avysede for to be
 Whom þat he brouzte in to hese priuyte
 I preye to god so zeue me sorwe & care
 Syn euere I highte hoge of ware 4336
 Herde I euere a mellere betere I-set a werke
 He hadde a lape of maleys in þe derke
 But god for-bede þat we stentyn here
 And perfore ȝif ȝe wouche saf to here 4340
 A tale of me þat am a pore man
 I wele ȝow telle as wel as euere I can
 A lytyl lape what fel in oure cete
 Oure ost answerde & seyde I graunte it þe 4344
 Now telle on roger & loke þat it be good
 ffor manye a paste hast þou letyn blod
 And manye a rakke of douere hast þou sold/
 That hath ben twyes hot & twyes cold [leaf 192, back] 4348
 Of manye a pilgrym hast þou cristis curs
 ffor of thyn persele ȝit thy fare þe wers
 That þey han etyn with thyn stobil goos
 ffor in thyn schoppe is manye a flye los 4352
 Now telle on gentyl roger be þyn name
 But ȝit I preye þe be not wroth for game
 A man may sey ful soth in game & play
 Thow seyst ful soth *quod* roger be myn fay 4356

126 GROUP A. § 7. COOK'S PROLOGUE. Cambridge MS.

But sooth pley quaad pley as þ^e flemyng seyth
And þerfore herry bayly be þyn feyth
Be þou not wroth er we partyn here
Thow þat myn tale be of an ostelere 4360
But natheles I wele nat telle it ȝet
But er we parte I-wis þou schat be quit
And þerwithal he low & made chere
And seyde hese tale as ȝe schal aftyr here 4364

[*No break in the MS.*]

Here begynnyst the kok of lundene hi tale

[*painting of the Cook*]

[*Nearly all leaf 193 of Camb. MS is cut out. Only He l. 4372, As 4373, We 4374, At 4375, H 4376, ff 4377, and bits of O and T, 4378-9, are left, and so of plase, l. 4410, and aunce 4412.*]

A Prentis whilom dwellid in oure citee [Sloane MS 1685,
leaf 50, back]
 And of a craft of vitalers was he
 Gaillard he was as gol-fynche in þe schawe
 Broun as bery. a proper short felawe 4368
 With lokkes blake I-kempt ful fetisly
 Daunce he kouþe so wel and Iolyly
 That he clepid perkyn reueilloure
 He was as ful of loue and paramour 4372
 As is þe hive ful of hony swete
 Wel was þe wenche with him myght mete
 At euery bridale wold he synge and hoppe
 He louede bette þe tauerne þan þe shoppe 4376
 ffor whan þer any ridynge was in chepe [leaf 51]
 Out of þe Shoppe þeder wold he lepe
 Til þat he had al þe sight I-seyn
 And daunced wel wold he not come a-gayne 4380
 And gedrid hym mony of his sort
 To hoppe and synge and make suche disport
 And þere þey setten steuene for to mete
 To pleyn at þe dys in suche a strete 4384
 ffor in þe toun nas ner no prentis
 That fairer couþe cast a peyre of dys
 Then perkyn couth and þerto he was free
 Of his dispence in place of pryuyte 4388
 That fonde his maister wel in his chaffare
 ffor ofte tyme he fonde his box ful bare
 ffor sikirly a prentis reuelour
 [. no gap in the MS.] 4392
 His maystir shuld it in his shep abyge
 Al haue not part of þe mynstralcie
 ffor theft and riot þei ben conuertible
 Al can he pleye on geterne or rubible 4396

CAMBRIDGE 127 [this page, Sloane 1685]

128 GROUP A. § 8. COOK'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

Reuel and trouth as in lowe degree	[Sloane MS 1085]
They ben ful wroth al day as men may see	
This Iolye prentis with his mayster boode	
Til he were nyghe oute of his prentis-hoode	4400
Al were he snybbit erly and late	
And somtyme lad with Reuel to Newgate	
But at last his maystir him by-poghit	
Vpon a day whan he his paper sought	4404
Of a prouerbe þat saith þis same word	
Wel bet is roten appel oute of hoorde	
Than þat it rotet alle þe remenant	
So farith it by a ryocous seruant	4408
It is ful lasse harme to late hym passe	
Than he shend alle þe seruauntz in þe place	
Therfore his maystir ȝaf him a quytaunce	
And bade him go with sorow <i>and</i> myschaunce	4412
And þus this Ioly prentis had his leuee	[leaf 51, back]
Now let hym Riot al þe nyght or leue	
And for ther is no theof with-oute a loke	
That helpith hym to wasten <i>and</i> to sowke	4416
Of þat he bribe can or borow may	
Anoon he sent his bede <i>and</i> his array	
Vn to a couper of his owne soort	
That loued dys Reuel <i>and</i> disport	4420
And had a wif þat held for contynaunce	
A shope and swyfed for hir sustynaunce	[Sloane extract ends.]

APPENDIX TO GROUP A.

[THE SPURIOUS TALE OF GAMELYN.]

[*Spurious Link.*]

But here of I wil passe as now [leaf 51, back, line 11.]
And of 3ong Gamelyne I wil telle 3ou 2

[*Tale.*]

The tale of 3ong Gamelyn
Erthen *and* listeneth *and* herkenyth a right 1
And shul here of a doughty knyght
Sir Iohan de Boundys was his name
He coude of norture and of mochel game 4
Thre sones þe knyght had *and* with his body hem wan
The eldest was a moche schrewe *and* sone he be-gan
His brethren loued wel her fader *and* of hym were a-gast
The eldist disserued his fader curs *and* had it at þe last 8
The gode knyght his fader lyued so 3ore
That deth was comen hym to . *and* handelid him ful sore
The gode knyght cared sore . sike þere he lay
How his children shuld lyuen after his day 12
He had ben wide where but non husbond he was
Al þe londe þat he had hit was purchas
ffayn he wold hit were dressed a-mong hem alle
That eche of hem hadde his part as it myght falle 16
Tho sente he in to cuntre after wise knyghtes
To helpen delen his londes *and* dressen hem to rightes
He sent hem . word by *lettres* þai shuld hye blyue
3if þei wold speke with him while he was on lyue 20

Tho þe knyghtes . herden . sike þat he lay
 Had þey no rest nothir nyght ne day
 Til þey come to him þere he lay stille
 On his deth bed to a-bide goddes wille. 24
 Then seyde þe goode knyght sike þere he lay [leaf 52]
 Lordes I 3ou warne for soþe with-oute nay
 I may no lenger lyuen here in þis stonde
 ffor thorough goddes wille deth drawes to gronde 28
 Ther nas non of hem alle þat herde hem a right
 That þey hadden reuthe of þat ilke knyght
 And seiden sir for goddes loue ne dismay 3ou nouȝt
 God may done bote of bale þat is now I-wrouȝt 32
 Than spake þe gode knyght sike þere he lay
 Bote of bale god may sende I wote it is not nay
 But I beseche 3ou knyghtes for þe loue of me
 Goth *and* dresseth my londes a-mong^t my sones thre 36
 And for þe loue of god delith not hem amys
 And for-ȝetep not Gamelyn my 3ong sone þat is
 Taketh hede to þat one as wel as to þat oþer
 Selde ȝe seen any heire helpen his brother 40
 Tho leten þey þe knyght lyen þat was not in hele
 And wenten in to counseil his londis for to dele
 ffor to delen hem alle to oon þat was her poght
 And for Gamelyn wast 3ongest he shuld haue nouȝt 44
 Alle þe lond þat þer was þei dalten it in two
 And leten Gamelyn þe 3ong^t with-uten lond go
 And eche of hem saide to oþer ful lowde
 His brethren myght ȝeue hym lond when he good cowde 48
 When þey had deled at her wille
 They comen to þe knyght þer he ley stille
 And tolde hym a-non how þei had wrought
 And þe knyght ther he lay likid it right nought 52
 Than seyde þe knyght by seynt martyñ
 ffor al þat ȝe haue don ȝet is þe lond myñ
 ffor go goddes loue Neighboures stondith al stille
 And I wil delen my lond right after my wille 56

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

Iohn my eldest sone shal haue plowes fyue
 That was my fadres heritage while he was on lyue
 And my mydlest sone fyue plowes of lond
 That I halp for to gete with my right hond 60
 And al myn oþer purchas of londes *and* ledes [leaf 52, back]
 That I be-queepe Gamelyn *and* alle my gode stedes
 And I beseke 3ou good men þat law con of lond
 ffor Gamelyns loue þat my quest stond 64
 Thus dalt þe knyght his lond by his day
 Right on his deth bed sike þere he lay
 And sone aftirward he lay stoon stille
 And died whan tyme come as it was cristes wille 68
 A-none as he was deed *and* vnder gras graue
 Sone þe elder broþer gyled þe 3ong knaue
 He toke in to his honde and his lede
 And Gamelyn him selfe to clothen *and* to fede 72
 He cloþed hym *and* fedde hym yuel *and* eke wrothe
 And lete him his londes for-fare *and* his houses boþe
 His parkes *and* his wodes *and* dide noþyng' welle
 And sithen he it a-bowȝt on his owne felle 76
 So longe was Gamelyn in his brothers halle
 ffor þe strengest of good wille þei doutenden alle
 Ther was none þere in . noþer 3ong' ne old
 That wold wrath Gamelyn where he neuer so bold 80
 Gamelyn stode on a day in his brothers ȝerde
 And by-gan with his hand to hondel his berde
 He þouȝt on his landes þat lay on-sawe
 And his faire okes þat doune were I-drawe 84
 His parkes were broken and his dere reved
 Of alle his good stedes noon was him by-leued
 His houses were vn-hiled and ful euil dight
 Tho þouȝt Gamelyn it went not a right 88
 Aftirward came his brother walkyng' þere
 And seide to Gamelyn is oure mete ȝere
 Tho wrathed him Gamelyn *and* swore by goodes booke
 Thou shalt go bake þy self I wilnot be þi cooke 92

Now broþer Gamelyn hou vnswarest þou now
 Thou spakkest neuer suche a word as þou dost now
 By my feythe seide Gamelyn now me pynkith nede
 Of alle þe armes þat I haue I toke neuer 3et hede 96
 My parkes ben broken and my dere by-reved [leaf 52]
 Of myn armes *and* my stedes noght is me byleued
 Al þat my fader me quap al goth to schame
 And þerfore haue goddes curs broþer by þyn name 100
 Than spak' his brother þat rape was of rees
 Stand stille gadlyng' and hold þy pees
 Thou shalt fayne to haue þy mete *and* þy wede
 What spekest þou gadlyng' of lond or of lede 104
 Than seide Gamelyn þe child þat was 3yng'
 Cristes curs mote he haue þat clepith me gadlyng'
 I am no worse gadlyng' ne no worse wight
 But borne of a lady and geten of a knyght 108
 Ne dirst he note to Gamelyn neuer a fote go
 But clepid to him his men *and* saide to hem þo
 Goth *and* bethet þis boy *and* reueth him his witte
 And lette hym lerne an oþer tyme to vnsware me bette 112
 Then seide þe child 3ong' Gamelyn
 Cristes curs mote þou haue brother art þou myn
 And 3if y shal algate be beten a-noon
 Cristes curs mote þou haue but þou be þat oon 116
 An-noon his brother in þat grete hete
 Made his men to fette staffes Gamelyn to bete
 When euery of hem hed a staffe nomen
 Gamelyn was ware tho he seigh hem comen 120
 Tho Gamelyn seigh hem comen he lokid ouer aff
 And was war of a pestel stood vnder þe wall
 Gamelyn was light and þider he can lepe
 And droff alle his brothers men right sone on hepe 124
 And lokid as a wild lyon *and* layde on gode wone
 Tho his brother sei þat he by-gan to gone
 He fley vp in to a loft *and* shete þe dore fast
 Thus Gamelyn with his pestel made hem alle a-gast 128

Some for Gamelyns loue *and* some for eye
 Alle þey drowen hem to halues þoo he gan to flee
 What now seide Gamelyn euel mote 3e þe
 Wille 3e by-gynne contyk' *and* so sone flee 132
 Gamelyn souzt his brother whider he was flow [leaf 83, back]
 And saughe where he lokid oute of a wyndow
 Brother seyde Gamelyn come a litul nere
 And I wille teche the a play at the bokeler 136
 His brother him vnswarid and seide by seynt Richere
 While þat pestel is in thi hond I wole come no nere
 Brother I wil make thi pees I swere by cr[i]stes ore
 Cast a-way þe pestel and wrath the no more 140
 I moste nede saide Gamelyn wrath me at ones
 ffor þou wold make þy men to breke my bones
 Ne hadde I hadde mayn and myght in myn armes
 To haue hem fro me thei wold haue do de harmes 144
 Gamelyn saide his brother be þou not wroth
 ffor to seen the haue harme me were right loth
 I ne dede it nouzt brother but for a fondyng'
 ffor to loken or þou art strong' and art so 3yng' 148
 Come a doune þen to me *and* graunt me my bone
 Of o þyng' I wil þe axe *and* we shul saught sone
 Downe þan come his brother þat fekil was *and* felle
 And was swich sore a-ferd of the pestett 152
 He seide brother Gamelyn axe me þy bone
 And loke þou blame but I it graunt sone
 Than seide Gamelyn brother I was
 And we shuff be at one þou most graunt me þis 156
 Alle þat my fader me by-quap while þat he was on lyue
 Thou moust do me it haue 3if we shul not stryve
 That shalt þou haue Gamelyn I swere by cristes ore
 Alle þat fader þe be-quap pough þou woldest haue more 160
 Thi lond þat lith leye . wel it shal be sowe
 And þyn houses reised vp þat ben leide ful lowe
 Thus seide þe knyght to Gamelyn with mouth
 And pouzt on falsenes as he wel couth 164

The knyght pought on treson an Gamelyn on none
 And went and kissed his brother *and whenne þey weren atone*
 Allas 3ong' Gamelyn no þyng' he ne wiste
 With suche fals treson his brother hym kyste 168
 Lyithenyth *and lystnyth* and holdith 3oure tong' (leaf 54)
 And 3e shul here talkyng' of Gamelyn þe 3ong'
 Ther was ther be siden. cried a wrastlyng'
 And ther for ther was sette a Ram *and a ryng'* 172
 And Gamelyn was in wille to wende þer to
 ffor to preuen his myght what he coude do
 Brother seid Gamelyn be seynt Richere
 Thou most lene me to nyght a litel coursere 176
 That is fressh to þe spores on for to ryde
 I most on an Erand a litel here by side
 Be god seide his broþer of stedes in my stalle
 Go and chese the best spare non of hem alle 180
 Of stedes *and* of coursers that stoden hem be side
 And telle me gode brother whedir þou wilt ride
 Here by side brother ys cried a wrastlyng'
 And þerfore shal be set a Ram an a ryng' 184
 Moche worship it were brother to vs alle
 Might 3e the ram *and* þe ryng' bryngen home to þis halle
 A stede þer was sadeled smertly *and skete*
 Gamelyn dide a paire of spores fast on his fete 188
 He sette his foot in þe stirop þe stede he by-strood
 And toward þe wrastlyng' þe yong child rood
 Tho Gamelyn þe yong was riden oute at gate
 The fals knyght his brother lokid yit after þate 192
 And by-souȝt ihesu crist þat is heuen kyng'
 He myght breke his nekke in þat wrastlyng'
 As sone as Gamelyn come þere the place was
 He light doun of his stede on the gras 196
 And ther he herde a frankeleyn weylaway synge
 And bi-gan bitterly his hondes for to wrynge
 Gode man saide Gamelyn whi makest þou þis fare
 Is ther no mán þat may 3ou helpen oute of care 200

Allas seide þis ff[r]ankelyn þat euer y was bore
 ffor twey stalworth sones I wene þat I haue lore
 A Champyon is in þe place þat hap wrouzt me sorowe 203
 ffor he hath slayn my two sones but gif god hem borowe
 I wel zeue ten pound by ihesu crist *and* more [leaf 54, back]
 With þe nones that I fonde a man to handle hym sore
 Gode man seide Gamelyn wilt þou wel done
 Hold my hors while my man drawith of my shone 208
 And helpe my man to kepe my clothes *and* my stede
 And I wil in to place gone to loke if y may spede
 By god seyde the frankeleyn it shal be done
 I wille my self be þy mane¹ to draw of þy shone [MS name]
 And wende þou in to place ihesu crist the spede
 And drede not of thi clothes ne of thi gode stede
 Barfoot and vngirt Gamelyn In came
 Alle þat were in þe place hede of him þei name 216
 How he dorste aunte him to done his myght
 That was so doughty a champion in wrastlyng *and* in fight
 Vp sterte þe Champion rapely a-none
 Toward zong¹ Gamelyn he by-gan to gone 220
 And seide who is þy fader *and* who is þy sire
 ffor soþe þou art a grete foole þat þou come here
 Gamelyn vnswarid þe Champion tho
 Thou knew wel my fader while he couthe go 224
 Whilis he was on lyue by seynt Martyn
 Sire Iohan of Boundis was his name *and* I Gamelyn
 ffelaw seide the Champion so mote I thryue
 I knewe wel the fader whiles he was on lyue 228
 And thi self Gamelyn I wil þat þou it here
 While þou were a zong¹ boy a moche schrew þou were
 Than saide Gamelyn *and* swore by cristes ore
 Now I am older wax þou shal fynde me a more 232
 By god seyde þe Champion wel come mote þou be
 Come þou ones in myn honde þou shalt neuer the
 It was wel with-inne nyght *and* þe mone shone
 When Gamelyn *and* the Champion to gedre gon gone 236

The Champion cast tornes to Gamelyn þat was prest
 And Gamelyn stode and bade hym done his best
 Than seide Gamelyn to þe Champion
 Thou art fast a-boute to bryng' me a-don . 240
 Now I haue proued mony tornes of thyne [leaf 55]
 Thow most he seide proue on or two of myne
 Gamelyn to the Champion ȝede smertly a-none
 Of alle tornes þat he couthe he shewed hym but one 244
 And kest hym on the lift side þat þre ribbes to-brake
 And þerto his on arme þat ȝaf a grete crak'
 Than sayde Gamelyn smertly a none
 Shal it be hold for a cast or ellis for none 248
 By god seide þe Champion where it be
 He þat comeþ ones in þy honde shal he neuer the
 Than seide þe frankelyn þat had his sones þere
 Blessed be pou Gamelyn þat euer þou bore were 252
 The frankeleyn seide to the Champion on hym stood hym no
 This is ȝon Gamelyn þat taught the þis pleie [eye
 Aȝen vnsward þe Champion þat liked no þyns wel
 He is alther meister *and* his pleie is right felle 256
 Sithen I wrastelet first it is gon ȝore
 But I was in my lif handled neuer so sore
 Gamelyn stode in the place a-non with-oute serke
 And seide ȝif þer be mo let hem come to werke 260
 The Champion þat payned hym to werke sore
 Hit semeth by his contenance þat he wille nomore
 Gamelyn in the place stode stille as stoon
 ffor to a-bide wrastlyng' but þer come non 264
 Ther was none with Gamelyn þat wold wrastle more
 ffor he handlid þe Champyon so wonderly sore
 To gentil men ȝemed þe place
 Come to gamelyn god ȝyue hym gode grace 268
 And seide to hym to on thi hosen *and* þi shone
 ffor soþe at þis tyme þis faire is done
 And þan saide Gamelyn so mote I wel fare
 I haue not ȝet haluendel sold my ware 272

Tho seide þe Champion so brok' I my swere
 He is a fool þat þer-of bief þou sillest it so dere
 Thoo seide the frankeleyn þat was in moche care
 ffelaw he seide why lakkist þou þis ware 276
 By seynt Iame in Gales þat mony man hath sought (MS. B)
 3it is it to good chepe þat þou hast bought
 Tho þat wardeyns were of þat wrastlyng'
 Come and brouȝt Gamelyn þe Ram *and* þe ryng' 280
 [.
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 And Gamelyn thouȝt it was a faire þyng'
 And went with moche Ioy home in þe mornynge' 284
 His broþer seie where he came with þe grete route
 And bade shit þe gate *and* hold hym with-oute
 The porter of his lord was sore a-gaste
 And stert a-none to the gate *and* lokked it faste 288
 Now lytþeþ *and* lysteneyth boþe yong' *and* old
 And ȝe shul he Gamyn of Gamelyn þe bold
 Gamelyn come þerto for to haue comyn In
 Than was it schet fast with a pyn 292
 Than seide Gamelyn porter vndo þe ȝate
 ffor gode mannys sone stond þer ate
 Than answered þe porter *and* sware by goddes berd
 Thou ne shalt Gamelyn come in to this ȝerd 296
 Thou lixt seide Gamelyn so broke I my chyne
 He smote the wicket with his foote *and* brake a-way þe pyne
 The porter sey tho it myȝht no better be
 He sette fote on erthe and by-gan to flee 300
 By my fey seide Gamelyn þat trauel is lore
 ffor I am on fote as light as þou haddest it swore
 Gamelyn ouer toke þe porter *and* his tene wrake
 And girt him in the nekke þat þe boon to-brake 304
 And toke him in his arme *and* threw hym in a wellle
 Vij^c. fadame it was depe I haue herd telle
 Whan Gamelyn þe ȝong' þus had plaide his plaie
 Alle þat in the ȝerde were drowen hem a-waye 308

They dredein hym fol sore for werke þat he wrought
 And for þe faire companye þat he þedir brought
 Gamelyn ȝede to þe ȝate *and* lete hit vp wide
 He lete in alle þat gone old or ride 312
 And seide ȝe be welcome with-oute eny greue
 ffor we wille be maisters here *and* axe no man leue
 ȝersterday I left . seyde ȝong^r Gamelyn [leaf 56]
 In my broþer seller fyue tonne wyne 316
 I wilnot pis companye parten on twyne
 And ȝe wille don after me while soþe ys *þer*-inne
 And ȝif my brother gruche or make foule chere
 Other for spence of mete or drynke þat we spende here 320
 I am oure Catour *and* here oure alþer purse
 He shal haue for his gruchyng^r seynt marie curse
 My brother ys a nygon y swere by cristes ore
 And we wille spende largely þat he hath spared ȝore 324
 And who þat make gruchyng^r þat we here dwelle
 He shal to porter in to þe drawe welle
 Vij. dayes and vij. nyght : Gamelyn held his fest
 With moche solace was there *and* none chest 328
 In a litel torret his broþer ley steke
 And sey hem wast his good *and* dorst not speke
 Erly in a mornyng^r on the viij. day
 The gestes come to Gamelyn *and* wold gone her way 332
 Lordes seide Gamelyn wil ȝe so hye
 Alle þe wyne is not ȝet dronke so broke I myn eye
 Gamelyn in his hert was ful wo
 Whenne his gestes toke her leue fro hym for to go 336
 He wold þey hadde dwelled lenger *and* þey seide nay
 But by-tauȝt Gamelyn god *and* goode day
 Thus made Gamelyn his fest *and* brouȝt it wel to ende
 And after his gestes to leue to wende 340
 Lythep *and* lystenyth *and* holdeth ȝoure tonge
 And ȝe shul here Gamen of Gamelyn þe ȝong^r
 Herkenyth lordynges and lystenyth a right
 Whenne alle gestes were gon how Gamelyn was dight 344

Alle þe while þat Gamelyn held his mangerie	
His broþer þoght on hym be wreke with his trecherie	
Tho Gamelyns gestis were riden <i>and</i> gone	
Gamelyn stode a-none allone frende hed he none	348
Tho after felle sone with-In a litul stonde	
Gamelyn was taken <i>and</i> ful hard I-bonde.	
fforþ come þe fals knyght oute of þe solere	[leaf 56, back]
To Gamelyn his broþer he ȝede ful nere	352
And saide to Gamelyn ho made þe so bolde	
ffor to stroien my store of my householde	
Brother seyde Gamelyn wrath the right noght	
ffor it is mony day gone sith it was boght	356
ffor broþer þou hast hadde by seynt Richere	
Of xv. plowes of lond þis sixtene ȝere	
And of alle the bestis þou hast forþ bredde	
That my fader me by-quap on his deþ bedde	360
Of alle þis sixtene I ȝeue þe þe prove	
ffor þe mete and the drynke þat we haue spended now	
Than sayde þe false knyght euyll mote he the	
Herken broþer Gamelyn what I wil geve þe	364
ffor of my body brother here geten haue I none	
I wil make the myn eyer I swere by seynt Iohan	
Parfay saide Gamelyn and it so be	
And þou pinkest as þou seist gold ȝeld it the	368
No thyng wist Gamelyn of his broþer gyle	
Therefore he hym by-gyled in a litul while	
Gamelyn seide he oo þyng I þe telle	
Tho thow threw my porter in þe drawe wel	372
I swor in þat wrath and in that grete moote	
That þou shuldist be bond both hond <i>and</i> foote	
[.	
.	376
. <i>no gap in the MS.</i>]	
ffor to holden my a-vou as I the be-hote	
Brother seide Gamelyn as mote ȝe the	
þou shalt be for-swore for the loue of me	380

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

Tho maden þei Gamelyn to sitte myght he not stonde
 Til þey hadde him both foot *and* honde
 The fals knyght his broþer of Gamelyn was a-gast
 And sende after fetters to fetteren him fast 384
 His broþer made lesynges on hym þer he stode
 And tolde hem þat comen In þat Gamelyn was wode
 Gamelyn stode to a post bonden in the halle
 Tho that comen In . looked on hym alle 388
 Euere stode Gamelyn euen vp right [leaf 57]
 But mete *and* drynke had he none noþer day ne nyght
 Than saide Gamelyn brothir by myn hals
 Now I haue aspied þou art a party fals 392
 Had I wist þe treson þat þou hast fond
 I wold haue ȝeue strokes or I had be bond
 Gamelyn stode stille bonde as eny stone
 Two dayes *and* two nyghtes mete hadde he none 396
 Than seide Gamelyn þat stode I-bonde strong
 Adam spenser me þinkip I fast to long
 Adam spenser now I beseche the
 ffor þe moche loue my fader loued the 400
 ȝif þou may come to the keyes lese me out of bond
 And I wil parte with the of my fre lond
 Than seide Adam þat was þe spencer
 I haue serued þy brother þis xvj. ȝere 404
 ȝif I let the gon out of his beure
 He wold saie afterward I were a traitour
 Adam seide Gamelyn so brok I myn hals
 Thou shalt fynd my broþer at þe last fals 408
 Therefore broþer Adam lose me oute of bondes
 And I wil parte with the of my fre londes
 Vp suche forward seide Adam I-wis
 I wil do þerto al þat in me is 412
 Adam seide Gamelyn as mote I the
 I wille hold þe couenaunt *and* þou wil me
 Anone as Adams lord to bedde was gone
 Adam toke þe keyes *and* lete Gamelyn oute a-none 416

He vnloked Gamelyn boþe hondes *and* feete
 In hope of auauncement þat he him be-hete
 Than seide Gamelyn þankid be goddes sonde
 Now I am lose boþe foote *and* hande 420
 Hadde I now eten *and* dronken a right
 Ther is none in this hous shuld bynde ne þis nyght
 Adam toke Gamelyn as stille as eny stoon
 And lad hym in to spense raply a-none. 424
 And sette hym to soper right in a priue stede [leaf 57, back]
 He badde him do gladly adam so dide
 Anon as Gamelyn had eten wel *and* fyne
 And þerto I-dronken wel of þe rede wyne 428
 Adam seyde Gamelyn what is now þi rede
 Or I go to my brother *and* gird of his hede
 Gamelyn seid Adam it shal not be so
 I con teche the a rede þat is worth þe two 432
 I wote wel for soþe þat þis is no nay
 We shul haue a mangery right on sonday
 Abbotes *and* prioures mony here shal be
 And oper men of holy chirche as I telle the 436
 Thou shalt stond vp by þe post as þou wer hond fast
 And I shal leue hem vnloke þat a-way þou may hem cast
 Whan þat þei haue eten *and* wasshen her hondis
 Thou shalt biseke hem alle to bryng the oute of bondys
 [. 441
 no gap in the MS.]
 And if eche of hem say to vs nay
 I shal do an oper I swere by þis day 444
 Thou shalt haue a gode staff I wil haue another
 And cristes curs haue þat oon þat falith þat opir
 3e for god seide Gamelyn I sey it for me
 3if I faile on my side euel mote I the 448
 3if we shul algate assoile hem of her synne
 Warne me brother Adam whan we shul be-gynne
 Gamelyn saide Adam by seynt charite
 I wil warne the by-forne whan it shal be 452

Whan I wynke on the loke for to goon
 And caste a-way thy feders *and* come to me anon
 Adam seyde Gamelyn blessed be þy bones
 That is a gode conseil ȝeuen for þe nones 456
 ȝif þey werne me to bryng' þe oute of bondes
 I wil sette gode strokes right on her lendes
 Tho þe sonday was comen *and* folke to þe feste
 ffaire þei were welcomed boþe lest *and* meste 460
 And euere as þey at þe halle dore come Inne
 They cast here eye on ȝong' Gamelyn .
 The fals knyght his brothir ful of trecherye [leaf 88]
 Alle þe gestes þat þer were at þe mangerye 464
 Of Gamelyn his brothir he told hem with mouthe
 Alle þe harme and þe shame þat he telle couthe
 Tho þei were I-serued of messes two or thre
 Than seide Gamelyn how serue ȝe me 468
 It is noght wel serued by god þat all made
 That I sitte fastyng' and oþer men make glade
 The fals knyght his brother þer as he stode
 Told alle gestes that Gamelyn was woode 472
 And Gamelyn stode stille and vnswared noght
 But Adams wordes he held in his þought
 Tho Gamelyn gan speke deofully with alle
 To þe grete lordes þat saten in þe halle 476
 Lordes he saide for cristes passion
 Helpe to bryng' Gamelyn oute of prison
 Than saide an Abbot sorow on his cheke
 He shal haue cristes curs *and* seynt maryes eke 480
 That þe oute of prison beggeþ or borowe
 But euer worth hym wel þat doþe þe moche sorowe
 After þat abbot þan spake an oþer
 I wold þyn heed were of þeiȝ þou were my brother 484
 Alle þat þe borow foul mote hem falle
 Thus þei saide alle þat were in the halle
 Than saide a priour euel mote he preue
 It is grete sorow *and* care boy þou art on lyue 488

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

Ow seide Gamelyn so broke I my bone
 Now I haue spied þat frendes haue I none
 Cursed mote he worth both flessch *and* blood
 That euer doth abbot or priour eny good 492
 Adam þe spense toke vp toke vp þe cloþe
 And loked on Gamelyn *and* say þat he was wroth
 Adam on þe pantrie litul he þought
 [. *no gap in the MS.*] 496
 Adam lokith on Gamelyn *and* he was war anone
 And cast a-way þe feters *and* by-gan to gone
 Tho he come to Adam he toke þe on stafe
 And by-gan to worche *and* good strokes ȝafe 500
 Gamelyn come in to the halle *and* þe spencer boþe [1788, bk]
 And lokid hem a-boute as þei hadde be wroþe
 Gamelyn spreynþ holiwater with a Oken spire
 That some þat stood vp right fel in the fire 504
 Ther was no lewed man þat in þe halle stode
 That wolde do Gamelyn ony þing but gode
 But stoden bisiden and leten hem boþe wirche
 ffor þei hadde no rewth of men of holy chirche 508
 Abbot or priour monk or chanoun
 That Gamelyn ouertoke anon þei ȝeden doun
 Ther was noon of alle þat with his staff mette
 That he made hem ouerthrow *and* quitte hem his dette 512
 Gamelyn seide Adam for seint Charite
 Paye gode lyueray for þe loue of me
 And I wil kepe the dore so euere here I masse
 Er þei ben assoyled ther shaft noon passe 516
 Doute þee nought seide Gamelyn while we ben in fere
 Kepe þou wel þe dore and I wole worche heere
 Bistere þee gode Adam and let ther noon fle
 And we shult telle largely how many þat þer be 520
 Gamelyn seide Adam do hem but gode
 Thei ben men of hooly chirche drawe of hem no blode
 Saue wel þe coroun and do hem no harmes
 But breke bothe her leggis and sithen her armes 524

Thus Gamelyn and Adam wrought^t right fast
 And playde with the monkes and made hem agast
 Thider þei come ryding iolily with swaynes
 And home aȝen þei weren lad in cartes and in waynes 528
 Tho þei hadden alle don þanne seide a gray frere
 Alas sir Abbot what dide we now heere
 Tho þat^t we comen hider it was a cold rede
 Vs hadde ben better at home with water and with brede
 While Gamelyn made ordres of Monkes and frere 533
 Euer stode his brother and made foule chere
 Gamelyn vp with his staff þat^t he wel knewe
 And girt^t hym in þe necke þat he ouerthrewe 536
 A litel aboue the girdel þe rigge boon to-brast [leaf 50]
 And sette hym in þe fetres þere he sat sat^t arst^t
 Sitte þer brother seyde Gamelyn
 fforto colen thi body as I dide myne 540
 As swithe as þei hadden wroken hem of her foon
 Thei asked water and wasshen anoon
 What some for her loue and some for her awe
 Alle þe seruantes serued hem of þe best lawe 544
 The Sherryf was þenne but fyue myle
 And alle was told hym in a lytel while
 How Gamelyn and Adam hadde don a sory res
 Bounden and wounden men aȝens þe kinges pes 548
 Tho bigan soone stryf^t forto wake
 And þe Sherryf aboute Gamelyn for to take
 Now lytheth and lystneth so god ȝeue ȝou good fyne
 And ȝe shullen here good game of ȝong Gamelyne 552
 ffoure and twenty ȝongemen þat helden hem ful bolde
 Come to þe Sherryf and seide þat þei wolde
 Gamelyn and Adam fette by her fay
 The Sherryf ȝeue hem leue soth forto say 556
 They hyeden fast wolde þei not lynne
 Tyl þei come to þe gate ther Gamelyn was Inne
 They knokkiden atte gate þe porter was nygh
 And lokide out at an hole as man þat was sligh 560

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

The porter hadde biholde hem a litel while
 He loued wel Gamelyn and was a-drad of gyle
 And let þe wicket stonde ful stille
 And asked hem withoute what was her wille 564
 ffor al þe gret companye þan spak' but oon
 Vndo þe gate porter and let us yn goon
 Thanne seide þe porter so broke I my chyn
 3e shullen seye 3oure erand er 3e come In 568
 Say to Gamelyn and adam if þer wille be
 We wille speke with hem two wordes or thre
 ffelowe seide þe porter stonde þere stille
 And I wil wende to Gamelyn to wite his wille. 572
 In went þe porter to Gamelyn anoon [leaf 59, back]
 And seide sir I warne 3ou heere be comen 3oure foon
 The Sherrefs men ben atte gate
 fforto take 3ou bothe shul 3e not ascape 576
 Porter seide Gamelyn so mote I wel thee
 I wole allow þee þi wordis whanne y my tyme se
 Go agayn to þe gate and dwelle with hem a while
 And þou shalt se right soone porter/ a gyle 580
 Adam seide Gamelyn loke þee to gone
 We haue fomen atte þe gate and freendes neuere one
 It ben þe Sherryfs men þat hider ben comen
 They ben swore to-gidre þat we shullen be nomen 584
 Gamelyn seide adam hye þee right blyue
 And if I fayle þee þis day yuel mote I thryue
 And we shullen so welcome þe Sherrifs men
 That some of hem shullen make her beddes in þe fen 588
 At a posterne gate Gamelyn out went
 And a good Cartstaff in his hond hent
 Adam hente soone anoþer gret' staff
 fforto helpen Gamelyn and good strokes 3af 592
 Adam fel tweyne and Gamelyn fel three
 The Other sette feet on erþe and bigan to flee
 What seide adam so euere here I masse
 I haue right good wyne drynk' er 3e passe 596

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

Nay bi god seide þei þi drynk' is not goode
 It wolde make mannes brayn to lien in his hooðe
 Gamelyn stode stille and lokide hym aboute
 And seide þe Sherryf cometh with a gret route 600
 Adam seide Gamelyn what ben now þi redes
 Heere cometh the Sherryf and wil haue oure heedes
 Adam seide to Gamelyn my rede is now þis
 Abide we no lenger lest we fare Amys 604
 I rede þat we to wode gone er þat we be founde
 Better is þere louse þan in towne be bounde
 Adam toke by þe hond ʒong' Gamelyn
 And euery of hem drank a draught of wyn 608
 And aftir token her cours and wenten her way (leaf 60)
 Tho fonde the Sherryf nest' but noon Eye
 The Sherryf light downe and wente into halle
 And fonde þe lorde fetred fast withalle 612
 The Sherryf vnfetrede hym right soone Anone
 And sente aftir/ a lege to hele his rygge bone
 Lete we now þe fals knyght lie in his care
 And talke we of Gamelyn and loke howe he fare 616
 Gamelyn into the wode stalkid stille
 And adam spencer/ liked right' ille
 Adam swore to Gamelyn by seint' Richere
 Now I se it' is mery to be a spencere 620
 That leuer/ me were keyes to bere
 Thanne walken in this wilde wode my clothes to tere
 Adam seide Gamelyn dismay thee right' noght'
 Many goode mannes child in care is brought 624
 As þei stode talking' bothen in fere
 Adam herde talking' of men and nygh hym thoght þei were
 Tho Gamelyn vndir/ wode lokide a right
 Seuene score of ʒongemen he se wel I-dight 628
 Alle Sate at þe mete compas aboute
 Adam seide Gamelyn now haue I no doute
 After bale cometh bote thorough goddis myght
 Me þenke of mete and drynk' I haue a sight 632

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

Adam lokide tho vndir/ wode bough
 And tho he Say mete and he was glad ynough
 ffor he hoped to god to haue his dele
 And he was sore alonged aftir a good mele 636
 As he seide þat word þe mayster outlawe
 Sawgh Adam and Gamelyn vndir wode shawe
 ʒongemen seide þe maister bi þe goode Rode
 I am war/ of gestes god send vs goode 640
 ʒonde ben two ʒongemen wel dight
 And perauenture ther ben more who so lokid a right
 Arisith up ʒongemen and fette hem to me
 It is good that we witen what men they be 644
 Vp ther sterten seuene fro the dynere (leaf 60, back)
 And metten with Gamelyn and adam spencere
 Whan þei weren nygh hem þanne seide that one
 ʒeldeth ʒou ʒongemen ʒoure bowes and ʒoure flone 648
 Thanne seide Gamelyn that ʒonge was of eelde
 Mich sorowe mote thei haue þat to ʒou hem ʒelde
 I course noon other/ but right my selue
 Though ʒe fette to ʒou fyue þan be ʒe twelue 652
 Tho þei herde bi his word that myght was in his arme
 Ther was noon of hem þat wolde do hem harme
 But seide to Gamelyn myldly and stille
 Come afore our maister and seie to hym þi wille 656
 ʒongemen seide Gamelyn by ʒoure lewte
 What man is ʒoure maister that ʒe with be
 Alle þei answeride withoute lesyng
 Oure mayster is corouned of outelawis king 660
 Adam seide Gamelyn go we in cristes name
 He may neiþer mete ne drynk werne vs for shame
 If þat he be hende and come of gentyl bloods
 He wole ʒeue us mete and drynk and do us some goode 664
 By seint Iame seide adam what harme þat I gete
 I wil auenture me that I hadde mete
 Gamelyn and adam wente forth in fere
 And þei grette þe mayster þat þei fonde þere 668

Thanne seide the mayster king' of outlawis
 What' seke 3e zongemen vndir wode shawes
 Gamelyn answeride þe king' with his coroun
 He must nedis walke in feeld þat may not walke in toun 672
 Sire we walke not heere noon harme to do
 But if we mete a dere to shete therto
 As men that ben hungry and mowe no mete fynde
 And ben hard bistad vnder wode lynde 676
 Of Gamelyn wordis the maister hadde ruthe
 And seide 3e shal haue ynow haue god my treuthe
 He bad hem sitte down forto take reste
 And bad hem ete and drynke and that of the beste/ 680
 As þei eten and drunken wel and fyne [leaf 61]
 Thanne seide oon to another/ þis is Gamelyne
 Tho was the maister outlawe into Counsel nome
 And tolde how it was Gamelyn that' was thider come 684
 Anone as he herde how it' was bifalle
 He made hym maister vnder hym ouer hem alle
 Withynne the thridde woke hym come tydyng'
 To the maister outlawe that was her king' 688
 That he shulde come home his pees was maad
 And of that good tyding' he was ful glade
 Tho seide he to his zongemen soth forto telle
 Me ben comen tydynges I may no lenger dwelle 692
 Tho was gamelyn anone without' taryng'
 Made maister/ outlawe and corouned her king'
 Tho was Gamelyn crowned king' of outlawes
 And walkide a while vndir wode shawes 696
 The fals knyght his brother/ was Sherene and sire
 And lete his brother endite for hate and for hire
 Tho were his bondemen sory and no þing' glad
 Whanne Gamelyn her lord wolfes heed was cried & maad 700
 And sent' oute of his men where þei myght hym fynde
 ffor to seke Gamelyn vndir wode lynde
 To telle hym tidyng the wynde was went
 And aft' his good reued and alle his men shent 704

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

Whanne þei hadden hym founden on knees þei hem setten
 And a-doun with her hooðe and her lord gretten
 Sire wrathe 3ou nought for þe goode roode
 ffor we haue brought 3ou tydyng but þei be nought gode 708
 Now is þi brother Sherreue and hath the baillie
 And hath endited thee and wolfes heed doth thee crie
 Allas seide Gamelyn þat euere I was so slak'
 That I ne hadde broke his necke tho I his rigge brak' 712
 Goth gretith wel myn husbondes and wyf
 I wil be atte þe next shire and god sende me lyf
 Gamelyn cam redy to þe next shire
 And there was his brother boþe lord and sire 716
 Gamelyn booldlich come into the mote halle [leaf 61, back]
 And putte a-doun his hooðe among the lordis alle
 God saue 3ou lordis that here bee
 But brok' bak' Sherreue yuel mote thou thee 720
 Why hast thou do me that Shame and vylonye
 fforto late endite me and wolfes heed do me crie
 Tho thought the fals knyght fforto ben a-wreke
 And lete Gamelyn most he no thing' speke 724
 Might ther' be no grace but Gamelyn atte þe laste
 Was cast' in prisoun and fetered faste
 Gamelyn hath a brother that hight Sir Ote
 As good a knyght' and hende as myght gone on fote 728
 Anone 3ede a messenger to that' good knyght
 And tolde hym al to-gidre how gamelyn was dight
 Anone as Sir Ote herde how Gamelyn was dight
 He was right Sori. was he no thing' light 732
 And lete saddle a stede and the way he name
 And to his tweye bræþerne ryght' soone he came
 Sir Seide Sir Ote to þe Sherreue tho
 We ben but three briþerne shullen we neuere be mo 736
 And thou hast prisoned the best of vs alle
 Sich another brother/ yuel mote hym bifalle
 Sir Ote seide the fals knyght lat be thi cours
 Bi god for thy wordes he shal fare the wors 740

To the kinges prisoun he is nome
 And there he shal abide tyl the Iustice come
 Parde seide Sir/ Ote better it Shal be
 I bydde hym to maynprise þat þou graunt me 744
 Tyl the next sitting of delyueraunce
 And late thanne Gamelyn stonde to his chaunce
 Brother in siche a forward I take hym to þee
 And bi þi fadris soule þat þee bigat and me 748
 But he be redy whanne the Iustice Sitte
 Thou shalt bere þe Iugement for al thi gret witte
 I graunt wel seide Sir Ote that it so be
 Late delyuer hym anoon and take hym to me/ 752
 Tho was gamelyn delyuered to Sir Ote his brother (leaf 68)
 And that nyght dwellide the oon with the other
 On the morowen seide Gamelyn to Sir Ote þe hende
 Brother he seide I mote forth fro þou wende 756
 To loke how my 3ongemen leden her lyf
 Whether they lyuen in ioye or ellis in stryf
 By god seide sir Ote þat is a cold rede
 Now I see that alle þe cark shall falle on myn hede 760
 ffor whanne þe Iustice sitte and þou be not founde
 I shal anoon be take and in thi stede bounde
 Brother seide Gamelyn dismay thee nought
 ffor by seynt Iame in Gales þat many man hath sought 764
 If þat god almyghty holde me my lyf and my witte
 I wille be redy whanne þe Iustice Sitte
 Thanne seide Sir Ote to Gamelyn god shilde þee fro shame
 Come whanne þou seest tyme and bringe vs out of blame
 Litheth and listneth and holde þou stille 769
 And 3e shullen heere how Gamelyn hadde his wille
 Gamelyn wente vndir wode Rys
 And fonde there playyng 3ongemen of prys 772
 Tho was 3ong Gamelyn right glad ynough
 Whanne he fonde his men vndir wode bough
 Gamelyn and his men talkiden in fere
 And they hadde good game her mayster/ to heere 776

APPENDIX TO GROUP A. GAMELYN. Sloane MS 1685.

His men tolde hym of Auentures þat þei hadde founde
 And Gamelyn hem told aȝen hou he was fast bounde
 Whyle Gamelyn was outlawe hadde he no cors
 Ther was no man that for hym farde the wors 780
 But Abbotes and prioures Monkes and Chanoun
 On hem left he nought whanne he might hem nome
 Whyle Gamelyn and his men made mirthes Ryue
 The fals knyght his brother yuel mote he pryue 784
 ffor he was fast aboute boþe day and other/
 ffor to hire the quest to hangen his brother/
 Gamelyn stode on a day and biheelde
 The wodes and the shawes and the wylde feelde 788
 He thought on his brother how he hym byhette [leaf 62, back]
 That he wolde be redy whanne the Iustice sette
 He thought wel he wolde withoute delay
 Come afore the Iustice to kepen his day 792
 And sayde to his ȝonge men dighteth ȝow ȝare
 ffor whanne the Iustice sitte we must be there
 ffor I am vndir borowe tyl that I come
 And my brother for me to prison shal be nome 796
 By seynt Iame seyde his ȝongemen and þou rede þerto
 Ordeyne how it shal be and it shal be do
 While Gamelyn was comyng þere þe Iustice Satt
 The fals knyght his brother forȝate he not þat 800
 To hire the men on his quest to hangen his brother
 Though they hadde not the oon þei wolde haue þe oþer
 Tho come Gamelyn fro vndir þe wode Rys
 And brought with hym ȝonge men of prys 804
 I see wel seide Gamelyn the Iustice is sette
 Go aforn Adam and loke how it spette
 Adam went into þe halle and lokide al aboute
 He say þere stonde lordes grete and stoute 808
 And sir Ote hir brother fetered ful fast
 Tho wente Adam oute of þe halle as he were agast
 Adam seyde to Gamelyn and to his felowes alle
 Sir Ote stondith fetered in the mote halle 812

[.
 *no gap in the MS.*]

If god ȝeue vs grace wel for to do
 He shal it abigge that it brought þerto 816
 Thanne seide Adam þat lokkes hadde hore
 Cristes curs mote he haue þat hym bonde so sore
 And þou wolt Gamelyn do aftir my rede
 Ther is none in the halle þat shal bere away his hede 820
 Adam seide Gamelyn we wille not do so
 We wil sle þe gyltif and late þe other go
 I wil into þe halle and with the Iustice speke
 On hem þat ben gyltif I wil ben a-wreke 824
 Lete none scape atte þe dore take ȝongemen ȝeme
 ffor I wil be Iustice þis day domes to deme [Sloane 1685 wants
 2 leaves]
 God spede me þis daye And my newe werke [MS Reg. 17 D xv.
 leaf 78, back]
 Adam come with me ffor þou schalte be my Clarke
 His Men answerede hym And badde hym doone his best
 And yefe þou to vs haue nede þou schalte ffynde vs prest
 We wolff stonde with the whyle þat we maye dure
 Butte we werke Manzelye paye vs none hyere 832
 Yonge Men sayde Gamelyn so motte I wellf thee
 As trusty A Mayster ȝe schulfe fynde of me
 Righte there As the Iustyce satte in the halle
 In wente Gamelyn Amonges hem all [leaf 79] 836
 Gamelyn lete vnfetter his brother owte of bonde
 Than sayde Sir Ote his broþere þat was hende
 Thou haddeste Almoste Gamelyn dwellede to longe
 The qweste is owte of Me þat I schulde honge 840
 Brother sayde Gamelyn As god yeue me gode reste
 This daye þey schullen be hangede þat bene on thy qweste
 And the Iustyce bothe that is the Iugge Man
 And þe Schryve boþe þroughe hym hitt biganne 844
 Than sayde Gamelyn to the Iustyce
 Now is thy power doone þou Muste nedes Aryse
 Thou haste youen domes þat bene euyffe dyghte
 I wolff sytten in þe Sete And dressen hem aryghte 848

The Iustyce sate styffe And rose notte anōne
 And Gamelyn cleuede his Cheke bone
 Gamelyn toke hym in his Armes *and* no more spake
 Butte prewe hym ouer the barre *and* his Arme brake 852
 Durste none to Gamelyn saye butte gode
 ffor ffere of the Company þat withoute stode
 Gamelyn sette hym downe in the Iustyce stede
 [. 856
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 Harken of bourde that Gamelyn tho dyde
 He lette ffettere his brother *and* þe ffalse Iustyce
 And lete hem come to þe barre þat oone with that other
 Tho Gamelyn hadde þus ydone hadde he no reste 861
 Tyffe he hadde enquerede who was on the qweste
 ffor to demen *sir* Ote his brother ffor to honge
 Or he wyste whiche þey were itt þoughte hym to longe 864
 Butte As soone as Gamelyn wyste where they were
 He dydde hem euerychone fettren in ffere
 And bryngen hem to the barre And sette hem in rewe
 By my faythe sayde the Iustyce þe Schryve is A schrewe
 Than sayde Gamelyn to the Iustyce 869
 Thou haste youen domes of the worste Assyce
 And the xij sysours that weren of the qweste
 They schuffe to daye be hangede So god yeue me gode reste
 Than sayde the Schryve to yonge Gamelyn 873
 Lorde I crye the Mercye brother Arte thou Myne
 Therefor sayde Gamelyn haue thou Cristes curse
 ffor And thou were Mayster yett schulde I ffare worse [1179, 11]
 ffor to make schorte tale And notte to longe
 He ordeynede hym A qweste of his men so stronge
 The Iustyce *and* the Schryve bothe hangede hye
 To wayuen with the ropes And with the wynde drye 880
 And the xij sisours Sorrowe haue þat recke
 All they were hangede ffaste by the necke
 Thus endede the ffalse knyghte with his treccherye
 That euer hadde ledde his lyfe in ffalsenesse *and* ffollye 884

He was hangede by the necke *and* noughte by the purse
 That was the Mede þat he hadde ffor his ffaders curse
 Sir Ote was eldeste And Gamelyn was yonge
 Wenten with her ffrendes *and* passede with the kyng 888
 They made pease with the kyng on the beste syse
 The kyng louede Sir Ote weft And made hym Iustyce
 And after the kyng made Gamelyn boþe in Este *and* Weste
 Chyfe Iustyce of his fre fforeste 892
 Aft his wyghte yonge Men þe kyng foryaue her gylte
 And sythen in gode office þe kyng hadde aft hem pylte
 Thus wyse wanne Gamelyn his londe *and* his lede
 And wrake hym of his ennemyes And qwyttē hem her Mede
 And Sir Ote his brother Made hym his heyer 897
 And sythen weddede Gamelyn A wyfe boþe gode *and* ffayer
 They lyueden togider whyle that Criste wolde
 And sythen was Gamelyn grauen vnder Molde 900
 And So schafft we aft Maye þer no Man flee
 God brynge vs to the Ioye þat euer schafft be
 Here endith the tale of the Coke

[NOTICE—Inasmuch as, after the *Man of Law's Tale*, the order of the Tales in the *Cambridge MS* differs from the right order of the Tales in which the *Six-Text* is to be arranged, the further issue of the separate Cambridge Parts is suspended till all the Tales before the *Shipman's* in the Cambridge MS have been issued in the *Six-Text*. Then the proper pagings of the separate Cambridge sheets can be ascertained, and a large Part will be issued, bringing the separate issue abreast of the *Six-Text*. See the following scheme :—

<i>Six-Text</i>		<i>Cambridge MS.</i>
rest of Group B {	SHIPMAN Prioress Thopas Melibeus Monk Nun's Priest	Group D { Wife of Bath Friar Summoner
Group C {	Doctor Pardoner	Group E { Clerk Merchant
Group D {	Wife of Bath Friar Summoner	Group F { Squire Franklin
Group E {	Clerk Merchant	Group G { Doctor Pardoner
Group F {	Squire Franklin	rest of Group B { SHIPMAN Prioress Thopas Melibeus Monk Nun's Priest
Group G {	Second Nun Canon's Yeoman	Group G { Second Nun Canon's Yeoman
Group H	Manciple	Group H Manciple
Group I	Parson	Group I Parson]

1 January, 1871.

GROUP B. (α. FRAGMENT II.)

§ 1. MAN OF LAW'S HEAD-LINK.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

[*Harleian MS 1758, leaf 55, back.*]

Here begynneth the Prolog of the man of lawe.

ure Oste saugh weñ that the bright sonne.

o The arke of his artafricañ had ronne.

The fourthe parte & half an houre & more.

And though he were not deep experte in lore. 4

He wist it was the .xviij. day.

Of Aprill that is messenger/ to May.

And saugh weñ that the schadow of euery tre.

Was as in lengthe the same quantite. 8

That was the body erecte that causid it. [*Harl. extract ends*]

And þerfore by þe schadewe he tok hese wit [*Cambr. MS, leaf 194*]

That phebue which þat schon so cler & bryȝt

Degreis fyue & forty I-clombe on hyȝt 12

And for þat day as in þat latytude

It was ten of þe klok he gan conclude

And sodeynly he plyȝte hese hors a-boute

Lordyngis *quod* he I warne ȝow al þis route 16

The fourte party of þis day is gon

Now for þe loue of god & seynt Iohn

Leseth no tyme as fer forth as ȝe may

Lordyngis it wastyȝt nyȝt & day 20

And stelyȝt from vs what priuily slepyȝe

And what þerwith neelygence In oure wakyȝe

As doth þe strem þat turnyȝt neuere a-geyn

Dessendyȝe from þe monteyn In-to pleyȝn 24

Wel can senykeke & manye a phylisofere

Bewaylyn tyme more þan gold in cofere

for los of catel may recouerede be

But los of tyme schendyȝt vs *quod* he 28

10 CAMBRIDGE 129 [part Harl. 1758]

130 GROUP B. § 1. MAN OF LAW'S HEAD-LINK. Cambridge MS.

It wele not come a-geyn with-outyn drede	
No more þan wele malkenys maydynhede	
Whan sche hath lost it in here wantounnesse	
Let vs not moulyn þus in ydylnesse	32
Syre man of lawe so haue 3e blys	
Telle vs a tale now as forward is	
3e ben submyttit þour 3oure fre assent	
To stondyn in þis cas at myn Iugement	36
A-quytht 3ow now of 3oure be-heste	
þanne haue 3e don 3oure deuyr at þe leste	
Host quod he depardeux I assente	
To brekyn forward is not myn entente	40
Byheste is dette & I wele holde fayn	
Al myn beheste I can no betere seyn	
ffor swich lawe as man 3euyth a-noper wyȝt	
He schulde hym selue vse it be right	44
Thus wele oure tyxt / but natheles serteyn	
I can not now non thrifty tale seyn	[leaf 194, back]
That Chaucer thoughte he can but lewedely	
On metris & on rymyng craftyly	48
As seyde hem in swich engelych as he can	
Of olde tyme as knowyth manye a man	
And ȝif he haue not seyde hem leue broþer	
In on bok he hath seyde hem in a noper	52
ffor he hath told of louerys vp & down	
Mo þan ouyde made of mencyoun /	
In hese episteff þat ben ful olde	
What schulde I telle hem syn þat þey ben tolde	56
In 3outhes he made of Ceys & alceoun	
And syþe hap he spoke of euerychon	
These nobele wyuys & þese louteris ek	
Who so þat wole hese large volum sek	60
Clepid þe seyntis legende of cupide	
There may he se þe large woundis wyde	
Of lucesse & of babiloy n Tisbee	
The swerd of dido for þe false Ence	64

GROUP B. § 1. MAN OF LAW'S HEAD-LINK. Cambridge MS. 131

The tre of philt for here demephoun
 The pleynt of dyane & of hermyoun
 Of adryane & of Isiphilee
 The barayne yle standynge in þe se 68
 The dreynthe leandere for hese erro
 The terys of elyne & ek þe wo
 Of brixseyde & of þe ladomya
 The cruelte of þe quene media 72
 Thy lityl childeryn hangynge by þe hals
 ffor thy Iason þat was in loue so fuls
 O ypermystre penolopee Alceste
 3oure wifhod be commendit with þe beste 76
 But serteynly no word wryty[t]h he
 Of thilk ensaunple of Canacee
 That louede here owene broþer synfully
 Of swiche cursede storyis I seye fy 80
 Or ellis of Thiro appolonyus
 [How þe cursid kynge Anciocus [Sloane MS 1685, leaf 68.]
 Byrafte hys douȝtir hir Maydenhede
 þat ys so horrible a tale for to here 84
 Whan he hir þrowe þorough þe pament
 And þ[er]fore he of full avisement
 Wolde nevere write in none of his sermones
 Of whiche vnkynde abhomynacioñs 88
 Ne I·ne wil non reherse if þat I may
 But of my tale how shalle doo þis day
 Me were lothe he lykned douteles
 To Muses þat men clepen pieriedes 92
 Metham-orphaseos wot wat y mene
 But natheles I ne reche not a bene
 Thoughe y· come after hym with aw bake
 I speke in prose & let hym Rymes make 96
 And with þat worde he with a sobre chere
 By-gan his tale as ye shul after here 98
 Here endithe þe prolooge & bygynnithe þe tale

[No break in the MS here or between the stanzas.]

CAMBRIDGE 131 [part Sloane 1685]

[THE PROLOGUE.]

O hatfulle harme condiciõ of pouert [Sloane MS 1685]
 With thrust with colde with hungre so confunded
 To asken helpe þe shameth in þine hert
 If þou now axe with nede arte þou so wounded
 That verray nede vnwrappid al þi wounde hyd [leaf 63, back]
 Maugre þine hede þou moste for Indegens
 Or stele or beggo or borowe þi dispense 105

Thou blamest crist & seyst fulle vtterly
 He in his departith rycheesse temporal
 Thy neghboure þou witest synfully
 And seyste þou haste to lytelle & he hath alle 109
 Par fay seyste þou some tyme þou reken shalle
 Whan þat his tayle shal brenne in þe glede
 ffor he nouȝt helpith nedefulle in her nede 112

Herkene what ys þe menyng of þe wise
 Bet is to dien þan to haue Indigence ·
 Thy self neghbore wol þe dispice
 If þou be pore fare wele þi reuerence 116
 Ȝet of þe wise man take þis sentence ·
 Alle dayes of pore men be wykke
 Be ware þerfore or þou com in þat prik / 119

If þou be pore þi Brother hatith þe
 Alle þi ffrendes fleen fro þe Allas ·
 O riche merchantes ful of wele be ȝe¹
 O noble prudent folke as in þis cas¹
 youre bagges buth not fullyd with ambes ais
 But with sys synke þat renneth of your' chaunce.
 At cistes masse merie may ye daunce. 126

CAMBRIDGE 182 [this page, Sloane 1685]

[¹ The MS transposes these two lines.]

3e sechen londe and See for your' wynnynge
 As wyse folkes þat knowen alle þe staat /
 Of regnes ye ben fadres & tydynge
 And tales bothen of pees & debate 130
 I were riȝt nowe of talyss dissolate
 Nere þat a marchaunt goon ys many 'a' yeere
 Me taught' a tale whiche as 3e shal here [Sloane extract ends.]

[Lines 981-7, p. 161, are repeated in the MS, leaf 208. Here is the second version, marked, in a later hand, vatat, for vacat, at the side:—

This senatourys wif hyre aunte was
 But for al þat sche knew hyre neuere þe more
 I wele no lengere taryen in þis cas
 But to kyng alla which I spak of ȝore
 That for his wyf wepith & sykyth sore
 I wele returne & lete I wele custauce
 Vndyr þe senatourys gouernaunce]

[THE TALE.]

[PART I.]

In Surry whilom dwellede a c[u]mpaignye [Cambridge MS,
leaf 196.]
 Of chapmen riche & *perto* sadde & trewe
 That wide where sentyn here spicerye
 Clothis of gold & satyns ryche of hewe 137
 Here chaffare was so thrifty & so newe
 That euery wight hath deynte to chaffare
 With hem & ek to sellen hem here ware 140

Now fil it that þe maysteris of þat sort
 Han shapyn hem to rome for to wende
 Were it for chapmanhod or for disport
 Non *oper* message wolde he dedyr sende 144
 But comyn hem self to rome þis is thende
 And in swich place as thoghte hem thawauntage
 ffor hire entent þey take hire herbergage 147

Soiournyd han þese marchauntis in þat toun
 A serteyn tyme as fel to here plesaunce
 But so be-fel þat thexxselent renoun
 Of themperourys doghter dame Custaunce 151
 Reportid was with euery circumstance
 Vn-to thys surryne marchantys in swich wise
 ffrom day to day as I schal ȝow deuyse 154

This was the comune voys of euery man
 Oure emperoure of rome god hym se
 A doughtir hath þat syn þe world be-gan
 To rekene as wel here goodnes as here beute 158
 Was neuere swich a-*noþer* as is sche
 I preye to god in honour here sustene
 And wolde sche were of al Europe þ' quene 161

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 135

In here is high beute with-oute pryde
 3outhē with-oute grenehede or folye¹ [in a later hand]
 To alle here werkys vertu is here gyde
 Humblesse hath slayn in here al tyrannye 165
 Sche is myroure of alle curteysye
 Here herte is verray chambyr² of holynesse [or chamber]
 Hire hand mynystre of fredom for almesse 168

And al þis voys was soth as god is trewe [leaf 196, back]
 But now to purpos lat vs turne ageyn
 These marchantys han don frauȝt here schepis newe
 And whan þey han þis blysful maydyn seyn 172
 Hom to surry ben þey went ful feyn
 And on here nedys as þey³ don ful ȝore [han put-in in a later hand]
 And lyuen in wele I can sey ȝow no more 175

Now fil it þat these marchantys stode in grace
 Of hym þat was þe soudon of surrye
 ffor whan þey come from ony strange place
 He wolde of hese benygne curteysye 179
 Make hem good cher & besyly espye
 Tydyngis of sundery regnys for to lere
 The wonderis þat he myȝhte sen or here 182

Amongis opere thyngis specially
 These marchauntis han hym told of dame Custaunce
 So gret noblesse in earnest certeynly
 That this soudan hath cauȝt so gret plesaunce 186
 To han hyre fygure in hese remembraunce
 And al hese lust & al hese besy cure
 Was for to loue here whil his lyf may dure 189

Peraunture in thilke large boke
 Which þat clepid is þe heuene I-wretyn was
 With sterrys whan þat he hese berthe tok
 That he for loue schulde han hese deth allas 193

136 GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

ffor in þe sterres clerere than is glas
 Is wreten god wot ho so coude it rede
 The deth of euery man / with outyn any drede 196

In sterres manye a wyntyr there be-forn
 Was wretyn þe deth of ector achilles
 Of pompeye Ielyus er þey were born 200
 The stryf of thebes & of hercules
 Of sampson Thurnus & of socrates
 The deth but menys wittys ben so dulle
 That no with can wel rede it at þe fulle 203

This soudon for hese priuy conseyl sente [leaf 197]
 And schortely of þis matiere for to pace
 He hath to hem declarede his entente
 And seyde serteyn but he myȝte han grace 207
 To han custauce with-inne a lytyl space
 He nas but ded & chargede hem in hye
 To schapyn for hese lyf sum remedye 210

Dyuerse men dyuerse thyngys seydyn
 They argumentyn & castyn vp & doun
 Manye a subtyl reson forþ þey leydyn
 They spekyn of Magyk & Abusioun 214
 But fynally as in conclusioun
 They can not sen in that non auantage
 Ne in non othir woye saue maryage 217

Thanne sawe they þerin swich difficulte
 Be weye of reson for to speke al pleeyn
 Be cause þere was / swich dyuercyte
 Be-twethyn here bothe lawys þat þey seyn 221
 They trowede that no crystene prynce wolde fayn
 Weddyn his chyld vndyr oure lawys swete
 That vs was tauȝt be mahoun oure prophete 224

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 137

And he answerde rapere than I lese
 Constance I wele ben cristened douteles
 I mote ben hers / I may non oþer chese
 I prey ȝow holde ȝoure argument in pes 228
 Sauyth myn lyf & beth nat recheles
 To getyn here that hath myn lyf in cure
 ffor in þis wo I may not longe endure 231

What nedyth grettere dilatacioun
 I sey be tretys & enbassadrye
 And bi þe popis mediacioun
 And al the cherch & þe chyualrye 235
 That in distruccioun of mametrye
 And in encres of Crystes lawe dere
 They ben ecordit so as ȝe schal here 238

How þat the soudan & hese baronage [leaf 197, back]
 And alle hese lyges schulde cristenede be
 And he schal haue custaunce in maryage
 And serteyn gold I not what quantyte 242
 And heer to fyndyn sufficient suretee
 This same a-cord was sworn on eyþer syde
 Now fayre Custaunce al-myȝty god ȝow gyde 245

Now wolde sum men waytyn as I gesse
 ȝit I schulde telle al þe puryaunce
 That þe emperour of his greete noblesse
 Hath schapyn for hese doughtur¹ dame¹ Custaunce [altered]
 Wel may men knowe þat so gret ordenaunce
 May no man telle in swich a lytyl clause
 As was arayed for so high a cause 252

Byschopis ben schapyn with here for to wende
 Lordyngis ladyis knyȝtis of renoun
 And opere folk I-nowe this is the ende
 And notyfied is thorw out þe toun 256

That euery knyȝt with gret deuocioun
 Schulde preye crist þat he this maryage
 Receyue In gre & spede þis viage 259

The day is come of here departynge
 I sey the woful fatal day is come
 That þere may be no lengere taryinge
 But forward þey hem drese alle & some 263
 Custaunce that was with sorwe al ouyrcome
 fful pale a-ryst & dreseth here to wende
 ffor weel sche seeth there is non oþer ende 266

Allas no wondir is it þow sche wepte
 That schal be sent in-to straunge nacioun¹ [1 altered]
 ffor frendys that so tenderly here kepte
 And to ben boundyn vndyr subieccyoun 270
 Of on sche knowyth not hese condicioun
 Housbondis ben alle goode & han been ȝore
 That knowyn wyuys I dar sey ȝow no moore 273

ffadyr sche seyde þyn wrechede chyld Custaunce [leaf 196]
 Thi ȝonge douȝty fosterede vp so softe
 And ȝe myn modyr myn souereyn plesaunce
 Ouer alle thynges out take cryst on lofte 277
 Custaunce ȝore child hire recomaundyth ofte
 Vn-to ȝoure grace for I schal to surrye
 Ne schal I neuere sen ȝow more with eye 280

Allas vn-to þe barbre nacioun
 I muste anon sithe þat it is ȝoure wille
 But cryst þat starf for our redempcyoun
 So ȝeue me grace hese hestis to fulfille 284
 I wreche woman no fors thow I spille
 Wemen are bore to thraldam & penaunce
 And to ben vndyr manys gouernaunce 287

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 139

I trowe at troye whan pirrus brak þe wal
 Or ylion brende at thebes the cetee
 Nat rome for þe harm þorw hanybal
 That romaynys han enqueschid tymys three 291
 Nas herd swich tendere wepyng for pete
 As in the chaumbere was for here departyng
 But forth sche muste / where so sche wepe or syng 294

O fyrste moeuyng crewel fyrmament
 With thi dyurnal which þat croudist ay
 And hurlyst al from est til occident
 That naturally wolde holde a-noper way 298
 Thi croudyng set þe heuene in swich aray
 At þe begynyng of this ferse viage
 That crewel mars hath slaye þis maryage 301

Infortunat ascendent tortuous
 Of which þe lord is helpeles falle allas
 Out of hese angels in-to þe derkeste hous
 O mars o atazer as in this cas 305
 O febele mone vn-happi ben thi pas
 Thow knyttist þe þere þat art not reseuyd
 There þow were wel from thens art thow weuyd 308

Inprudent Emperour of Rome allas [leaf 198, back]
 Whas þere no philisophere in al thyn toun
 Is no tyme bet þan oper in swich cas
 Of viage is þere non eleccioun 312
 And namely to folk of high condicioun
 Nat whan a rote is of a burthe I-knowe
 Allas we ben to lewede & to slowe 315

To schip is brouȝt this woful fayre mayde
 Solempnely with euery circumstance
 Now Ihesu crist be with ȝow alle sche seide¹ [altered from sende]
 There is namore but fare wel fayre Custaunce 319

Sche peynyth here to make good cuntenaunce
 And forth I lete here sayle in this manere
 And turne I wele a-geyn to myn matere 322

The modyr of the soudon welle of vices
 Espyed hath here sonys playn entente
 How he wolde lete his olde sacrifices
 And ryȝt a-non sche for here conseyll sente 326
 And they be come to knowe what sche mente
 And whan assembeled were þe folk en feere
 Sche sette here down & seyde as ȝe schal here 329

Lordys *quod* sche ȝe heryn euerychon
 How þat myn sone in poynt is for to lete
 The holy lawis of oure alkaron
 ȝeuen be goddys message Makometa 333
 But on a wow to grete god I heete
 The lyf schal rapere out of myn body sterte
 On makometes lawe out of myn herte 336

What schulde vs tydyn of this newe lawe
 But thraldam to oure bodyis & penaunce
 And aftyr in helle for to be drawe
 ffor we reneyede mahoun oure creaunce 340
 But lordis wele ȝe makyn a suraunce
 As I schal seyn assentyng to myn lore
 And I schal make vs saf for euere more 343

They sworyn & assentyn euery man [leaf 190]
 To lyue with hyre & deye & by here stonde
 And eueryche in þe beste wyse sche can
 To strenthe here schal alle here frendis fonde 347
 And sche hath this empyrse take on honde
 Whiche ȝe schal here that I schal deuysel
 An[d] to hem alle sche spak ryth in þis wyse 350

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 141

We schul fyrst feyne vs cristene-dam to take
 Cold watyr schal nat greue vs but a lite
 And I schal swich a feste & reuel make
 That as I trowe I schal the soudon quyte 354
 ffor thow hese wyf be crystenede neuere so whyte
 Sche schal han neede to wasche a-wey the reede
 Thow sche a funt ful of watyr with here leede 357

O soudonesse roote of iniquite
 Virago thow semiamie the secunde
 O serpent vndyr femynynyte
 Lyk to the serpent deepe in helle I-bounde 361
 O feynede woman al that may conffounde
 Vertu & innocence thour thyn maleyce
 Is bred in þe / as nest in euery vice 364

O satan enuyous syn thilke day
 That þou were chasede þour oure erytage
 Wel knowyst þou to wemen þe elde way
 Thow madist eua brynge vs in seruage 368
 Thow wilt for-don this cristene maryage
 Thyn Instreument so weyleaway the whyle
 Makyst þou of wemen wan þou wit begile 371

This soudonesse whom I þus blame & warye
 Let pryuyly hire conseyll gon here way
 What schulde I in this tale lengere tarye
 Sche rydith to þe soudan on a day 375
 And seyde he wolde receyue hire lay
 And cristendom of prestis hondis fonge
 Repentyng hire sche hethene was so longe 378

Be-sekyng hem ¹ to don here þat honour [leaf 198, back]
 That sche muste haue þe crystene folk to feste [1 altered from here]
 To plesyn hem I wele don myn labour
 The soudon seyth I wele don at þoure heste 382

And kenelynge thankyth here of þat requeste
 So glad he was he nyste what to seye
 Sche kyste here sone / & hom sche goth here weye 385

[PART II.]

Aryuede ben these crystene men to londe
 In surrey with a gret solempne route
 And hastiliche þis soudan sente hese sonde
 ffyrst to hese modir & al hese regne a-boute 389
 And seyde hese wyf was comyn out of doute
 And preyede hire to ryde a-ȝen þe quene
 The honour of hese regne to sustene 392

Gret was þe pres & riche was tharay
 Of surreynys & romeynys met in fere
 The modyr of the soudan ryche & gay
 Receyuyth hire with also glad a chere 396
 As any modir myȝte hire douȝtyr dere
 And to þe nexte sete þere be syde
 A softe pas solempnely þey ryde 399

Noght trowe I þe triumphe of Iulius
 Of which þat lucan makyth swich a bost
 Was royallere ne more curyous
 þan was thasemble of þis blysful ost 403
 But þis scorioun þis wekede gost
 The soudonesse for al hyre flaterynge
 Caste vndyr this ful mortali to styngre 406

The soudan comyth hym self sone after this
 So roiali þat wondir is to telle
 He wolcomyth hire with al ioye & blys
 And þus in merthe & ioye I lete hem dwelle 410

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 143

The freut of this matiere is þat I telle
 Whan tyme cam men thouȝte it for þe beste
 That reuel stynte & men gone to here reste 413

The tyme cam this olde soudonesse [leaf 200]
 Ordeynyd hath this feste of which I telle
 And to þe feste cristene folk hym dresse 417
 In general ȝe bothe ȝyng & olde
 Here may men feste & rialte be-holde
 And deynteis mo þan I can ȝow deuyse
 But al to dere they bouȝte it er they ryse 420

O sodeyn wo that euere art successour
 To wordely blysse spreynt with bittyrnesse
 Thende of the ioie of oure wordely labour
 Who occupiet the fyn of oure gladnesse 424
 Herken þis conseyll for thyn sekyrnesse
 Vp-on thyn glade day haue in thyn mynde
 The onwar wo or harm that comyth be-hynde 427

ffor schortely for to tellyn at on word
 The soudon & the crystene euerychone
 Ben al to-hewe & stikid at the bord
 But it were only dame custaunce a-lone 431
 This olde soudanesse cursede crone
 Hath with here frendis don this cursede dede
 ffor sche here selue wolde at the cuntre lede 434

Ne þere was surreyn non that was conuertid
 That of the conseyll of the soudon wot
 That he was hewe er that he a-started
 And custaunce han they take a-non fot hot 438
 And in a schip al stereles god wot
 They han hire set & bidde hire lerne sayle
 Out of surrie a-geyn ward to ytayle 441

A serteyn trosor that sche theper ladde
 And soth to sayn vitayle gret plente
 They han hyre ȝeuyn & clothis ech sche hadde
 And forth sche saylyth in the salte see 445
 O myn custaunce ful of benyngnete
 O emperouris douȝtyr ȝonge dere
 He that is lord of fortune be thi stere 448

Sche blyseth hire & with ful pitous voys [leaf 200, back]
 On to the Croys of *crist* thus seyde sche
 O cler o wilful auter holy cros
 Reed of the lambis blod ful of pite 452
 That wesch þe world from old inquite
 Me from the fend & from hese clawis kepe
 That day þat I schal drenchyn in þe deepe 455

Victorious tre protexioun of trewe
 That only worthy were for to bere
 The kyng of heuene withese woundis newe
 The white lomb that hurt was wyt a spere 459
 flemere of feendis out of hym & hire
 On which thyn lyfis feythfully extenden
 Me kep & ȝif me myȝt myn lyf to a-menden 462

ȝeerys & dayis fleth this creature
 Torw-out the strem of grece in-to strayte
 Of marrok whiche that was hese auenture
 On manye a sory Mel now may ȝe beyte 466
 Aftyr hire deth ful ofte may sche wayte
 Er than þe wylde wawys wole here dryue
 Vn-to the place there sche schal a-ryue 469

Men myȝtyn axsyn whi sche was not slayn
 Ek at the feste ho myȝte hire body saue
 And I answeze to that demaunde a-gayn
 Ho sauede daniel in þe orybele caue 473

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 145

There euery with saue he maystyr & knave
Was with the lyoun frete er he a-sterle
Non wigh but god þat he bar in hese herte 476

God lyste to schewe his wondyrful merakele
In hire for we schud sen hise myzty werkys
Cryst which þat is / to euery harm tryakele
Be serteyn mene oftyn as knowyn klerkes 480
Doth thyng to serteyn ende þat ful derk is
To maanys wit that for oure ignoraunce
Ne kunne not knowe hese prudent puruyaunce 483

Now sythe sche was not at the feste slawee [leaf 201;]
Who kepte hyre from the drenchynge in þe see
Who kepte Ionas in the fyschis mawee
Thil he was spoutid out at niniuee 487
Wel may men knowe it was no wízt but he
That kepte þe peple Ebrayk from here drenchynge
With dreye feet thorw-out þe se passynge 490

Who bad the foure spirytis of tempest'
That power han tanoyen lond & se
Bothe north & south & also west & est'
Anoyeth neyþer se lond ne tree 494
Sothly the comaundour was hee
That from the tempest ay¹ this¹ woman kepte [1 altered]
As wel whan sche wok as whan sche slepte 497

Where myzte this woman mete or drynk haue
Thre þer & more how lastyth hire vitayle
Ho fedde þe egipcien marye in þe caue
Or in desert no wízt but crist sauns fayle 501
ffyue thousent folk it was a gret meruayle
With lounys fyue & fyschis too to feede
God sente hese foyssoun at here moste neede 504

Sche dryuyth forth in-to oure occian
 Thour-out oure wilde see til at þe laste
 Vndyr an hold þat nemenyn I ne can
 ffor in northumbyrlond the wawis hire caste 508
 And in þe se hire schip stekede so faste
 That þens ne wolde it not of al a tide
 The wyl of here was þat sche schulde a-byde 511

The constabele of þe Castel down is fare
 To sen þis wrak & al þe schip he souzte
 And fond þis wery woman ful of care
 He fond also þe tresore þat sche brouzte 515
 In hyre langage mercy sche be-souzte
 The lyf out of hire body to twynne
 Hire to delyuere of woo þat sche was inne 518

A maner latyn corrupt was hire speche [leaf 201, back]
 But algatis þerbi was sche vndir-sonde
 The Constabele whan hym lyste no lengere seche
 This woful woman brouzte he to the londe 522
 Sche knelyth down & thankyth godis sonde
 But what sche was sche durste no man seye
 ffor foul ne fayr thow þat sche schulde deye 525

Sche seyde sche was so masede in the see
 That sche forgat hire mynde by hyre¹ trouthe [1 altered]
 The cunstabele hath of hire gret pite
 And ek his wif that þey wepe for routhe 529
 Sche was so diligent with-outyn slouthe
 To serue & plesse eueryche in þat place
 That alle hyre louyn þat lokyn in hyre face 532

This constabil & dame hermengylt his wyf
 Were payenys in þat cuntrey euery where
 But Ermengylt louede hire ryzt as hire lyf
 And Custaunce hath so longe soiurnede þere 536

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 147

In orisounys with manye a bittere tere
Til Ihesu hath conuertede þour hese grace
Dame Ermengilt Constabellese of þat place 539

In al þat lond no cristene durste at route
Alle cristen folk ben fled from þat cuntre
Thour poynmys þat conqueredyn al a-boute
The plagis of the north & se 543
To walis fledde þe cristianyte
Of olde brytunys dwellynge in þis yle
There was hire refeut for the mene while 546

But ȝit nere cristene britounys so exiled
þat þere nere some þat in hire priuite
Honourede crist & hethene folk begilede
And n[il]gh þe castel¹ swich¹ þere dweltyn thre [² altered] 550
That on of hem was blynd & myȝte not se
But it were with þe ilke eyen of hise mynde
Wit[h] whiche men sen aftyr þat þey ben blynde 553

Bryȝt was þe sune as in þat someris day [leaf 202]
ffor which þe Constabel & hese wyf also
And custauce hath I-take þe ryȝte way
Toward þe se a furlong wey or to 557
To pleyen & to romyn too & fro
And in hire walk þis blynde man þey mette
Crokid & old with eyen faste I-schette 560

In name of cryst cryede þis blynde Erytoun
Dame Hermengelt ȝif me myn syȝt a-geyn
This lady wex a-freyed of þe soun
Lest þat hire husbonde schortly for [to] seyn 564
Wolde hire for ihesu crist han slayn [² altered]
Til Custauce made hire bold & bad hire for to werche²
The wil of crist as doughtyr of hise cherche 567

The Constabele wex a-baschid of that syȝt
 And seyde what amounty[t]h al þis fare
 Custaunce answerȝ syre it is cristis myȝt
 That helpith folk out of þe fendis snare 571
 And so fer forth sche gan oure lay declare
 That sche þe Constabele er þan it was eue
 Conuertid & on cryst made hym bileue 574

This Constabele was no pyng lord of þis place
 Of whiche I speke þere he constaunce fond
 But kepte it strongely manye a wynteris space
 Vndir alla kyng of al northhumbir londe 578
 That was ful wys & worthi of hese honde
 A-geyn þe skottis as men may wel here
 But turne I wele a-gen to myn matyere 581

Satan þat euere wayth vs to be-gyle
 Saugh of Custaunce al þe perfeccioun
 And caste a-non how he myȝte quite hire while
 And made a ȝong kn[y]ght þat dwellede in þat toun 585
 Loue hire so hote of foul affeccioun
 That verayly hym thouȝte he schulde spille
 But he of hire myȝte onys haue hese wille 588

He wowyth hire but it a-uaylyth nouȝt [leaf 202, back]
 Sche wolde don no synne be no weye
 And for dispit he compassith in his thouȝt
 To makyn hyre on schamful deth to deye 592
 He waythith whan þe Constable is a-weye
 And priui vp-on a nyȝt he crepte
 In-to Hermengildis chaumbere whil sche slepte 595

Wery for-wakede in hire orysouns
 Slepith custaunce and hemegild also
 This knyȝt þour satanys temptacions
 Al softeli is to þe bed I-go 599

And kitte þe throte of Hermegild a too
 And leyde þe blodi knyf be dame Custaunce
 And wente his wey þere god ȝyf hym myschaunce 602

Sone after comyth this Constabele hom ageyn
 And ek .Ala. þat kyng was of þat lond /
 And saw his wif dispitously I-slayn
 ffor which ful ofte he wepte & wrong here hon[d] 606
 And in þe bed þe blody knyf he fond
 By dame Constance Allas what myȝte sche seye
 ffor werray woo hire wit was al a-weye 609

To kyng alla was told þis tale Mischaunce
 And ek þe tyme where & in what wyse
 That in a schyp was founde þis custaunce
 As here be-forn þat ȝe han herd deuysel 613
 The kyngis herte of pete gan to gryse
 Whan he saw so benygne a creature
 ffallen in desese & in mysaventure 616

ffor as þe lomb toward þe deth is brouȝt
 So stant this innocent by-fore þe kyng
 This false knyȝt that hath this tresoun wrought
 Beryth hire on honde þat sche hath don þis thyng¹ 620
 But natheles þere was gret mornyng ^[¹ altered]
 A-mong the puple & seyn þey can not gesse
 That sche hadde don so gret a wekedenesse 623

ffor they han seyn hire so vertuous ^[leaf 208]
 And louynge hermengild ryȝt as hire lyf
 Of þis bar witnesse eueryche in that hous
 Saue he þat hermengelt slow with his knyf 627
 This gentil kyng hath cauȝt a gret motyf
 Of this witnesse & thocht he wolde enquire
 Deppere in this trouthe for to lere 630

Allas Custaunce þou hast no chaumpioun
 Ne fyzte canst þou so weyle-away
 But he that starf for oure redempcioun
 And bond satan & ȝit lyth pere he lay 634
 So be þeyn stronge champioun þis day
 ffor but ȝif cryst opyn merakele kythe
 With-outyn gilt þou schat ben slayn aswythe 637

Sche sette hire doun on kneis & thus sche seyde
 Inmortal god þat sauedist susanne
 ffrom false blame & þou merciful mayde
 Marye I mene douȝtyr to seynt ann 641
 By-forn hos child aungeȝ synge osanne
 If I be gilteles of this felonye
 Myn socour be for ellis schal I deye 644

Han ȝe nat seyn sumtyme a pale face
 Among a pres of hym þat hath be lad
 Toward hese deth where as he gat no grace
 And swich a colour in hese face hath had 648
 Men myȝte knowe hise face þat was be-stad
 Amongis alle þe facis in þat route
 So stant custaunce & lokyth hire a boute 651

O queenys lyuyng in prosperite
 Duchesses & ȝe ladijs euerychone
 Hauyth sum routhe of hire aduercite
 An emperouris douȝtyr stant a-lone 655
 Sche hath no wyȝt to whom to make hire mone
 O blood royal þat standyst in þis drede¹ [leaf altered]
 ffer ben thyne frendis at thi grete nede 658

This alla kyng hath swich compascioun [leaf 203, back]
 As gentyl herte is ful fyld of pite
 That from hyse eyen ran the watyr doun
 Now hastyfliche do feche a bok *quod* he 662

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 151

And ȝif this kn[y]ȝt wele swere þat sche
 This woman slow ȝit wele we vs auyse
 Hom þat we wele þat schal ben oure Iustyse 665

A brytoun bok wrytyn with euangilis
 Was fet in on this bok he swor a-non
 Sche gilty was & in the mene whilis
 An hand hym smot vp-on the nekke bon 669
 That doun he fyl a-tonys as a ston
 And bothe hise eyen broste vp on hise face
 In syȝte of euery body in þat place 672

A woys was herd in general audience
 And seyde þou hast disclaunderede gilteles
 The douȝtyr of holy cherche in high presence
 Thus hast þou don & ȝit I holde myn pees 676
 Of this mervayle a-gast was al þe pres
 As masede folk they stodyn euerychone
 ffor drede of wreche saue Custaunce allone 679

Gret was þ^r dred & ek þ^r repentaunce
 Of hem þat han wrong suspeciouȝ
 Vp-on þis sely Innocent custaunce
 And for this myrakele in conclusioun 683
 And by Custauncis mediacioun
 The kyng & manye a noȝer in þat place
 Conuertede were thankid be godis grace 686

This false knyȝt was slayn for hise ontrouthe
 Be Iugement of alla hastifly
 And ȝit Custaunce hadde of hise deth routhe
 And aftyr this Ihesus¹ of hise mercy [r the] 690
 Made alla weddyn solempnely
 This holy maydyn þat is so bryȝt & scheene
 And þus hath Cryst mad Custaunce a queene 693

152 GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

But who was woful ȝif I se[h]al not lye [leaf 204]

Of this weddyng but donegild & no mo

The kyngis modir ful of tyrannye

Hire thouȝt hire curssede herte brast a to 697

Sche wolde not hire sone hadde don so

Hire thouȝte a dispit þat he schulde take

So straunge a creature vn-to hise make 700

Me lyste not of þe chaf nor of þe stre

Makyn so long a tale as of þe corn

What sholde I telle of the royalte

At mariage or wich cours goth be-forne 704

Who blowith in a trompe or in an horn

The freut of eueri tale is for to seye

They ete & drynke & daunce & synge & pleye 707

Thei gon to bedde as it was skele & ryȝt

fior þow þat wiuiys ben ful holye thyngis

They muste takyn in pacience at nyȝt

Swiche manere of necessarijs as ben plesyngis 711

To folk þat han wedit hem with ryngis

And leyn a lityl here holynesse a-syde

As for þe tyme it may non oþer be-tyde 714

On hire he gat a knave child a-non

And to a bischop & his constabele ek

He tok hise wyf to kepe whan he is gon

To skotlandeward hise fomen for to seke 718

Now fayre custauce þat is so vmble & meke

So longe is gon with childe til þat stille

Sche halt hire chaumbere a-bydyng cristis wille 721

The tyme is come a knaue child sche beere

Mauricyus at þe funtston þey hym calle

This Constabele doth forth¹ a massanger [¹ clepe out at the side, later]

And wrot on-to his kyng þat clepid was alle 725

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 153

How þat this blisful tydyng is byfalle
 And opere tydyngis spedful for to seye
 He taath þe lettere & forth he goth hise weye 728

This massanger to don his auantage [leaf 204, back]
 Vn-to þe kyngis modyr ridyth swythe
 And saluyth hire ful fare in hyre langage
 Madame *quod* he ȝe may ben glad & blyþe 732
 And thankede god a hunderede thousent sythe
 Myn lady quen hath child *with*-outyn doute
 To loye & blysse to al þe regne a-boute 735

Lo here þe letteris selede of þis thyng
 That I mot bere with þe haste I may
 ȝif ȝe wele ouȝt on-to ȝoure sone þe kyng
 I am ȝoure seruaunt bothe nyȝt & day 739
 Donegild answered as now at þis tyme nay
 But here al nyght I wele þou take þyn reste
 To morwe wele I seye þe what me leste 742

This massangere drank faste ale & wyn
 And stole were hise letteris priuily
 Out of his box whil he slepte as a swyn
 And countyrfetid was ful subtilly 746
 Anoper lettere wrouȝt ful synfully¹ [1 altered]
 Vn-to þe kyng directt of this matere
 ffrom his Constabil as ȝe schal after here 749

The lettere spak þe quen delyuerede was
 Of so orible & fendlyche cryature
 That in þe castel non so hardy was
 That ony while durste þere endure 753
 The modyr was an elf be nature
 I-comyn by charmys or bi socerye
 And euery wyȝt hath hire companye 756

Wo was this kyng whan he þis lettere hath seyn
 But to no wyȝt he tolde hise sorwis sore
 But of hyse owene hand he wrot a-geyn
 Wolcome þe sonde of cryst for euere more 760
 To me that am now lernede in þis lore
 Lord wolcome be thyn lust & þyn plesaunce
 Myn lust I putte al in thyn ordenaunce 763

Kepith this child al be it foul or fayr [leaf 205]
 And ek myn wyf on-to myn hom comynge
 Cryst whan hym lyste may sende me an eyr
 More agriable þan this to myn¹ lykyng¹ [¹ altered] 767
 This lettere he selyth pryuely wepyng
 Whiche to þe massangere was take sone
 And forth he goth þere is no more to done 770

O Massanger fulfild of dronkenesse
 Strong is thi breth thi lemys falteryn ay
 And þou be-wreyest alle sekere-nesse
 Thyn mynde is lorn þou iangelist as a lay 774
 Thyn face is turnede in a newe aray
 There dronkenesse regnyth in ony route
 There is no conseyl hid with-outyn doute 777

O donegilt I haue non engelishsh dygne
 Vn-to þyn maleys & thi tyrannye
 And þefore to þe fend I þe resigne
 Let hym endyte of thyn tratorye 781
 ffy mannyssh fy / o nay by god I lye
 ffy fendelyche spirit for I dar wel telle
 Thow þow here walke thyn spyrit is in helle 784

This Massanger comyth from þe kyng a-geyn
 And at þe kyngis moderis court he lyghte
 And sche was of þe massenger ful fayn
 And plesede hym in al þat euere sche myȝte 788

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 155

He drank & wel hise gerdyl vndyr pyȝt
 He slepith & he snortith in hise gyse
 Al nyȝt tyl þe suzne gan a-ryse 791

Eft were hise letterys stolyn euerychon
 And countarfetid letterys in þis wyse
 The kyng comaundyth hise constablis a-non
 Vp peyne of hangyng & heigh luyse 795
 That he ne schulde suffere in no wyse
 Custaunce in whith¹ his regne for tabyde [¹ altered from whiche]
 Thre dayis & a quartyr of a tide 798

But in þe same schip as he hire fond [leaf 205, back]
 Hire & hyr ȝenge sone & al hire geere
 He schulde putte & croude from þe lond
 And charge hire þat sche neuere eft come þere 802
 O myn custaunce wel may þy gost haue fere
 And slepyng in þyn drem han penaunce
 Whan donegilt caste al þis ordenaunce 805

This messenger on morwe he wok
 On-to þe castel holt þe neste wey
 And to þe constabele he þe lettere tok
 And whan þat he þis pitous lettere say 809
 fful ofte he seyde alas & weyle-away
 Lord crist how may þis world endure
 So ful of synne is manye a cryature 812

O myȝti god ȝif þat it be þyn wille
 Sith þou art ryȝtful Iuge how may þis be
 That þou wit suffere innocentis to spille
 And wekede folk reguyn in prosperite 816
 O goode Custaunce alas so wo is me
 þat I mote be þyn turnmentour or deye
 On schamys deth þere is non oþer weye 819

Wepyn bothe ȝynge & olde in þat place
 Whan þat þe kyng his cursede letere sente
 And Custaunce with a dedly pale face
 The forte day toward hire schip sche wente 823
 But natheles sche takyth in good entente
 The wil of crist & knelynge on þe stronde
 Sche seyde lord ay wolcome be þyn sonde 826

He þat me kepte from þe false blame
 Whil I was on þe lond a-mongis ȝow
 He can me kepe from harm & ek from schame
 In þe salte se al þow I se nat how 830
 As strong as euere he was he is now
 In hym troste I & hyse modyr dere
 That is to me myn sayl & ek myn stere 833

Hyre lytyl child lay wepynge in hire arm [leaf 206]
 And knelynge pitously to hym sche seyde
 Pes lityl sone I wele don þe non harm
 With þat hire couerchif ouer hire hed sche bryde 837
 And ouer hise lityl eyen sche it leyde
 And in hyre arm sche lulled it ful faste
 And in-to heuene hyre eyen vp sche caste 840

Modyr quod sche & mayde / bryȝte marye
 Soth is þat þour wemany's eggement
 Man kynde was lorn & dampnede for to deye
 ffor wich þyn chyld was on a cros I-ret 844
 Thi blysful eyen saw al his turment
 Thanne is þere non comparisoun be-twene
 Thi wo & any wo / man may sustene 847

Thow saw þyn child alawyn be-fore þyn eyen
 And ȝit now lyuyth my lityl child parfey
 Now lady bryȝt to whom alle folk now cryen
 Thow glorie of womanhede fayre may 851

Thow hauene of refut bryzte sterre of day
 Rewe on myn child þat of þyn gentillesse
 Rewist on euery reuful in destresse 854

O lityl child allas what is þyn gilt
 That neuere wroughtist synne as ȝit parde
 Whi wolde thyn harde fadyr han þe spilt
 O mercy dere constabele *quod* sche 858
 As lat myn lytil child dwelle here with þe
 And ȝif þou darst not sauyn hym from blame
 So kysse hym onys in hese faderys name 861

Therwith sche lokith bakward to þe londe
 And seyde farewe[1] housbonde routheles
 And vp sche rist & walkyth doun þe stronde
 Toward þe schip here folwyth al þe pres 865
 And euere sche preyeth hire child to holde hise pes
 And takyth hire leue & with an holy entente
 Sche blysseth hire & in-to schip sche wente 868

Vitaylid was þe schip it is no drede [leaf 206, back]
 Habundaunt for hyre ful longe space
 And opere necessaryis þat schuldyn nede
 Sche hadde I-now haryed be godis grace 872
 ffor wynd & wedyr al-myzty god purchase
 And brynge hire hom I can no betere seye
 But in þe se sche dryuyth forth hire weye 875

[PART III.]

Alla þe kyng comyth hom soone after þis
 On-to þe Castel whiche I tolde
 And axsith where þat his wif & his child is
 The Constabele gan a-boute hise herte colde 879

And pleynly al þe manere hym tolde
 As ȝe han herd I can telle it no bettre
 As schewith þe kyng his sel & hise lettere 882

And seyde lord as ȝe comaundede me
 Vp peyne of deth so haue I do serteyn
 This massanger turmentid was tyl he
 Moste beknowe & telle plat & pleyn 886
 from nyȝt to nyȝt what place he hadde leyn
 And þus by wit & subtyl Inquiryng
 Ymagined was bi hom þis harm gan sprynge 889

The hand was knowe þat þe lettere wrot
 And al þe venym of þis cursede dede
 But in what wise serteynli I not
 Theffect is þis þat Alla out of drede 893
 His modyr slow þat may men pleynly rede
 ffor þat sche traytour was to hire legiaunce
 Thus endyȝth donegild with myschaunce 896

The sorwe þat þis alla nyȝt & day
 Makith for his wif & hise child also
 Ther is no tunge þat it telle may
 But now wolde I on-to Custaunce go 900
 That fletyȝth in þe se in peyne & wo
 ffyue ȝer & more as lykede cristis sonde
 Er þat hir schip aprochede to þe londe 903

Vndyr an hethene castel at þe laste [leaf 207]
 Of which þe name in myn tixt not I fynde
 Custaunce & ek hire child þe se vp caste
 Almyȝty god þat sawith al mankynde 907
 Haue on custauce & of hire child sum mynde
 that is fallyn in hethene hand eft sone
 In poynt to spylle as I schal telle ȝow sone 910

Doun from þe castel comyth þere manye a wyȝt
 To gauryn on þis wyȝt & on custaunce
 But schortly from þe castel on a nyȝt
 The lordis styward god ȝeue hym myschaunce 914
 A thef that hadde reneyed oure cre-aunce
 Cam in-to þe schip alone & seyde he schulde
 Hire leman be wheþer sche wolde or nolde 917

Wo was þe wrechede woman þo be-gon
 Hire child cryed & sche cryede pitously
 Blysaf marye halp hyre ryȝt a-non
 ffor with hire strogelyng wel & myȝtyly 921
 The thef fel ouyr bord al sodeynly
 And in þe se he dreynthe for veniaunce
 And þus hath cryst onwemmeþe kept custaunce 924

O foule lust of luxurye lo thyn ende
 Not only þat þou feyntist manys mynde
 But verayly þou wilt hise body schende
 Thende of þy werk or of þynne lustis blynde 928
 Is compleynyng how manyon may men fynde
 That not for werk but only þe entente
 To don þis synne ben owthir slayn or schente 931

How may þis wayke woman han þis strenthe
 Hire to defende a-ȝen þis Renegat
 O golyas vnmesurabe of lenthe
 How myȝte dauid make þe so maat 935
 So ȝong & of armeure so desolat
 How durste he loke vp-on þyn dredful face
 Wel may men sen it was but godis grace 938

Ho ȝaf Iudyth corage or hardynesse [leaf 207, back]
 To slen hym Olofernus in hise tente
 And to delyueryn out of wrechedenesse
 The peple of god I sey for þis entente 942

But ryȝt as god spyrit of vigour sente
 To hym & sauede hym from myschaunce
 So sente vigour & myȝt to Custaunce 945

forth goth the schip þour-out þe narwe mouth
 Of Iubaltare / and Cepte dryuynge ay
 Sumtyme west & sumtyme north & south
 And sumtyme est ful many a wery day 949
 Til Cristis modyr blyssede be sche ay
 Hath schapyn þour hire endeles goodnesse
 To make an ende of al hire heuynesse 952

Now lat vs stynte of Custaunce but a trowe
 And speke we of þe romayn Emperour
 That out of surry hath bi letterys knowe
 The slauthe of Cristene folk & dishonoure¹ [1 ? oure] 956
 Don to his douȝtyr by a fals traytoure
 I mene þe wikkede cursede soudonesse
 That at þe feste let sle boþe more & lesse 959

ffor which þis emperour hath sent a-nor
 His senatour with royal ordenaunce
 And opere lordis god wot many on
 On surryens to take veniaunce 963
 They brenne & slen & brynge hem to myschaunce
 fful manyaday but schortly þis is þe ende
 Homward to rome þey schapyn hem to wende 966

This senatour repayreth wictorye
 To romeward saylynge ful ryalye
 And mette þe schyp dryuynge as seyth þe story
 In which Custaunce sit pitously 970
 No þyng knewe he what sche was ne why
 Sche was in swich a-ray / ne sche wolde seye
 Of hyre estat þow sche schulde deye 973

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 161

He bryngith hire to rome & to hise wyf [leaf 208]
 He ȝaf hire & hire ȝonge sone also
 And with þe senatour sche ledde hire lyf
 Thus can oure lady bryngyn out of wo 977
 Woful custaunce & manye a noþer mo
 And long tyme dwellede sche in þat plase
 In holȝe werkys euere as was hyre grace 980

This senatourys wyf hyre aunte was
 But for al þat sche knew hyre neuere þe more
 I wele no lenger taryen in þis cas
 But to kyng alla which I spak of ȝore 984
 That for hise wyf wepede & syghede sore
 I wele retorne & lete I wele Custaunce
 Vndyr þe senatourrys gouernaunce [This stanza is repeated in the
 MS. See the second version on p. 133 above]

Kyng Alla wich þat hadde hise modyr slayn
 Vp-on a day fil In swich repentaunce
 That ȝif I schortely schulde telle & playn
 To rome he comyth to receyue hese penaunce 991
 And putte hym in þe popis ordenaunce
 In high & loȝh & Ihesu crist be-souȝte
 fforȝeue hise wikke werkis þat he wrouȝte 994

The fame a-non þour rome toun is born
 How Alla kyng schal come in pilgrymage
 By herberiourys þat wentyn here be-forn
 ffor which þe senatour as was þe vsage 998
 Rod hym a-geyn as was þe vsage
 As wel to schewyn his magnificence
 As to don any kyng a reuerence 1001

Gret cher doth þis noble senatour [leaf 208, back]
 To kyng alla & he to hym also
 Euerych of hem doþ oþer gret honour
 An[d] that with-in a day or too 1005

This *senatour* is to kyng Alla go
 To feste & shortly ȝif I schal not lye
 Custauncis sone wente in his cumpanye 1008

Summen wolde seyn at þe request of Custaunce
 This *senatour* hath lad þis child to feste
 I ne may not tellyn euery circumstaunce
 Be as be may þere was he at þe leste 1012
 But soth is þis þat at his moderys heste
 By-forn Alla durynge þe metis space
 This child stod lokyng in þe kyngis face 1015

This Alla kyng hath of þe child gret wondyr
 And to þe *senatour* he seyde a-non
 Whos is þat fayre child þat standis ȝondyr
 I not *quod* he bi god & bi seynt Iohn 1019
 A modyr he hath but fadyr hath he non
 That I of wot & shortly in a stounde
 He tolde alla how þat þe child was founde 1022

But god wot *quod* this *senatour* also
 So vertuous a leuere in myn lyue
 Ne saw I neuere as sche ne herde of mo
 Of wordely women maydyn nor of wif 1026
 I dare wel seyn hire hadde leuere a knyf
 Thurgh-out hyre brest þan ben a woman weke
 þere is no man coude brynge hire to þe prikke 1029

Now was þis child as lyk on-to custaunce
 As possible is a creatour to be
 This alla hath þis face in remembraunce
 Of dame custaunce & þeron musede he 1033
 ȝif þat þe childis modyr were ouȝt sche
 That is his wyf & pryuyly he sighte
 And sped hym from þe table þat he myȝte 1036

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 163

Parfay thouzte he fantome is in myn hed [leaf 209]
 I oghte deme of ryztful iugement
 That in þe salte se myn wif is ded
 And aftyr he made hise argument 1040
 What wot I if þat crist hath hire I-sent
 Myn wif be se as wel as he hire sente
 To myn cuntre from þens þat sche wente 1043

And aftyr non hom with þe senatour
 Goth alla for to se þis wondyr chaunce
 This senatour doth alla gret honour
 And hastilyche he sente aftyr custauce 1047
 But trustyth wel hire lyste not to daunce
 Whan þat sche wiste wherfore was þat sonde
 Oneþe vp-on hire feet sche myzte stonde 1050

Whan Alla saw his wif fayre he hire grette
 And wep þat it was routhe for to se
 ffor at þe ferste lok he on hyre sette
 He knewe wel verayly þat it was sche 1054
 And sche for sorwe as doumb stant as a tre
 So was hire herte set in distresse
 Whan sche remembrede hys vnkyndenesse 1057

Twyes sche swounnyth in hise owene syghit
 He wepte & hym excuseth pitously
 Now god *quod* he & hise halwis bryzte
 So wisely on myn soule as haue mercy 1061
 That of þoure harm as gilteles am I
 As is Mauryce myn sone so lyk þoure face
 Ellis þe fend me fече out of þis place 1064

Long was þe sobyng & þe bittere peyne
 Er þat hire woful hertis myztyn cesse
 Gret was þe pyte for to here hem pleyne
 Thorgh whiche pleyntis gan hire wo encrease 1068

I prey þow of myn labour to relese
 I may nat telle here wo vn-tyl to morwe
 I am so wery for to speke of sorwe 1071

But finalli whan þat þe sorwe is wist [leaf 209, back]
 That Alla giltles was of hire wo
 I trowe an hunderede tymys ben þey kyst
 And swich a blysse is þere be-twen hem two 1075
 That saue þe ioye þat lastyþ eueremo
 There is non lyk þat any creature
 Hath seyn or schal whil þe word wele dure 1078

Tho preyede sche hire housbonde mekely
 In relef of hire longe pitous payne
 That he wolde preye hire fadyr specially
 That of his maieste he wolde enclyne 1082
 To vouche-saf sumday with hem to dyne
 Sche preyede hym ek he schulde be no weye
 Vn-to hire fadyr no word of hire seye 1085

Summen wolde seyn how þat þe child mauryce
 Doth þis message vn-to þis emperour
 But as I gesse alla was not so nyce
 To hym þat was of so souereyn honour 1089
 As he þat is of cristene folk þe flour
 Sente any child but it is bet to deme
 He wente him selue & so it may wel seme 1092

This emperour hath grauntid gently
 To come to dyner as he hym be-souzte
 And wel rede I he lokede besily
 Vp-on þis child & on his dougtyr thouzte 1096
 Alla goth to hise in and as hym ouzte
 Arayed for þis feste in euery wyse
 As fer forth as hise kunnyng may suffyse 1099

GROUP B. § 2. MAN OF LAW'S TALE. Cambridge MS. 165

The morwe cam and alla gan hym dresse
 And ek his wif þis emperour to mete
 And forth þey rede In ioye & in gladnesse
 And whan sche saw hire fadyr in þe strete 1103
 Sche lyzte a-doun & fallyth hym to feete
 ffadyr *quod* sche 3oure 3onge chyld Custaunce
 Is now ful clene out of 3oure remembraunce 1106

I am 3oure douȝty[r] custaunce *quod* sche [leaf 210]
 That whilhom han sent vn-to surrye
 It am I fadyr þat in þe salte se
 Was put a-lone & dampned for to deye 1110
 Now goode fadyr mercy I 3ow preye
 Sende me no more vn-to to non hethenesse
 But thanke myn lord here of his kyndenesse 1113

Who can þe pytous ioye tellyn al
 By-twexe hem thre syn þey ben þus I-mette
 But of myn tale makyn an ende I schal
 The day goth faste I wele no lengere lette 1117
 These glade folk to dyner þey ben sette
 In ioye & blysse at dyner I lete hem dwelle
 A thousent fold more þan I can telle 1120

This child Maurice was sythe emperour
 Mad bi þe pope & lyuede cristene lyf
 To Cristis cherche he dede gret honour
 But I lete alle hise storyis passyn by 1124
 Of Custaunce is myn tale specially
 In þe olde romayn storyis may men fynde
 Maurycis lyf I bere it not in mynde 1127

This kyng Alla whan he hise tyme say
 With his Custaunce his holy wif so swete
 To ingelond ben þey come þe ryzte way
 Where as þey lyue In ioye & in quiete 1131

But lytil while it lastyth I ȝow hete
 Ioye of þis world for tyme wele not a-byde
 ffrom day to nyȝt it schauȝgith as þe tyde 1134

Who lyuede euere in swich delyt a day
 That sche ne menede outhir concyence
 Or yre or talent or sumkenys a-fray
 Enuye or pride or passioun or offence 1138
 I ne seye but for þis ende this sentence
 That lytyl while in ioye & in plesaunce
 Lastith þe ioye of alla with Custaunce 1141

ffor deth þat takyth of high & low hise rente [leaf 210, back]
 Whan passede was euene a ȝer as I gesse
 Out of þe world þis kyng alla he hente
 ffor whom Custaunce hath ful gret heuinesse 1145
 Now let vs preyen god his soule blysse
 And dame Custaunce finally to seye
 Toward þe toun goth hire weye 1148

To rome is comyn þis holy creature
 And fyndith hire frendis hole & sounde
 Now is sche scapid al hire Auenture
 And whan þat sche hire fadyr hath I-founde 1152
 Doun on hire kneis fallyth sche to grounde
 Wepyng for tendirnesse in herte blyþe
 Sche heryeth god an hundered thousent sythe 1155

In vertu & holy allemesse dede
 They lyuyn alle & neuere asundyr wende
 Thil deth departyth hem þis lyf þey leede
 And faryth now wel myn tale is at an ende 1159
 Now Ihesu crist þat of his myȝt may sende
 Ioye after wo gouerne vs in hise grace
 And kepe vs alle þat ben in þis place. Amen 1162

Here endyth the man of lawe hise tale

[Break of 2 Hues, after which is the heading of the Wife of Bath's Prologue.]

GROUP D. FRAGMENT V.

§ 1. WIFE OF BATH'S PREAMBLE.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

[Sloane MS 1685, leaf 103.]

¶ The Prologe ¶ Of þ Wyf of Bathe

[*headline*]

Experyment/ þough none auctoryte
 Were in þis worlde is riȝt/ ynouȝe for me
 To speke of woo þat ys in mariage
 ffor lordynges siþen I twelfe yere was of age 4
 Thanked by god þat ys eterne on lyue
 Housbondes atte Chirche dore haue I hade fyue
 Yf I so ofte myȝt haue wedded be
 But alle were worpi men in her degre 8
 But me was tolde certayne not longe a-gone ys
 þat sithen cryste ne went nevere but onys
 To weddyng in þe Cane of Galile
 þat be pilke ensample tauȝt he me 12
 þat I ne shulde wedded be but onys
 Herke *with* a sharpe worde *with* þe nonys
 By syde a welle Ihesu god & man
 Spake in represe of þe Samarytan 16
 Thou haste y-hade .v. husbondes *quod* he
 And þat ilke man þat nowe hathe the
 Ys not þine husbonde þus sayde he certayne
 What he mente þerby I can not sayne 20
 Well but I axe why þe fyfte man
 Was none housbonde to þe Samarytan
 And herde telle in myne age 24
 howe many myȝt she haue in mariage 23

15 CAMBRIDGE 167 (6-T. 334) [this page, Sloane 1685]

Vpon þis nombre of diffinicion [Sloane MS 1685]
Men may deuyne and glose vp and douñ
But wele I wote expresse *with-out* lye
God bad vs wexe and multiplie 28
þat gentille text/ can I wele vndirstonde
Eke wele I wote he sayd myn husbonde
Schulde let ffarir and modir and take to me
But of none nombre mencion made he 32
Of Bygamye or of Octogamye ¶ Quamobrem relin-
Whi schulde men of hit haue vilonye quæ homo patrem &
Loke better þe wyse man kynge Salamon matrem et adheret
I trowe he hade wyues mo þan oñ uxori sue Genesis ij.
Now. wold god hit leffulle were to me [leaf 103, back]
To be refresshid half so ofte as he
Whiche yifte of god hade he for alle his wyues
No man þat hathe suche þat in þis world ys 40
God wote þis noble kynge as to my witte
The fyrst nyzt/ hade many a mery fyttē
With Iche of hem so wele was he a lyue
Blissed be god þat I haue weddid fyue 44
Welle come þe sixte whan þat euere he shalle
ffor siche I wille nouzt kepe chaste in alle
What myne husbonde ys fro þe worlde gone
Some crysten man shalle wedde me a-none 48
ffor þan þe Appostell seithe þat I am fre
To wedde a goddes half where hit likes me
he seyth þat to be weddid ys no synne
Bettēre ys to be wedded þan to brenne ¶ Melius est nubere
What recketh me þouze folke say vilonye quam vri
Of shrewed lameche and his Bygamye 53
I wote wele Abraham was an holy man
And Iacob eke as fer as I euere can 56
And eche of [hem] hade wyues mo þan two
And many an othere man also
Where can ye say in eny manere age
þat vs god deffendid mariage 60

By expresse worde I prey you telle me [Bloane MS 1695]
 Or where comaundid he virgynyte
 I wote as wele as ȝe hit ys no drede
 The Apostilt whan þat he speketh of Maydenhede 64
 he sayd precept þer-of hade he none
 Men May consayle a woman to ben one
 But consaylynge ys none comaundement
 He putte hit in oure owen Iugement 68
 ffor hade god commaunded Maydenhede
 þan hade he dampned weddyng with þe dede
 And certes yf þere were no sede y-sowe
 Virgynyte þan where-of shuld hit growe 72
 Poule durste not comaunden atte leste [leaf 104]
 A thyng of whiche his Mayster yaf hym none heste
 þe dart ys set vps for Virgynite 75
 Chase who so may who so renneth best let see] [Bloane extract ends]
 But þis word is not take of euery wyght [MS Cg. 4. 57, leaf 212]
 But þere as god lust ȝeue it of hise myȝt
 I wot wel þat thapostele was a mayde
 But natheles thogh þat he wrot & sayde 80
 He wolde þat euery were swych as he
 Al nys but cunseyl to virginite
 And for to been a wyf he ȝaf me leue
 Of indulgence so is it no repreue 84
 To wedde me ȝif myn make deye
 With-oute excepciouns of bygamyne
 Al were it good no woman for to touche
 He mente as in his bed as in hyse couche 88
 ffor peril is fer & tow thasemble
 ȝe knowe what þis exsauple may recemle
 This is al & sum þat virgynyte
 More profitith þan weddyng in frelete 92
 ffrelete clepe I ȝif þat he & sche
 Wolde leede al here lyf in chastite
 I graunte it wel I haue non enuye
 Thow maydynhed profere bigamyne 96

Hem lykith to be clene body & goost
 Of myn estat I nyl not make no bost
 ffor wel 3e wete a lord in hyse houshold
 He hath nat euery vessel al of gold 100
 Some ben of tre & don here lord seruyse
 God clepith folk to hym in sundery wyse
 And eueryche hath of god a propre 3ifte
 Summe þis some þat as hym lestyth schyfte 104
 Virginite ¹is gret perfeccoun ^[1—1 later]
 And contynens ek with reson
 But crist þat of perfeccioun is well
 Bad nat euery wyȝt schulde selle 108
 Al þat he hadde & 3ene it to þe pore
 And in swich wise folwe hym and hese foore
 He spak to hem þat wolde leue perfyty
 And lordyngys by 3oure leue þat am nat I 112
 I wele be-stowe þe flour of al myn age
 In the artys & in þe freut of maryage
 Telle me also to what conclusoun ^[leaf 212, back]
 Were membris made of generacioun 116
 And for what profyt was a wyf I-wrouȝt
 Trostyth ryȝt wel þey were nat mad for nouȝt
 Glose ho so wele I seye vp & down
 That þey were makyd for purgacyoun 120
 Of vryne bope & thyngis smale
 And ek to knowe a femel from a male
 And for non oper cause sey 3e no
 The experience wit wel it is nat so 124
 So þat 3e clerkis ben nat with me wrothe
 I seye þis þat þey ben makede for bope
 That is to seye for offyse & for ese
 Of engendereure þere we not god displese 128
 Whi schuldyn men ellys in here bokis sette
 That a man schal ȝilde to his wif hire dette
 Now wherewith schulde he make hyse payement
 If he ne vsede his instrument 132

Thanne were þey made vp-on a creature
 To purge vryne & for engendereure
 But I sey not þat euery wyzt is holde
 That hath swich harneys as I of tolde 136
 To gon & vse hem in engenderure
 They schul nat take of chastite no cure
 Cryst was a maydyn & schapyn as a man
 And manye a seynt siþe þe world be-gan 140
 ȝit leuede þey euere in parfyt chastite
 I nyl not enuye swych virginite
 Let hem be bred of pure whete seed
 And lat vs wyuys hote barli breed 144
 And ȝit with barli bred mark telle can
 That oure lord refroeschid manye a man
 In swich estat as god clepith vs
 I wele perseuere I am nat precious 148
 In wyf-hod I wele vse myn instrument
 As frely as myn makere hath it sent
 ȝif I be dangerous god gif me sorwe
 Myn housbonde schal it haue on eue & morwe 152
 Whan þat hym lyste come forth & paye hise dette [leaf 213]
 An housbonde wele I haue I nyl nat lette
 Whiche schal be boþe myn detour & myn thral
 And haue hise trybulacioun with-al 156
 Vp-on hise flesch whil I am his wyf
 I haue þe power durynge al myn lyf
 Vp-on hyse proper body & noght he
 Ryght þus thapostale tolde it me 160
 And bad oure housbondys forto loue vs wel
 Al þis sentence me likyth euerydel
 Vp sterte þe pardouner & þat a-non
 Now dame quod he bi god & by seyn Iohn 164
 ȝe ben a noble prechour in þis cas
 I was a-bute to wedde a wyf allas
 What schulde I it beye on myn flesch so dere
 ȝit hadde I leuere wedde no wif to ȝere 168

A-byde *quod* sche myn tale is nat be-gunne
 Nay þou schat drynkyn of a-noper tunne
 Or þan I go schal sauoure werse þan ale
 And whan þat I haue told forth myn tale 172
 Of trybulacioun þat is in maryage
 Of which I'am expert in al myn age
 This is to seyn myn self hath ben þe wippe
 Thanne mayȝt þou chese wheþer þou wolt skyppe 176
 Of þat tunne þat I schal a-broche
 Be war of it er þou to nygh a-proche
 ffor I schal telle ensample mo þan ten
 Who so þat wele nat be war by opere men 180
 By hym schul opere men corectid be
 The same wordys wrythit protholome
 Rede it in hise almagestis & take it þere
 Dame I wolde preye ȝif ȝoue wil it were 184
 seyde þis pardounner as ȝe be-gan
 Tellyth forth ȝoure tale sparyth nan
 And tellith vs ȝynge men of ȝoure praptik
 Gladly sire sithe it may ȝow lyk 188
 But ȝit I preye to al þis cumpaynye
 If þat I speke aftyr myn fantasye
 As takyth nat a gres þat I seye [leaf 213, back]
 ffor myn entent is but for to pleye 192
 Now sere now wele I telle forth myn tale
 As euere mote I drynkyn wyn or ale
 I schal sey soth of housbondis þat I hadde
 As thre of hem were goode & thre were badde 196
 The thre men were goode & rygh & olde
 Oneþe myȝt þey þe statut holde
 In which þat þey were boundyn on to me
 ȝe wete wel what I mene of þis parde 200
 As helpe me god I laughe whan I thynke
 How pytously on nyȝt I made hem to swynke
 But be myn fey I tolde of it no stor
 They haddyn me ȝeun hire lond & hire tresor 204

Me nedede not do lengere diligence	
To wynne hire loue & don hire reuerence	
They louede me so wel by god a-boue	
That I ne told no deynte of here loue	208
As wys woman wele sette hire euere in on	
To gete hire loue þere as sche hath non	
But sythe I haue hem holy in myn hond	
And sithe þey han me ȝeuyñ al here lond	212
What schulde I take hed hem for to plesse	
But ȝif it were for myn profyt & myn ese	
I sette hem so a-werke be myn fey	
That manye a nyȝt þey sunge weyleawey	216
The bakon was nat fet for hem I trowe	
That some men han in exces at dunmowe	
I gouernede hem so wel aftyr my lawe	
That eche of hem was blysful & ful fawe	220
To brynge me gay þyng from þe feyre	
They were ful glad whan I spak tyl hem fayre	
ffor god it wot I schid hem spitously	
Now herkenyth how I bar me properly	224
ȝe wise wyuys þat kunne vndyr-stonde	
Thus schul ȝe speke & bere hem wrong on honde	
ffor half so boldely can þere no man	
Swere & lye as can a woman	228
I seye it nat be wyuys þat been wyse	[leaf 21 v]
But ȝif it be whan þey hym mysavise	
A wis wif ȝif þat sche can hire good	
Schal bere hym on hande þe cou is wod	232
And take witnesse of hire owene mayde	
Of hire asent but herkenyth how I seyde	
Syre olde caynard is þis þyn aray	
Whi is myn neyheborys wif so gay	236
Sche is honourede euere al þere sche goth	
I sitte at hom & haue no thryfty cloth	
What dost þou at myn neyhebouris hous	
Is sche so fayr & þow so ameraus	240

What rounne 3e with oure maydenys benedicite
 Sire olde lechour lat 3oure iapis be
 And 3if I haue a gossib or a frend
 With-outyn gilt þou chidist as a fend 244
 3if þat I walke or pleye vn-tyl hise hous
 þou comyst hom as dronkyn as a mous
 And prechist on þyn bench with euele pref
 þou seyst to me it is a gret myschef 248
 To wedde a poore woman for costage
 And 3if sche be ryche & of hey parage
 þanne seyst þou it is a turmetyre
 To suffere hire pryde & malencolye 252
 And 3if þat sche be fayr þou veray knaue
 þou seyst þat euery holour wele hire haue
 Sche may no while in chastite on byde
 That is a-sayled on eche a-syde 256
 þou seyst þat some folk desyryn vs for rychesse
 Summe for oure schap some for oure fayrenesse
 And some for sche can synge & daunce
 And some for gentillesse & some for dalyaunce 260
 Some for hire handis & for hire armys smale
 Thus goth al to þe deuyl be þyn tale
 Thow seyst men may nat kepe a castel wal
 It may so longe asaylede ben oueral 264
 And 3if þat sche be foul þou seyst þat sche
 Coueytith euery man þat sche may se
 ffor as a spaynel sche wil on hym lepe [leaf 214, back]
 Til þat sche fynde sum man hire to schepe 268
 Ne non so grey gos þat goth in þe lake
 As þou seyst wele be with-oute a make
 And seyst it is an hard þyng for to welde
 A thyng þat no man wele hise thankis helde 272
 Thow seyst horel whan þou gost to bedde
 How þat no wys man nedyth for to wedde
 Ne no man þat tendyth on-to heuene
 With wylde thundyr dynt in fery leuene 276

Mote þyn wekede neke be to-broke
 þou seyst þat droppynge housis & ek smoke
 And chydynge wyf makyth men to fle
 Out of here owene hous a benedicite 280
 What eylyth swich an old man to chyde
 þou seyst þat we wyuis wele oure vicis hyde
 Til we ben fast & þanne we wele hem schewe
 Wel may þat ben a prouerbe of a schrewe 284
 þou seyst þat oxsyn Assis hors & houndys
 þey ben a-sayed at dyuerse stoundys
 Basenys lauourys er þan men hem beye
 sponys & stolis & alle swich husbondrye 288
 And also cloþis pottys & a-ray
 But folk of wyuys makyn non a-say
 Til þey ben weddit olde dotard schrewe
 Thanne seyst þou we wele oure vicis schewe 292
 Thou seyst also þat it displeseh me
 But ȝif þat þou wilt preyse myn beute
 And but þou poure alwey in myn face
 And clepe me fayre dame in euery place 296
 And but þou make a feste on þat day
 þat I was born & make me frosch & gay
 And but þou do to myn noryce honour
 And to myn chaunberere with-inne myn bour 300
 And to mynne faderys folkys & mynne alyes
 Thus seyst þou olde barel ful of lyis
 And ȝit of oure apprentys lankyn
 ffor his scrip here schynynge as gold fyn 304
 And for he squyeryth me vp & doun [leaf 215]
 ȝit hast þou cauȝt fals suspecioun
 I nyl hym not þow [þou] were ded to morwe
 But telle me whi hydistow with sorwe 308
 The keyes of myn cheste al day from me
 It is myn good as wel as þyn parde
 What wenyst þou to make an ydiot of oure dame
 Now by þat lord þat callede is seynt Iame 312

Thow schat not boþe þow þou were wood
 Ben maystyr of myn body & ek of myn good
 That on þou schat for-gon maugery þyn Iyen
 What helpith it of me te enquere or spyen 316
 I trowe þou woldist louke me in þyn cheste
 Thow schuldist sey wyf go where þe leste
 Take þoure disport I nyl leue no talys
 I knowe þow for a trewe wif dame alis 320
 We loue no man þat take kep or charge
 Where þat we gon we wele ben at oure large
 Of alle men blyssede mote he bee
 The wyse Astrolages dann Protholomee 324
 That say þis prouerbe in his almageste
 Of alle men his wisdom is þe heyeste
 That rekyth neuere ho hath þe world in honde
 By þis prouerbe þou schat vndyrstonde 328
 Haue þou I-now what thar þe reche or care
 How meryly þat opere folkys fare
 ffor serteyn olde dotard by þoure leue
 þe schal haue queynte ryzt I-now at eue 332
 He is a gret nygard þat wolde werne
 A man to lyzte a candele at his lanterne
 He schal haue neuere þe lesse lyzt parde
 Haue þou I-now þe thar not pleyne þe 336
 þou seyst also þat ȝif we make vs gay
 With clopyng & with precious aray
 That it is peryl of oure chastyte
 And ȝit with sorwe þou muste enforse þe 340
 And seye þese wordis in þe apostelys name
 In abite mad with chastite & schame
 þe women schul aparayle þow quod he [leaf 215, back]
 And not in trussede her & gay parre 344
 As pereles ne with gold ne with cloþis ryche
 Aftyr þyn tix ne aftyr rubryche
 I wol not werke as meche as a gnat
 þou seydist þis þat I was lyk a cat 348

for who so wolde senge a cattis skyn
 Thanne wolde þe cat dwelle in his In
 And ȝif þe cattis skyn be slyk & gay
 Sche wil not dwelle in house half a day 352
 But forth sche wele er any day be dawyd
 To schewe hire skyn & gon a catirwawid
 This is to seye ȝif I be gay sere schrewe
 I wele renne a-boute myn borel to schewe 356
 Sire olde fol what eylyth þe to asprien
 Thow þou preye argus with hise C eyen
 To be myn warde cors as he can best
 In feyth he schal nat kepe me but me lest 360
 ȝit I coude make his berd so mote I the
 þou seydist ek þat þere ben thyngis thre
 Theche thyngis trobelyn al þis erþe
 And þat no whit may endure þe ferþe 364
 O leue sire schrewe Ihesu schorte þyn lyf
 ȝit prechist þou & seyst þat an hateful wyf
 I-rekenede is for on of þese myschauncis
 Ben þere non opere of þese recemblauncis 368
 That ȝe may likene ȝoure parabele to
 But ȝif a sely wif be on of þo
 þou likkenyst womanys loue to helle
 To barayne lond þere no watyr may dwelle 372
 þou likenyst it also to wildefer
 The more it brennyth þe more it hath desyr
 To consumme euery þynk þat brent wele be
 Thow seyst ryȝt as wermys consume a tre 376
 Ryȝt so a wif distroyeþ hire husbonde
 That knowyn þey þat ben to wyuys bonde
 Lordyngis ryȝt þus as ȝe han vndyrstonde
 Bar I stifly myn olde housbonde on honde 380
 That þus þey seydyn in here dronkenes [leaf 216]
 And al was fals but þat I tok witnes
 On Iankyn & on myn nece also
 O lord þe peyne I dede hem & þe wo 384

fful gilteles by godys swete pyne
 ffor as an hors coude bite & whine
 I coude pleyne & ȝit was in þe gilt
 Or ellis I hadde ofte tymys ben spilt 388
 Who so come fyrst to melle fyrst grynt
 I pleynede fyrst so was oure werre stent
 They were ful glad to excuse hem blyue
 Of thyng þey neuere a-gilt in al here lyue 392
 And of wenchis wolde I bere hem on honde
 Whan þat for sek oneþe myȝte stonde
 ȝit takelede I his herte for þat he
 Wende þat I hadde had of hym gret chirte 396
 I sey þat al myn walkynge out be nyȝte
 Is for to espien wenchis þat he dyȝte
 Vndyr þat colour hadde I manye a murthe
 ffor al swych wit is ȝeuyn vs in oure burthe 400
 Deseyt wepynd spynnyng god hath ȝeue
 To women kyndely whan þat þey may lyue
 And þus of on thyng I a-waunte me
 At þe ende I hadde þe betere in eche degre 404
 Be sleyghe or forse or sum manere thyng
 As by continuel murmure & grochyng
 Nameli on bedde hadde þey myschaunce
 There wolde I chide & don hem non plesaunce 408
 I wolde no lengere in þe bed a-byde
 ȝif þat I felte his arm ouyr myn syde
 Til he hadde mad his raunsum on to me
 Thanne wolde I suffere hym to don hise nysete 412
 And þerfore euery man hise tale telle
 Wyn ho so may for al is for to selle
 With emty hond men may none haukys lure
 ffor wynnyng wolde I al hise lust endure 416
 And make me a feynede apetit
 And ȝit in bacoun hadde I neuere delit
 þat made me euere þat I wolde hym chyde [leaf 216, back]
 ffor þow þe pope hadde sete by hyse syde 420

I nolde hym spare at hise owene boord
 ffor by myn trouthe I quitte hym word for word
 As help me veray god omnypotent
 Thow I schulde make now myn testament 424
 I ne owe hem nat a word þat it nys quit
 I brouȝte it so a-boute by myn wit
 That þey muste ȝeue it vp as for þe beste
 Or ellis hade we neuere ben in reste 428
 ffor þow he lokede as a wood lyoun
 ȝit he schulde fayle of hise conclusioun
 Thanne wolde I seye goode lous take kep
 How mekely lokyth wilkyn oure schep 432
 Come neer myn spouse lat me ba þyn scheke
 ȝe schul be al pacient & meke
 And haue a swete spicede concience
 Sithin ȝe preche so of Iobes pacience 436
 Sufferith alwey sithe ȝe so wel can preche
 And but ȝe don certeyn we schul ȝow teche
 That it is fayr to haue a wyf in pes
 On of vs to muste bouwe douteles 440
 And seyth a man is more resonable
 þan woman is ȝe muste be sufferable
 What eylyth ȝow thus to groche & grone
 Is it for ȝe wolde han myn queynte alone 444
 Whi take it al lo haue it euerydel
 Petyr I-schrewe ȝow but ȝe loue it wel
 ffor ȝif I wolde selle myn belechouse
 I coude walke as frosh as ony rose 448
 But I wele kepe it for ȝoure owene toth
 ȝe ben to blame by god I seye ȝow soth
 Sweche manere of wordis hadde we on honde
 Now wele I speke of myn fourte housbonde 452
 Myn fourte housbonde was a reuelour
 This is to seyne he hadde a paramour
 And I was ȝong & ful of ragerye
 Styborne & strong and Ioly as a pye 456

Wel coude I daunce to an harpe smale [leaf 217]
 And synge I-wis as ony nyghtyngale
 Whan I hadde dronke a drauht of swete wyn
 Metullius þe foule clerk þe swyn 460
 That with a staf be-rafte his wif hire lyf
 ffor sche drank wyn & I hadde been his wif
 He schulde nat a dauntid me from drynk
 And aftyr wyn on venus muste I thynk 464
 ffor al so sykry as cold engenderyth hayl
 A lycorous mouth muste han a licorous tayl
 In woman vinolent is no defence
 This knowyn lechourys bi experyence 468
 But lord cryst whan it remembryth me
 Vp-on myn thout & on myn iolyte
 It tykalith me a-boute myn herte rote
 Vnto þis day it doth myn herte bote 472
 That I haue had myn world as In myn tyme
 But age allas þat al wole vndyrmyne
 Hath me be-reft myn beute & myn pith
 Let go farewel þe deuyl go þerwith 476
 The flour is gon þere is no more to telle
 The bren as I best can now muste I selle
 But jit to ben merye wele I euere fonde
 Now wele I telle of myn fourte husbonde 480
 I seye I hadde in herte gret dispit
 That he of ony oper hadde delyt
 But he was quit by god & be seynt Ioce
 I made hym of þe same wode a croce 484
 Nat of myn body in no foul maner
 But serteynly I made folk swich cher
 That in hise owene grese I made hym fryo
 ffor pure angir & for Ielouye 488
 Bi god in erþe he was in purgatorie
 ffor whiche I hope his soule be in glorie
 ffor god it wot he sat ful ofte & song
 Whan þat his schon ful bittyrly him wrong 492

There was no wyȝt but god & he þat wiste
 In manye wise how sore I hym twyste
 He deyede whan I cam from Ierusalem (leaf 217, back) 496
 And lith I-graue vnder þe rode bam
 Al is his tounbe not so coryous
 As was þe sepulcre of hym daryus
 Whiche þat Arpelles wrouȝte so subtilly
 It is but wast to burye hem so precyously 500
 Lat hym fare wel god ȝeue his soule reste
 He is now in hise graue & in his cheste
 Now of myn fyfte husbonde wele I telle
 God lete his soule neuere come in helle 504
 And ȝit was he to me þe moste schrewe
 That fele I on mynne rebis alle be-wrewe
 And euere schal vn-to myn endyng day
 But in oure bed he was so frosch & gay 508
 And þerwithal wel coude he me glose
 Whan þat he wolde haue myn belechese
 That pow he hadde me betȝn on euery bon
 He coude wynne myn loue a-ȝen a-non 512
 I trowe I louede hym beste for þat he
 Was of his loue dangerous to me
 We women haue ȝif I schal nat lye
 In þis matyre a queynte fantasye 516
 That what þyng we may nat lyȝtely haue
 þeraftyr wele most crye & craue
 forbede vs thyng þat desyre we
 Presse on vs faste & þanne wele we fle 520
 With daunger oute we oure chaffare
 Gret pres in market makyȝth dere ware
 And to good chep is holde of lytyl prys
 This knowyȝth euery woman þat is wys 524
 Myn fyfte husbonde god his soule blysse
 Whiche þat I tok for loue & no rychesse
 He sumtyme was a clerk of oxsene forde
 And hadde left skole & wente at hom to borde 528

With myn gossib dwellynge in oure touz
 God haue hire soule hire name was alysoun
 Sche knew myn herte & ek myn pryuite
 Bet þan oure paryche prest so mote I the 532
 To hire be-wreyede I myn conseyl al [leaf 218]
 ffor hadde myn husebonde pissede on a wal
 Or don ony thyng þat schulde a cost his lyf
 To hire & to a-noþer worthi wyf 536
 And to myn nece þat I louede wel
 I wolde haue tolde hise conseyl euerydel
 And so I dede ful ofte god it wot
 That made hise face ofte red & hot 540
 ffor verray schame & blamede hym self þat he
 Hadde told me so gret a pryuyte
 And so be-fel þat onys in a lente
 So ofte tyme I to myn gossib wente 544
 ffor euere þat I louede to be gay
 And for to walke in marsch auerylle & may
 ffrom hous to hous to heryn sundery talis 547
 That Iankyn ¹clerk & myn gossib dame Alis [1 c rubbed out]
 And I myn self vp to þe feldis wente
 Myn housbonde was at lundene al þat lente
 And I hadde þe betere leyser for to pleye
 And for to se & ek for to be seye 552
 Of lusty folk what wyste I where myn grace
 Whas schape for to be or in what place
 Therfore I made mynne visitaciounnys
 To vigilis & to procesciounnys 556
 To prechyngis ek & to pylgrymagis
 To playes of myrakelis & of mariagis
 And werede vp-on myne scarlet gites
 These wormes these mothis & these mytis 560
 Vp-on myn peryl frete hem neuere a del
 And wost þou why for they were vsede wel
 Nowe wele I telle forth what happede me
 I seye þat in the feldys walkede we 564

Tyl trewely we haddyn swich a dalyaunce
 This clerk & I þat of myn puruyaunce
 I spak to hym & seyde how þat he
 3if I were wedewe he schulde wedde me 568
 ffor serteynly I seye for no bobaunce
 3it was I neuere with-oute puruyaunce
 Of mariage & more thyngis eek [leaf 218, back]
 I holde a mousys herte not worth a leek 572
 That hath but on hole to sterte to
 And that fayle thanne is al I-do
 I bere hym on honde he enchauntede me
 Myn dame taughte me þat sotylete 576
 And ek I seyde I mette of hym al nyȝt
 He wolde a slayn me as I lay vp ryȝt
 And al myn bed was ful of veray blood
 But 3it I hope þat he schal do me good 580
 ffor blood be-tokenyth gold as me was tauȝt
 And al was fals I dremede of it ryght nauȝt
 But I folwede ay myn damys lore
 As wel of this as of opere thyngis more 584
 But now syre lat se what schal I seyn
 A-ha by god I haue myn tale a-geyn
 What that myn husbonde was on bere
 I weep & made a sory chere 588
 As wyuys motyn for it is vsage
 And with myn couerechef couerede myn visage
 But for þat I was purueyed of a make
 I wepte but smal & þat I vndyr-take 592
 To cherche was myn husbond o born on morwe
 With negheboris þat for hym madyn sorwe
 And Iankyn oure klerk was on of thoo
 As help me god whan that I saw hym goo 596
 Aftyr þe beere me thoughte he hadde a payre
 Of leggis & feet so clene & fayre
 That al myn herte I 3af vnto his hold
 He was I trowe twenty wyntyȝ old 600

And I was fourty ȝif I schal sey sooth
 And ȝit I hadde alway a coltys toth
 Gat-tothid I was & that be-cam me wel
 I hadde the prente of seynt peterys sel 604
 As help me god I was a lusty on
 ffayr & ryche & frosch & wel be-gon
 And trewely as myn husbondys toldyn me
 I hadde the beste *quoniam* that myȝte be 608
 ffor sertis I am al venerient
 [leaf 219]
 In felynge & myn herte is marcient
 Venus me ȝaf myn lust myn licorousnesse
 And mars ȝaf me myn hardy-nesse 612
 Myn ascendent was taur & mars ther Inne
 Allas allas that euere loue was synne
 I folwede ay myn Inclynacyoun
 By vertu of myn constolacioun 616
 That made me that I coude nat withdrawe
 Myn chambere of venus from a good felawe
 ȝit haue I Martes mark vp-on myn face
 And also in a-nothyr preus place 620
 ffor god so wis be myn sauacyoun
 I ne lewede neuere by non discrecyoun
 But euere folwede myn apetit
 Al were he schort or long or blak or whȝt 624
 I tok no kep so þat he lykede mee
 How pore ne ek o what degree
 What schal I sey but at þe monethis ende
 This Ioly clerk Iankyn that was so hynde 628
 Hath wedede me with gret solempnetee
 And to hym ȝaf I al that lond & fee
 That euere was me ȝeun þere by-foore
 But afterward me repentede sone therfore 632
 He nolde suffere no thyng of myn lyst
 But onys he smot me with hyse fyst
 ffor I rente onys out of hyse bok a lef
 That for the strok myn ere wex al def 636

Styborne I was as a leonesse
 And of myn tunge a veray Iangeleresse
 And walke I wolde as [I] hadde don by-forn
 ffrom hous to hous al-thow he hadde it sworn 640
 ffor whiche ofte tymys he wolde preche
 And me olde romayn geestys teche
 How he symplycions Gallus lafte his wyf
 And hire for sok for terme of al his lyf 644
 Not but for o poynt he hyre say
 Lokynge out of hyse dore vp-on a day
 Anothir Romayn tolde he by name [leaf 219, back]
 That for hise wif was at a somer game 648
 With-outyn hyse wetynge he for-sok hire eke
 And thaxne wolde he vp-on hise bible seeke
 That ilke prouerbe of ecclesiaste
 Where he comaundyth & forbedyth faste 652
 Men schal not suffere here wyvis to roule a-boute
 Thaxne wolde he seye thus with-outyn doute
 Who-so byldyth hise hous al of salwys
 And prikyth hyse blynde hors ouere þe falewis 656
 And sufferith his wyf go sekyn halwys
 Is worthi to been hangyn on the galwis
 But al for nouȝt I sette nat an hawe
 Of hise prouerbis ne of hise olde sawe 660
 Ne I nulde of hym corectede be
 I hate hym that mynne vicis tellyn me
 And so don mo god wot than I
 This made hym holde me wood al outerely 664
 I nolde forbere hym in no manere cas
 Now wele I sey ȝow soth by seynt Thomays
 Whi that I rente out of hise bok a lef
 ffor whyche he smot me that I was def 668
 He hadde a bok that gladly nyȝt & day
 ffor his disport he wolde rede alway
 He clepede it valerye & theofraste
 At which bok he low ful faste 672

And ek he seyde that sumtyme there was a clerk at rome
 A cardenale that hyȝt Ierome
 That made a bok a-ȝen Iouynian
 In whiche bok þere was ek Tertulan 676
 Crisippus Tortula & Helowys
 That was abbesse not fer from Parys
 And ek the parabele of Salamon
 Ouydis art & bokys many on 680
 And alle these were boundyn In on volome
 And euery day & nyȝt was hyse custome
 Whan he hadde leyse[r] & vacacyoun
 ffrom opere wordely ocupacyoun 684
 To redyn on hise bok of wekede wyuys [leaf 22v]
 He knew of hem mo legendys & lyuys
 Than ben of goode wyuys in the byble
 ffor trostyth wel it is an Impossible 688
 That any clerk schulde speke good of wyuys
 But ȝif it be of holye seyntis lyuys
 Ne of non othere woman neuere þ^e mo
 Who peyntede þe lyoun tel me who 692
 Bi god ȝif women haddyn wretyn storyis
 As clerkis han with inne here oratoryis
 They wolde a wrete of men more wekedenesse
 Than al þe Mark of adam may redresse 696
 The chylderyn of mercurye & of venus
 Ben in hyre werkys wol contraryous
 Mercurye louyth wysdom & science
 And venus louyth riot & dispence 700
 And for hire dyuerse dispocicioun
 Eche fallyth in operis exsaltacyoun
 And þus wot god Mercurye is desolat
 In Pisses where Mercurye is exaltat 704
 And venus fallyth where Mercurye is reysed
 Therfore no woman of no klerk is preysed
 The clerk whan he is old & may not do
 Of venus werkys worth hyse olde scho 708

Thanne sit he doun & wryt in hise dotage
 That women kunne not kepe here maryage
 But now to purpos why I tolde the
 That I was betyn for a bok pardee 712
 Vp-on a nyzt Iankyn that was oure syre
 Radde on his bok as he sat by the fyre
 Of Eua fyrst that for hyre wikkedenes
 Was al mankynde brouzt to wrechedenes 716
 [For whiche þat Ihesu Crist hym selfe was slayne [MS Reg. 17 D xv, f/134, bk.]
 That boughte vs with his herte blode agayne [Not in Sloane MS 1685, f/111, bk.; Harl. 7835, f/70, bk.; or Reg. 18 C 2, leaf 113, bk.]
 Lo here expresse of women Maye ye ffynde
 That women was the losse of AH Mankynde] 720
 Tho radde he me how sampson loste hyse heris
 Slepynge his leman kitte hem with hyre scherys
 Thorgh whych tresoun loste he bothe hyse eyen
 Tho radde he me ȝif I schal nat lyen 724
 Of ercules & of hyse dyanyre
 That causede hym to sette hym selue a fyre
 No thyng for-gat he the care & the wo [leaf 220, back]
 That socrates hadde with hyse wyuys two 728
 How Exantippa caste pis vp-on his hed
 This sely man sat styлле as he were deed
 He wypede his hed no more durste he seyn
 But er thundyr stynte pere comyth a reyn 732
 Of phasippa that was the queen of Crete
 for schrewedenesse hym thouȝte the tale swete
 ffy spek na more it is a gresely thyng
 Of hire horrible lust & hire lykyng 736
 Of clitemysta for hire lecherye
 That falsely maade hire husbonde for to deye
 He radde it with ful good deuocioun
 He tolde me ek for what occasyoun 740
 Amphiorax at thebes loste his lyf
 Myn husbonde hadde a legende of his wyf
 Eryphilem þat for an Ouche of gold
 Hath priuily on to þe grekys told 744

Where þat hyre husbonde hidde hym in a place
 ffor whiche he hadde at thebes sory grace
 Of lyma tolde he me & of lucye
 Th[e]y bothe made here housbondis for to dye 748
 That on for loue that oþer for hate
 Lyma hire housbonde on an euyñ late
 Enpoysounede hath for þat sche was his fo
 Lucya lykerous louede hyre housbonde so 752
 That he schulde alwey on hire thynke
 Sche 3af hym swich a manere loue drynke
 That he was ded er it was by þ^e morwe
 And þus alगतys housbondis haddyn serwe 756
 Thanne tolde he me how on latymyus
 Compleynede to his felawe Arryus
 That in hyse gardyn growede swych a tre
 On whiche he seyde þat his wyuys thre 760
 Hangede hem self for herte despitous
 O leue brothir *quod* this Arryus
 3if me a plante of that blyssede tre
 And in myñ gardyn schal it plauntede be 764
 Of lattere date of wyuys þanne he radde [leaf 221]
 That some han slayn here housbondis in here bedde
 And leet hire lectour dyzte hire al þe nyzt
 Whils þat þe cors lay in þe flor vp-ryzt 768
 And some han dryue a nayl in here brayn
 Whils þat þey slepte & þus þey han hem alayn
 Some han 3eue hem poysoun in here drynk
 He spak more harm than herte may be-thynk 772
 And þer-with-al he knew mo prouerbis
 Than in this world þere growe gres or erbis
 Bet is *quod* he þat thyn habitacioun
 Be with a lyoun or a foul dragoun 776
 Than with a waman vsynge for to chyde
 Betere is *quod* he hye in þe rof a-byde
 Than with a wekede woman doun in an hous
 They ben so wekke & so contraryous 780

They hatyn that here housbondys louyn ay
 He seyde a woman caste hire schame a-way
 Whan sche caste of hire smok & ferpere mo
 A fayr woman but sche be chast also 784
 Is lik a golde ryng in a sowis nose
 Ho wolde wene or ho wolde suppose
 The wo that in myn herte was & pyne
 And I saw þat he wolde neuere fyne 788
 But redyn on hise cursede bok al nyȝt
 Al sodeynly thre leuys haue I plyȝt
 Out of his bok as he sat ful meke
 And with myn fist so tok I hym on þe cheke 792
 That in oure fyre he fyl bakward a-doun
 And he vp stirte as doth a wood lyoun
 And with his fyst he smot me on the hed
 That In the flor I lay as I were ded 796
 And whan he saw how styлле I lay
 He was a-gast & fledde a-way
 Til at þe laste out of myn swow I breyde
 O hast þou sleyn me thef I seyde 800
 And þus for myn lond wilt þou mordre me
 Er I be ded ȝit wele I kysse the
 And ner he cam & knelede fayre a-doun [leaf 221, back]
 And seyde myn dere systyr alysoun 804
 Als helpe me god I schal þe neuere smyte
 That I haue don It is thyn self to wyte
 ffor ȝeue it me & þat I þe be-seke
 And ȝit eft-sonys I hitte hym on the cleke 808
 And seyde thef þus meche I may me wreke
 Now wele I deye I may no lengere speke
 But at þe laste with meche care & wo
 We fille a-cordit by oure seluyn two 812
 He ȝaf me al þe brydyl in myn hond
 To haue gouernauns of hous & lond
 And of his tunge & of his hond also
 And made hym to brenne his bok ryȝt þo 816

And whanne I hadde I-getyn on to me
 By maysterye al þe souereyntee
 Thanne he seyde myn owene trewe wyf
 Do as ȝe leste for terme of al ȝoure lyf 820
 Keep thyn honour & thyn estat
 Aftyr þat day we ne haddyn neuere debat
 God help me so I was to hym as kynde
 As ony wif from denmark vn-to Inde 824
 And as trewe & so was he to me
 I preye to god þat sit in mageste
 So blysse his soule for his mercy dere
 Now wele I seye myn tale ȝif ȝe wele here 828

[*The Wrangle between the Summoner and Friar.*]

The frere low whan he hadde herd al this
 Now dame quod he also haue I Ioye or blis
 This is a long preamble of a tale
 And whan þe somnour herde þe frere gale 832
 Lo quod the sumnour bi goddys armys too
 A frere wele entirmete hym euere mo
 Lo goode men a flye & ek a frere
 Wele falle in euery disch & matere 836
 What spekyst þou of perambulacioun
 What amble or trotte or pes or go sit down
 þou lettyst oure desport in þis matiere
 ȝa wilt þou so syre somnour quod þe frere 840
 Now by myn fey I schal er þat I go [leaf 222]
 Telle of a sumnour a tale or too
 That alle þe folk schul law he in þis place
 Now ellis frere I be-schrewe thyn face 844
 Quod this sumnour & I be-schrewe me
 But ȝif I telle talis too or thre
 Of freris er I come to Sidyngborne
 That I schal make þyn herte for to moorne 848

ffor wel I wot þyn pacience is goon
 Oure ost cryede pees & þat a-non
 And seyde lat þe woman telle hire tale
 3e fare as folk dronke were of ale 852
 Doth dame tellyth forth 3oure tale & þat is best
 Al redy sire *quod* sche ryght at 3oure lest
 3if I haue lycens of þis worþi frere
 3is dame telle forth & I schal here 856

Here endith þe prologe of the wyues tale of Bathe.

[Gap of one line in the MS.]

Here begynnȳt the wyf of bathe hire tale [leaf 22^v, back]

[Painting of the Wife.]

IN olde dayis of kyng Arthour
 Of whiche þat brytons spekyȳ gret honour
 Al was this lond ful fyld of fayrye
 The elf quene wyth hire cumpanye · 860
 Dauncede ful ofte in manye a grene mede
 This was the olde opynyoun as I rede
 I speke of manye hunderede ȝeris a-go
 But now can no man se eluys mo 864
 ffor now the charite & þe prayeris
 Of lymytouris & of opere holy frerys
 That serchyn euery lond & euery strem
 As thikke as motys in þe sone hem 868
 Blessen halles chaumbery[s] kichenys bourys
 Ceteis borwys¹ castelis hyghe tourys [¹ rweys: later.]
 Thropes bernys / Schipnes dayryis
 That makyth that þere ben no fayryis 872
 ffor þere as wont was² for to walke an elf [² was: later.]
 There walkyth now þe lymytour hym self
 In vndirmelys & in morwenyngis
 And seyth hyse matynys & hyse holye thyngis 876
 As he goth in hyse lymytacioun
 Wemen mowe go sauely vp & doun
 In euery bussch & vndyr euery tree
 There is nower non Incubus but he 880
 And he wele don hym non dishonour
 And so be-fel þat this kyng Arthour
 Hadde in his hous a ryche bachelor
 That on a day cam rydyȳge from reuer 884

CAMBRIDGE. 192 (6.7. 359)

And happede a-lone as sche was born
 He saw a mayde cam rydyng hym by-forn
 Of whiche maydyn a-non maugry hire hed
 By veray forse by-rafte he hire maydynhed 888
 ffor which apprecioun was swych clamour
 And swych pursut to kyng arthour
 That dampnede was the knyzt for to be ded
 By cours of lawe & schulde a lost hyse heed 892
 Perauenture swich was the statute þo
 But that þe queen & opere ladyis moo
 So longe preyedyn the kyng of grace [leaf 223]
 Tyl he his lyf grauntede at þat place 896
 And gaf hym to the queen at hire wille
 To chese wheþer sche wolde hym saue or spille
 The queen thankede þe kyng with al hyre myzt
 And aftyr this þus spak sche to þ^e knyzt 900
 Whan sche saw hyre tyme vp-on a day
 Thow stondist ȝit quod sche in swich aray
 That of thyn lyf [thou] hast no surete
 I graunte þe lyf ȝif þou canst telle me 904
 What thyng ist that women most desyryn
 Be-war & kep thyn neke bon from yryn
 And ȝif þou canst not telle me anon
 ȝit wele I ȝeue þe leue for to goon 908
 A twelvemonyth & a day to lere
 An answer sufficiaunt in this matire
 And surete wele I haue er þat þou pace
 Thyn body for to ȝildyn in þis place 912
 Wo was this knyzt & sorwefully he sikede
 But ȝit may he nat don as hym lykede
 And at þe laste he ches hym for to weende
 And come a-ȝen ryzt at þe ȝerys ende 916
 With swich answer as god wolde hym purueye
 And takyth his leue & wendyth forth hyse weye
 And sekyth euery hous & euery place
 Where as he hopith to fynde grace 920

To lernyn what thyng wemen louyn most
 But he ne coude aryun In no cost
 Where as he myzte fynde in this matyre
 Two wightis a-cordyn in fyre 924
 Some men seydyn wemen louyn best rychesse
 Some men seyde honour some ¹holynesse¹ [*written over*
an erasure.]
 Some men seyde ryche aray some lust in bedde
 And ofte tyme be wedewe & ofte I-wedde 928
 Some men seyde oure herte is most I-esed
 Whan þat we been I-flatered & I-pled
 He goth ful nygh þe sothe I nyl not lye
 A man schal wynne vs best with flatterye 932
 And with attendaunce & besynesse [*leaf 222, back*]
 Be we I-lymyd bope more & lesse
 And some men seyn þat we louyn best
 ffor to be fre & do ryzt as vs lest 936
 And þat no man repreue vs of oure vice
 But seye þat we be wys & no thyng nyse
 ffor trewely þere is non of vs alle
 ȝif ony wyzt wele clawe vs on the galle 940
 That we nolde kyke for he seyth vs soth
 Assay he schal fynde it þat so doth
 ffor be we neuere so vicious with-inne
 We wele be holde wis & clene of synne 944
 And some seyn that gret loue haue we
 ffor to ben holde wyse & secre
 And in on purpos stedefastly to dwelle
 And not be wreye thyng þat men vs telle 948
 But þat tale nys not worth a rake stele
 Parde we wemen can nothyng hele
 Witnesse of Mida wil ȝe here þe tale
 Ouyde a-mongis opere thyngis smale 952
 Seyde Mida hadde vndyr hyse longe herys
 Growynge on his hed two assis erys
 The whiche vice he hyde as he best myghte
 fful subtyly from euery manys syzte 956

That saue his wyf þere wiste of it no mo
 He louede hyre most & trostid to hyre also
 He preyede hyre þat to no cryature
 Sche schulde telle of his disfygure 960
 Sche swor hym nay for al this world to wyne
 Sche nolde not do þat vilany or synne
 Go make hyre husbonde to haue so foul a name
 Sche nele it telle for hyre owene schame 964
 But neuere-þe-les hire thouȝte þat sche dyde
 That sche so longe a conseylde hyde
 Hire thouȝte it swal so sore a-boute hyre herte
 That nedely sum word muste a-sterste 968
 And sythe sche durste telle it to no man
 Doun to a mareys faste by sche ran
 Tyl sche cam þere hire herte was a fyre [Deaf 224]
 And as a bitore bumbith in þe myre 972
 Sche leyde hyre mouth to þe watyr adoun
 Be-wrey me not þou watyr with thyn soun
 Quod sche to þe I telle it & no mo
 Myn husbonde hath longe erys too 976
 Now is al myn herte hol now is it oute
 I myȝte no lengere kepe it out of doute
 Here may ȝe se þow we no tyme abyde
 ȝit out mote it we can no conseyl hyde 980
 The remenaunt of þe tale ȝif ȝe wele here
 Rede ouyde & þere mowe ȝe it leere
 This knyȝt of which myn tale is specyally
 Whan he saw he myȝte not come þerby 984
 This is to seye what wemen louyn most
 With-inne his brest full sorwefully was þe gost
 But hom he goth he myȝte not soiorne
 The ðay was come that homward muste he turne 988
 And In hyse wey as happede hym to ryde
 In al hise care vndyr a forest syde
 Where as he saw vp-on a daunce go
 Of ladyis foure & twenty & ȝit mo 992

Toward þis dauns he drow ful ȝerne
 In hope þat sum wisdom schulde he lerne
 But serteyn fully er he cam ther
 Vanysschid was the daunce he nyste wher 996
 No cryateure saw he þat bar lyf
 Saue on þe grene he saw syttinge a wyf
 A foulere wyȝt þere may no man devyse
 A-ȝens þis knyȝt this olde whȝt gan ryse 1000
 And seyde syre knyȝt here forth lyth no weye
 Telle ȝe me what ȝe seke be ȝoure feye
 Peraenture þe betere may it be
 These olde folk can moche thyng quod sche 1004
 Myn leue modyr quod this knyght serteyn
 I ne am but deed but ȝif þat I can seyn
 What thyng ist þat wemen most desyre
 Koude ȝe me wische I wolde quyte ȝoure hyre 1008
 Plyghte me þyn treuth in myn hond quod sche [leaf 224, back]
 The nexte thyng that I require the
 Thow shalt it do ȝif it be in þy myȝht
 And I wele telle it ȝow er it be nyȝht 1012
 Hauē her myn trouthe quod þe knyȝht I graunte
 Thanne quod sche I dar me wel a-vaunte
 Thyn lyf is saf I wele stonde þerby
 Vp-on myn lyf þe quen wele seye as I 1016
 Lat se which is þe proudest of hem alle
 That weryth on a couerechief or a calle
 Tha[t] dar sey nay of þat I schal the teche
 Lat vs go forth with oute lengere speche 1020
 Tho rounnede sche a pistyl in hyse ere
 And bad hym to be glad & haue no fere
 Whan þey been comyn to þe court þis knyȝt
 Seyde þat he hadde holde his day þat he hyȝt 1024
 And redy was his answer as he sayde
 fful manye a nobele wyf & manye a mayde
 And manye a wedewe for þat þey ben wyse
 The queen hire self syttinge as a iustyse 1028

Assembeled be his answerys for to here
 And afterward þis knyzt was bode to pere
 To euery wyzt was comaundede silence
 And þat þe knyzt schulde telle in audyence 1032
 What thyng þat wordely women louyn best
 The knyzt stod not stille as a beest
 But to his questionn a-non answerde
 With manly voys þat al þe court it herde 1036
 Myn lige lady generally *quod* he
 Wemen desyryn to han souereynste
 As wel ouyr hire husbondis as ouer hire hove
 And for to been in maystrye hem a-boue 1040
 This is þe moste desyr thow 3e me kylle
 Doth as 3ow leste I am al at 3oure wille
 In al þe court ne was þere wif ne mayde
 Ne wedewe contraryede þat he sayde 1044
 But seydyn þat he was worthi to han his lyf
 And with that word vp sterte þe olde wyf
 Whiche þat þe knyzt saw syttinge on þe grene [leaf 225]
 Mercy *quod* sche myn souereyn lady quene 1048
 Er þat 3oure court departe doth me ryght
 I taughte this answer to þe knyth
 for which he plyzte me his trouthe þere
 The fyrste thyng þat I wolde hym requere 1052
 He wolde it do 3if it lay in his myzt
 By-fore þe court þanne preye I þe syre knyzt
 Quod sche þat þou me take on to þyn wyf
 for weel þou wist þat I haue kept þyn lyf 1056
 3if I seye fals say nay vp-on þy fey
 This knyzt answerde allas & weyleaway
 I wot ryzt wel þat swich was myn behest
 for goddis loue as ches a newe requeste 1060
 Tak al myn good & lat myn body goo
 Nay þanne *quod* sche I be schrewe vs hope too
 for þow I be foul old & pore
 I nolde for al þe metal ne for ore 1064

That vndyr þe erþe is graue or lyth a-boue
 But ȝif þyn wyf I were & ek þyn loue
 Myn loue *quod* he nay myn dampnacyoun
 Allas þat ony of myn nacyoun / 1068
 Schulde euere so foule disparagit be
 But al for nouȝt þanne is þis *quod* sche
 Constreynede was he nedys he muste hyre wedde
 And takyth his olde wif & goth to bedde 1072
 Now wil some men seye parauenture
 That for myn necligens I do no cure
 To telle ȝow þe ioye & also tharray
 That at þat ilke feste was þat day 1076
 To whiche thyng sothely I answere schal
 And seye þere was no Ioye ne feste at al
 There was but heuynesse & meche sorwe
 ffor priuily he wedde hire in þe morwe 1080
 And al day affyr hydde hym as an houle
 So ¹wo was ¹hym his wyf lokede so foule [—1 later]
 Gret was þe wo þe knyȝt hadde in his thouȝt
 Whan he was wyth his wyf in bedde I-brouȝt 1084
 He walwith & he turnyth too & fro [leaf 215, back]
 This olde wif lay smylȝnge euere mo
 And seyde o dere husbende benedicite
 ffaryth euery knyȝt with his wyf as ȝe 1088
 Is þis þe lawe of kyng arthures hous
 Is euery knyȝt of his þus daungerous
 I am ȝoure owene loue & ȝoure wyf
 I am sche þat sauede hath ȝoure lyf 1092
 And sertis I dede ȝow neuere vnryȝt
 Whi fare ȝe þus with me þe ferste nyȝt
 ȝe fare lyk a man þat hadde lost his wit
 What is myn gilt for godis loue telle me it 1096
 And it schal been a-mendit ȝif þat I may
 A-mendit *quod* this knyȝt allas nay nay
 It wele not been a-mendit neuere mo
 Thow art so loothly old & so pore also 1100

And þerto comyn of so low a kynde
 That lytyl wondir ist þow I walwe & wynde
 So wolde god myn harte wolde breste
 Is þis *quod* sche þe cause of þoure onreste 1104
 ȝa serteynly *quod* he no wondir is
 Now sere *quod* sche I coude a-mende al þis
 ȝif þat me lyste er it were dayis thre
 So wel myȝte ȝe bere ȝow to me 1108
 But for ȝe speke of swich gentillesse
 As is dessendit out of olde richesse
 That þerfore schul ȝe ben holdyn gentil men
 Swich arrogauce is not worth an hen 1112
 Loke ho þat is most verteuous alwey
 Pryue & apert & most entendyth ay
 To do þe gentyl dedys þat he can
 Take hym for þe gretteste gentil man 1116
 Cryst wele we cleyme of hym oure gentylesse
 Noght of oure elderys for oure olde rychesse
 ffor þow þey ȝeue vs al here erytage
 ffor which we cleymyn to been of high parage 1120
 ȝit may þey not by-quethe for no thyng
 To noon of vs here verteuous lyuyng
 That made hem gentylmen I-callede be [leaf 226]
 And bad vs foldyn hem in swich degre 1124
 Weel can þe wise poete of florence
 That hyȝt dant declare þis centence
 Lo in swych a manere rym is dantes tale
 fful selde vp rysith by hyse braunzchis smale 1128
 Prowesse of man for god of his prowesse
 Wele þat we cleyme of hym oure gentillesse
 ffor of oure eldere we may no thyng cleyme
 But temperel thyng þat man may hurte & mayme 1132
 Ek euery wyȝt wot þis as wel as I
 ȝif gentillesse were plantid naturelly
 Vp to a certeyn lennage doun be lyne
 Preue nor apert þanne wolde þey neuere fyne 1136

To don of gentillesse þe offys
 They myȝte don no vilenye nor vice
 Tak fyr & bare in þe derkeste hous
 Be-twyrre this & þe mount of Cankerous 1140
 And let men schette þe dore & go þenne
 ȝit wil þe fyr lye as fyr & brenne
 As twenty thousent men myȝte it by-holde
 His offise naturel ay wel it holde 1144
 Vp peril of myn lyf tyl þat it deye
 Here may ȝe wel sen how þat genterye
 Is not annexed to possessioun
 Sithe folk ne don here operacioun 1148
 Alwey as doth the fyr in hise kynde
 ffor I wot men may ful ofte fynde
 A lordis sone do schame & vilanye
 And he þat wele haue prys of his genterye 1152
 ffor he was bore of a gentyl hous
 And hadde hise olderis nobele & vertuous
 And nyle hym self don non gentyle dedis
 Ne folwe his gentyle auncetere þat deed is 1156
 He nys not gentyl be he duk or el
 ffor violens synful dedys make eke a cherl
 ffor gentillesse nys but renomee
 Of thynne auncestris for here hygh bounte 1160
 Whiche is a strong thyng to thyn persone [leaf 226, back]
 The gentillesse comyth from god a-lone
 Thanne comyth oure verray gentillesse of grace
 It was no thyng be-quethe vs with oure place 1164
 Thynkith how nobele as seyth valerius
 Was that ilke tullius hostilius
 That out of pouert ros to gret noblesse
 Redyth senec & redith eek boece 1168
 Ther schul ȝe se expres þat no dred is
 That he is gentyl that doth gentyl dedis
 And þerfore leue husbonde I thus conclude
 Al were it þat myne auncestris were reude 1172

ȝit may þe hye god & so hope I
 Graunte me grace to leue verteuosly
 Thanne am I gentyl whan þat I be-gynne
 To leuyn verteuosly & leuyn synne 1176
 And þere as ȝe of pouert me repreue
 The hye god of whom ȝe me repreue
 In wilful pouert ches to lede his lyf
 And certys euery man mayde or wyf 1180
 May vndyrstondyn Ihesus¹ heuene kyng [1 MS Ihe]
 Ne wolde not chese an vicious leuynȝ
 Glad pouert is an oneste thyng certeyn
 This wele Senek & oþere clerkys seyn 1184
 Ho so hym halt payed of his pouerte
 I holde hym ryche hadde he but a sherte
 He þat coueytyth is a pore wight
 ffor he wolde han þat is not in his myȝt 1188
 But he þat nought haht ne coueythit to haue
 Is² riche al-thow men holde hym but a knaue [2 s later]
 Veray pouert it syngith properly
 Iuenal seyth of pouerte meryly 1192
 The poure man whan he goth by the weye
 By-fore þe thewis he may syng & pleye
 Pouerte is hateful good as I gesse
 A ful gret bryngere out of besinesse 1196
 A gret amendere ek of sapience
 To hem þat takyth it in pacience
 Pouerte is this al-thow it seme alenge [leaf 227]
 Possessioun þat no man wele calenge 1200
 Pouerte ful ofte whan a man is lowe
 Makyth his god & hym self to knowe
 Pouerte a spectakele is as thynkyth me
 Thorw which he may his veray frend I-se 1204
 And þerfore syre syn þat I ȝow not greue
 Of myn pouerte no more ȝe me repreue
 Now syre of olde ȝe repreue me
 And sertis syde thogh non autoryte 1208

Were in no bok the gentylys of honour
 Seyn þat men schuld an old wyȝt don fauour
 And clepyn hym fadyr of ȝoure gentilesse
 And auctouris schal I fyndyn as I gesse 1212
 Now þere ȝe seyn I am foul & old
 Thanne drede ȝow not to ben a coukewold
 ffylthe & elde alsomote I the
 Ben gret wardaynys vp-on chastite 1216
 But natheles sythe I knowe ȝoure delyt
 I schal fulfyllen ȝoure wordely apetyt
 Chese now *quod* sche on of þese thyngis tweye
 To haue me foul & old tyl þat I deye 1220
 And be to ȝow a trewe vnable wyf
 And neuere ȝow displese in al myn lyf
 Or ellis ȝe wele haue me ȝyng & fayr
 And take þe auenture of the repayr 1224
 That schal be to ȝoure hous be cause of me
 Or in sum oþer place may wel be
 Now cheseth ȝoure selue wheþer þat ȝow likyth
 This knyȝt a-uyseth hym & sore sykyth 1228
 But at þe laste he seyde in þis manere
 Myn lady & myn loue & myn wyf so dere
 I putte me in ȝoure wise gouernaunce
 Cheseth ȝoure self whiche may be most plesaunce 1232
 And most honour to ȝow & me also
 I do no fors wheþer of the too
 ffor as ȝow lykyth it suffyseth me
 Thanne haue I gete þe maysterye *quod* sche 1236
 Syn I may chese & gouerne as me leste [leaf 227, back]
 ȝa sertys wif *quod* he I helde it for þe beste
 Kis me *quod* sche we be no lengere wrothe
 ffor be myn trouthe I wele be to ȝow bothe 1240
 That is to seyne bothe fayr & good
 I preye to god I mote sterwe wod
 But I to ȝow be al so good & trewe
 As euere was wyf syn þat þe world was newe 1244

And but I be to morwe as fayr to sene
 As eny lady Emperesse or quene
 That euere was be-twixse þe Est & þ^e west
 Doth with myn lyf & doth ryzt as 3ow lest 1248
 Cast vp þe curtyn & loke how þat it is
 And whan þat þe knyght saw verrayly al þis
 That sche so fayr was & so 3yng þerto
 ffor ioye he hente hyre in hise armys too 1252
 His herte bathit in a bath of blys
 A thousent sythe a rowe he gan hire kys
 And sche obeyede hym in euery thyng
 That myzte do hym plesauunce or lykyng 1256
 And þus þey lyue vn-to here lyuys ende
 In parfyt Ioye & Ihesu crist vs synde
 Husbondis meke 3inge & frosche in bedde
 And grace to ouer hyde hem þat we wedde 1260
 And ek I preye Ihesu schorte here lyuys
 That wele not been gouernyd by here wyuys
 And olde & angery nygardys of dispence
 God sende hem sone verray pestelence 1264

Here endith the Wif of Bathe hyre tale

[Gap of one line in the MS.]

Here begynnynth the prologe of the frerys tale . [¶ 227, bk.]

[Gap of 6 lines in the MS. Leaf 228 (containing 'prologe', painting, and 22 lines of the tale) has been cut out.]

THis worthi¹ lymytour/ this noble frere. [Harl. MS 1758, leaf 102]
 he made alweie a maner/¹ louryng chere. [¶ worht, a maner, yet, in the margin]
 vp-on the Sompnour but yet¹ for honeste.
 No vilenous worde as yet spak/ he. . 1268
 But at the laste he seide vn-to the wif.
 Dame gode god yeue you right good lif/.

Ye han touched here also mote I the.

In scole mater/ gret/ difficulte. 1272

Ye han seide mocheH thyng right weH I seie. [leaf 102, back]

But dame here as we riden bi the weie.

Vs nedith not to speken but of game.

And late auctorites go² a goddis name. [¶ go in margin]

To prechyng/ & to scole eke of clergie.

But if it like vn-to this companye.

I wiff you of a somnour telle a game.

Parde ye may weH knowe be the name. 1280

That of no somnour may no gode be saide.

I praye that non of you be euyH a-paide.

A Somnour is a romere vp & down.

With maundementis/ of ffornycacioun. 1284

And is bete at every townes ende.

Our/ oost tho spak a sir/ ye schulde ben hende.

And curteis as man of your/ estate.

In companye we woff no debate. 1288

Telleth your/ tale & lateth the Somnour be.

Nay quod the Somnour late hym saie³ to me [¶ saie in margin]

What so hym list whan it cometh to my lot.

Bi god I schaff hym quyte every grot. 1292

I schaff hym telle whiche a gret honour/.

It is to be a flaterynge lymytour/.

And eek/ of fuff manye another/ cryme.

Whiche nedith not rehersen at this tyme. 1296

And his office I schaff hym telle y-wis.

Our/ hoste answerid pees no more of this.

And aftirwarde he seide vn-to the frere.

Tell forth your/ tale my leue maister/ dere. 1300

Here endith the prolog/.

CAMBRIDGE 204 (6-T. 371) [this page, Harl. 1758]

and begynneth the tale!!! [Harl. MS 1758, on
leaf 102, back]

W Hilom ther/ was dwellyng/ in my contre.
 An Erchedekene a man of hye degre.
 That boldely dide execucioun.
 In ponyschyng' of ffornycacioun. 1304
 Of wicchecraft & eek/ of baudrie.
 Of diffamacioun & avoutrie.
 Of chirche reenes & of testamentis.
 Of contractis & of lak/ of sacramentis. 1308

Of vsure & Symonye also.

But certis lecchours dide he most wo.

Thei schulden syngen if thei were hent.

And smale tithers weren foule schent. 1312

Yf any persone wolde vp-on hem pleyne.

Ther/ myght a-sterre hym no pecunyah peyne.

ffor smale tithes & eek/ smale offerynge.

he made the peple spitously to synge. 1316

ffor or the Bischop caughte hem with his hooke.

Thei weren in the Erchedekenes booke.

And then had he thorow his Iurdiccion. [leaf 108]

Power/ to doon on hem correccion. 1320

he had a Sompnour redy to his honde.

A slier/ boie was non in Engelonde.] [Harl. extract ends]

ffor subtilly he hadde hise expyayle [MS Gg. 4. 27, leaf 229]

That tauzte hym where hym myzte a-vayle 1324

He coude spare of lechourys on or two

To techyn hym to foure & twenty mo

ffor þow þis somenour wood were as an hare

To telle his harloterye I wele not spare 1328

ffor we ben out of his coreccioun
 They han of vs no Iurediccioun
 Ne neuere ne schuln of alle here lyuys
 Petyr so been wemen at þe styuys 1332
 Quod þe somenour I-put out of oure cure
 Pees with myschaunce & with mysaventure
 Thus seyde oure ost & lat hym telle his tale
 Now tallith forth þow þat þe somenour gale 1336
 Ne sparyth not myn owene maystyr dere
 This false thef þis somenour quod þe frere
 Hadde alwey baudys redy to his hond
 As ony hauk to lure in ingelond 1340
 That tolde hym al þe secre þat þey knewe
 ffor hire aqueyntauns was not comyn of newe
 They were hise apprououris pryuely
 He tok hym self a profyt þerby 1344
 His maystyr knew not alwey what he wan
 With-outyn maundement a lewede man
 He coude somounne vp peyne of crystis curs
 And þey were ful glad to fille his purs 1348
 And made hym noble festis at þe nale
 And ryȝt as Iudas hadde purse smale
 And was a thef ryȝt swich a thef was he
 Hise mayster hadde but half his duete 1352
 He was ȝif I schal ȝeuyn hym hise lawede
 A thef & ek a somenour & a baude
 He hadde ek wenchis at his retenew
 That wheþer syre Robert oþer syre Hewe 1356
 Or Iakke or Raf or who so þat it were
 That lay by hem þey tolde it in hise ere
 Thus was þe wenche & he at on assent
 And he wolde feche a feynede maundement 1360
 And somounne hem to chapitere boþe two [leaf 229, back]
 And pile þe man & lete þe wenche go
 Thanne wolde he sey frend I schal for thyn sake
 Don stryke þe out of oure letteris blake 1364

The thar no more as in pis cas trauayle
 I am thyn frend þere I þe may a-vayle
 Certeyn he knew of bryberyis mo
 Than possible is to telle in ȝeris two 1368
 ffor in pis world nys dōge for þe bowe
 Than kan an hurt der from an hol knowe
 Bet þan þe somenour knew a sly lechour
 Or auoutir or a paramour 1372
 And for þat was þe freut of al his rente
 Therfore he sette on it al hyse entente
 And so be-fel þat onys on a day
 This somenour euere waytynge on hyse pray 1376
 Wente for to somouane a wedewe an old rybibe
 ffeynyng a cause for he wolde brybe
 And happede he saw by-fore hym ryde
 A gay ȝeman vnder a forest syde 1380
 A bowe he bar & arwis bryȝte & kene
 He hadde up-on a courtepy of grene
 An hat vp-on his hed with frengis blake
 Syre quod þe somenour wel a-take 1384
 Wolcome quod he & enery good felawe
 Wheȝer rydistow vndyr pis grene wode schawe
 Seyde þis ȝeman wilt þou fer to day
 This somenour answerde & seyde nay 1388
 Here faste by is myn entente
 To rydyn & to reysyn vp a rente
 That longith on to myn lordis duete
 Art þou þanne a baylyf / ye quod he 1392
 He durste not for veray fylthe & schiame
 Seye he was a somenour for þe name
 De-pardeus quod þis ȝeman leue broȝer
 Thou art a balyf & I am a-noȝer 1396
 I am onknowyn as in pis cuntre
 Of thyn aqueyntauns I wolde preye þe
 And ek of brotherhode ȝif that ȝow leste
 I haue gold & siluyr in myn cheste 1400

[Leaf 230r]

ȝif þat ȝe happyn to comyn in oure schyre
 Al schal be ryȝt as ȝe wele desyre
 Graunt mercy *quod* þis somenour be myn fey[th]
 Eueryche in operes hand his trouthe leyth 1404
 ffor to ben swore breþeryn tyl þey deye
 In daliaunce þey ryde forth & pleye
 This somenour þat was so ful of Iangelys
 As ful of venym ben þese variangelys 1408
 And euere enquiryng vp-on euery thyng
 Brothir quod he where is ȝoure dwellyng
 A-noþer day ȝif þat I schulde ȝow seche
 This ȝeman hym answered in softe speche 1412
 Broþer quod he fer in þe north cuntre
 Where as I hope sumtyme I schal þe se
 Er we departe I schal þe so wel wische
 That of myn hous ne shalt þou neuere mysse 1416
 Now broþer *quod* þe somenour I ȝow preye
 Teche me whils þat ȝe ryde by þe weye
 Syn þat ȝe be a balyf as am I
 Sum subtilite & telle me feythfully 1420
 In myn offys how I may most wyne
 And sparyth not for concience ne for synne
 But as myn broþer telle me how do ȝe
 Now by myn trouthe broþer dere seyde he 1424
 As I schal telle þe a feythful tale
 Mynne wagis been ful streyte & ful smale
 Myn lord is hard to me & daungerous
 And myn offys is ful laborous 1428
 And þefore by extorcounnys I leue
 ffor sothe I take al þat men wele me ȝene
 Algate by sleyȝte or by violence
 ffrom ȝer to ȝer I wyne al myn dispence 1432
 I can no betere telle feythfully
 Now sertis *quod* þis somenour so fare I
 I spare not to take god it wot
 But ȝif it be to heuy or to hoot 1436

What I may gete in conseyll pryuyly [leaf 220, back]
 No manere concience haue I
 Nere myn extorcious I myȝte not lyue
 Ne of sweche Iapis I wele not be schreue 1440
 Stomak ne concience knowe I non
 I schrewe þese schryft faderys euerychon
 Wel be we met by god & by seynt Iame
 But leue broþer telle me þanne þyn name 1444
 Quod this somenour & in þis mene while
 This ȝeman gan a lytyl for to smyle
 Broþer quod he wilt þou þat I þe telle
 I am a fend myn dwellyng is in helle 1448
 And here I ryde a-boute myn purchasyng
 To wete where men wolde ȝeue me ony thyng
 Myn purchas is þe effect of al myn rente
 Loke how þou rydist for þe same entente 1452
 To wyne good þou rekist neuere how
 Ryght so fare I for ryde wolde I now
 Vnto þe worldis ende for a preye
 A quod þe somenour benediste what seye 1456
 I wende ȝe were a ȝeman trewely
 ȝe haue a manys schap as wel as I
 H[a]ue ȝe a figure þanne determynat
 In helle þere ȝe ben in ȝoure estat 1460
 Nay serteyn quod he þere haue we non
 But whan vs lykyth þanne can we takyn on
 Or ell make ȝow seme þat we been schape
 Sumtyme lyk a man or lyk an ape 1464
 Or lyk an sungel can I ryde or go
 It is no wondyr thyng thow it be so
 A lousy iogelour can deseyue þe
 And parde ȝit can I more craft þax he 1468
 Whi quod þe somenour ride ȝe þanne or gon
 In sundery schap & not alwey in on
 ffor we quod he wele vs swich formys make
 As most able is oure prey for to take 1472

What makyth ȝow to haue al þis labour
 fful manye a cause leue sire Somenour
 Seyde þis fend but alle thyng hath tyme [leaf 231]
 The day is schort / & it is passed pryme 1476
 And ȝit ne wan I no thyng on this day
 I wele entende to wynnyng ȝif I may
 And noght entende oure wordis to declare
 ffor broȝer myn thyn wit is al to bare 1480
 To vndyrstonde al thow I tolde hem the
 But for þou axyst why laboure we
 ffor sumtyme we ben goddys instrumentis
 And meeuyn[n] for to don hise comaundementis 1484
 Whan þat hym lyste vp-on hyse creaturys
 In dyuerse art & in dyuerse figurys
 With-outyn hym we haue no myȝt certeyn
 ȝif þat him liste stande þere ageyn 1488
 And sumtyme at oure preyere han we leue
 Only þe body but not þe soule to greue
 [Wytnesse on Iob whom þat we did woo [Sloane MS 1086,
leaf 122]
 And some tyme haue we myȝt of bothe two]
 This is to seyne of soule & body ek
 And sumtyme be we sufferede for to sek
 Vp-on a man & don his soule onreste
 Noght his body & al is for þe beste 1496
 Whan he withstandith oure temptacioun
 It is þe cause of his sauacioun
 Al be it þat it was not oure entente
 He schulde be saf but þat we wolde hym hente 1500
 And sumtyme be we seruauuntys vn-to man
 As to þe Erchebisshop seynt Dunstan
 And to þe apostell ek seruauaunt was I
 ȝit telle me quod þe sumnour feythfully 1504
 Make ȝe ȝow néwe bodyis þus alwey
 Of elementis / þe fend answerde nay
 Sumtyme we feyne & sumtyme we areyse
 With deede bodyis in ful sundery wyse 1508

And speke as renable & fayre & wel
 As to þe Phitonyssa dede Samuel
 And ȝit wele some men seyn it was nat
 I do no fors of ȝoure dyuynyte 1512
 But o thyng warne I þe I wele not iape
 Thow wolt algatis wete how we ben schape
 Thow schalt here aftward myn broþer dere [leaf 231, back]
 Come / where þe nedyth not of me to lere 1516
 ffor þou schat by thyn owene experyence
 Curne in a chayer þanne rede þis sentence
 Bet þan virgilie whilis he w[as] on lyue
 Or daunt also whils he was on lyue 1520
 ffor I wele holde cumpanye with þe
 Til it be so þat þou forsake me
 Nay quod þe somenour þat schal neuere be-tyde
 I am a ȝeman knowyn is ful wyde 1524
 Myn trouthe wele I holde [to þe as in þis caas [Elcane MS 1005,
 ffor þouȝe þou were þe Deueff Sathanas leaf 122, back]
 My troupe wolde I holde] myn leue broþer
 As I am sworn and eche of vs tyl oþer 1528
 ffor to be trewe broþer in þis cas
 And boþe we gon a-boute oure purchas
 Take þou þyn part of þat men wele þe ȝeue
 And I schal myn þus may we boþe leue 1532
 And ȝif þat ony of vs haue more þan oþer
 Let hym be trowe & parte it with his broþer
 I graunte quod þe deuyl be myn fey
 And with þat word þey ryde forth here wey 1536
 And ryȝt at þe enterynge at þe tounnys ende
 To which þis somenour schop hym for to wende
 The[y] saw a carte þat chargede was with hey
 Which þat a Cartere drof ferth in þe wey 1540
 Dep was þe weye for which þis carte stod
 The cartere smot and cryede as he were wood
 Hayt sket hayt lyarad hat brok atonys
 The fend quod he ȝow feche body & bonys 1544

As ferforth as euere were 3e folyd
 So meche woo as I haue with 3ow tholyd
 The deuyl haue al bope hors & carte & hey
 The somenour seyde here schul we haue a pley 1548
 And ner þe frere he drow as nouȝt ne were
 fful priuily & rounnede in his ere
 Herke myn broþer herke be thyn feith
 Heryst þou nought how þe cartere seyth 1552
 Hende it a-non for he hath 3ouen it þe
 Bope hey & carte & ek his capillis thre
 Nay *quod* þe deuyl neuere a del [leaf 382]
 It is not his entente troste wel 1556
 Axe hym thyn self ȝif þou not trostiste me
 Or ellis stynte a-while & þou schat se
 This cartere thakkyth hise hors vp-on þe croupe
 And þey be-guene to drawe & to stoupe 1560
 Hayt now *quod* he now Ihesu cryst 3ow blyse
 And al hise hondwerk bope more & lesse
 That was wel twyȝt myn owene lyard boy
 I preye god saue þe body & seynt loy 1564
 Now is myn carte out of the slow parde
 Lo broþer *quod* þe fend what tolde I the
 Heere may 3e seen myn owene dere broþer
 The cheryl spak on thyng & mente a-noþer 1568
 Lat vs gon forth a-boutyn oure viage
 Here wyne I no good vp-on caryage
 Whan þat þey comyn sumwhat out of tounne
 This somenour to his broþer gan to rounne 1572
 Broþer quod he here wonyth an old rebekke
 That hadde almost as lef to lese his nekke
 As for to ȝeue a peny of hire good
 I wele haue twelue penys thow sche be wood 1576
 Or I wele somounne hyre to oure offys
 And ȝit god wot can I no vys
 But for þou canyst not as in þis cunstre
 Wynne thyn cost take here ensaumple at me 1580

This somenour clepith at þe wedewis gate
 Come out quod he þou olde verye crate
 I trowe þou hast sum frere or prest with the
 Ho clepith þere seyde þis widew benedicice 1584
 God saue þow syre what is þoure swete wille
 I haue quod he of somounys a bille
 Vp peyne of cursynghe loke þat þou be
 To morwe by-fore þe Erchedekenys kne 1588
 To answeere to þe court of serteyn thyngis
 Now lord quod sche Ihesu kyng of kyngis
 So wysely helpe me as I ne may
 I haue be sek & þat ful manye a day 1592
 I may not goon quod sche so fer ne ryde (leaf 222, back)
 But I be ded so prykyth it in myn syde
 May I not axe a libel syre somenour
 And answeere þere by myn procatour 1596
 To swich thyng as men wale oposyn me
 þis quod this somenour pay a-non lat se
 Twelue penys lat se & I wale þe aquyte
 I schal no profyit haue þerby but lyte 1600
 Myn maystir hath the profit & not I
 Come of & let me rydyn hastely
 þeue me twelve penys I may no lengere lette
 Twelue penys quod sche now lady seynte marye 1604
 So wysely helpe me out of care & synne
 This wyde world þow þat I schulde wyzne
 Ne haue I not twelue penys with-inne myn hollid
 þe knowe wel þat I am pore & old 1608
 Kythe þoure almesse on me pore wreche
 Nay þanne quod he þe fend me feche
 þif I þe excuse th[o]w þow schuldist be spylt
 Allas quod sche god wot I haue no gilt 1612
 Pay me quod he or be swete seynt anne
 As I wale bere a-wey þyn newe þanne
 ffor dette whiche þou owist me of old
 Whan þat þou haddist þyn husbonde coukewold 1616

I payede at hom for þyn coreccioun
 Thow lyxt *quod* sche be myn sauacyoun
 Ne was I neuere er no wedewe ne wyf
 Somounede on to þoure court in al myn lyf 1620
 Ne neuere I nas but of myn body trewe
 Vn-to þe deuyl blak & row of hewe
 ȝeue I thyn body & myn panne also
 And whan þe deuyl herde hire curse so 1624
 Vp-on hire kneis sche seyde on þis manere
 Now mabelyn myn owene modir dere
 Is þis þoure wille in earnest þat ȝe seye
 The deuyl *quod* sche so feche hym er he deye 1628
 And panne & al but he wele hym repente
 Nay olde stot þat is not myn entente [Gg. 4. 27 stops]
 [*Quod* þe Somnour for to repent me [Sloane 1685, leaf 124]
 for eny þenge þat I haue hade of þe 1632
 I wolde I hade þi smok/ & euery clothe
 Nowe Broþer/ *quod* þe Deuyll be not wrothe
 Thy body and þis panne ys myne by riȝt
 Thou shalte with me to helle · ȝit to nyȝt/ 1636
 þere þou shalt/ knowe of/ oure pryuete
 More þan a Maystre of/ Diuinite
 And with þat worde þe foule fende hym hent
 Body and soule with þe fende went 1640
 Where þat Somonours haue hir/ herytage
 And god þat made aftyr/ hys Image
 Man-kynde saue and gyde vs alle and somme
 And leue þis Somonour/ gode man by-come/. 1644
 Lordynges I coude a tolde you *quod* þe frere [leaf 124, back]
 Hade I hade leyser/ of thys Somnour here
 After/ þe Tyxt/ Cryst poule & Iohn.
 And of other/ doctours many oñ. 1648
 Suche peynes þat youre hertes may a-gryse.
 Also by hyt þat no þenge may deuyse.
 Thou þat I myȝt/ a þousand wynter/ telle.
 The peyne of þilke Cursed house of helle. 1652

But for to kepe vs fro þat cursed place [Sloane 1685]

Wakethe and preithe Ihesu for his grace

To kepe vs. fro þe Temptour/ Sathanas

herken þis worde be ware in þis caas 1656

The lyonn sit in his wayt alway

To sle þe Innocent yf þat he may

Disposethe ay youre hartes to withstonde

þe fende þat you wolde make þraht and bonde 1660

he may not tempten you ouere your myzt

And Cryst wolt be youre Champion and your knyzt

And preythe þat þis Sompnour/ hym repent

Of/ hys mysdede or þe fende hym hent 1664

Here endethe þe freres tale

[*Harl. MS 1758, leaf 106, back.*]

[Here begynneth the Proleg/ of the Somnour/.

THis Somnour/ in his stirop hye stood.
 Vp-on this frere his herte was so wood.
 That like an Aspen leef he quoke for yre.
 Lordyngis *quod* he but oo thyng¹ I desire. 1668
 I you beseke that of your/ curtesie.
 Sethyns ye han herd this fals frere lye. . . .
 As suffreth me I maye a tale telle. [leaf 107]
 This frere bosteth that he knoweth helle. 1672
 And god woot that it is liteff wondir/.
 ffreres & fendes ben but liteff a sondir/.
 ffor parde ye han ofte tyme herd telle.
 how that a frere rauysched was in ¹to helle. [¹ to is in margin]
 In spirit onys by a visioun.
 And as an angeff lad hym vp & doun.
 To schewyn hym the peynes that ther/ were.
 In all the place sawe he not a frere. 1680
 Of other/ folke he sawe y-now in woo.
 Vn-to this angeff spake the frere tho.
 Now sir/ *quod* he han ffreres suche grace.
 That non of hem schaff come to this place. 1684
 Yes *quod* this angeff manye a mylioun.
 And vn-to Sathanas he lad hym a-doun.
 And now hath Sathanas saith he a taile.
 Bradder/ then of the Carik is the saile. 1688
 Holde vp thyn taile Sathanas *quod* he.
 Schewe forth thyne ers & lete the frere se.
 Where is the neste of ffreres in this place.
 And er/ that half/ a forlong/ wey of space. 1692

CAMBRIDGE 216 (6-T. 383) [this page, *Harl. 1758*]

Right so as Bees swermen out of an hyue .	[Harl. 1758]
Out/ of the deuylls ers thei gon dryue .	
.xx. th thousande ffreris on a route .	
And thorow-out helle swarmed all a-boute .	1696
And camen a-yen as fast/ as thei may gone .	
And in his ers thei crepedyn euerichone .	
He clapt/ his tale a-yen & laye still .	
This frere when he lokid had his fill .	1700
Vp-on this tormentis of this sory place .	
his spirit god restorid of his grace .	
Vn-to his bodye a-yen & he a-woke .	
But natheles for fere yet he quoke .	1704
So was the denelis ars ay in his mynde .	
That is his heritage of verrey kynde .	
God saue you alle saue this cursid frere .	
Mi Prolog' woth I ende in this manere .	1708

Here endith the Prolog/

[Harl. MS 1758, on leaf 106, back]

and begynneth the Tale.

LOrdylngis ther/ is in york schire as I gesse.
 A merschy contre called holdernesse.
 In whiche ther/ wente a lymytour/ a-boute.
 To preche & eek/ to begge it is no doute. 1712
 And so bifeH that on a daye this ffrere.
 had preched at chirche in this manere.
 And specially a-bouyn euery thyng'.
 Excited he the peple in his prechyng'. 1716
 To trentalis & to yeue for goddis sake. [leaf 107, back]
 Wher/-with men myghte holi housis/ make.
 Ther/ as deuyne seruyse is honoured.
 Nought ther/ as it is wasted & deuoured. 1720
 Ne there it nedith not for to be yeue.
 As to possessioners that may ellis lyue.
 Thanked ¹be god in wele & habundaunce. [1 h, with the toll
scratched out]
 Trentales seide he delyuerith fro penaunce. 1724
 Here frendes soules as weH olde as yong'.
 Yef that thei ben hastely song'.
 Nought for to holde a preest ioly & gay.
 he syngeth not but oo messe in a day. 1728
 Delyuerith out/ a man quod he the soulis.
 ffuH hard it is with fleschehoke or with oulis.
 Now spede you hastely for cristes sake. 1732
 To kepe you fro peynes of fendis blake. 1731
 And whan the ffrere had seide alle his entente.
 With Qui cum patre forth he wente.
 When folke in chirche had yeue hym what hem lest.
 he wente his way no lenger/ wolde he rest. 1736

CAMBRIDGE 218 (6-T. 385) [this page, Harl. 1758]

With scrippe & tipped staf tucked full hye. [Harl. 1766]

In euery hous he gan to pore & pryde.

And beggeth mele or chese or ellis corn.

his felalawe had a staf tipped with horn. 1740

A peire of/ tablis of yuory.

And a poyntell polched fetisly.

And wrot/ alweye the names there he stood.

Of alle folke that yaf hym any good. 1744

As-caunce as he wolde for hem preie.

Yeue vs a buscheff whete malt/ or reie.] [Harl. extract ends]

A godis kechil or a trip of chese [MS Gg. 4. 27, leaf 235]

Or ellis what 3ow lyst we may not chese 1748

A godis halpeny or a masse pany

Or 3eue vs of 3oure braun 3if 3e han any

A dagoun of 3oure blanket leue dame

Oure sistyr dere lo here I wryte 3oure name 1752

Bacoun or bef or swich pyng as 3e fynde

A sturdy harlot wente hem ay by-hynde

That was here ostys man & bar a sak

And what men 3oue hem leyde it on his bak 1756

And whan he was out at þe dore a-non

He planede a-wey þe namys euerychon

That he be-fore hadde wrytyn in hyse tablis

He seruede hem with nyflys & wyth fablys 1760

Nay þere þou lext þou somenour quod þe frere

Pes quod oure ost for cristis modyr dere

Telle forth 3oure tale & spare it not at al

So thryue I quod the somenour so I schal 1764

So longe he wente hous be hous tyl he

Cam to an hous þere he was wone to be

Refresched more þan in an hunderede placis

Sek lay þe goode man whos þe place is 1768

Bedrede vp-on a couche lowe he lay

Deus hic quod he O tomays frend good day

Seyde þis frere curteysly & softe

Thomas quod he god 3elde 3ow ful ofte 1772

Haue I vp-on þis benche fare ful wel
 Here haue I ete ful manye a murye mel
 And fro þe bench he drof away þe cat
 And leyde a-doun his potente & his hat 1776
 And ek his scripye & sette hym softe adoun
 His felawe was go walkede in þe toun
 forth with his knawe vn-to þat ostalrye
 Where as he schop hym þe ilke nyȝt to lye 1780
 O dere maystir quod þis syke man
 How haue ȝe fare sythe þat March be-gan
 I saw ȝow not þis fourtenyȝt or more
 God wot quod he laboured haue I ful sore 1784
 And sp[e]cially for thyn saluacioun [leaf 226, back]
 Haue I seyde manye a precious orisoun
 And for oure opere frendis god hem blysse
 I haue to day been at ȝoure cherche at messe 1788
 And seyde a sarmoun aftyr myn symple wit
 Nat al aftyr þe text of holy wret
 ffor it is hard to ȝow as I suppose
 And perfore wele I telle ȝow al þe glose 1792
 Glosyng is a glorious thyng serteyn
 ffor lettere sleth as we clerkis seyn
 There haue I tauȝt hem to be charytable
 And spende here good þere it is resonable 1796
 And þere I saw oure dame a where is sche
 ȝond in þe ȝerd I trowe þat sche be
 Seyde þis man & sche wele come a-non
 Ey maystir wolcome be ȝe by seynt Iohn 1800
 Seyde þis wif how fare ȝe hertely
 This frere arysith vp ful curteysly
 And hire enbraseth in hise armys narwe
 And kysseth hire swete / & chirketh as a sparwe 1804
 With his lippis dame quod he ryȝt wel
 As he þat is ȝoure seruauȝt euerydel
 Thankede be god þat ȝow ȝaf soule & lyf
 ȝit saw I not þis day so fayr a wyf 1808

In al þe cherche god so saue me	
3a god amende þe fautis sere quod sche	
Algatis wolcome 3e by myn fey	
Graunt merci dame þis haue I founde alwey	1812
But of 3oure grete goodnesse by 3oure leue	
I wolde preye 3ow þat 3e nat 3ow greue	
I wele with Thomas speke a lytyl throwe	
These curatis been ful neglygent & slowe	1816
To grope tenderely a concience	
In schrifte in prechyng is myn diligence	
And stodie in peteris wordis & in Poulis	
I walke to fyche cristene menys soulys	1820
To 3ilde Ihesu crist / hise propere rente	
To sprede his word is set al myn entente	
Now by 3oure leue o deere maystyr quod sche	[leaf 236]
Schidith hym wel for seynte trynnye	1824
He is as angry as a pissemyre	
Thow that he haue al þat he can desyre	
Thow I hym wrye a nyzt & make hym warm	
And ouer hym leye myn leg oþer myn arm	1828
He gronyth lik oure bor lyth in oure sty	
Oþer disport ryzt non of hym haue I	
I may not plesse hym in no manere cas	
O Thomas Ie vous dy Thomas Thomas	1832
This makyth þe feen ^{d1} þis muste ben a-mendit	[14: later]
Ire is a thyng þat highe god defendit	
And þerof wele I speke a word or two	
Now maystyr quod þe wyf er þan I go	1836
What wele 3e dyne I wele go þere aboute	
Now dame quod he Ie vous dy sanz doute	
Haue I nat of a capoun but þe lyuere	
And of 3oure softe bred but a scheuere	1840
And aftyr þat a rosted pigis hed	
But þat I nolde no beste for me were ded	
Thanne hadde I with 3ow homely suffysaunce	
I am a man of lytyl sustenaunce	1844

Myn spirit hath his fosterynge in þe bible
 The bodi is ay so redy & penible
 To wake þat myn stomak is distroyed
 I prey ȝow dame ȝe be nat a-nyed 1848
 Thow I so frendely ȝow myn conseyl schewe
 By god I nolde nat telle it but a fewe
 Now syre quod sche but on word er I go
 Myn child is deed with-inne these woukis too 1852
 Sone aftyr þat ȝe wentyn out of þis touz
 His deth saw I be reuelacioun
 Seyde þis frere at hom in oure dortour
 I dar wel seyn þat er þat half an our 1856
 Aftyr his deth I saw hym bore to blysse
 In myn aysiouyn god so me wisse
 So dede oure sexteyn & oure fermorer
 That han ben trewe frerys fifty ȝer 1860
 They may now god be thanked of his lone [leaf 226, back]
 Makyn here Iubyle & walkyn a-lone
 And vp I ros & al oure couent ek
 With manye a tere trynkelynge on myn cheke 1864
 With-outyn noyse or claterynge of bellis
 Te deum was oure song & no thyng ellis
 Saue þat to cryst I seyde an orysoun
 Thankynge hym of myn reuelacioun 1868
 ffor sere & dame trostith to me wel
 Oure orisounys ben more effectuel
 And more we sen of secre thyngis
 Than burel folk al þow þey were kyngis 1872
 We lyue in pouert & in abstinence
 And burel folk in rychesse & dispence
 In mete & drynk & in here foule delyt
 We han þis wordelis lust al in dispit 1876
 Lazar & dyuers leuedyn dyuers lyf
 And dyuers gerdoun haddyn þey þerby
 Ho so wele preye / hym muste faste & be clene
 And fattyng his soule & make his body leene 1880

We faryn as seyth þe appostele cloth & fode
 Suffyseth vs / þow þey been not ful goode
 The clennesses & þe fastynge of vs frerys
 Makyth þat cryst / acceptyth oure preyerys 1884
 Lo moyses forty dayis & forty nyȝt
 ffastid er þat þe hyghe god of myȝt
 Spak with hym in þe mount of synay
 With emty wombe / fastynge manye a day 1888
 Resseyuede he þe lawe þat was wretyn
 With godis fyngir & elye wolde wetyn
 In Mount oreb er he hadde any speche
 With hye god þat is oure lyuys leche 1892
 He fastede longe & was in contemplaunce
 Aaron þat hadde þe temple in gouernaunce
 And ek þe opere postellis euerychon
 In-to þe temple whan þey schulde gon 1896
 To preye for þe peple & do seruyse
 The[y] nolde drynke in no manere wyse
 No drynk whiche þat myȝte hem dronke make [leaf 237]
 But þere in abstinence preye & wake 1900
 Lest þat þey dey^ddyn tak hede what I seye [? y: later]
 But þey ben sobere þat for þe puple preye
 War þat I seye no more for it suffyseth
 Oure lord Ihesu as holy wryt deuyseth 1904
 ȝaf vs ensaumple of fastynge & preyerys
 Therefore we mendynauntis we frerys
 [Ben weddid to pouert & contynence. [Harl. MS 1758, leaf 109, back]
 To charite humblennesse & pacience. 1908
 To persecucion for rightwisnesse.
 To wepyng/ mysericord & clennesses.
 And therfore maye ye se that our/ praieres.
 I speke of vs we mendenauntis we ffrores.] [Harl. extract stops]
 Been to þe hye god more acceptable
 Than ȝoure is / with ȝoure festis at þe table
 ffrom paradys fyrst ȝif I schal nat lye
 Was man out chased for his glotenye 1916

And chaast was man in paradys serteyn
 But herke now thomas what I schal seyn
 I ne haue of it no text as I suppose
 But I schal fynde it in a-*noþer* glose 1920
 That specyally oure swete lord *Ihesus*
 Spak þis be freris whan he seyde þus
 Blyssede ben þey þat poore in spiryt been
 And so forth al þe gospel may ȝe sen 1924
 Wheþer it be lykere oure profescioun
 Or hire þat swemyn in possessioun
 ffy on hire pompe & on here gletanye
 And for here lewedenesse I hem defye 1928
 Me thynkyth þey been lyk to Iouynyan
 ffat as a whal & walkynge as a swan
 Al vinolent as botel in þe spence
 Hire preyere is of ful gret reuerence 1932
 Whan þey for soulis seyn þe salme of dauith
 Lo buf þey seye / cor meum erouctauyth
 Ho folwyth cristis gospel & hise fore
 But we þat vmbles ben & chaste & poore 1936
 Werkeris of godis word not audytourys
 Therfore ryȝt as an hauk ryȝt at a sourys
 Vp spryngith in þe eyre ryȝt so preyerys
 Of charytable & chaȝte besy frerys 1940
 Makyn here sours to goddis erylis two
 Thomas Thomas so mote I ryde or go
 And by þe lord þat clepid is seynt Iue [leaf 227, back]
 Nere þou oure broþer schudist þou not thryue 1944
 In oure chapitre preye we day & nyȝt
 To cryst þat he þe sende hale & myȝt
 Thyn body for to wendyn hastyly
 God wot þerof nothyng þerof fele I 1948
 So helpe me crist as in a fewe ȝerys
 I haue spendit vp-on dyuers maner frerys
 fful manye a pound ȝit fare I neuere þe bet
 Certeyn myn good haue I almost be-set 1952

farwel myn good for it is al a go
 The frere answerde O thomas dost þou so
 What nedyth 3ow dyuers frerys seche
 What nedyth hym þat hath a parfit leche 1956
 To sechyn opere lechis in þe toun
 3oure inconstaunce is 3oure confusioun
 Holde 3e þanne me or ellis oure couent
 To preye for 3ow ben ensufficient 1960
 Thomas þat Iape nys nat worth a myte
 3oure malady is for 3e han to lyte
 A 3if þat couent half a quarter otyz
 And 3if þat couent foure & twenty grotis 1964
 And 3if þat frere a peny & lat hym go
 Nay nay Thomas It¹ may no thyng be so [? *later*]
 What is a ferthy[n]g worth partid on twelve
 Lo eche thyng þat is onyd in hym selue 1968
 Is more strong þan whan it is to-skateryd
 Thomas of me þou schalt not² ben I-flatered [? *not later*]
 Thow woldyst han oure labour al for nonȝt
 The hie god þat al þis world hath wrouȝt 1972
 Seyth þat þe werke man worthy is his hyre
 Thomas noght of 3oure tresore I desyre
 As for myn self but þat al oure couent
 To preye for 3ow is ay so diligent 1976
 And for to bildyn cristis owene chyrche
 Thomas 3if 3e wele lerne for to werche
 Of bildyng vp of cherchis may 3e fynde
 3if it be good in Thomas lyf of ynde 1980
 3e lye here ful of anguyssch & of yre [leaf 228]
 With wych þe deuyl set 3oure hette a-fyre
 And chidyn here þis sely innosent
 3oure wif þat is so meeke & pacient 1984
 And þefore Thomas trowe me if þ^e lest
 Ne stryue nat with þyn wif as for þe best
 And bere þis word a-woy now be þyn feyth
 Touchynge swich thyng lo as þe wyse seyth 1988

With-inne þyn hous ne be þou no lyoun	
To þynne subiectis do non oppressioun	
Ne make þynne aquentauncis not to fle	
And Thomas ȝit eft sonys I charge þe	1992
By-war from hire þat in þyn bosum slepith	
By-war from þe serpent þat so slyly crepith	
Vndyr þe gres & styngith subtyly	
By-war myn sone & herke patiently	1996
That twenty thousent men han lost here lyuys	
ffor stryuyng with here lemanys & here wyuys	
Now siþe ȝe han so holy meke a wyf	
What nedyth ȝow Thomas to makyn stryf	2000
There is I wis no serpent so crewel	
Whan man trat on his tayl ne half so fel	
As woman is whan sche hath cauȝt an yre	
Veniaunce is þanne al þat þey desyre	2004
Ire is a synne on of þe gretteste of synnys	
Abomynable vnto þe god of heuene	
And to hym self it is distruxcioun	
This euery lewede veker or parsoun	2008
Kan seen how yre engenderyth homysayde	
Ire is in soth executour of pryde	
I coude of Ire sey so meche sorwe	
Myn tale schulde laste tyl to morwe	2012
And þerfore preye I god boþe day & nyȝt	
An yroun man god sende hym lityl myȝt	
It is gret harm & ek gret pete	
To sette an yroun man in heigh degre	2016
¶ Whylom þere was an yroun potestat	Of an Iroun potestat /
As seyth Senek þat durynge his estat	
Vp-on a day out rydyn knyȝtis too	[leaf 238, back]
And as fortune wolde þat it were so	2020
That on of hem cam hom þat oþer nouȝt	
A-non þe knyȝt by-fore þe Iuge is brouȝt	
That seyde þus þou hast þyn felawe slayn	
ffor which I deme þe to þe deth sertayn	2024

And to a-noþer knyzt comaundede he
 Go lede hym to þe deth I charge þe
 And happid as þey wente by þe weye
 Toward þe place þere he schulde deye 2028
 The knyzt cam which men wende he hadde be ded
 Thanne thouzte þey it was þe beste red
 To leede hem boþe to þe Iuge a-geyn
 They seyde lord þe knyght ne hath not slayn 2032
 His felawe here he stondyth hol a-loone
 3e schul ben ded a-noon so mote I gone
 That is to seyne boþe on & too & thre
 And to þe ferste knyzt þus spak he 2036
 I dampnede þe þu muste algatis be ded
 And þou also muste nedys lese þyn hed
 ffor þou art cause whi thyn felawe deyeth
 And to þe thredde knyzt ryzt þus he seyeth 2040
 Thow hast not don þat I comaundede þo
 And þus he dede hem slen alle thre
 Irous Cambises was ek dronkelewe
 And ay delitede hym to ben a schrewe 2044
 And so be-fel a lord of his meyne
 That louede vertuous moralite
 Seyde on a day be-twixe hem ryzt þus
 A lord is lost zif he be vicious 2048
 And dronkenes is ek a foul record
 In any man & namely in a lord
 There is ful manye an ye & manye an ere
 A-waytynge on a lord & he not where 2052
 ffor godys loue drynk more a-temperelly
 Wyn makyth man to lesyn wrechedely
 His mynde & hyse lymys euerychon
 The reuers schal þou sen & þat a-non 2056
 And preve it by thyn owene experyence [leaf 230]
 That wyn ne doth to folk non swich offence
 There is no wyn be-reuyth me myn myzt
 Of hond ne foot ne of myn eye syzt 2060

And for despit he drank mekyl þe more
 An hunderede part than he hadde don by-fore
 And ryȝt a-non þis yrous cursede wreche
 Leet þis knyȝt sone by-fore hym feche 2064
 Comaundyng hym he schulde by-fore hym stonde
 And sodeynly he tok his bowe on honde
 And vp þe stryng he pullede to hyse ere
 And with an arwe he slow þe child ryȝt þere 2068
 Now wheþer haue I sekyr hand or non
 Quod he is al myn myȝt & mynde a-gon
 Hath wyn be-reuyd me myn eyen syth
 What schulde I telle þe answe-re of þe knyȝt 2072
 His sone was slaye þere is no more to seye
 Beth war þerfore with lordys how ȝe pleye
 Syng placebo & I schal ȝif i can
 But ȝif it be vnto a pore man 2076
 To a pore man men schulde his vicis telle
 But not to a lord þow he schulde go to helle
 Lo yrous Cyrus thilke percyen
 How he distroyed þe Ryuer of Gyseen 2080
 ffor þat an hors of his was drenkt þerinne
 Whan þat he wente babylonye to wyne
 He made þat þe ryuer was so smal
 That wemen myghte wade it oueral 2084
 Lo what seyde he þat so wel teche can
 Ne be no felawe to an yrous man
 Ne wyth no wood man walke by þe weye
 Lest þe repente I wele no ferþere seye 2088
 Now thomas leue broþer lef thyn yre
 Th[o]u schalt me fynde as Iust as is a squire
 Hold not þe deuyll knyf ay at þyn herte
 Thyn angry doth þe al to sore smerte 2092
 But schewe to me al thyn confescioun
 Nay quod þe syke man by seynt symoun
 I haue be schryue this day at myn curat
 I haue hym told al holy myn estat 2096

[leaf 228, back]

Nedith it no more to speke of it seyth he
 But ȝif me lyste of myn humylite
 ȝif me of ȝore gold to make oure cloystere
 Quod he for manye a muskele & manye an oystere 2100
 Whan opere men han ben ful weel at eyse
 Hath ben oure fode oure Cloystere for to reyse
 And ȝit god wot oneȝe þe fondement
 Parformed is ne of oure pauuement 2104
 Nis not a tyl ȝit with-inne oure wonys
 By god we owyn fourty pound for stonys
 Now help tomays for hym þat harwede helle
 Or ellis muste we oure bokys selle 2108
 And ȝif ȝow lakke oure predicacioun
 Thanne goth þe world al to distruccioun
 ffor ho so from þis world wolde vs be-reue
 So god me saue thomas be ȝoure leue 2112
 He wolde be-reue out of þis world þe sunne
 ffor who can teche & werke as we cunne
 And þat is not of lytyme quod he
 But siþe þat elye was or elyse 2116
 Han frerys ben þat fynde I of record
 In charyte thanked be oure lord
 Now Thomas help for seynte charyte
 And doun a-non he sette hym on his kne 2120
 This syke man wex ny wood for yre
 He wolde þat þe frere hadde bee a-fyre
 With his false dissymylacioun
 Swych thyng as is in myn possessioun 2124
 Quod he may I ȝeuyñ & non oper
 ȝe sey me þis how þat I am ȝoure broþer
 ȝa certis quod þe frere trostyth wel
 I tok oure dame oure lettere with oure sel 2128
 Now wel quod he & sumwhat schal I ȝeue
 On to ȝoure holy couent whil I leue
 And in þyn hand þou schalt it hald a-non
 On þis condicioun & opere non 2132

That þou de-parte it so my derere broþer	[leaf 240]
That euery frere haue as meche as oþer	
This schalt þou swere on þyn professioun	
With-oute fraude or cauelacyoun	2136
I swere it quod þe frere vp-on myn feith	
And þerwithal his hand in his he leith	
Lo here myn feyth in me schal ben no lak	
Now put þanne þyn hand doun by myn bak	2140
Seyde þis man & grope wel by-hynde	
Be-nethe myn buttok þere schat þ[o]u fynde	
A thyng þat I haue hid in pryuyte	
A thoute þis frere þat schal gon with me	2144
And doun his hand he lau[n]chith to þe clyfte	
In hope for to fynde þere a zifte	
And whan þis syke man felte þis frere	
Aboute his tewel grope þere & here	2148
A-myð his hand he let þe frere a fart	
There nys no capil drawynge in a cart	
That myzt a lete a fart of swych a soun	
The frere vp-stirte as doth a wood lyoun	2152
A false cherl he seyde for godys bonys	
This hast þou for dispit don for þe nonys	
þow shalt a-beye þis fart ȝif þat I may	
His meyne þat herdyn þis a-fray	2156
Come lepyng in & cachede out þe frere	
And forth he goth with a ful angery chere	
And fette hese felawe þere as hadde his stor	
Ho lokede as it were a wylde boor	2160
He grynt with his teth so was he wroth	
A sturdy pas doun to þe court he goth	
Where as þere wonede a man of greet honour	
To whom þat he was alwey confessour	2164
This worthi man was lord of þat village	
This frere cam as he were in a rage	
Where as þis lord sit etynge at his bord	
O-neþe myzte þe frere speke a word	2168

Tyl at þe laste he seyde god 3ow se
 This lord gan to loke & seyde benedicite
 What frere Ihn̄ what maner world is þis [leaf 240, back]
 I se wel þat sumthyng þere is a-mys 2172
 3e loke as thow þe wode were ful of thewys
 Sit doun a-non & telle vs what 3oure gref is
 And it schal ben a-mendyt If I may
 I haue quod he had a dispit to day 2176
 God 3ilde 3ow a-doun in 3oure village
 That in þis world nys non so poure a page
 That he nulde haue abomynacioun
 Of þat I hare resseyuyd in 3oure toun 2180
 And 3it me greuyth me no þyng so sore
 As þat þis olde cherl with lokys hore
 Blasfemyd hath oure holy couent ek
 Now maystyr quod þe lord I 3ow be-sek 2184
 No maystyr quod he sire but seruytour
 Thow I haue had in scole þat honour
 God lykyth not þat rabi men vs calle
 Neyþer in market nyn in 3oure large halle 2188
 No fors quod he but telle me al 3oure gref
 Syre quod þis frere an odyous myschef
 þis day is betid to myn ordere & me
 And so par concequens to eche degre 2192
 Of holy cherche god a-mende it sone
 Syre quod þe lord 3e wete what is to done
 Distamperyth 3ow not 3e ben myn confessour
 3e ben þe salt of þe cherche & þe sauour 2196
 ffor godys loue 3oure pacience 3e holde
 Telle me 3oure gref & he anon hym tolde
 As 3e han herd be-fore 3e wete wel what
 Te lady of þe hous ay stille sat 2200
 Til sche hadde herd what þe frere seyde
 Ey godis modyr quod sche blysfyl mayde
 Is þere not elle telle me feythfully
 Madame quod he how lykyth 3ow herby 2204

How þat me thynkyth quod sche so god me speede
 I seye a cherl hap don a cherlis dede
 What schulde I seye god lete hym neuere the
 His syke hed is ful of vanyte 2208
 I holde hym in a manere of frenesye [leaf 241]
 Madame by god I schal not lye
 But I on oþer whise may ben wreke
 I schal de-fame hym ouyral þere I speke 2212
 This false blasfemour þat chargede me
 To departe þat wele not departede be
 What euery man I-lyche meche with myschaunce
 The lord sat styлле as he were in a trance 2216
 And in his herte he rollede vp & down
 How hadde þis cherl þis ymaginacioun
 To schewe þis probleme to a frere
 Neuere erst er now herde I of swych matere 2220
 I trowe þe deuyl put it in his mynde
 In arsmatryk coude þere no man fynde
 By-forn þis day swich a questyoun
 Who schulde mak a demonstracioun 2224
 That euery man schul haue I-lyche hise part
 As of þe soun or sonour of a fart
 O nyse proude cherl I-schrewe his face
 Lo serys quod þe lord with harde grace 2228
 Ho herde euere of swich a thyng er now
 To euery man I-like telle me howe
 It is an impossible it may not be
 Ey nyce cherl god lete hym neuere the 2232
 The rumbelyng of a fart & euery soun
 Nys bot of eyr reuerberacioun
 And euere it wastith lyte & lyte away
 þere is no man can deme be myn fey 2236
 ȝif þat it were departid equally
 What lo myn cherl lo how schrewedely
 Vp to myn confessour to day he spak
 I holde hym certaynly demonyak 2240

Now ete ȝoure mete & lete þe cherl go pleye
 Let hym gon hangyn him selue a deuele wey

[*The Solution of the "Probleme" by the Lord's Squire-
 and-Carver. No break in the MS.*]

Now stod þe lordys squyer at þe bord
 That karf his mete & herde word be word 2244
 Of alle thynges whiche I haue ȝow sayd
 Myn lord quod he be ȝe not euele a-payd.
 I coude telle for a goune cloth [leaf 241, back]
 To ȝow sere frere be so ȝe ben not wroth 2248
 How þat þis fart schulde euene delid be
 A-mong ȝoure couent ȝif it lyke me
 Telle quod þe lord & þou schat haue a-non
 A goune cloth by god & be seynt Iohn 2252
 Myn lord quod he whan þat þe wedir is fayr
 With-oute wynd or parturbynge of eyr
 Lat brynge a carte whel here / in to þis halle
 But loke þat it haue hyse spokys alle 2256
 Twelue spokys hath a carte whel trowe I
 And brynge me þanne twelve frerys wet ȝe why
 ffor trettene is a couent as I gease
 The confessour here for his worthynesse 2260
 Schal parforme vp þe nombre of his couent
 Thanne schul þey knele don be on asent
 And to euery spokys ende in his manere
 fful sadly leye his nose schal a frere 2264
 ȝoure noble confessour þere god hym saue
 Schal holde his nose vpryght vndyr þe naue
 Thanne schal þis cherl with bely sterne & stout
 As ony tabour ben hedyr brought out¹ [1 out: later]
 And sette hym on þe whil ryȝt off þis carte 2269
 Vp-on þe naue & make hym lete a farte
 And ȝe schuln seen vp peryl of myn lyf
 By pref which þat is demo[n]stratyf 2272

That equally þe soun of it wele wende
 And ek þe styng vnto þe spokys ende
 Saue þat þis worthy man þis confessour
 By cause he is a man of gret honour 2276
 Schal han þe ferste freut as worthy is
 And as þe nobele vsage ȝit of frerys is
 The worthy men of hem schul ferst be servid
 And serteynly he hath it wel deseruyd 2280
 He hath to day tauȝt vs so meche good
 With prechyng in þe pulpit þere he stod
 That I may vouche saf I sey for me 2283
 He hadde þe ferste smel of fartys thre [Gg. 4. 27 stops]
 [And so wolde aH/ his/ couent/ hardeli. [Easl. 1788, leaf 113, back]
 He berith hym so faire & holili.
 The Lorde the Ladie & euery man saf the frere.
 Seiden that/ Iankyn spak/ weH in this/ matere. 2288
 As/ weH/ as/ Ouyde or Ptholome.
 Touchyng/ the cherle thei seide that/ subtilite.
 And hye witte made hym speke as/ he spak/.
 He is/ no footH/ ne no demonyak/. 2292
 And Iankyn hath wonne a newe gowne.
 Mi tale is/ done we ben almost at/ towne.
 Here/ endith the/ Sompnours/ tale/.] [Easl. 1788 extract ends]

GROUP E. FRAGMENT VI.

§ 1. THE CLERK'S HEAD-LINK.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

[Leaves 242 and 243 (containing the Clerk's Head-Link, the painting of him,
and the first 8 stanzas of the Tale) are cut out.]

[Here begynneþe þe Prologe of/ þe Clerk/ of Oxenford]

[Sir Clerk/ of Oxenford oure Oste sayd [Sloane 1685, leaf
129, back]
Ye ride as styлле as Coy as dothe a mayde
Were newe spoused sittynge at þe borda

þis day ne herd/ I of youre mouthe a worde 4

I trowe þat 3e study a-boute some sophyme

But salamon saithe alle þenge hathe tyme

ffor goddes sake bethe of better/ chere

hit ys no tyme nowe to study here 8

Telle vs some mery tale by your fay

ffor what man ys entred in to a play

he nedes mote into þat play assent

But precheth not as freres done in lent 12

To make us for oure olde synnes to wepe

Ne þat þi Tale ne make vs not to slepe

Telle vs some mery þenge of auentures

3oure termes your figoures and your coloures 16

kepe hem in store tyl so be 3e hem endite

hie3e style as when men to kynges wryte

Spekethe so playne at þis tyme I you pray [leaf 130]

þat we may vndirstonde what 3e say 20

This worþi Clerke benyngely vnswared

Oste quod he I am vnder your/ 3erde

3e haue as nowe of vs þe Gouvernaunce

And þerfore wolle I do 3owe now obeysaunce 24

20 CAMBRIDGE 235 (6-T. 403) [this page, Sloane 1685]

As fer as reson askethe hardely	[Sloane 1685, on leaf 130]
I wille you telle a tale whiche þat I	
lerned at Padow/ of a worpi clerke	
As prouyd by hys wordes and his werk/	28
he ys nowe dede and nailid in his chest	
I pray to god to sende his saul gode reste	
Fraunceys petrak' þe laureol poet	
hizt/ þis Clerk' whos rethorik/ swete	32
Illumyeth alle Italy þurgh poetrye	
As lynean dyd of philosophi ·	
Or lawe or opere art particuler	
But dethe þat wolle suffre no þinge here	36
But as hit were twynkelynge of an eye	
Bothe hathe he slayne and alle shalle we deye	
But for to tellen of þis worthi man	
þat taught me þis tale as I first be-gan	40
I sey þat he first with hiȝe stile enditethe	
Or he þe body of his tale writeth	
A prochem in þe whiche desernethe he	
The Mounde & of Saluce þe contre	44
And spekethe of appeneþ þe hilles hie	
þat bene þe boundes · of west lumbardye	
And of Mounte resulus in special	
where as þe Pope out of a welle smal	48
Takith his first spryngyng and his sours	
Where as he holte þe euen streight way his cours	
To enel ward to Ferrar' & to venyse	
The whiche a longe þenge were to devise	52
And truly as to my Iugement	
Me thyнке hit a thinge impertinent/	
Saue he wolle conueye his matere	[leaf 130, back]
But this is þe tale whiche þat ȝe shulle here	56

Here endeth þe Prologe

[Sloane 1685, on leaf 130, back.]

[No gaps between the stanzas in the MS.]

& here be-gynneth þe Tale

T here ys at þe weste syde of Itayle	57
Doun at þe root of vesulus þe cold	
A lusty playne habundaunt of vitayle	
Where many a Touñ pou mayste be-holde	60
þat founded were in tyme of eldres old	
And many an oþer/ delectable sizt/	
And Saluce þis noble cuntre higt	63
¶ A marquis whilom was in þat londe	64
As were his worþi eldres hym be-fore	
And obeisaunt and redy to his honde	
Were alle his legees bothe lesse & more	67
Thus in delyte he lyued and hath done ȝore	
By-loued and drad þurgh fauoure & fortune	
Bothe of his lordes and of his comune	70
// þere with he was as to speke of lynage	71
þe gentelest/ yborne of alle lumbardy	
A fayre person and stronge and yonge of age	
And fulle of honour/ and curtesye	74
discrete y-nouȝe his contrey for to guye	
Saue in some thenges he was to blame	
And Walter was þis yonge lordes name	77
¶ I blame hym þus þat he considerith nouȝt/	78
In tyme comynge what myȝt be-tyde	
But on his luste present was alle his þouȝt	
And forto hauke and hunte on euery syde	81
Wele nyeȝ alle oþere cures let he slyde	
And eke he ne wolde þat was worste of alle	
Wedde no wyf for ouȝte þat myȝt be-falle	84

CAMBRIDGE 237 (6-T. 405) [this page, Sloane 1685]

- || Only þat poynt his peple bare so sore [Sloane 1685, on leaf 130, back] 85
 þat flok/ mele on a day þei went
 [And oon of hem that wisest was of lore. [Harl. MS 1758, leaf 114, back] 88
 Or ellis that the lorde wolde best/ assent.]
 þat he schulde telle hym what his peple ment
 Or elles coude he wele shewe suche mater
 he to þe Marquis sayd as 3e shulle here 91
- O noble Marquis your' humanyte [leaf 131] 92
 Assuresse vs and 3eue vs hardynesse
 As ofte tyme as hit ys necessite
 þat we you mowe telle oure heuynesse 95
 Accepteth lord/ of youre gentilnesse
 þat we to you with pitous hert compleyne
 And let youre Eres nouȝt my voyce disdeyne 98
- Alle haue I nouȝt/ to done in þis matere 99
 None þan an other hathe in þis place
 ȝit for asmoche as 3e my lord so dere
 haue alway shewed fauoure & grace 102
 I. dare þe better/ aske of you a space
 Of audience to shewen oure request/
 And 3e my lord to done riȝt as you lust 105
- ffor certes lord so wele vs lyketh you 106
 And alle youre werkes and euere haue doñ þat we
 Ne coude not oure owen self devisen howe
 we myȝt more lyf/ in felicite 109
 Safe on þenge lord yf hit youre wille be
 þat for to be a wedded man ȝif þou lyst
 þan were youre pepul in soueren hertes rest/ [Sloane 1688 extract ends]
- Bowith ȝoure nekke / vndyr þe blysful ȝok [Cambr. Univ. Lib. MS Gg. 4. 37, leaf 244]
 Of souereynthe / & not of seruyse
 Which þat men clepe / sponsayle or wedlok
 And thynkith lord / a-mong ȝoure thouȝtys wyse 116
- CAMBRIDGE 238 (6-T. 406) [this page, Sloane 1685]

How þat oure dayis / passe in sundery wyse
ffor thow we slepe / or wake or rome or ryde
Ay fleth þe tyme / it nyl no man a-byde 119

And þow þoure / grene thouȝt floure as ȝit 120
In crepith age / al-wey as styлле as ston
And deth manasith / euery age & smyt
In eche estat / for þere escapith noon 123
And also serteyn / as we knowyn echon
That we schal deye / as vncerteyn with alle
Been of þat day / whan deth schal on vs fulle 126

Acceptyth þanne / of vs þe trewe entent 127
That neuere ȝit / refusedyn þyn heste
And we wele lord / ȝif þat ȝe wele assent
Chese ȝow a wyf / in schort tyme at þe leste 130
Born of þe / gentilleste & of þe meste
Of al þis lond / so þat it oȝhte seene
Honour to god / & ȝow as we can deme 133

Delyuere vs / out of al þis bosy drede 134
And tak a wif for hyghe godis sake
ffor ȝif it / so be-fel as god forbede
That þow ȝoure deth ȝoure lyf schulde slake 137
And þat a straunge successour schulde take
ȝoure erytage o wo were vs on lyue
Wherfore we prey ȝow hastily to wyue 140

Hire meke preyere & here pitous chire 141
Made þe Markis herte to haue pytee
ȝe wele quod he myn owene peple dere
To þat I neuere erst thouȝte to streyne me 144
I me reioysede of myn libertee
That selde tyme is founde in maryage
There I was fre I mote been in seruage 147

But na the les I se 3oure trewe entent	[leaf 244, back]
And truste vp-on 3oure wit & han don ay	
Werfore of myn fre wil I wele assente	
To wedde me as sone as euere I may	151
But þere as 3e han proferede me to day	
To chese me a wyf I 3ow relese	
That choys & prey 3ow of þat profere sese	154
Let me a-lone In chesyng of myn wyf	162
That charge vp-on myn bak I wele endure	
But I 3ow preye & charge vp-on 3oure lyf	
What wyf þat I take I 3ow ensure	165
To worschepe hire whil þat hyre lyf may dure	
In word & werk bothe here & ellis where	
As sche an emperourys douztir were	168
ffor god it wot þat childeryn oftyn been	155
Vnlyk here worthy elders hem be-fore	
Bounte comyth of god / nat of þe treen	
Of whiche þey been engenderede & I-bore	158
I truste in goddis bounte & þerfore	
Myn maryage & myn estat & resste	
I hym be-take / he may don as hym leste	161
And ferþere more þis schal 3e swere þat 3e	169
A-geyn myn choys schul neyþer groche ne striue	
ffor sythe I schal for-gon myn lyberte	
At 3oure request as euere mote i thryue	172
There as myn herte is set þere wele I wyue	
And but 3e wele asente in swych manere	
I prey 3ow spekyth no mor of þis mateere	175
With hertely wil þey swore & a-sentyn	176
To al þis thyng þere sey no wigh nay	
Be-sekyng hym of grace er þat þey wente	
That he wolde grauntyn hem a serteyn day	179

Of his sponsayle as sone as euere he may
 ffor ȝit alwey þe puple sumwhat dredde
 Lest þat þe markes no wyf wolde wedde 182

 He grauntede hem a day swych as hym leste [leaf 245] 183
 On which he wolde be weddit sekylly
 And seyde he dede al þis at his requeste
 And þey with humble entent buxsomly 186
 Knelynge vp-on hire kneis ful reuerently
 Hym thankede alle & þus þey han an ende
 Of hire entent & hom a-geyn þey wende 189

 And here vp on he to hise offyserys 190
 Comaundith for þe feste to purueye
 And to hyse priue knyztis & squerys
 Swich charge ȝaf as hym leste on hem leye 193
 And þey to hise comandementis obeye
 And ech¹ of hem doth al his dilygence [In a later hand
over an erasure.]
 To don vn-to þe feste reuerence 196

[PART II.]

[N²]Oght fer from thilke paleys honourable [A space has been
left in the MS for
this letter.]
 Where as þis Markys / schop his maryage
 Ther was a thorpt of sighte delytable
 In which þat poore folk of þat village 200
 Haddyn here bestis & here herbergage
 And of hire labour tok here sustenaunce
 Aftyr þat þe erpe / ȝaf hem habundaunce 203

 A-mongys þese poore / folk þere dwellede a man 204
 Whiche þat was holde / poreste of hem alle
 But highe god / sumtyme sende can
 His grace in-to / a lytyl oysis stalle 207
 Ianicula / men of þat thorpe hym calle
 A doughtyr he hadde / fayr & ȝyng to syȝte [In a later hand.]
 And Grysilde / þis ȝyng maydyn hyȝte grisild²

But for to speke / of verteuous beute 211
 Thanne was sche on / þe fayreste vndyr sunne
 ffor pourely / I-fosterede vp was sche
 No lykerous lust / was thorw hire herte I-ronne 214
 Weel oftere of / þe welle þan of þe tunne
 Sche drank & for / sche wolde vertu plesse
 Sche knew wel labour / but non ydyl ese 217

But thow þis mayd / tendere was of age [leaf 245, back] 218
 ȝit in þe 'in here chaste virginite' [— later]
 There was enclosede ȝype & sad corage
 And in gret / reuerence & charyte 221
 Hyre olde pore / fadyr fosterede sche
 A fewe schep / spynnyng on feld sche kepte
 Sche wolde not / ben ydyl tyl sche slepte 224

And whan sche homward / cam sche wolde bryngre 225
 Wortis or opere / erbis tymys ofte
 The whiche sche dalf / & sette for hyre lyuyngre
 And made hyre bed / ful harde & nothyng softe 228
 And ay sche kepte hyre faderys lyf on lofte
 With euery obeysaunce & dilygence
 That child may don to / faders reuerence 231

Vp-on Grysilde / þis pore creature 232
 fful ofte tyme / þis Markis sette his eye
 As he an huntynge / rod paraenture
 And whan it fel / þat he myȝte hire espye 235
 He not with wauntoun / loking of folye
 His eyen cast on / here / but in sad wyse
 Vp-on hire cher / he wolde hym ofte a-vyse 238

Comendynge in his / herte / hire womanhede 239
 And ek hire verteus / passynge ony wyght
 Of so ȝyng age / as wel in chere as dede
 ffor thogh þe puple / hath no gret enayȝt 242

In vertu he / consydereðe ful ryȝt
 Hire bou[n]teis / & purposede þat he wolde
 Wedde hire only / ȝif þat he wedde schulde 245

The day of weddyng / cam but no wight kan 246
 Telle what / woman þat it schulde be
 ffor whiche merueyle / wonderede manye a man
 And seydyn whan þat / þey were in pryuyte 249
 Wele not oure lord / ȝit leue his vanyte
 Wele he not wedde / allas allas þe whyle
 Whi wele he þus hym self & vs begyle 252

But natheles þis Markis hath don make [leaf 246] 253
 Of gownys set / in gold & in asure
 Brochis & ryngis / for gresildis sa'ie
 And of hire clothynge / tok he þe mesure 256
 By a maydyn / lyk to hyr stature
 And ek of opere / aornementis alle
 That on to swich / a weddyng schulde falle 259

The tyme of vnderne / of þe soneday 260
 Aprochith that / þis weddyng schulde bee
 And al þe paleys / put was In aray
 Bothe halle & chaumberys / eche in hese degre 263
 Housis of offysis / stuffed with gret plente
 There mayst þou sen / of deynteuous vitayle
 That may be founde / as fer as last ytaylle 266

This riche Markis / ryally arayed 267
 Lordis & ladiis in his cumpaynye
 The whech to þe / feste were I-preyed
 And of his / retente þe bacherye 270
 And manye a soun / of sundery melodye
 Vn-to þe village / of þe whiche I tolde
 In þis aray / þe ryȝte weye han holde 273

Gresylde of þis / god wot ful Innocent 274
 That for hire schapyn / was al þis aray
 To feche watyr / at a welle is went
 And comyth hom / as sone as euere sche may 277
 ffor wel sche hadde / herd seyð þat ilke day
 The Markys schulde / wedde & ȝif sche myȝt
 Sche wolde fayn / a seyn sum of þat syȝte 280

Sche thouȝte sche wolde / with opere maydenys stonde 281
 That been myne felas / in oure dore & see
 The Mayrkysesse / & þerfore wele I fonde
 To doon at hom / as sone as it may bee 284
 The labour which / þat longith on to me
 And þanne I may / at / leysere hire byholde
 ȝif sche this weye / vn-to þe castel holde 287

And as sche wolde / ouyr hyre throswald gon [leaf 246, back]
 The Markis cam / and gan hyre for to calle
 And sche sette down / hyre watyr pot a-non
 By syde þe throschewald / in an oxis stalle 291
 And down vp-on hyre / kneis sche gan to falle
 And with sad cuntenaunce / knelede styлле
 Til sche hadde / herd þe lordis wille 294

This thoghtful Markys / spak vn-to þis mayde 295
 fful sobirly / & seyth / in þis manere
 Where is ȝoure fadyr / O Grysild he seyde
 And sche with reuerence / In humble chere 298
 Answerde lord / he is al redy here
 And in sche goth / sche ¹wolde no lengere lette¹ [...Written
 over an er-
 sure in a
 later hand.]
 And to þe Markis / sche hyre fadyr fette

He by the hond / thanne tok þis olde man 302
 And seyde þus / whan he hym hadde a syde
 Ianicula / I neyþer may ne kan
 Lengere þe plesaunce / of myn herte hyde 305

3if þat þou vouche saf/ what so be-tyde
 Thyn douȝtyr wele I / take ¹er þan I wende¹ [¹— Written over
 an erasure in a
 later hand.]
 As for myn wif / vn-to myn lyuys ende

Thow louyst me / I wot it wel serteyn 309
 And art myn feythful / lyge man I-bore
 And al þat lykyth me / I dare wel seyn
 It lykyth þe / & specially þerfore 312
 Tel me þat poynt / þat I haue seyð be-fore
 3if that þou wilt / vnto þat purpos drawe
 To take me / as for þyn sone in lawe 315

The sodeyn cas / þis man a-stonede so 316
 That red he wex / a-bayst & al quakyng
 He stod oneþe / seyde he wordys moo
 But only this / lord quod he myn willyng 319
 Is as 3e wele / ne a-ȝens ȝoure lykyng
 I wele no thyng / 3e be myn lord so dere
 Ryght as ȝow lyst / gouernyth þis matyere 322

That wel I wot / quod / þis Markis softlyt [^{leaf 24v}] 323
 That in thy chambir / I & þou & sche
 Haue a colacioun / & wyst þou whi
 ffor I wele aske 3if it hire wille be 326
 To be myn wif / & rewele hyr after me
 And al þis schal been don / in þyn presence
 I wele not spek / out of þyn audience 329

And in þe chambere / whil þey were a-boute 330
 This tretys which / þat 3e schul after here
 The puple cam / vnto þe hous with-out
 And wondere hem / in how oneste manere 333
 And tentyfli sche / kepte hire fadyr dere
 But outyrly / Grisildis wondere myghte
 ffor neuere erst / ne saw sche swich a syghte 336

No wondir ist / þow þat sche were a-stonyd	337
To seen so greet / a geste come in-to plase	
Sche neuere was / to swich a geste wonyd	
ffor whiche sche lokede / with ful pale face	340
But schortly þis / matyer for to chase	
These are þe wordis / þat þe Markis sayde	
To þis benyngre / veray fey[t]hful mayde	343
Grysilde he seyde / 3e schul wel vndyrstonde	344
It lykȝ to 3oure / fadyr & to me	
That I 3ow wedde / & ek it may so stonde	
As I suppose / 3e wele þat it so be	347
But þese demaundis / aske I first <i>quod</i> he	
That sythe it schal / been don in hasty wyse	
Wele 3e assentyn / or ellis 3ow auyse	350
I seye þis be 3e / redy with good herte	351
To al myn lust / & þat I frely may	
As me best lykȝ / do 3ow lauhe or smerte	
And neuere 3e / to groche it nyght ne day	354
And ek whan I seye 3a / ne seye not nay	
Neither be word / ne frounnyngre cuntenaunce	
Swere þis / & here I swere oure allyaunce	357
Wonderyngre vp-on þis word quakyngre for drede [leaf 247, bk]	
Sche seyde lord / vndyng & vn-worthy	
I am to thilke honour þat 3e me beede	
But as 3e wele 3oure self ryȝt so wele I	361
And here I swere / þat neuere wyllingly	
In werk ne thouȝt I nyl 3ow disobeye	
ffo[r] to be ded thow me were loth to dye	364
T[h]is is I-nogh Grysilde myn <i>quod</i> he	365
And forth he goth with a ful noble cheere	
Out at þe dore & aftyr þat cam ² sche	
And to þe puple he seyde in þis manere	368

[² cam : later, over
an erasure.]

This is myn wif / quod he þat standyth heere
 Honoureth hire / & louth hire I preye
 Who so me louth þere is no more to seye 371

And for þat nothyng / of hire olde gere 372
 Sche schulde brynge in-to his hous he bad
 That wemen schulde dispoilyn hire ryȝt þere
 Of whiche þese / ladyis were not ryȝt glad 375
 To handele hire clothis / wherIn sche was clad
 But natheles þis mayde bryȝt of hewe
 ffrom foot to heed they clopede han al newe 378

Hyre heris han þey kembit that lay vntrussede 379
 fful rudely & with here fyngerys smale
 A coroun on hire heed þey han dressyd
 And set hire ful of nouchis grete & smale 382
 Of hire a-ray what schulde I make a tale
 Oneþe þe puple hire knew for hire fayrnesse
 Whan sche translatede was in swich rychesse 385

This Markis hath hire spousesede with a ryng 386
 Brouȝt for þe same cause & þanne hire sette
 Vp-on an hors snow whit & wel amblenge
 And to his paleys he wolde no lengere lette 389
 With Ioyful puple þat hire ledde & mette
 Conueyede hire & þus þe day þey spende
 In reuel tyl þe sonne gan descende 392

And shortly forth þis tale for to chace [leaf 248] 393
 I seye þat to þis / newe Markysesse
 God hath swych fauour sent hire of his grace
 That it semede not bi liklynesse 396
 That sche was born & fed in rewedenesse
 As in a Cote / or in an oxis stalle
 But norchede in / an emperourys halle 399

- To euery wight sche wexen is so dere 400
 And worchepeful / þat folk þere sche was bore
 And from hyre burthe knew hire ȝer be ȝere
 Oneþe trowede þey but durste a swore 403
 That to lanykele of which I spak be-fore
 Sche doghtir were / for as be coniecture
 Hem thouȝte sche was a-noþer cryature 406
- ffor thow þat euere / vertuous was sche 407
 Sche was encresede in swych excellence
 Of thewys goode / I-set in high bounte
 And so discret & fayr of eloquense 410
 So benyngne & so dygne of reuerence
 And coude so þe puples herte embrace
 That eche hire louede þat lokede in hire face 413
- Not only of Saluces in þe toun 414
 Publischid was þe bounte of hyre name
 But ek be-eydyn in manye a region
 ȝif ony seyde wel a-noþer seyde þe same 417
 So spradde of hire / high bounte þe fame
 That men & women as wel ȝynge as olde
 Com to saluce / vp-on hire to be-holde 420
- This Water lowely nay but roially 421
 Weddede with fortunat oneste
 In godis pes leuyth / ful honestly
 At hom / & outwar / grace I-nogh haþ he 424
 And for he saw þat vndyr low degre
 Was ofte vertu hid / þe peple hym hilde
 A prudent man / & þat is seyn ful seelde 427
- Not only this Grislydis thourgh hire wit [leaf 243, back] 428
 Koude al þe fet of wyfly humbilnesse
 But ek whan þe cas / requyrede it
 The comune profyt coude sche redresse 431

There nas discord rancure ne heuynesse	
In al þat lond þat sche ne coude a-pese	
And wysely brynge hem in reste & ese	434
Thow þat hire husbonde / absent were a-non	435
ȝif gentyl men or opere of hire cuntre	
Were wroth sche wolde / brynge hem at oon	
So wyse & rype wordis hadde she	438
And Iugementis of so gret equite	
þat sche from heuene sent as men wende	
Puple to saue & opere men tamende	441
Not longe tyme after þat þis gresylde	442
Was I-weddit sche a doughtyr hath I-bore	
Al hadde sche leuere a born a knaue chyld	
Glad was þe markis & þe folk þerfore	445
ffor thow a mayde chyld cam al by-fore	
Sche may vn-to a knauechild a-teyne	
By liklyhed syn sche nys nat bareyne	448

[PART III.]

Ther fel as it bi-fel tymys mo	449
Whan þat þis child hath soukede but a throwe	
This markis in his herte longith soo	
To tempte his wyf hire sadnesse for to knowe	452
That he ne myzte out of his herte throwe	
This meruelious desyr his wyf tasayee	
Nedles god wot he thouzte hyre for taffraye	455
He hadde a-sayed hire ryȝt I-now be-fore	456
And fond hire eeure good / what neded it	
Hire for to tempte alwey more & more	
Thow sum men preyse it for a subtil wit	459
But as for me I seye þat yuele it sit	
Tassaye a wyf / whan þat it is noon nede	
And put hire in anguys & in drede	462

ffor which pis Markys / wrowt in pis manere [leaf 249] 463

He cam alone / a nyȝt þere as sche lay

With sterne face / & with ful sturdy chere

And seyð thus / Grisilde quod he þat day 466

That I ȝow tok / out of ȝoure pore aray

And put ȝow in estat / of high noblesse

ȝe han not þat / forgetyn as I gesse 469

I sey Grisilde / this present dignete 470

In which þat I haue / put ȝow / as I trōwe

Makyth ȝow nat / forgetful for to be

þat I ȝow tok / in pore estaat ful lowe 473

ffor ony wele / ȝe motyn ȝoure seluyn knowe

Take heed of / euery word þat I ȝow seye

Ther is no wight / þat hereth it but we tweye 476

Ye woot youre self wel / how that ye cam heere 477

In-to this hous / it is nat longe a-go

And thow to me / þat ye been lef & deere

Vn-to myn sentens ye been nothyng so 480

They seyn to hem / it is greet schame & wo

ffor to been subiect / & been in seruage

To the þat born art / of a smal village 483

And nameliche / sithe thyn doughtyr was bore 484

These wordis han / they spoke douteles

But I desire / as I haue doon by-fore

To lyue myn lyf / with hem in reste & pees 487

I may nat in / this cas been rechelees

I mot doon with thyn / doghtyr for the beste

Nat as I wolde / but as myn peple leste 490

And ȝit god wot / it is ful looght to me 491

But natheles / with-outyn ȝoure wytynge

I wol not don / but this wol I quod he

That ȝe to me / assente as in this thyng 494

Schewe now þoure / pacience in þoure werkynge
 That ȝe me hyȝte / & swore in þoure wyllage
 That day that maked / was oure mariage 497

Whan sche hadde herd al this she noght a-meued [leaf 249, b.]
 Neythir in word / ne chire nor cuntenaunce
 for as it semede sche was nat agreuyd
 Sche seyde lord al lyth in þore plesaunce 501
 Myn chyld & .I. / with hertely obey-saunce
 Been þourys al & ȝe mowe saue or spille
 Youre owene thyng werkylth after þoure wyll 504

There may no thyng god so myn soule saue 505
 Lykyn ȝow þat may displesyn me
 Ne I desyre nothyng for to haue
 Ne drede for to lese saue only thee 508
 T[h]is wil is in myn herte & ay schal bee
 No lenthe of tyme or deth schal this defase
 Ne change myn corage tyl a-noþer place 511

Glad was this markis of this answeyng 512
 But ȝit he feynede as it were nat so
 Al drery was hise chir & hise lokynge
 Whan þat he schulde out of the chambir goo 515
 Sone after this a furlong woy or too
 He pryuyly hath told al his entente
 Vn-to a man & to his wif hym sente 518

A maner seriaunt was this priue man 519
 The whiche that fei[t]hful ofte he foundyn hadde
 In thyngis grete & ek swiche folk wel kan
 Doon execucions / in thyngis hadde 522
 The lord knew wel that he hym louede & dradde
 And whan this sergeaunt / wiste this lordis wille
 In-to þe chaumbre / he stalke hym ful styлле 525

Madame he seyde ȝe mote for-ȝeue it me 526
 Thow I do thyng to whiche I am constreynyd
 Ye ben so wis that ful weel knewe ȝe
 That lordis hestys mowe not been I-feynyd 529
 They moun been weel bewailyd & compleynyd
 But men mot nede vntyl his lust obeye
 And so wele I / þere is no more to seye 532

This child I am comaundit for to take [leaf 250] 533
 And spek no more but out the child he hente
 Dispitously & gan a chire make
 As they he wolde a slayn it er he wente 536
 Grysylidis muste / al suffere & al consente
 And as a lomb sche sittyth meke & styлле
 And leet this crewel seriaunt don his wille 539

Suspecious was / þe/ diffame of this man 540
 Suspect his face / suspect his word also
 Suspect the tyme / in which that this be-gan
 Allas hire doghtyr that sche louede so 543
 Sche wende he wolde a slayn it ryght tho
 But natheles sche neyther wept ne sikyd
 Conformyng hire to that þe markis lykyd 546

But at the laste spekyn sche be-gan 547
 And mekely sche to the seriaunt preyde
 So as he was a worthi gentil man
 That sche muste kysse hire child er þat it deyede 550
 And on hire barm this lytyl child sche leyde
 With ful sad face & gan the child to blysse
 And lulled it & after gan it to kysse 553

And thus sche seyde in ful benyngne voys 554
 ffare wel myn child I schal þe neuere se
 But sythe I the haue markede with the croys
 Of thilke fadyr blyssede mote he bee 557

That for vs deyede vp-on a corroys of tree
 Thyn soule lytyl chyld I the be-take
 ffor this nyȝt schat þou deye for myn sake 560

I trowe that to a norys in this cas 561
 It hadde been hard / this routhe for to see
 Weel myghte a modyr / þanne han cryede allas
 But nathelas / sad / & stedefast was sche 564
 That sche endurede / al aduercite
 And to þe sergeaunt / mekelyche sayde
 Haue here agayn / ȝoure ȝynge lite mayde 567

Seth now quod sche & doth myn lordis heste (leaf 250, back)
 But on thyng wele I preye ȝow of ȝoure grace
 That but myn lord forbad ȝow at the leste
 Berieth this lite bodi in sum place 571
 That bestis ne non opere briddis it to-pace
 But he no word wolde to þat purpos seye
 But tok the child & wente vp-on hise weye 574

This sergeant cam vn-to his lord a-geyn 575
 And of grysildis wordis & hire chere
 He told hym word in schort pleyn
 And hym presentyth with his doughtyr dere 578
 Sumwhat this lord hadde routhe in this manere
 But natheles his purpos held he styлле
 As lordys doon whan they welen han here wille 581

And bad this segeaunt þat he priuily 582
 Schulde this chyld softe wynde & wrappe
 With alle circumstauncis tenderly
 And carye it in a cofere or in a lappe 585
 But vp payne of his hed of for to swappe
 That no man schulde knowe of his entente
 Ne whens he cam ne wheþer þat he wente 588

But at boloyne he to his sustyr deere	589
That thilke tyme of pavyk was cuntesse	
He schulde it take & schewe hire this matyere	
Bysekyng hire to don hyre bysynesse	592
This child to fostere in al gentillesse	
And whos chyld þat it was he bad hire hyde	
ffrom euery wyght for ought þat may be-tyde	595
 This sergeaunt goth & hath ful-fyld this thyng	596
But to the markis now roterne we	
ffor now goth he ful faste ymaginyng	
3if by his wywis cheer he myghte se	599
Or by hire word aperceyue that sche	
Were chaungede but he neuere hire coude fynde	
But euere in on I-lyke sadde & kynde	602
 As glad as humble as besy in seruyse	[leaf 251] 603
And ek in loue as sche was wone to be	
Was sche to hym in euery manere wyse	
Nor of hire doughtyr nouȝt a word spak she	606
Non accident for noon aduersite	
Was seyn in hire / ne neuere hire doughtiris name	
Ne nemenede sche in ernest nor in game	609

[PART IV.]

In this estaat there passede been foure ȝeer	610
Er sche with childe was but as god wolde	
A knaue child be this Waltyr	
fful gracious & fayr for to be-holde	613
And whan that folk it to his fadyr tolde	
Not only he but al his court merye	
Was for this child & god þey thankede & herye	616
 Whan it was two ȝeer old & fro þe brest	617
Departede of his norysce on a day	
This Markis caughte ȝet a-nothir best	

To tempte his wyf ȝit oftere ȝif he may 620
 O needeles was sche temptid in assay
 But weddede men ne knowe no mesure
 Whan that þey fynde a pacient creature 623

Wyf quod this Markys ȝe han herd er this 624
 Myn peple beryth heve oure maryage
 And namely sithe myn sone I-born is
 Now is it werse than euere in al oure age 627
 The murmur sleth myn herte & myn corage
 ffor to mynne eris comyth the vois so smerte
 That it wel nygh distroyed hath myn herte 630

Now sey they thus now Waltyr is a-goon 631
 Than schal the blood of Ianicle succede
 And been oure lord / for opere haue we non
 Swich wordis seigh myn peple out of drede 634
 Weel oughte I of swich murmour takyn heede
 ffor certeynly I drede swich sentence
 Thogh they not pleyntly speke in myn audience 637

I wolde leue in pees ȝif that I myȝte [leaf 251, back] 638
 Wherefore I am disposed vttyrly
 As I his sistyr seruede be nyghte
 Ryȝt so thynke I to serue hym priuily 641
 This warne I ȝow that ȝe nat sodeynly
 Out of ȝoure self / for no woo schulde out-rye
 Beth pacient & þerof I ȝow praye 644

I haue quod sche seyde thus & euere schal 645
 I wol nothyng / ne nyl nothyng certeyn
 But as þou lyst not / greuyth me at al
 Thow that myn doughtir & myn sone be slayn 648
 At ȝoure comaundement it is to seyn
 I haue not had no part of chyldere tweyne
 But fyrst seknesse / & aftyr wo & peyne 651

Ye been oure lord doth with þoure owene thyng	652
Ryȝt as ȝow leste axseth no reed at me	
ffor as I lefte at hom al myn clothyng	
Whan I ferst cam to ȝow ryȝt so quod sche	655
Lefte I myn wil / & myn liberte /	
And tok ȝoure clothyng wherfore I ȝow preye	
Doth ȝoure plesauce I wele ȝoure lust obeye	658
And sertis ȝif I hadde prescience	659
ȝoure wil to knowe er ȝe ȝoure lust me tolde	
I wolde it don with-outyn negligence	
But now I wot ȝoure lust & what ȝe wolde	662
Al ȝoure plesauce ferme & stable I holde	
ffor wiste I þat myn deth wolde don ȝoure ese	
Ryȝt gladly wolde I deye ȝow to plesse	665
Deth may not make non comparisoun	666
Vn-to ȝoure loue & whan this Markys say	
The constauce / of his wyf he cast a down	
Hise eyen too / & wonderyth that sche may	669
In pacience / suffere al this a-ray	
And forth he goth / with drery cuntenaunce	
But to his herte it was / a ful gret plesauce	672
This vgely sergeaunt in þe same wyse	[leaf 252r] 673
That he hire douȝtyr cauȝte ryȝte so he	
Or werse ȝif men werse can deuyse	
Hath hent hire sone that ful was of hente	676
And euery in on so pacient was sche	
That sche no chere made of heynesse	
But kisse hire sone / & after gan it blysse	679
Saue this sche preyede hym that ȝif he myȝte	680
Hire litille sone he wolde in erthe graue	
Hise tendere lemys delitat to syȝte	
ffrom foulȝs & from bestis hym to saue	683

But sche non answerē myȝte haue
 He wente his wey as hym nothyng rouȝte
 But to bolonye he tenderly it brouȝte 686

This Markys wonderȝth euere lengere the more 687
 Vp on hire pacience & ȝif that he
 Ne hadde sothli knowe ther by-fore
 That parfytly hire childeryn louede sche 690
 He wolde a went / þat of subtilite
 And of maleys or of crewel corage
 That sche hath suffered / this with sad visage 693

But weel he knew þat next hym self certeyn 694
 Sche louede hire childeryn best in euery wyse
 But now of women wilde I axsyn fayn
 If these assayis myȝhte not suffyse 697
 What coude a sturdy husbonde more deuysel
 To preue hire 'wyffehode' & hire stedefast-nesse ^[1-1 in a later hand.]
 And he contynuyngē euere in sturdynesse 700

But þere been folk of swich condycioun 701
 That whan þey han a certeyn purpos take
 They can not stynte of here entencioun
 But ryȝt as they were boundyn to þat stake 704
 They wil not of that / ferste purpos slake
 Right so this ilke markis fullyche hath supposed
 To tempte his wyf / as he was fyrst purposed 707

Here waytȝth / ȝif be word or cuntēnaunce [leaf 252, bk] 708
 That sche to hym was chaungit of corage
 But neuere coude he fynde varyaunce
 Sche was ay on in herte & in visage 711
 And ay þe fertherē þat sche was in age
 The moore trewe ȝif þat it were possyble
 Sche was to hym in loue & more penyble 714

ffor which it semede thus that of hem two	715
Nas but on wil for as Waltyr leste	
The same lust was hyre plesauunce also	
And god be thankede al fyl for the beste	718
Sche schewede wel for no wordely onreste	
A wyf as of hire self nothyng ne schulde	
Wille in effect / but as hire husbonde wolde	721
The slaundere ofte & wyde spradde	722
That of a crewel herte / he wekkedely	
ffor he a poore woman wedded hadde	
Hath morderyd bothe hise childere priuily	725
Swich morderere was a-mong hem comounly	
No wondyr is for to þe peplis ere	
There cam no word / but þat þey morderede were	728
ffor wych ther as his puple ther by / fore	729
Hadde loued hym wel the slaundere of his diffame	
Maade hem þat they hym hatid þerfore	
To been a morderere is an hateful name	732
But natheles for-erdest ne for game	
He of his crewel purpos nolde stente	
To tempte his wyf was set al his entente	735
Whan þat this doghtyr twelf ȝeer was of age	736
He to the court of rome in subtyl wyse	
Enformede of his wil sente his massage	
Comaundyng he sweche bullys to deuyse	739
As to his crewel purpos may suffyse	
How þat the pope as for the peplis reste	
Bad hym to wedde a-nothir ȝif hym leste	742
I seye he bad th[e]y schulde countrefete	[leaf 253] 743
The popis bullis makynge mencion	
That he hath leue his fyrste wif to lete	
And by the popis dispensacioun	746

And stynte rancure & dissencioun
 By-twixe þe puple & hym thus seyth þ^e bulle
 The whiche they han pupliced at þ^e fulle 749

The rude peple as it no wondyr is 750
 Wendyn ful wel that it hadde been ryzt so
 But whan these tydyngis cam to Grysildis
 I deeme that hire herte was ful wo 753
 But sche I-like sad for euere mo
 Disposede was this vmble cryature
 Thaduersite / of fortune al tendure 756

Abydyng eueure his lust & his plesaunce 757
 To wom that sche was zeuyn herte & al
 As to hire verray wordely suffysaunce
 But schortely zif this story I tellyn schal 760
 This Markys wrytyn hath in special
 A lettere in wheche he schewith hys entente
 And secrely he to boloyne it sente 763

To the erl of paupk which þat hadde tho 764
 Wedded his sistyr preyede he specially
 To brynge hym hom a-geyn his chyldere two
 In honorable estat al opynly 767
 But on thyng he hym preyede vtterely
 That he to no wyght for no manere.
 Sholde not telle whos childre th[e]y were 770

But seye the maydyn schulde I-weddid be 771
 Vn-to the markis of saluce a-non
 And as this erl was preyed so dede he
 ffor at the day set he on his weye is goon 774
 Toward saluce & lordis manyon
 In ryche a-ray this made for to gyde
 Hire zynge brothir rydyng by hire syde 777

A-rayed was sche toward hire maryage [leaf 253, back] 778
 This fresche mayde ful of gemmys cleere
 Hire brothir which seuene 3eer was of age
 Arayede ek ful frosch in his manere 781
 And thus in gret noblesse & with glad chere
 Towar Saluces schapyng hire Iourneye
 from day to day they rydyng in here woye 784

[PART V.]

[A¹]-Mong al this aftyr his wikkede vsage [¹ A space has been left in the MS for this letter.]
 This Markys 3it his wif to tempte more
 To the vttreste priue of hire corage
 fully to han experience & lore 788
 3if that sche were as stedefast as by-foore
 He on a day in opyn audience
 fful boystously hath seyde hire this sentence 791
 Certis Grisilde I hadde I-now plesaunce 792
 To han 3ow to myn wif for 3oure goodnesse
 As for 3oure trouthe & for 3oure obeisaunce
 Not for 3orere lynage / ne for 3oure rychesse 795
 But now knowe I in verray sothfastnesse
 That in gret lordschepe If I wele auyse
 Ther is gret seruytut in sundery wyse 798
 I may nat do as euery plowman may 799
 Myn puple me constreynyth for to take
 A-noþer wyf & cryen day be day
 And ek þe popis rancure for to slake 802
 Consenteth it þat dar I vndyr-take
 And trewely þus meche I 3ow seye
 Myn newe wif is comynge by the weye 805
 Be strong of herte & woyde a-non hire place 806
 And thilke dowers þat 3e broughte me
 Take it a-geyn I graunte it of myn grace

Returnyth to ȝoure faderis hous quod he 809
 No man may han alwey prosperite
 With euene herte I rede ȝow to endure
 The strok of fortune or of auenture 812

And sche answerde a-noon in pacience [leaf 254] 813
 Myn lord quod sche I wot & wyste alwey
 How that by-twixe ȝoure magnificence
 And myn pouerte no wyght can ne may 816
 Makyn comparysoun it is no nay
 I ne hyld me neuere dygne in no manere
 To be ȝoure wyf no / ne ȝoure chaumberere 819

And in this hous there ȝe me lady made 820
 The hyghe god take I for myn witnesse
 And also wysely he myn soule so glade
 I hyld me neuere lady ne maystresse 823
 But vmbles seruaunt to ȝoure worthynesse
 And euere schal whil myn lyf may dure
 Abovyn euery wordely creature 826

That ȝe so longe of ȝoure benyngnetee 827
 Han holde me in honour & nobleye
 Wher as I was not worthy for to bee
 That thanke I god / & ȝow to whom I preye 830
 ffor ȝilde it ȝow ther is no more to seye
 And to myn fadyr gladly wele I wende
 And with hym dwelle vn-to myn lyuys ende 833

There I was fostered of a chyld ful smal 834
 Tyl I be deed myn lyf there wele I leede
 A wydewe clene in body herte & al
 ffor sythe I ȝaf to ȝow myn maydynhede 837
 And am ȝoure trewe wyf it is no drede
 God schilde swich a lordis wyf to take
 A-nothir man to husbonde or to make 840

And of ȝoure newe wif god of his grace 841
 So graunte ȝow wele & prosperitee
 ffor I wele gladly ȝildyn hire myn place
 In which þat I was blysfyl wone to be 844
 ffor syth it lykyth ȝow myn lord quod sche
 That whilhom were al myn hertis reste
 That I schal gon .I. wele goon whan ȝow leste 847

ut there as ȝe me profere swych dewarye [leaf 254, bk] 848
 As I fyrst brouȝte it is weel in myn mynde
 It were mynne wrechede clothis no thyng fayre
 The wheche to me were hard now for to fynde 851
 O goode god how gentyl & how kynde
 ȝe semedyn be ȝoure speche & ȝoure visage
 The day that makyd was oure maryage 854

But soth is seyð / algate I fynde it trowe 855
 ffor in effect it preuede is in me
 Loue is not old / as whan þat it is newe
 But sertis lord for noon aduercite 858
 To deyn in þe cas it schal nat be
 That euere in word / or werk I schal repente
 That I ȝow ȝaf myn herte / with hol entente 861

Myn lord ȝe wot that In myn faderys place 862
 ȝe dede me strype out of myn poore weede
 And rychely me claddyn of ȝoure grace
 To ȝow brouȝte I not ellis out of dreede 865
 But feyth & meknesse & maydynhede
 And heere ageyn myn clothynge I restore
 And ek myn weddynge ryng for euere more 868

The remenaunt of ȝoure Iewellys redy bee 869
 In with ȝoure chaumbere that dar I sayn
 Nakyd out of myn faderys hous quod sche
 I cam / & nakyd I mot / turne ageyn 872

Al 3oure plesaunce I wele folwe fayn
 But 3it I hope it be not 3oure entente
 That I smokes out of 3oure paleys wente 875

3e coude not don so disonest a thyng 876
 That ilke wombe in whiche 3oure chyldere leye
 Schulde by-fore the peple in myn walkyng
 Be seyn al bare / therfore I 3ow preye 879
 Lat me not lyk a werm / goon by the weye
 Remembrith 3ow myn owene lord so deere
 I was 3oure wyf thow I onworthy weere 882

Wherefore in guerdoun of myn maydynhede [leaf 255] 883
 Whiche that I brouzte & not ageyn I bere
 As vouche 3e saf / to 3eue me to myn meede
 But swich a smok as I was wone to were 886
 That I therwith may wrye þ^r wombe of hire
 That was 3oure wyf / & here I take myn leue
 Of 3ow myn owene / lest that I 3ow greue 889

The smok quod he that thow hast on thyn bak 890
 Lete it be styлле & bere it forth with the
 But wel onethe thilke word he spak
 But wente his way for reuthe & for pite 893
 By-forn hyre folk / hyre seluyn strepyth sche
 And in hire smok with hed & feet al bare
 Toward hire faderys hous / forth is sche fare 896

The folk hyre folwyn / wepyng¹ in hire weye¹ [— later]
 And fortune ay they curssyn as they goon
 But sche from wepyng kepte hire eyen dreye
 Ne in this tyme word ne spak sche noon 900
 Hyre fadyr þat of this tydyng herde a-non
 Curseth the day / & tyme that nature
 Schop hym to been a lyuys creature 903

ffor out of doute this olde poure man	904
Was euere in suspect of hire maryage	
ffor euere he demede sythe that it began	
That whan the lord fulfylde hadde his corage	907
Hym wolde thynke it were a disparage	
To his estat so lowe for to a-lyghte	
And woydyn hire / as sone as euere he myghte	910
A-geyn his doughtyr / hastyliche goth he	911
ffor he by noyse of folk / knew hire comyng	
And with hire olde coote / as it myghte be	
He cowerith hire / ful sorwefully wepyng	914
But on hire body / myghte it not bryng	
ffor rude was the cloth / & sche more of age	
By dayis fele / than at hire maryage	917
T[h]us with hire fadyr / for a certeyn space [leaf 233, bk.]	918
Dwellyth this flour of wyfly pacience	
That neythir by hire wordys ne hire face	
By-fore the folk ne ek in hire absence	921
Ne schewede sche þat hire was don offence	
Ne of hire highe estat no remembraunce	
Ne hadde sche as by hyre cuntenaunce	924
No wondyr is / for in hire greete estate	925
Hyre gost was ay in pleyn humylitee	
No tendere mouth non herte delicate	
No pompe no semblaunt of royaltee	928
But ful of pacient benygnetee	
Dyscreef & prideles / ay honorable	
And to hire husbonde euere mek & stable	931
Men speke of Iob / & most for his humblesse	932
As clerkis whan hem leste can wel endite	
Namely of men / but as in sothfastnesse	
Thow Clerkys preysyn wemen but a lyte	935

There Can no man in humblesse hem a-uyte
 As women ¹ can ne ben half so trewe¹ [—¹ later]
 As women ben but it be falle of newe 938

[PART VI.]

¶ ffrom Bologyne as this erl of paupke come 939
 Of which þe fame vp sprong bothe more & lesse
 And to the peplis eris alle & some
 Was kouth eek that a newe Markisesse 942
 He with hym broghte in swich pompe & richesse
 That neuere was there seyn with manys eye
 So noble a-ray in al west Lumbardye 945

This Markis which that shoop & knew al this 946
 Er þat this erl was come / sente his massage
 ffor thilke sely pore ²Gresylidis² [—² later]
 And sche with ²houmble² herte & glad visage 949
 Noght in a swollyn thoght in hire corage
 Cam at his heste / & on hire kneis hire sette
 And reuerently & wisely / sche hym grette 952

Grisilde quod he / myn wil is outirly [leaf 256] 953
 This mayde þat schal weddit been to me
 Resseyuede ben to morwe as roially
 As it possible is in myn hous to be 956
 And ek that euery wight in his degere
 Haue his estat / in sittynge & seruyse
 And hegh plesaunce / as I can best deuyse 959

I haue no women suffisant certeyn 960
 The chambris for taraye in ordenaunce
 Aftyr myn lust & þerfore wolde I fayn
 That thyn were / al swich manere gouernaunce 963
 Thow knowyst ek of old / al myn plesaunce
 Thow thyn aray be badde & euele be seye
 Do þou thyn deuer / at the leste weye 966

Nat only lord þat I am glad quod sche 967
 To do þoure lust / but .I. deasyre also
 3ow for to serue & plesse in myn degre
 With-outyn feyntynge & schal euere mo 970
 Ne neuere for no wele ne no wo
 Ne schal myn gost with-inne myn herte stente
 To loue 3ow best / with al myn hol entente 973

And with that word sche gan the hous to dighte 974
 And tabellis for to sette & al redy make
 And peynede hire to don al þat sche myzte
 Preyinge þ^e chambereris for godis sake 977
 To haste hem & faste swepe & shake
 And sche þ^e moste / seruyable of alle
 Hath euery chambre arayed and his halle 980

A-boutyn vndryn gan this erl a-lyzte 981
 That with hym broghte these noble childere tweye
 ffor which the peple ran to seen the syght
 Of hire aray so rychely be seye 984
 And thanne at erst a-mongis hem they seye
 That waltyr was no fol thow þat hym leste
 To chonge his wyf / for it was for the beste 987

ffor sche is fayrere as they demyn alle [leaf 226, back] 988
 As is Gresilde & more tendere of age
 And fayrere freut be-twen hem schulde falle
 And more plesaunt for hire heye lenage 991
 Hire brothir ek so fayr was of visage
 That hem to sen þ^e peple hath caught plesaunce
 Comendynge now þ^e Markys gouernaunce 994

O stormy puple / on sad & euere vntrewe Auctor
 Ay vndiscret & chaungynge as a fane
 Delytynge euere in rumbul þat is newe
 ffor lyk the mone / ay waxe 3e & wane 998

Ay ful of clappyng deere ynogh & Iane
 3oure dom is fals / 3oure constaunce euel prauyth
 A ful greet fol is he þat on 3ow leuyth 1001

Thus seydyn sadde folk in þat Cetee 1002
 Whan þat the peple gazedē vp & doun
 ffor they were glad rygh for þ' nouelteē
 To haue a newe lady of hire toun 1005
 No more of this now make I mencion
 But to grysilde a-geyn wil I me dresse
 And telle hire constance & hire besynesse 1008

ful bisy was Grisilde / in euery thyng 1009
 That to þ' feste / was apertynent
 Rygh nought was sche / abast of hire clothyngē
 Thow it were rude & sumdel ek to-rent 1012
 But with glad chier to þ' 3ate is went
 With opere folk to greete the Markisesse
 And aftyr doth / forth hire besinesse 1015

With so glad chiere / hire gestis sche resseyuyth 1016
 And so benyngnely euerych in his degre
 That no defeaute no man aperseyuyth
 But ay they wondere / what sche myghte be 1019
 That in so pore aray / was for to se
 And coude swich honour / & reuerence
 And worthily they preyse hire prudence 1022

In al this meene while / sche ne stente [leaf 257] 1023
 That mayde & ek hire broth[i]r to comende
 With al hire herte in ful benyngne entente
 So wel þat no man coude hire pris a-mende 1026
 But at þ' laste / whan that þ' lordys wende
 To syttyn doun to mete he gan to calle
 Grysilde as sche was bysy in the halle 1029

Grysilde quod he as it were in his pley	1030
How lykȝth þ ^e myn wif & hire beaute	
Ryȝt wel quod sche-myn lord / for in good fey	
A fayrere saugh I neuere non þan sche	1033
I praye to god / ȝeue ȝow prosperite	
And so hope I þat he wele to ȝow sende	
Plesaunce I-now vn-to ȝoure lyuys ende	1036
O thyng biseke I ȝow & warne also	1037
That ȝe ne pryke / with no turmentynge	
This newe mayde as ȝe han don mo	
ffor sche is fosteryd in hire norychyng	1040
More tenderly & to myn supposynge	
Sche coude not aduercytee endure	
As coude a pore fosterede creature	1043
And whan this waltyr saugh hire pacience	1044
Hire glad chere & non maleyce at al	
And he so ofte hadde don hire offence	
And sche ay sad & constaunt as a wal	1047
Conteynyng eue / hire innocent ouyr al	
This sturdy Markys gan his herte dresse	
To rewe vp-on hire / wifly stedefastnesse	1050
That is I-nogh Grisilde myn quod he	1051
Be now no moore a-gast ne euele a-payd	
I haue thyn feyth & thyn benygnetee	
As wel as euere weman was a-sayed	1054
In gret estat & porely arayd	
Now knowe I deere wif / thyn stedefastnesse	
And hire in armys took / & gan hyre kesse	1057
And sche for wondyr tok of it no kep	[leaf 257, back] 1058
Sche herde not what thyng he to hire seyde	
Sche ferde as sche hadde styrt out of hyre slep	
Tyl sche out of hire masedenesse a-breyde	1061

Grisilde quod he bi god that for vs deyede
 Thow art myn wif / ne non oper ne haue
 Ne neuere ne hadde as god myn soule saue 1064

This is thyn douȝtyr / which þow hast supposyd 1065
 To been myn wyf / þat oper feithfully
 Schal been myn eyr / as I haue ay supposid
 Thow bar hym in thyn body trewely 1068
 At Boloynne haue I kept hem pryuely
 Take hem a-geyn for now þow mayst nat seye
 That þou hast lost non of thynne childeryn tweye 1071

And folk that opere weyis han seyde of mee 1072
 I warne hem weel that I haue don this dede
 For no maleys / nor for no creueltee
 But for tassaye in the thyn womanhede 1075
 And not for to sle mynne childeryn god for-beede
 But for to kepe hem priuely & stille
 Til I thyn purpos knew & al thyn wille 1078

Whan this sche herde / aswounne doun sche fallyth 1079
 for pytous Ioye & after hire swounyng
 Sche bepe hire ȝonge chyldere vn-to hyre callyth
 And in hire armys / pitously / wepyng 1082
 Enbrasyth hym / & tenderely kyssyng
 ful lyk a modyr with hire salte terys
 Sche bathith bothe hire visage & hire herys 1085

O which a pitous thyng it was to se 1086
 Hire swounyng & hire humble voys for to heere
 Graunt mercy lord / god thanke ȝow quod sche
 That ȝe han sauede me mynne chyldere deere 1089
 Now rekke I neuere to been ded ryȝt here
 Sithe I stonde in ȝoure loue & in ȝoure grace
 No fors of deth ne whan myn spyrte pace 1092

O tendere o 3onge o deere childere mynne	[leaf 228]	1093
3oure woful modyr / wende stedefastly		
That crewel houndis / or sum foul vermyn		
Haddyn etyn 3ow / but god of his mercy		1096
And 3oure benyngne fadyr tendyrly		
Hath don 3ow kept & in that same stounde		
Al sodeynly sche swapte a-doun to grounde		1099
And in hire swough so sadly holdyth sche		1100
Hyre chylderyn two / whan sche gan hem tenbrace		
That with gret sley3t / & gret difficultee		
The chyldere from hire arm / they gunne a-race		1103
O manye a ter / on manye a pitous face		
Doun ran of hem that stodyn hire besyde		
Vnnethe a-boutyn hire my3te they not a-byde		1106
Walter hire gladith / & hire sorwe slakyth		1107
Sche rysith vp abaschid from hire traunce		
And euery wigt hire Ioye & feste makyth		
Til sche hath cau3t a-geyn hire cuntenaunce		1110
Walter hire doth so feythful plesaunce		
That it was deynte for to sen the cheere		
By-twixe hem two now the[y] ben met in feere		1113
These ladyis whan that they here tyme sey		1114
Han takyn hire & in-to chambere goon		
And strippe hire out of hire rude a-ray		
And in a cloth of gold that bry3te schoon		1117
With a coroun of manye a ryche stoon		
Vp-on hire heed they in-to halle hire brou3te		
And pere sche was honourede as hyre ou3te		1120
Thus hath this pitous day a blysful ende		1121
ffor euery man & woman doth his my3t		
This day in myrthe & reuel to dispende		
Tyl on the walkyn schon the sterrys ly3t		1124

ffor more solempne in euery manys syȝt This feste was & grettere of costage Than was the reuel of hyre maryage	1127
ful manye a ȝeer in hih prosperite <small>[leaf 228, back]</small> Lyuyñ these too in concord & in reste And richely his doghtyr maryede he Vn-to a lord on of the worthieste Of al ytayle & þanne in pees & reste Hise wyuys fadyr in his court he kepith Tyl þat þe soule out of the body crepith	1128 1131 1134
His sone succedith in his heritage In reste & pees after his faderys day And fortenat was ek in mariage Al put he nat his wif in greet assay This world is nat so strong It is no nay As it hath been in olde tymys ȝoore And herkenyth what this auctor seyth therfore	1135 1138 1141
This stori is seyð nought for that wyuys schulde folwyz grysilde as in humylitee ffor it were importable thogh they wolde But for that euery wight in his degree Schulde been constaunt in aduersitee As was Grisilde / therfore this Petrak wryteth This story which he wíth high style endyteth	Auctor 1145 1148
ffor sythe a woman was so pacient Vn-to a mortal man wel more vs oghȝe Receyuyñ al in gre þat god we see ffor greet skele is he / preue that he wroghte But he ne temptyth no man that he boughte As seith seynt Iame / If ye his pistyl reede He preunyth folk al day/ it is no drede	1149 1152 1155

And sufferyth vs as for excercise	1156
With scharpe schourgis / of aduercitee	
ful ofte to be bet in sundery wyse	
Not for to knowe oure wil for certis he	1159
Er we were born knew al oure freletee	
And for oure beste is al his gouernaunce	
Lat vs thazne lyue in vertuous sufferaunce	1162
But on word lordynyis herkenyth er I go	[leaf 250] 1163
It were ful hard to fynde now on dayis	
In al a toun Grysildis thre or two	
ffor ȝif that thei were / put to swych a-sayis	1166
The gold of hem han now so badde alayis	
With bras that thogh the coyn be fayr at Iye	
It wele rathere breste atwo than plye	1169
ffor which heere for the wyuys loue of bathe	1170
Whos lyf & al hyre secte god meynsteene	
In high maystrye & ellis were it skathe	
I wele with lusty herte frosh & grene	1173
Sey ȝow a song to glade ȝow I wene	
And let vs stynte of earnest-ful matiere	
Herkenyth myn song / þat seyth in this manere	1176

Lenuoy de Chaucer

G rysilde is deed & ek hire pacience	
And bothe at oncoys buried in Ytayle	
ffor whiche in opene audience	1179
No weddede man / so hardy be tassaylle	
His wyuys pacience entrost to fynde	
Grisildis for in certeyn he schal faylle	1182

- O noble wyuys ful of prudence
 Let noon humilite 3oure tunge nayille
 Ne lat no klerk haue cause nor dilygence 1185
 To wryte of 3ow a story of swych meruaile
 As of Grisildis pacient & kynde
 Lest Chichenache / you swolwe in hire entrayle 1188
- ffolwith Ecco / that holdyth no sylence
 But euere answerith at the countretayle
 Beth not bedaffyd for 3oure Innocence 1191
 But scharpely takyth on 3ow the gouernaile
 Enpryntith wel this lessoun in 3oure mynde
 ffor comune profyt / sithe it may a-wayle 1194
- Ye Archewyys stondyth at 3oure defence [leaf 259, back]
 Syn 3e been stronge as is a greet Camayle
 Ne sufferyth nat / þat men 3ow doon offence 1197
 And sklendere wyues feble as in batayle
 Beeth egre as is a tigre 3ong in 3outhe
 Ay clappith as a melle I 3ow consayle 1200
- Ne drede hem nat do hem no reuerence
 ffor thow thyn husbond / armede be in mayle
 The arwis of thyn crabbede eloquence 1203
 Schal perce his brest & ek his auentayle
 In Ialusye I reede ek thow hym bynde
 And thow schat make hym couche as doth a quayle 1206
- If thow be fayr / ther folk been in presence
 Schewerthu thyn visage & thyn aparayle
 3if thow be foul be fre of thyn dispence 1209
 To gete the frendys ay do thyn trauayle
 Be ay of chir as lyght as lef on lynde
 And lat hym care & wepe & wrynge & wayle 1212

Heere hath the clerk' of Oxenforthe ended his tale

APPENDIX TO GROUP E, § 2.

[? *Original, but rejected, End-Link to the Clerk's Tale, perhaps following l. 1162, with which the paraphrase of Petrarch's Latin ends, or l. 1169.*]

This worthi clerk whan endede was his tale	
Oure ost seyde & swor by godys bonys	
Me were leuere than a barel ale	
Myn wif at hom hadde herd this legende onys	4
This was a gentil tale for the nonys	
As to myn purpos woste 3e myn wille	
But thyng that wil nat be lat it be stille	7

Heere folwith the prologe of the marchauntes tale ^[f 250, back]
[Leaf 250 (containing the Merchant's prologue, the pointing of him, and 20 lines of the tale) has been cut out of the Cambridge MS Gg. 4. 27.]

[Cambr. Univ. MS Dd. 4. 24.]

Wepyng and waylyng / care and other sorwe ^[f 106]
 I knowe I-now / on Euen and on morwe
 Quod the Marchaunt / and so don othere moo
 That wedded ben / I trowe that it be so

ful wel I wot / it fareth so by me
 I haue a wyf / the werste that may be
 for though the fend / to hire I-coupled were
 She wolde him ouer macche / I dar wel swere 1220
 what shulde I ȝow reherce / in special
 hire heye malice / she is a shrewe with al
 There is a long / and a large difference
 Be-twix Grisildis / grete pacience 1224
 And of my wyf / the passyng' cruelte
 were I vnbounden / also mot I the
 I wolde neuere eft / comen in the snare
 we wedded men / lyue in sorwe and care 1228
 Assay who so wyl / and he shal fynde
 That I seye soth / be seynt Thomas of Inde
 As for the more part / I seye nat alle
 God shilde that it shulde / so byfalle 1232
 A goode sire hoost / I haue I-wedded be
 Theise Monthes two / and more nat parde
 And ȝet I trowe / that he that al his lyue
 wyflees hath ben / though that man wold him ryue 1236
 Vn-to the hert / ne coude in no manere
 Tellen so meche sorwe / as I now here
 Coude tellen / of my wyues cursidnes
 Now quod oure Host / Marchaunt so god ȝow blis 1240
 Syn ȝe so mechil knowen / of that art
 ful hertily I pray ȝow / telle vs part
 Gladly quod he / but of myn owen sore
 for sory hert / I telle may nomore] ^[Dd. 4. 24 extract ends]

[*Sloane 1685, leaf 87.*]

[Whilome þere was dwellynge in Lumbardy
 A worþi knyȝt þat borne was at pavye
 In whiche he lyued in grete prosperite
 And sixty ȝere a wyfles man was he 1248
 And folowyd ay hys bodyly delyte
 On womman þere as was hys appetyte
 As don þese foules þat ben seculers
 And whan þat he was paste sixty ȝeres 1252
 Were hit for holynesse or for doteage
 I can not sey but suche a grete corage
 hade þis knyȝt to be a weddid man
 þat day and nyȝt he dothe all þat he can 1256
 To aspye where þat he wedded myȝt be
 Praynge oure lorde to graunten hym þat he
 Myȝt onys knowe þat blessefulle lyf
 That ys bytwext an husbonde & his wyf 1260
 And for to leuen vnder þat holy bonde
 With first god man to womman bande
 Non other lyf seyde he ys worthe a bene
 For wedlok ys so esy & so clene] [*Sloane 1685 extract ends*]
 That in this world it is a paradys [*Camb. Gg. 4. 27, leaf 201*]
 Thus seyde this olde knyght þat was so wys
 And sertynly as soth as god Is kyng
 To take a wyf it is a glorious thyng 1268
 And nemely whan a man is old & hore
 Thanne is a wyf the freut of his tresore
 Thanne schulde he take a ȝong wyf & a fayr
 On whiche he myȝte engendere & been eyr 1272

CAMBRIDGE 275 (6-T. 443)

And leede his lyf in ioye & in solace
 Where as these bachelerys synge allas
 Whan that they fynde ony aduercitee
 In loue which is but childis vanytee 1276
 And trewely it is weel to been so
 That bachelerys han ofte payne & wo
 On brothil ground they bylde / & brothelnesse
 They fynde / whan they wene sekynnesse 1280
 They lyue but as a bryd or as a beste
 In lyberte & vndyr non areste
 There as a weddede man in his estat
 Leuyth a lyf blysfyl & ordenat 1284
 Vndyr the jok of maryage I-bounde
 Wel may his herte in ioye & blisse abounde
 ffor who can been so buxsum as a wif
 Who is so trewe & ek so ententyf 1288
 To keepe hym syk & hol as is his make
 ffor weel or wo sche wele hym not for-sake
 Sche is nat wery hym to loue & serue
 Thogh þat he lye bedrede tyl he sterue 1292
 And ȝit some clerkys seyn it is nat so
 Of which þ^e theofraсте is on of tho
 What fors thow Theofraсте lyste to lye
 Ne take no wyf quod he for husbonderye 1296
 As for to spare in houshold thyn dispence
 A trewe seruauant doth more diligence
 Thyn good to kepe than tyn owene wyf
 ffor sche wele cleyme half part al hire lyf 1300
 And ȝyf þou be sek so god me save
 Thynne verray frendys or a trewe knave
 Wele kepe þe bet / than sche that wayth ay [leaf 261, back]
 Aftyr thyn good / & hath doon manye a day 1304
 And ȝif thow take a wyf on to thyn hold /
 ffyl lyghtely mayst þou been a coukewold ¶ Cause
 This sentence / & manye an hunderede werse
 Wryth this man / there god his bonys curse 1308

But takyth no kep of alle swich vanytee
 Defye Theofraste & herke me
 A wyf is godys ȝifte verrayly
 Alle opere manere ȝiftys hardyly 1312
 As londys¹ rentys / pasture or comune [? first lordys]
 Or meoblys alle been ȝiftys of fortune
 That passyn / as a schadewe vp on a wal
 But dredles if pleynly speke I schal 1316
 A wyf wele laste & in thyn hous endure
 Weel lengere than the lyste paraurenture
 Maryage is a ful gret sakrement
 He which that hath no wyf I helde hym schent 1320
 He lyuyth helpeles & al desolat
 I speke of folk in seculer estat
 And herke why I seye nat this for noht
 That weman is for manys helpe I-wrought 1324
 The heye god² whan he badde adam makyd [? first good]
 And say hym al a-lone bely nakyd /
 God of his greete goodnesse seyde than
 Lat vs now make an helpe vn-to this man 1328
 Lyk to hym self & thanne he made hym Eue
 Heere may ȝe se &³ here may ȝe preue [? assurance]
 That wif is manys helpe & his confort
 His paradys terestre / & his desport 1332
 So buxum & so vertevous is sche
 They muste nedis lue in vnite
 On flesch they been & on blood as I gesse
 Hath but oon herte / in wele & in destresse 1336
 A wif a seynte Marie benedicite
 How myȝte a man han ony aduersite
 That hath a wif sertis I can not seye
 The blysse that is be-twixe hem tweye 1340
 Ther may non tunge telle nor herte thynke [leaf 202]
 ȝif he be pore sche helpith hym to swynke
 Sche kepith his good / & wastyth neuere a del
 Al that hire husbonde luste hire likyth weel 1344

Sche seyth nat onys nay whan he seyth ye
 Do this seyth he al redy sere seyth sche
 O blysful ordere of wedlok precious
 Thow art so merye & ek so vertyuous 1348
 And so comendit & apreuyd ek
 That euery man that halt hym worth a lek
 Vp-on hise bare kneis oghte al his lyf
 Thankyn his god that hym hath sent a wyf 1352
 Or ellys preye to god hym for to fynde
 A wif to laste vn-to his lyuys ende
 ffor thanne his lyf is set in sekyrnesse
 He may not ben disseuyd as I gesse 1356
 So þat he werche aftyr his wyuys reed
 Thanne may he baldely beryn vp his heed
 They been so trewe & therwithal so wise
 ffor which ȝif þou wilt werkyn as the wyse 1360
 Do alwey so as wemen wele þ^e reede
 Lo how that Iacob as these clerkys rede
 By good conseyll of his modyr Rebekke
 Bond the kidis skyn a-boutyn his nekke 1364
 ffor which his faderis benysoñ he wan
 Lo Iudith as the story telle can
 By good conseyll sche godys peple kepte
 And slow hym Olofernus as he slepte 1368
 Lo Abigayl bi good conseyll how sche
 Sauede hire husbonde / Naabal whan þat he
 Schulde a be slayn & loke Ester also
 By good conseyll delinereð out of woo 1372
 The peple of god / & made hym Mardoche
 To assure en-haunsede for to bee
 There nys no thyng In gre superlatyf
 As seyth senec. A-bone an humble wyf 1376
 Suffere thyn wyuys tunge as catoun bit
 Sche schal comaunde & sche schal suffere it
 And ȝit sche wele obeye of curteysye
 A wyf is kepere of thyn husbondrye 1380

[leaf 202, back]

Weel may the syke man bewayle & wepe
 There as þer is no wif the hous to kepe
 I warne the gif wisely thou wilt werche
 Loue wel thyn wif / as Cryst louede his cherche 1384
 If thou louyst thyn self thou louyst thyn wyf
 No man hatyth his flesch but in his lyf
 He fosteryth it & therefore bidde I the
 Cheryche thyn wyf or thou schat neuere the 1388
 Husbonde or wyf / what so men lape or pleye
 Of wordely folk / holdyn þe sikere weye
 They been so knyht there may non harm be-tyde
 And namely vp-on the wyuys syde 1392
 ffor which this Ianuaye of whiche I tolde
 Considerede hath with hise dayis olde
 The lusty lyf / the vertyuous quiete
 That is in maryage hony swete 1396
 And for hise frendis on a day he sente
 To tellyn hem teffect of his entente
 ¶ With face sad / his tale he hath hem told
 He seyde frendis I am hor & old 1400
 And alwey god wot on myn pittis brynke
 Vp-on the soule sumwhat muste I thynke
 I haue myn body folylly dispendit
 Blyssede be god that it schal ben a-mendit 1404
 ffor I wele been certayn a weddede man
 And that a-noon / in al the haste I can
 Vn-to sum mayde fayr & tendere of age
 I preye 3ow schapith for myn maryage 1408
 Al sodeynly for / I nyl nat a-byde
 And I wele fonde tespie on myn syde
 To whom I may been weddit hastily
 But for as meche as 3e been mo than I 1412
 3e schul rather swich a thyng espyen
 Than I & wheere me best were to allyen
 But on thyng werne I 3ow mynne frendis deere
 I wele non old wyf han in no manere — 1416

Sche schal not passe twenty ȝeer certayn [leaf 208]
 Old fysch & ȝong flesch/ wolde I haue ful fayn
 Bet is quod he a pyk than a pykerel
 And bet than old bef is the tendere veel 1420
 I wil no weman / thretty ȝeer of age
 It is but benestraw / & gret forage
 And ek these olde wyuys god it wot
 They cunne so meche craft on wadis boot 1424
 So meche broke harm whan hem leste
 That with hem schulde I neuere lyue in reste
 for sundery scolys make subtyl clerkys
 Woman of manye scole half a clerk is 1428
 But serteynly a ȝong thyng may men gye
 Ryght as men may warm wex with handis plye
 Wherefore I sey ȝow pleyonly in a clause
 I wele noon old wyf han for this cause 1432
 for ȝif so were I hadde swich myschaunce
 That I in hire ne coude haue no plesaunce
 Thanne schulde [I] lede myn lyf in a-vouterye
 And streyt to the deuyll whan I deye 1436
 Ne chylidere schulde I none vp-on hire gete
 ȝit were me leuere houndis haddyn me etyn
 Than that myn erytage schulde falle
 In straunge hand & this I telle ȝow alle 1440
 I dote not I wot the cause why
 Men schulde wedde & ferthere more wot I
 There spekyth manye a man of mariage
 That wot no more of it than wot myn page 1444
 for whiche causis men schulde take a wyf
 Sith he ne may nat liue chast his lyf
 Tak hym a wyf with gret deuocioun
 By cause of leful procreacioun 1448
 Of childere too thonour of god a-boue
 And nat only / for paramour or loue
 And for they schulde / lecherye eschue
 And ȝilde here dette / whan þat it is dewe 1452

Or for eche of hem / schulde helpyn oþer
 In myschif / as a systyr / schal the brothir
 And lyuyn in chastite ful holy-ly (leaf 263, back^r)
 But siris bi ȝoure leue þat am not I 1456
 ffor god be thankyd I dar make a-vaunt
 I fele myn lemys starke & suffisaunt
 To do al that a man bihouyth to
 I wot myn self best what I may do 1460
 Thow I be hor I fare as doth a tree
 That blometh er than freut I-wexe bee
 A blomys tre is neythir dreye ne ded
 I fele me nower hor but on myn heed 1464
 Myn herte & alle mynne lymys been as grene
 As laurer thourgh þ^e ȝeer is ay seene
 And syn that ȝe han herd al myn entente
 I prey ȝow to myn wil ȝe wele assente 1468
 ¶ Dyuers men dyuersly hym tolde
 Of mariage manye ensaumplis olde
 Some blamede it some preysede it certeyn
 But at the laste schortely for to seyn 1472
 As alday fallyth altercacioun
 By-twyxe fryndys in disputacioun
 There fyl a stryf bi-twyxen hise bretheryn two
 Of which that on is clepid placebo Placebo
 Iustinus sothly cleped was that oþer
 Placebo seyde o Ianuarye brothir
 fful lityl neede/ hadde ȝe myn lord so deere
 Conseyll to axe of ony that is heere 1480
 But that ȝe been so ful of sapience
 That ȝow ne lykyth for ȝoure hye prudence
 To wyue fro the word of Salamon
 [] [No gap in MS, but a mark of omission; and a line is left blank at the bottom of the leaf for the omitted words.]
 Werke alle thyng by conseyll thus seyth he
 And thanne schat þou not repente the
 And thow that salamon spak swych a word
 Myn owene deere brothir & myn lord 1488

So wysely god myn soule brynge at reste
 I holde ȝore conseyl is the beste
 ffor brothir myn of me tak this motyf
 I haue now been a court man al myn lyf 1492
 And god it wot thow I onworthy bee [leaf 284]
 I haue stondyn in ful gret de-gree
 A-boutyn lordis of ful high estaat
 ȝet hadde I neuere with non of hem debaat 1496
 I neuere hem contraryed trewely
 I woot weel that myn lord can moore þan I
 What that he seyth I holde it ferme & stable
 I sey the same or ellys thyng semblable 1500
 A ful gret fol is ony conseyllour
 That seruyth ony lord of hey onour
 That dar presume or ellys thynkyn it
 That his conseyl schulde passe his lordis wit 1504
 Nay lordis been none folys be myn fay
 ȝee han ȝoure self schewid heere to day
 So high sentence so holyly & so wel
 That I consente & conferme euery deel 1508
 ȝoure wordis alle & ȝoure opynyoun
 By god there nys no man in al this toun
 Ne in al ytayil that coude bet a sayd
 Cryst hoold hym of this consayl wol weel apayed 1512
 And trewely it is an hygh corage
 Of ony man that schapyn is in age
 To takyn a ȝong wyf by myn fader ken
 ȝoure herte hangith on a Ioly pyn 1516
 Doth now in this matyr ryȝt as ȝow lyst
 ffor finally I holde it for the best
 ¶ Iustinus þat ay styлле sat & herde Iustinus
 Ryȝt in this wyse / to placebo answerde 1520
 Now brothir myn be pacient I preye
 Syn ȝe han seyde & herkenyth what I seye
 Senek a-mong hise othere wordis wyse Seneca
 Syn that a man hym ouȝte rygh weel taviſe 1524

To whom he ȝeuyth his lond or his catel
 And syn I ouȝte a-vise me ryȝt wel
 To whom I ȝeue myn good a-wey fro me
 Weel more I ouȝte avisede be 1528
 To whom I ȝeue myn body for alwey
 I warne ȝow weel it is no childys pley
 To take a wif with-oute a-vysement [leaf 264, back]
 Meen muste enquiryre this is myn assent 1532
 Wher sche be wys & sobere or dronkelewe
 Or proud or othere weyis a schrewe
 A chidystere or wastouur of thyn good
 Or ryche or pore or ellis mannyssch wood 1536
 Al be it so that no man fyndyn schal
 Noon in this world that trottyth hool in al
 Ne man ne beste whiche as men coude deuyse
 But nathe-lees it oghte I-nough suffice 1540
 With ony wyf ȝif so were that sche hadde
 Moo thewys goode / than / vicis badde
 And al this askyth leyser for tenqueere
 ffor god it wot I haue wepte manye a tere 1544
 fful priuily syn that I hadde a wyf
 Preyso ho so wole a weddede manys lyf
 Certeyn I fynde it but cost & care
 And obseruancis of alle blyssis bare 1548
 And ȝit god wot myne neighe-bouris a-boute
 And namely of women manye a route
 Seyn that I haue the moste stedefast wyf
 And ek the mekeste on that beryth lyf 1552
 But I wot best where wryngeth me myn scho
 Ye mowe for ryght as ȝow leste do
 A-viseth ȝow ȝe been a man of age
 How that ȝe enteryn / in-to a maryage 1556
 And namely with a ȝyng wif. & a fayr
 By hym that maade watyr erthe & ayr
 The ȝyngeste man that is in al this route
 Is bisy I-nogh to bryngyn it a-boute 1560

To han his wif a-lone trostyth me
 3e schul not plese hire fully 3erys thre
 This is to seyne to don hire ful plesaunce
 A wyf axeth ful manye an obseruaunce 1564
 I preye 3ow that 3e ben nat euele a-payd
 ¶ Weel quod this Ianuarye hast þou sayd
 Straw for thyne senek & for thyn prouerbis
 I counte not a paner ful of erbyes 1568
 Of scole termys wisere men than thow [leaf 266;
 As thow hast herd assentedyn right now
 To myn purpos Placebo what sey 3e
 I seye it is a cursede man quod he 1572
 That lettyth matrimonye sekerly
 And with that word they rysyn sodeynly¹ [¹ *deynly corrected:*
 sodeynll in margin]
 And been assentid fully that he schulde
 Been wedded whan hym leste & where he wolde 1576
 ¶ His fantasye / & curyous besynesse
 ffrom day to day / gan in the soule enpresse
 ffor Ianuarye a-boute his maryage
 Manye fayr schap & manye fayr visage 1580
 There passede thorw his herte nygh^t be nyght
 As who so take a myrour pulschede bryght
 And sette it in a comoun market place
 Thanne schulde he seen manye a figeur pace² [² *first face*]
 By his myrour & in the same wyse
 Gan Ianuarie in with his thought a-vyse
 Of maydenys which that dwellyn hym by syde
 He wiste nat where that he myghte a-byde 1588
 ffor 3if that on haue beute in his face
 A nothir stant so in the puplis grace
 ffor hire sadnesse & hire benyngnetee
 Tha^t of the peple gretteste voys hadde sche 1592
 And some were ryche & haddyn badde name
 But natheles by-twixe earnest & game
 He at the laste apoyntyd hym on on
 And leet alle opere from his herte goon 1596

And chese hire of his owene autoritee
 ffor loue is blynd alday & may not see
 And whan that he was in his bedde brought
 He portreyede in his herte & in his thought 1600
 Hire frossche beute & hyre age tendere
 Hire myddyl smal & hire armys longe & sklendere
 Hire wise gouernaunce / hire gentillesse
 Hire womanly berynge & hire sadnesse 1604
 And whan that he on hire was condessendit
 Hym thouȝte his choys myȝte not been a-mendit
 ffor whan that he hym selue concludede hadde [leaf 285, back]
 Hym thouȝte eche othere manys wit so badde 1608
 That impossible it were to replye
 A-geyn his choys that was his fantassie
 Hise frendis sente he th^o1 at his instaunce [1 to altered to the]
 And preyede hem to do hym that plesaunce 1612
 That hastely they wolde don hym come
 He wolde abrege hire lordschepe alle en some
 Nedyth namore for hym to goon ne ryde
 He² was a-poyntid there he wolde a-bide [2 e corrected] 1616
 Placobo cam & ek hise frendis soone
 And aldyrferst he had hem alle a boone
 That noone of hem / noone argumentis make
 Ageyn the purpos which that he hath take 1620
 Which purpos was plesaunt to god seyde he
 And verray ground of his prosperitee
 He seyde there was a maydyn in the toun
 Which that of beute hadde greet renoun 1624
 Al weere it so sche weere of smal degre
 Suffiseth hym hire ȝouthes & hire beutee
 Whiche mayde he seyde he wolde han to his wyf
 To leede in ese & holynesse his lyf 1628
 And thanked god that he myȝte han hire al
 That no wyȝt of his blysse partyn schal
 And preyede hem to laboure in this nede
 And schapen that he fayle nat to speede 1632

for thanne he seyde his spiryght was at ese
 Thanne is quod he no thyng may me displese
 Saue on thyng prikyth in myn concience
 The whiche I wele reherce in 3oure presence 1636
 ¶ I haue he seyde herd seyð / ful 3ore ago
 There may no man haue parfit blyssis two
 This is to seyne in erthe & ek in heuene
 for thow he kepe hym from the synnys seuene 1640
 And ek from euery braunce of tylke tree
 3it is there so parfit felicite
 And so greet ese & lust in maryage
 That euere I am a-gast / now in myn age 1644
 That I schal leede now so merie a lyf [leaf 206]
 So delicat with-oute woo & stryf
 That I schal han myn heuene in erthe here
 for sythe that veray heuene is bouzt so dere 1648
 With tribulacyounys & greet penaunce
 How schulde I thanne lyue in swich plesaunce
 As alle weddede men doon with here wyuys
 Come to the blis there Crist eterne on liue is 1652
 This is myn drede & 3e myne brethere tweye
 Assoylyth me this questioun I preye
 ¶ Iustinus whiche that hatith his folye
 Answerde a-noon ryzt in his Iaperye 1656
 And for he wolde his longe tale abregge
 He wolde non autorite a-legge
 But seyde sere so there be noon obstakele
 Othir than this god of his heye mirakele 1660
 And of his mercy may so for 3ow werche
 That er 3e han 3oure ryzt of holy cherche
 3e may repente of weddede manys lyf
 In whiche 3e se ther is no woo ne stryf 1664
 And ellis god for-beede but he sente
 A weddede man hym grace to repente
 Wel ofte rather than a sengle man
 And therefore syre the beste reed þat I can 1668

Dispeyre 3ow not but hauyth in memorye
 Perauntir sche may been 3oure purgatorye
 Sche may been goddis meene & goddys whippe
 Thanne schal 3oure soule vp to heuene skyppe 1672
 Swiftere than an arwe out of a bowe
 I hope to god here aftyr 3e schul knowe
 That ther is non so greet felycite
 In maryage ne neuere mor schal be 1676
 That 3ow schal lette of 3oure saluacioun
 So that 3e vse as skil is & resoun
 The lustis of 3oure wyf attemprely
 And that 3e plese hire nat to amourosly 1680
 And that 3e kepe 3ow ek from othere synne
 Myn tale is doon for myn wit is thenne
 Byth not a-gast heere-of myn brothir dere [leaf 266, back]
 But let vs wadyn 1out of this mateere [1 o corrected] 1684
 The wyf of bathe 3if 3e han vndyrstonde
 Of maryage which 3e han on honde
 Declarid hath ful wel in lytyl space
 ffaryth now weel god haue 3ow in his grace 1688
 And with that word this Iustyne & his brothir
 They take here leue & eche of hem of othir
 ffor whan they sagh that it muste needis be
 They wroughte so sly & wys trettee 1692
 That sche this mayde which 3at Mayus hyghte
 As hastyly as euere sche myghte
 Schal weddede been on to this Ianuarye
 I trowe it weere to longe now to tarye 1696
 3if I 3ow tolde of euery scrit & bond
 By which that sche was feffyd in his 2lond [2 o corrected]
 Or for to herkene of hire ryche aray
 But fynally is comyn the day 1700
 That to the cherche bothe be they went
 ffor to resceyue the holy sacrement
 fforth comyth the prest with stole a-bout his nekke
 And bad hire be lyk sarra & rebekke 1704

In wisdom & in trouthe of maryage
 And seyde his orysounys as is vsage
 And crouchith hem & bit god schulde hem blysse
 And made al sikyr I-nough with holynesse 1708
 Thus been they weddit with solempnetee
 And at the laste sittyth he & sche
 With othere worthi folk vp on the deys
 Al ful of Ioye & blisse is the paleys 1712
 And ful of instrumentis & of vitayle
 The moste deyntuous of al Itaylle
 By-for hem stood swich instrument of soun
 That Orpheus nor¹ Thebes Amphioua [*r corrected*] 1716
 Ne made neuere swich a melodye
 At every cours þan cam loud menstralsye
 That neuere trumped Ieob for to heere
 Ne Theodomas ȝit half so cleere 1720
 At Thebes whan the Citee was in doute [*leaf 287*]
 Bacus the wyn hem shynketh alle a-boute
 And venus laugheth vp-on euery wyght
 ffor Ianuarye bycomyn was hire knyght 1724
 And wolde bothe asaye hise corage
 In liberte & ek in maryage
 And with hire fyr brond in hire han^d a-boute
 Daunceth by-fore the bryde & al the route 1728
 And certeynly I dare ryȝt wel sey this
 Ymeneus / that god of weddyng is
 Saw neuere his lyf / so merye a weddede man
 Hold thow thyn pees / thow poete Marcian 1732
 That wrytist vs that ilke weddyng murye
 Of hire Philologie / & hym mercurie
 And of the song that the Musys sunge
 To smal is bothe thi penne & ek thyn tunge 1736
 ffor to discryue of thyn maryage
 Whan tender ȝouthe haue weddit stoupynge age
 There is swych myrthe It may not been I-wretyn
 Assayeth it ȝoure self thanne may ȝe wetyn 1740

3if that I lye or noon / in this matyre
 Mayus that sit with / so benynge a cheere
 Hire to byholde it semede fayrye
 Queen Ester lokede neuere with swich an eye 1744
 On Assure / so meke a lok hath sche
 I may 3ow nat deuyse al hure beutee
 But thus meche of hire beute telle I may
 That sche was lyk the bryzte morwe of may 1748
 fful fyld of alle beute & of plesaunce
 This Ianewarye is rauyst in a traunce
 At euery tyme he lokede on hire face
 But in his herte he gan hire manace 1752
 That he that nyght in armys wolde hire streyne
 Hardere than euere parys dede Eleyne
 But natheles 3it hadde he greet pitee
 That ilke nyzt offendyn hire muste hee 1756
 And thouzte allas o tendere creature
 Now wolde god 3e myzte wel endure
 Al myn corage it is so scharp & keene [leaf 267, back]
 I am a-gast 3e schul it not susteene 1760
 But god for-beede þat I dede al myn myzt
 Now wolde god¹ that it were waxe nyght [¹ first good]
 And that the nyzt / wolde lastyn euere mo
 I wolde that al this peple were a-go 1764
 And fynally he doth al his labour
 As he best myghte / sauynge his honour
 To haste hem from the meete in subtyl wyse
 The tyme cam that resoun was to ryse 1768
 And after that men daunce / & drynkyn faste
 And spicis al aboute the hous they caste
 And ful of ioye & blysse is euery man
 Alle but a squier hyte Damyan 1772
 The whiche carf by-fore þ^e knyght manye a day
 He was rauysschd on his lady May
 That for the verray peyne he was nygh wood
 Almost he schulde a swounnede as he stod 1776

So soore hath venus hurt him with hire brond
 As that sche bar daunsynge in hire hand¹ [¹ a *partly altered* in o]
 And to here bed they wentyn hastily
 Na moore at this tyme speke I 1780
 But theere I leete hym weepe I-nogh & pleyne
 Tyl frosche may wele rewyn on his peyne
 O perylous fyr pat in the bed straw bredyth Auctor
 O famulier fo that his seruise beedith 1784
 O seruaunt traitour false homeli hewe
 Lyk to the neddere in bosum sly ontrewē
 God schilde vs alle from 3oure aqueyntaunce
 O Ianuarie dronkyn in plesaunce 1788
 In mariage se how thyn damyan
 Thyn owene squyer & thyn bore man
 Entendyth for do the velanye
 God graunte the thyn homely fo tespye 1792
 ffor in this world is wersse pestelence
 Than homely foo alwey in thyn presence
 ¶ Parformede hath the sunne his ark dyurne
 No lengere may the body of hym soiurne 1796
 On thorisonte / as in that latitude [leaf 208]
 Nigh with his mental that is derk & rude
 Gan ouersprede Themysperie a-boute
 ffor which departid is this blisful route 1800
 ffrom Ianuarie with stant on euery syde
 Hoom tyl here housis hastily they ryde
 Where as they don here thyngis as hem leste
 And whan they saw here tyme goon to reste 1804
 Soone after that this lusty Ianuarye
 Wol go to bedde he wil no lengere tarye
 He drynkith Ipocras clarre² & vernage [² ? *first clerce*]
 Of spicis hooite tencresyn his corage 1808
 And manye a letuarie hadde he ful fyn
 Swych as the cursede Monk daun Constantyn
 Hath wretyn in his cursede bok de Coitu
 To ete hem alle he was no thyng eschu 1812

And to hise priue frendis thus seyde he
 ffor godis loue as soone as it may bee
 Let voydyn al this hous in curteys wyse
 And they han doon ryzt as they wole deuyse 1816
 Men drynkyn & the trauns drawe a-non
 The bryde was brough a bedde as styлле as ston
 And whan the bed was was with the prest I-blyssid
 Out of the chambere hath euery wygh hym dressid 1820
 And Ianuarye hath faste in armys take
 His frosche May his paradys his make
 He lullyth hire he kissith hire ful ofte
 With thilke Brustelis of his berd on-softe 1824
 Lyk to the skyn of houndfysch scharp as brere
 ffor he was schaue al newe in his manere
 He rubbith hire a-boute hire tendere face
 And seide thus allas I mote trespace 1828
 To ȝow myn spouse & ȝow gretly offende
 Er tyme come that I schal doun dessende
 But nathe-les consideryth this *quod* he
 There wot no werkeman what so euere he be 1832
 That may bothe werke weel & hastely
 This wil been don at leyser parfitly
 It is no fors how longe that we pleye [leaf 268, back]
 In trewe wedlok couplit been we tweye 1836
 And blyssede be the ȝok that we been inne
 ffor in [oure] actis we mowe don no synne
 A man may doon no synne with his wif
 Ne hurte hym selue with his owene knyf 1840
 ffor we han leue to pleye vs bi the lawe
 Thus labourith he tyl the day gan dawe
 And thanne he takyth a soppe in fyn clarree
 And vp ryzt in his bed thanne sittyth hee 1844
 And aftyr that he song ful loude & clere
 And kyste his wif & made wantoun cheere
 He was al coltissch / ful of ragerye
 And ful of Iargoun / as a flekkede pye 1848

The slakke skyn a-boute his nekke shakyth
 Whil that he song so chuntyth he & crakyth
 But god wot wat that May thouzte in hire herte
 Whan sche hym say vp syttyn in his scherte 1852
 In his nyght cappe & in his nekke lene
 Sche preyseth nat his pleying worth a beene
 Thanne seyde he thus myn reste wele I take
 Now day is come I may no lengere waake 1856
 And down he leyde his heed & slep tyl pryme
 And aftyrward whan that he saugh his tyme
 Vp ryseth Ianuarie but frosche may
 Held¹ hire chaumbere tyl the fourte day [¹ id corrected] 1860
 As vsage is of wyuys for the beste
 ffor euery labour sumtyme mote han reste
 Or ellis longe may he not endure
 This is to seyne no lyuys creature 1864
 Be it of fysch or bryd or beste or man
 ¶ Now wele I speke of woful Damian
 That languyssep for loue as 3e schal heere
 Therefore I speke to hym in this maneere 1868
 I seye O sely Damyan / allas
 Answer to myn demaunde as in this cas
 How schalt thow to thyn lady frosche May
 Telle thyn wo / sche wele alwey seye nay 1872
 Ek 3if thu speke sche wele thyn wo bi-wreye² [^{leaf 200}]
 God be thyn helpe I can no betere seye [^{2 y corrected}]
 This syke Damyan in Venus fyr
 So brennyth that he deyeth for desyr 1873
 ffor which he put his lyf in auenture
 No lengere myghte he in this lyf endure
 But pruyly a pennere gan he borwe
 And in a lettere wrot he al his sorwe 1880
 In maner of a compleynt or a lay
 Vn-to his fayre frosche lady May
 And in a purs of silk he hyng on his scherte
 He hath it put & leyd it at his herte 1884

The mone that at noon was thilke day
 That Ianuarie hath weddyd frosche May
 In two of Taur was in-to Cancre glydyn
 So longe hath Mayus in hire chaumbre a-bedyn 1888
 As custome is vn-to these nobles alle
 A bryde schal nat etyn in the halle
 Til foure or thre dayis at the leste
 I-passede been thanne lat hire goon to feste 1892
 The fourte day compleet from noon to noon
 Wha¹ that the hie masse was I-doon [first What]
 In halle sit this Ianuarye & May
 As frosche as is the bryghte somerys day 1896
 And so bi-fel how that this goode man
 Remembrede hym vp-on Damyan
 And seyde seyntemarye how may this be
 That damyan entendith nat to me 1900
 Is he ay sik or how may it be-tyde
 Hise squyeris that stodyn there by syde
 Excusede hym by cause of his siknesse
 Whiche lettede hyn to don his busynesse 1904
 Noon othir cause myȝt make hym to tarye
 That me forthynkyth quod this Ianuarye
 He is a gentil squyer by myn treuthe
 ȝif that he deye it were harm & reuthe 1908
 He is as wys descreeet & as secre
 As ony man I wot of hys degre
 And therto manly & ek seruysable [leaf 299, back]
 And for to been a thrifty man ryȝt able 1912
 But aftyr mete as sone as euere I may
 I wele myn self visite hym & eek May
 To don hym al the confort þat I kan
 And for that ilke word hym blyssede enery man 1916
 That of his bounte & his gentillesse
 he wolde so confortyn in seknesse
 his squyer for it was a gentyl dede
 Dame quod this Ianuarye tak good heede 1920

At aftyr mete 3e with 3ore women alle
 Whan 3e han been in chaumbere out of this halle
 That alle 3e go to se this damyan
 Doth hym disport he is a gentil man 1924
 And tellyth hym that I wele hym visite
 Hauē I no thyng but restede me a lyte
 And speede 3ow faste for I wele a-byde
 Til that 3e slepe faste by myn syde 1928
 And with that word he gan to hym to calle
 A squyer that was marchale of his halle
 And told hym serteyn wordis that he wolde
 This frosche May hath streyt hire woye I-holde 1932
 With alle hire wemen on to Damyan
 Doun by his beddis syde sit sche than
 Confortyng hym as goodly as sche may
 This-damyan whan that his tyme he say 1936
 In secre wyse his purs & ek his bille
 In which that he I-wrytyn hadde¹ his wille [¹ he erased]
 Hath put In-to hire hand *with-outyn* moore
 Saue þat he sikyth wondyr deepe & soore 1940
 And softely to hire thus seyde he
 Mercy & that 3e nat discouere me
 ffor I am deed 3if that this thyng be kyd
 This purs hat^a sche / in *with* hire bosum hid 1944
 And wente hyre woy 3e gete no more of me
 But vn-to Ianuarye I-comyn is. sche
 That on his. beddis. syde sat ful softe
 And t^akyth hire & kysseth hire ful ofte 1948
 And leyde hym doun to slepe & that a-non [^{leaf 270}]
 Sche feynede hire as that sche muste goon
 There as 3e wot that euery man mot neede
 And whan sche of that bille hath takyn heede 1952
 Sche rente it al to cloutis at the laste
 And in the pryue softely it caste
 ¶ Who stodyeth now but fayre frosche May
 A-doun by olde Ianuarye sche lay 1956

That slepte tyl that the co^rhe¹ hath hym a-wakyd
 A-non he preyede hire to stryppen hire al nakyd [¹ *Arat coghe*]
 He wolde of hire he seyde han sum plesauunce
 And seyde hire clothis dide hym encumbrance 1960
 And sche obeyeth be hire lef or loth
 But lest the precious folk be with me wroth
 How that he wrouȝte I dar not to ȝow telle
 Or whethir hire thoughte it *Paradys* or helle 1964
 But heere I lete hem werke in hire wyse
 Til euynsong rong & thazne they muste ryse
 Were it by desteny or by auenture
 Were it by influence or by nature 1968
 Or constellacioun / that in swich estat
 The heuene stood / that tyme fortunat
 ffor to putte a bille / forth of venus werkis
 ffor alle thynges hath tyme / as sey these clerkys 1972
 To ony woman for to geete hire loue
 I can not seye but greete god a-boue
 That knowith that noon act is causeles
 He deeme of alle / for I wil holde myn pees 1976
 But soth is this how that this frossche May
 Hath take swich emprescioun that day
 Of pite of this ilke damyan
 That from hire herte sche ne dryue can 1980
 This ²remembraunce for to doon hym ese [² *rme altered*]
 Sertayn thouȝte sche / whom that this thyng displese
 I rekke not / for here I hym assure
 To loue hym best / of ony criature 1984
 Thow he namore / hadde than his scherte
 Lo pete rennyth sone / in gentyl herte
 Heere may ȝe se how excellent fraunchise [*leaf 270, back*]
 In wemen is whan they hem weel a-vise 1988
 Sum tyraunt is as theree been manyon
 That hath³ an herte as hard as is a ston [³ *h inserted*]
 Which wolde a lat hym steruyn in the place
 Wel rather than grauntyn hym hire grace 1992

And hem reioysyn in hire crewel pryde	
And rekkyn nat to been An homytyde	
This gentil May fulfyld of pitee	
Ryzt of hire owene hand makede sche	1996
In which sche grauntyth hym hire werra' grace	
There lakkyth not but only day & space	
Where that sche myzte vn-to his lust suffyse	
ffor it schal been ryzt as 3e wele deuyse	2000
And whan sche saugh hire tyme vp-on a day	
To visite þis Damyan/ goth May	
And subtyly this lettere doun sche threste	
Vndyr his pilwe rede it 3if him leste	2004
Sche takyth hym by the hand & harde ¹ hym twyste	
So secrely that no man of it wyste	[¹ rde corrected]
And bad hym been al hol / & forth sche wente	
To Ianuarye whan that he for hire sente	2008
¶ Vp ryseth Damyan ² the nexte morwe	[² a corrected]
Al passede was his siknease & his sorwe	
And kymbith hym & proynyth ³ hym & pikyth	[³ a partly altered to o]
He dooth al th ⁴ hym luste & lykyth	2012
And ek to Ianuarye he goth as lowe	
As euere dede a dogge for the bowe	
He is so plesaunt on to euery man	
ffor craft is al / ho so do it can	2016
That euery wyzt is fayn to don hym good	
And fully in his ladyis grace he stood	
Thus leete I Damyan a-boute his neede	
And in myn tale forth I wele procede	2020
¶ Some clerkis seyn that felicittee	
Stant in delyt / & therfore serteyn he	
This noble Ianuarie with al his myzt	
In honeste wys as longith to a knyzt	2024
Schop hym to lyue ful deliciously	[leaf 271]
His housynge his a-ray as honestely	
To his degre was makyd as a kyng is	
A-mongis his othere honeste thyngis	2028

He made a gardyn wallede al wyth stoon	
So fayr a gardyn woot I nowher noon	
ffor out of doute I verrayly suppose	
That he that wrot the romauns of the rose	2032
Ne coude of it the beute weel deuyse	
Ne priapus ne myzte nat suffyse	
Thow he be god of gardynys for to telle	
The beaute of the gardyn & the welle	2036
That stood vndyr a laurer al wey grene	
fful ofte tyme he pluto & his queene	
Proserpen & al hire fayrye	
Disportyn hem & makyn melodye	2040
A-boute that welle & dauncedyn as men tolde	
This noble knyght this Ianuarye the olde	
Swich deynte hath ¹ // in it to walke & pleye	[¹ h inserted: i altered]
That he wele no wyzt suffere to bere þ ^e keye	2044
But he hym self / for of the smale wiket	
He bar alwey of syluyr a Clyket	
Of which whan that hym lykith he it on-schette	
And whan he wolde paye his wyf hire dette	2048
In somyr sesoun thidyr wolde he go	
And May his wyf & no wyzt but they two	
And thyng that were nat doon a bedde	
He in the gardyn parfornede hem & spedde	2052
And in this wyse manye a merye day	
Lyuede this Ianuarye & frossche May	
But wordely ioye may non alwey dure	
To Ianuarie ne to non creature	2056
¶ O sodeyn hap o fortune onstable	
Lyk to the scorpioun so deceyuable	
That flateris wythyn hed whan þou wolt styngre	
Thyn tayl is deeth thourgh thyn enuenymynge	2060
O bretil Ioye o sweete venym queynte	
O Monstre that so subtyly canst peynte	
Tynne ȝiftys vndyr colour of stedefastnesse	[leaf 271, back]
That thow disseuyst bothe moore & lesse	2064

Whhy hast thou Ianuaris thus disseuyd
 That haddyst hym for thyn fulle frend resceyuyd
 And now thou hast by-raft hym bothe his Iyen
 for sorwe of which desyryth he to deyen 2068
 Allas this noble Ianuarye free
 A-mydde his lust & his prosperitee
 Is waxen blynd / & that al sodeynly
 He wepith & he waylyth pitously¹ [pitously corrected] 2072
 And therewithal the fyr of Ielusye
 Lest that his wif schulde falle in sum folye
 So brente his herte that he wolde fayn
 That sum man bothe hym & hire hadde slayn 2076
 for neythir after his deth ne his lyf
 Ne wolde he that sche weere loue ne wyf
 But euere lyue as widewe in clothis blake
 Soul as the turtle that hat lost hire make 2080
 But at the laste after a monyth or tweye
 His sorwe gan a-swage soth to seye
 for whan he wiste / he may noon oper bee
 He paciently takyth his aduersite 2084
 Saue out of doute he may not for-goon
 That he was Ielous eueremor in oon
 Whiche Ielusye it was so outrageous
 That neythir in halle ne in noon othir hous 2088
 Ne in non othir place neuere the mo
 He nolde suffere hire neythir to ryde or go
 But ȝif tha he hadde hand on hire alwey
 for which ful ofte wepith fresche May 2092
 That louth Damyan so benygne
 That sche mot othir deye sodeynly
 Or allys sche mote han hym as hire leste
 Sche wayth whan hire herte wolde breste 2096
 ¶ Vp-on that othir syde ek damyan
 By-comyn is the sorwefuleste man
 That euere was for neythir nyȝt ne day
 Ne myȝte he speke a worde with frosche May 2100

As to his purpos of no swich mateere [leaf 279]
 But If that Ianuarie muste it heere
 That hadde an hand vp-on hire euere mo
 But natheles by wrytyng too & froo 2104
 And priue sygnys wiste he what sche mente
 And sche knew ek the fyn of his entente
 O Iannarye what myzte it the a-vayle Auctor//
 Thow myztist se as fer as schepis sayle 2108
 ffor also good is blynd disseyuyd bee
 As to be disseyuyd whan a man may see
 Lo Argus which that hadde an hunderede eyen
 ffor al that he coude poure or pryen 2112
 3it was he blynd as god wot so been mo
 That wenyn wisely that it be nat so
 Passe ouyr is an ese I seye namoore
 This frosche May that I spak of so 3ore 2116
 In warm wex hath enpryntit the klyket
 That Ianuarye¹ bar of that smale wiket [1st Ianuarye]
 By which in to his gardyn ofte he wente
 And Damyan that knew al his entente 2120
 The klyket countirfetid priuily
 There nys no more to seye but hastily
 Sum wondyr bi this cliket schal by-tyde
 Which 3e schul here 3if 3e wele on byde 2124
 O noble ouyde ful soth is seyde god wot Auctor
 What sleyste is it thow it be longe & hoot
 That he nyle it fynde out in sum manere
 By Piramus & Tisbee / may men leere 2128
 Thow they were kept ful longe streyt ouyral
 They been a-cordit rounynge thorw a wal
 Ther' no with koude a founde swich a slyght
 But now to purpos er than dayis eyghte 2132
 Were passed er the monyth of Iuil² be-fel [2 all corrected]
 That Ianuarie hath cau3t so greet a wyl
 Thour eggyng of his wif hym for to pleye³ [3 ye corrected]
 In his gardyn & no wight but thy tweye 2136

That in a morwe vn-to this May sente hee
 Rys vp myn wyf myn loue myn lady free
 The turtell voys is herd myn douwe sweete [leaf 272, back]
 The wyntir is goon with hise reynys weete¹ [1. first sweete]
 Come forth with thyne eyne columbyn 2141
 Hou fayrere been thyne brestis than is wyn
 The gardyn is enclosede al a-boute
 Come forth myn leue spouse out of doute 2144
 Thow hast me wounded in myn herte o wyf
 No spot of the ne knowe I al myn lyf
 Come forth & lat vs takyn oure disport
 I cheese the for Myn wif & myn confort 2148
 Sweche olde lowede wordys vsede he
 On Damyan a signe made sche
 That he schulde go bi-forn with his Cliket
 Damyan hath thanne openid the weket 2152
 And in he sterte & that in swich manere
 That no wyght myghte it wetyn nothir I-here
 And styлле he sit vndyr a busch a-noon
 This Ianuarie as blynd as is a ston 2156
 With Mayus in his hand no wyzt mo
 In to his frosche gardyn is go
 And clapte to the weket sodeynly
 Now wyf he seyde heere nys but thow & .I. 2160
 That art the creatour that I best loue
 ffor by that lord that sit in heuene a-boue
 Leuere I hadde to deyin on a knyf
 Than 3ow offendyn trewe deere wyf 2164
 ffor godys sake thynk how I the chees
 Nought for no coueytise douteles
 But only for the loue I hadde to the
 And thow that I be old & may not se 2168
 Beth to me trewe & I telle 3ow whi
 Thre thyngis certis schul 3e wyzne þer-by
 ffyrst loue of crist & to 3oure self honour
 And al myn eritage toun & tour 2172

I ȝeue it ȝow makyth charteris as ȝow leste	
This schal been don to morwe er sunne reste	
So wysely myn soule good brynge to blysse	
I prey ȝow fyrst in couenau[n]t ȝe me kysse	2176
And thow that I be Ialous wite me noght	[leaf 273]
ȝe been so deepe enpryntid in myn thought	
That whan that I considere ȝoure beute	
And therwithal the onlikely elde of me	2180
I may not certis thow I schulde deye	
fforbeere to been out of ȝoure campaynye	
ffor verray loue this is with-outyn doute	
Now kys me wif & lat vs rome a-boute	2184
This frosche may whan sche these wordys herde	
Benyngnely to Ianuarye answerde	
But fyrst & forward sche be-gan to wepe	
I haue quod sche a soule for to kepe	2188
As wel as ȝe & also my honour	
And of myn wyfhod ¹ theilke tendir flour	[¹ h altered]
Whiche that I haue assurede in ȝoure hond	
Whan that the prest to ȝow the body bond	2192
Wherfore I wele answerde in this manere	
By the leue of ȝow myn lord so deere	
I preye to god that neuere dauwe þ ^e day	
That I ne sterve as foule as woman may	2196
ȝif euere I do on to myn kyn that schame	
Oþer ellys I enpeyre so myn name	
That I be fals / & if I do that lak	
Do strepe me & putte me in a sak	2200
And in the nexte ryuer do me drenche	
I am a gentil woman & no wenche	
Whi speke ȝe thus but men been euere vntrowe	
And women haue repref of ȝow ay newe	2204
ȝe can noon othir cuntenauns I leue	
But speke to vs of onthrift & repreue	
And with that word sche saw where Damyan	
Sat in the busch & coghe sche be-gan	2208

And with hire fyngir signis made sche
 That Damyan schulde clymbe vp on a tre
 That chargede was with freut & vp he wente
 ffor verrayly he knew al hire entente 2212
 And euery signe that sche coude make
 Wel bet than Ianuarye hire owene make
 ffor in a lettere sche hadde tolde hym al [leaf 273, back]
 Of this matire how he werchin schal 2216
 And thus I leete hym sitte vp on the pyrye
 And Ianuarye & May romynge merie
 ¶ Bryzt was the day & blev the fyrmament
 Phebus hath of gold hise stremys doun sent 2220
 To gladyn euery flour with his gladnesse
 He was that tyme in gemynys as I gesse
 But lytyl from his declinacioun /
 Of Cancer Iouis exaltacioun 2224
 And so byfel that bryzte morwe tyde
 That in that gardyn in the ferthere syde
 Pluto that is kyng of fayrre
 And manye a lady in his cumpainygnye¹ [1 nys corrected]
 ffolwyng his wyf the queen Proserpyne
 Eche aftyr othir right as ony lyne
 Whil that sche gaderede flourys in the mede
 In Claudian 3e may the storijs rede 2232
 How in his gr'sely carte he hire sette
 This kyng of fayrre thanne a-doun hym sette
 Vp-on a benche of turuys frosche & greene
 And ryght a-non thus seyde he to his queene 2236
 ¶ Myn wyf quod he there may no man sey nay
 Thexperience so preuyth euery day
 The tresoun / which that women doon to man
 Ten hunderede thousent tellyn I can 2240
 Notable of 3oure ontrouthe & brotilnesse
 O salamon² wys & rycheste of rychesse [2 ? salomon]
 ful fyld of sapience & of wordely glorie
 ful worthi been thyne wordis to memorie 2244

To euery witth that wit & resoun can
 Thus preysep he ȝit the bounte of man
 A-mongis a thousent men ȝit fond I oon
 But of wemen alle fond I noon 2248
 Thus seyde þ^e kyng þat knowith ȝoure wikkedenesse
 And Ihesus¹ filyus Syrac as I gesse [1 MS Ihc]
 Ne spekyth of ȝou but sêlde reuerence
 A .wylde fyr & corrupt pestylence 2252
 So falle vp-on ȝoure bodyis ȝit tonyght [leaf 274]
 Ne se ȝe nat this honorable knyght
 By cause allas that he is blynd & old
 His owene man schal make him Cokewold 2256
 Lo heere he sit the lecchour in the tree
 Now wele I grauntyn of myn mageste
 On-to this olde blynde worthi knyght
 That he schal han a-ȝyn hie eyen sight 2260
 Whan that his wyf wolde don hym vilenye
 Thanne schal he knowe al hire harloterye
 Bothe in reprof of hire & of othere mo
 ȝe shal / quod Proserpyne wol ȝe so 2264
 Now by myn moderys syris soule I swere
 That I schal ȝeue hire sufficioun[t] answer
 And alle women aftyr for hire sake
 That thow they ben in ony gilt I-take 2268
 With face bold they schuln hem self excuse
 And bere hem doun that wolde hem accuse
 ffor lak of answer non of hem schal deye
 Al hadde men seyn a thyng with bothe hise eyen 2272
 ȝit schul we wemen visage it hardely
 And weepe & swere & chyde subtyly
 So þat ȝe men schul been as lewede as gees
 What rekkith me of ȝoure autoriteis 2276
 I wot wel that this Iew this Salamon² [2 altered to Salomon]
 ffond of vs wemen folis many on
 But thow he ne fond no good woman
 ȝit hath there foundyn manye a nothir man 2280

wemen ful trewe ful goode & vertenous
 witnesse that dwelle in crystis hous
 with martyrdom thy preuyn here constau[n]ce
 The romayn geestis ek makyn remembraunce 2284
 Of manye a verray trewe wyf also
 But sire be nat wroth / al be it so
 Thow that he seye he fond no good woman
 I prey 3ow takyth the sentense of the man 2288
 He mente thus that in souereyn bountee
 Nis noon but god that sit in trynitee
 ¶ Ey for verray god that is but on [leaf 274, back]
 What make 3e so meche of salamon 2292
 What thow he made a temple godys hous
 What thow he weere ryche & glorious
 So maade he ek a temple of false goddis
 How myzte he don a thyng that moore forbodyn is 2296
 Parde as fayre as 3e his name enplaystre
 He was a lechour & an ydolastere
 And in his elde he verray god for-sok
 And 3if god ne hadde as seyth the bood 2300
 I-sparede for his faderis sake he schulde
 Hauē lost his regne rather than he wolde
 I sette ryght noght at¹ al the vilanye [? for at]
 That 3e of wemen wryte a Botyrflye 2304
 I am a woman nedis muste I speke
 Or ellis swelle tyl myn herte breke
 ffor sithyn he seyde we been Iangleressis
 As euerre mote I brouke mynne tressis 2308
 I schal nat spare for non curteysye
 To speke hym harm that wolde hym vilanye
 Dame quod this pluto be no lengere wroth
 I 3eue it vp but sithe I swor myn oth 2312
 That I wolde graunte hym his syghte ageyn
 Myn word schal stonde I werne 3ow certeyn
 I am a kyng it sit me not to lye
 And I quod sche a quen of fayrye 2316

Hire answer schal sche han I vndyr-take
 Lat vs no moore wordis hereof make
 ffor sothe I wele no lengere 3ow contrarye
 ¶ Now lat vs turne a-geyn to Ianuarye 2320
 That in the gardyn with his fayre May
 Syngith ful muriere than the popynia
 3ow loue I best & schal & othir noon
 So longe a-boute the aleyis is he goon 2324
 Til he was comyn a-geyn thilke pirie
 Where as this Damyan sittyth ful merye
 And hye a-mong the frossche leuys grene
 This frosche may that is so bryzt & schene 2328
 Gan for to sike & seyde allas myn syde [leaf 275]
 Now sire quod sche for ough that may be-tyde
 I muste han of the perys that I se
 Or I mot deye so sore longith me 2332
 To etyn of the smale perys grene
 Help for hire loue that is / of heuene queene
 I telle 3ow weel a woman In myn plyt
 May han to freut so greet an apetyt 2336
 That sche may deyen but sche of it haue
 Allas quod he that I ne hadde here a knaue
 That coude clymbe allas allas quod he
 That I am blynd 3a sere no fors quod sche 2340
 But wolde 3e vouche saf for godis sake
 The pirie inwith 3oure armys for to take
 ffor weel I wot that 3e mystroste me
 Thanne schulde I klymbe wel I-nough quod sche 2344
 So I myn foot myzte sette vp-on 3oure bak
 Certys quod he ther-on schal been no lak
 Myghte I 3ow helpyn with myn herte blod
 He stoupede doun & on his bak sche stod 2348
 And caughte hire by a twyste & vp sche goth
 Ladyis I preye 3ow þat 3e been nat wroth
 I can nat glose I am a rude man
 And sodeynly a-noon this Damyan 2352

Gan pullyn vp the smok & in he throng
 And whan that pluto saw this greete wrong
 To Ianuarye he ȝaf a-geyn his syght
 And maade hym se as wel as euere he myght 2356
 And whan that he hadde cauȝt his sȝt a-geyn
 Ne was there neuere man of thyng so fayn
 But on his wyf his thouȝt was euere mo
 Vp to the tre he caste his eyen two 2360
 And saw that Damyan his wyf hadde dressed
 In swich maner it may not been expressed
 But ȝif I wolde speke vncurteysly
 And vp he ȝaf a roryng & a cry 2364
 As doth the modyr whan the schild schal deye
 Out help allas / harrow he gan to crye
 O stronge lady stoore what dost thou [lean 275, back]
 And sche answerde sire what evelyth ȝow 2368
 Hauyth pacience & resoun in ȝoure mynde
 I haue ȝow holpyn on bothe ȝoure eyen blynde
 Vp peril of myn soule I schal not lyen
 As me was tauȝt to hele with ȝoure eyen 2372
 Was no thyng bet to makyn ȝow to see
 Than strogele¹ with a man vp on a tree [1 first strugele]
 God wot I dede it with ful good entente
 Strogele quod he / ȝa algate in it wente 2376
 God ȝeue ȝow bothe on schamys deth to deyen
 He swyuede the I say it with mynne eyȝen
 And ellis be, I hangid bi the hals
 Thane is quod sche myn medecyn al fals 2380
 ffor certeynly ȝif that ȝe myȝte see
 ȝe wolde not seyn these wordys vn-to me
 ȝe han sum glemesyng & no parfyt syght
 I se quod he as weel as euere I myȝt 2384
 Thankyd be god with bothe myne eyen two
 And bi myn treuthe me thynkyth he dede þ^o soo
 ȝa mæȝe mæȝe good sere quod sche
 This thank haue I for I maade ȝow to se 2388

Allas quod sche that euere I was so kynde
 Now dame quod he lat al passe out of mynde
 Come doun myn lyf & If I haue myssayd
 God helpe me so as I am euele a-payid 2392
 But by myn fadyr soule I wende haue seyn
 How that this Damyen hadde by the leyn
 And that thyn smok hadde leyn vp-on his brest
 3a sere quod sche 3e may wene¹ as 3ow lyst [1 ne altered]
 But sere a man that wakyth out of slep
 He may not sodeynly takyn kep
 Vp-on a thyng ne seen it parfytylly
 Til that he be a-dawed verrayly 2400
 Rygh so a man that longe hath blynd ybe
 Ne may not sodeynly so weel I-see
 ffyrst whan his syzte is come newe ageyn
 As he that hath a day or too I-seyn [1 leaf out of Camb. MS]
 [Tylle þat youre sizt y-stabled by a while [Sloane 1685,
 þere may fulle many a sizt you be-gyle leaf 102, back]
 By ware I prey you for by heuen kynge
 Fulle many a man weneth to see a thyng 2408
 And hit ys aft an opere þan hit semyth
 he mysse conceyueth mysse demeth
 And with þat worde she lepe doun of þat tre
 Thys Ianuarye who was glade but she 2412
 he kyssith and clypythe hir fulle ofte
 And on hir wombe he strokethe hir fulle softe
 And to hys palys home he hathe hir ladde
 Nowe gode men I prey you to be glad 2416
 Thus endethe here my tale of Ianuarye
 God blesse vs and his modir/ Seynt Mary Amen] [Sloane 1685
 extract
 ends]

[*Harl. MS 7335, on leaf 129.*]

[p y goddes mercy seide oure ost tho
 Now swich a wif y preye god kepe me fro 2420
 lo swiche sleighthes and subtilites
 In wommen ben for ay as besy as bees
 Ben they vs sely men for to deseyue
 And from a sothe euere wil they weyue 2424
 Bi this marchauntis tale hit preueth wel
 And natheles as trewe as ony steel
 I haue a wif thogh that she poore be
 But of hir tonge a labbyng shrewe is she 2428
 And yit she hath an heepe of vices moo
 Ther-of no fors let al swiche thynges goo
 But wite ye what in counseil be it seide
 Me reweth sore y am vn to here teyed [leaf 129, back] 2432
 for and y shulde rekene euery vice
 which that she hath y-wis y were to nyse
 And cause whi it shulde reported be
 And told to here of sume of this compaignie 2436
 Of whom it nedith nat for to declare
 Syn wommen konnen oute swiche chaffare
 And ek' my wit sufficeth not ther too
 To tellen al wherfore my tale is do] 2440

GROUP F. FRAGMENT VII.

§ 1. THE SQUIRE'S HEAD-LINK.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

[*Harl. MS 7335, on leaf 129, back.*]

[Squyer come ner if it youre wille be
And sey sumwhat of loue for certes ye
Konnen ther on as moche as ony man
Nay sere quod he but sweche thyng' as y can 4
With hertly wille for y wil not rebelle
Ageyn youre lust a tale wol y telle
haue me excusid if y speke a mys
Mi wille is good and lo my tale is this] 8

[Here bygynneth þe tale .

[Sloane 1686,
leaf 78]

[**A** T Sarray in þe londe of Sarcarye [leaf 78, back]
 There dwelt / a kyng þat weryd Russaye
 Thouȝe whiche þere dyede many a duȝty man
 Thys noble kyng was clepyd Kambynskan 12
 whiche in his tyme was of so grete rennoun
 That þer was nouthir/ in regioun
 So excellent a lórd / in alle þinge
 Hym lakkith nouȝt þat longith to a kyng 16
 As of þe Cite whiche he was borne
 he kepte hys lawe to whiche þat he was sworne
 And perto he was hardy wyse & ryche
 And pitouse & Iuste alle wey yliche 20
 Sothe of/ hys worde benygne & honorable
 Of/ his corage as eney centre stable]
 13on[ge fresshe stronge in armes desyrous]
 As on[y bachelere of alle hys hous]
 A fayr per[son he was & fortunat]
 And kepte a[ll wey so wele ryalle estate]
 That there na[s nouthir suche a ncþere man]
 This noble kyng [of Tartre þis Kambynskan] 28
 Hadde two sonys on [Eltheta his wif]
 Of whiche the eldeste [hiȝt Algarsife]
 That oþer sone was clepid [Camballo]
 A doughtyr hadde this worth[y kyng also] 32
 Tha^{t2} ȝyngeste was & hyghte Canace [² ha^t corrected]
 Rut for to telle ȝow al hire beautee
 It lyth not in myn tunge nyn myn kuȝnyng
 I dar nat vndyrtake so high a thyng 36

[¹ Camb. MS, leaf
277; part of leaf
torn off; filled-in
here from SL 1686]

Myn engelysch is ek insufficient
 It muste be a Rethor excellent
 That coude hise colouris / longynge for that art
 3if he schulde discryuyn euery part 40
 I am non schich I mot speke as I can
 And so by-fil that this Cambynskan
 Hath twenty wyntyr boryn his diademe
 As he was wone ffrom 3er to 3eer I deme 44
 He leet the feste of his natyuitee
 Doon cryen thour Sarray his Citee
 [The last Idus of Marche aftir þe yere [Sloane 1686, leaf 79]
 Phebus þe Sonne fulle Iolyf was & clere 48
 ffor he was nyh · his exaltacion
 In martes face and his mancioni
 In aries þe Coloryk þe hoot signe
 fful lusty was þe weder & benygne 52
 ffor whiche þe foules ayeyn þe son shene
 what for þe seson and þe yonge grene
 fful lowde songe hir affecciouns
 hem semyd þei hade gotten hem protecciouns 56
 A-yeyne þe swerde of wynter kene & Colde
 This Kambynskan of whiche I haue you tolde
 In riall vestement syt on hys deys
 with a Dyademe full hi3e in his paleys 60
 And holte his feste sollempne & so riche
 þat in þis worlde ne was þere none hit lyche
 Of whiche yf I · shalle telle alle þe array
 That wolde hit occupie a somers day 64
 And eke hit nedyth not to devise
 At euery cours þe ordre of h]ere seruyse [Cambr. MS, ff 277, bk]
 [I wolle not telle of her straun]ge sewys
 [Ne of here swannes ne of¹] here heirounsewis [¹ This line
 wanting in Sl.
 1686, half is
 supplied from
 Harl. 1758,
 leaf 68, back]
 [Eke in þat londe as tel]lyn kny3tis olde
 [There ys some mete þat ys fulle] deynte holde
 [That in þis l]ond men reche of it but smal
 [There ys] no man that may reportyn al 72

[I wol] not taryn ȝow for it is prime ¹	[¹ = prime corrected]	
[And] for it is no freut / but los of tyme		
Vn-to myn fyrste I wele han myn recours		
And so be-fel that aftyr the thredde cours		76
Whil that this kyng sat thus in his nobleye		
Herkenynge his mynstraß here thyngis pleye		
By-forn hym at the bord deliciously		
In at the halle dore al sodeynly		80
There cam a knyght vp on a stede of bras		
And in his hand a brood myroure of glas		
Vp on his thumbe he bar of gold a ryng		
And by his syde a nakede swerd hangyng		84
And vp he ridyth to the heye bord	[leaf 278]	
In al the halle ne was there spokyn a word		
fior merueyle of this knyght to be-holde		
fful besily they wayte ȝynge & olde		88
This straunge knyzt that cam thus sodeynly		
Al armede saue his hed richely		
Saluyth kyng & queen & lordis alle		
By ordere as the setyn in the halle		92
With so heigh reuerence & obeysaunces		
As weel in his speche as in hise cuntenaunces		
That Gaweyn with his olde curteysye		
Thow he weere comyn agen out of fayrye		96
Ne coude hym not amendyn / with a word		
And aftyr thys by-fore the heye bord		
He wyth a manly voys seyth his message		
Aftyr the forme vsed in hise age ²	[² age corrected]	100
With-outyn vice of sillable or of lettere		
And for his tale schulde seme the bettre		
Acordau[n]t to hise wordis was hise chere		
As techith the art of speche hem that it lere		104
Al be that I can not sounne his style		
Ne can not clymbyn ouyr so hegh a style		
ȝit seye i this as to comune entent		
Thus meche a-mountyth al that euere he ment		108

ȝif it so be þat I haue it in mynde
 He seyde þ^e kyng of arabye & of ynde
 Myn lige lord on this solempne day
 Salueth ȝow as he best can or may 112
 And sendyȝ ȝow in honour of ȝoure feste
 By me þat am al redy to ȝouere heste
 This steede of bras that esyly & wel
 Can in the space of a day naturel 116
 This is to seyne in foure & twenty ourys
 Where so ȝow liste in drouȝte or ellis schouris
 Beryn ȝoure body in-to euery place
 To whiche ȝoure herte willyȝ for to pace 120
 With-outyn wem of ȝow thour foul or fayr
 Or ȝif ȝow leste to flien as hyghe in þ^e ayr
 As doth an egele whan hym lyste to soore [leaf 278, back]
 This same steede schal bere ȝow euere moore 124
 With-outyn harm tyl ¹ȝe been there ȝow lesten [? MS y or i corrected]
 Thow that ȝe slepyȝ on his bak or restyn
 And turne a-ȝen with wryȝyng of a pyn
 He that it wrouȝte it coude ful manye a gyn 128
 He waytede ful manye a constelacioun
 Er he hadde doon this operacioun
 And knew ful manye a sel & manye a boond
 ¶ This myrour ek that I haue in myȝ hond 132
 Hath swich a myȝt that men may in it se
 Whan there schal falle ony aduercite
 Vn-to ȝoure regne / & to ȝoure self also
 And opynly ho is ȝoure frend or ²foo [? r corrected] 136
 And ouyral this ȝif ony lady bryȝt
 Hath set hire herte on ony maner wyȝt
 ȝif he be fals sche schal his tresoun see
 His newe loue & al his subtiltee 140
 So opynly that ther schal noȝyȝ hyde
 Wherefore a-geȝn this lusty somerys tyde
 This myrour & this ryȝg³ that ȝe may see [? g corrected]
 He hath sent on-to myȝ lady Canacee 144

3oure excellent doughtyr that is here
 Te vertu of the ryng 3if 3e wile heere
 Is this that 3if hire luste it for to weere
 Vp-on hyre thumbe or in hire purs it beere 148
 There is no foul that flyeth vndyr the heuene
 That sche ne schal weel vndyrstondyn his steuene
 And knowe his menyng opynly & pleyn
 And answeere hym in his langage a-geyn 152
 And euery gres that growyth vp on roote
 Sche schal ek knowe & whom it schal don boote
 Alle be hise woundys neeuere so deepe & wyde
 This nakede swerd that hangyth by myn syde 156
 Wich wertew hath that what man þ^e smyte
 Thouru out his arneur it wele byte
 Were it as thikke as is a brauncheede ook
 And what man is wounded with that strok 160
 Schal neuere be hol tyl þat þou lest of grace [leaf 179]
 To stroke hym with the plat / in þat place
 There he is hurt this is as meche to seyn
 3e moote with the plat swerd a-geyn 164
 Stryke hym on the wounde & it wele close
 This a verray soth with-oute glose
 It faylyth not whil it is in 3oure hoold
 And whan this knyzt hat thus his tale told 168
 He rydyth out of halle & doun he lytyth
 His steede whiche þat schon as sunne brighte
 Stant in the court styлле as ony stoon
 This knyght is to hise chambere lad a-noon 172
 And is on arayed & to mete I-set
 These presentis been ful ryally I-fet
 This is to seyne the swyrd & the myrour
 And born a-non in-to the hye tour 176
 with serteyn offycerys¹ ordeynyd there fore [1st ys corrected]
 And on to Canacee this ryng was bore
 Solempnely ther sche sit at þ^e table
 But sikyrly with-outyn ony fable 180

The hors of bras that may not been remeuyd	
It stant as it were to the ground I-glewyd	
Ther may no man out of the place it dryue	
ffor noon engyn of wyndas or palyue	184
And cause whi for they can not the craft	
And therefore in the place they han it laft	
Til that þe knyght hath taughte hem the manere	
To voydyn hym as ȝe schal after heere	188
¶ Gret was the pres that swarmyth to & fro	
To gauryn on this hors that standyth so	
ffor it so high was & so brod & long	
So wel proporciounyngd for to been strong	192
Ryȝt as it were a stede of lombardy	
Therto so horsely & so quyke of Iye	
As it a gentil poleys Courser were	
ffor certis from his tayl vn-to his eere	196
Nature ne art ne coude hym nat a-mende	
In no degre as al the peple wende	
But euere more here moste wondir was	[leaf 278, back]
How that it coude goon & was of bras	200
And ¹ was as fayr as al the peple seemede	[1 nd corrected]
Dyuers folk dyuersly they demyd	
As ² manye hedis as many wittis þere been	[2 ^s corrected]
They murmuredyn as don a swarm of been	204
And madyn skiff after here fantasie	
Reherseyng of these olde poetryis	
And seydyn it was lik the pegasee	
The hors that hadde wyngis for to flee	208
Or ellis it was þ ^e Grekis hors Synoun	
That brouȝte Troye to distrucioun	
As men in these olde gestis reede	
Myn herte quod on is euere more in drede	212
I trowe some men of armys been þerinne	
That schapin hem this cete for to wyne	
It were right good that alle thyng were knowe	
A nothir rounded to his felawe lowe	216

And seyde he lyede it is rathere lik
 An apparence mad by sum Magyk
 As Iogelouris pleye at these ¹festis greete¹ [¹ corrected]
 Of sundery doutis thus they Iangele & trete² [² trete corrected]
 As lewede peple demyth comounly
 Of thyngis that been mad more subtilly
 Than they can in here louwedenesse comprehende
 They demyn gladly to the baddere ende 221
 And some of hem wonderedyn on the myrour
 That born was vp in the hyghe tour
 How men myztyn in it sweche thyngis see
 A noþer answerde & seyde it may wel be 228
 Naturally by compociciounys
 Of angles & of slygh reflecciouns
 And seydyn þat in rome was swich on
 They spoken of Alocen & Vituloun 232
 And Aristotle þat wrytyn in here lyuys
 Of queynte Mirouris & of prospectyuis
 As knowyn they that han here bokys herd
 And opere folk han wonderede on the swerd 236
 That wolde partyn thour out euery thyng [^{leaf 230}]
 And fille in speche of Tholophus þe kyng
 And of achilles with his queynte speere
 ffor he coude with it bothe hele & dere 240
 Rygh in swich wise as men myzte with the swerd
 Of which ryzt now 3e han 3oure selue herd
 They spekyn of sundery hardyng of metal
 And spoke of medycynys therwith-al 244
 And how & whanne it schulde I-hardit be
 Whiche is vnknowe algate³ on-to me [³ is corrected]
 Tho speke they of Canaceis ryng
 And seydyn alle of that swych a wondyr thyng 248
 Of craft of ryngis herde they neuere noon
 Saue that he moyses & kyng salomon
 Hadde a name of rounnyng in swich art
 Thus seyth the peple & drawyn hem a part 252

But natheles some seydyn that it was
 Wondyr to makyn oof fern aschyn glas
 And ȝit ne is glas lich aschyn of fern¹ [¹ fern corrected, from
 a lightly written fern
 in the margin]
 But for they han knowyn it so fern
 There-fore chesen hire langeling & hire wondyr
 As soore wonderyn some of on cause of ȝoundyr
 On ebbe on fiod on gossomyr & on myst
 And alle thynges tyl that the cause is wist 260
 Thus langle thei & deeme & deuyse
 Til that þe kyng gan from his bord a-ryse
 Phebus hath left the angle meridional
 And ȝit ascendyng was the beste royal 264
 The gentyl lyoun with his aldryan² [² n corrected]
 Whan that this tartre Cambynscan³ [³ F MS Cambynscan]
 Ros from his bord þere that he sat ful hye
 To-fore hym goth the loude menstralcyne 268
 Tyl he cam to hise chambere of parementis
 There as they sounyn dyuerse Instrumentis
 That is lyk an heuene for to here
 Now dauncyn lusty venus chylderyn deere 272
 ffor in the fych hire ⁴ lady sat ful hyghe [⁴ l corrected]
 And lokyn on hem with a frendely Iye
 This noble kyng is set vp in his trone [leaf 280, back]
 This stronge knyght / is⁵ fet to hym ful sone [⁵ Arat it] 276
 And on the daunce he goth with Canacee
 Here is the reuel & the Iolyte
 That is nat able a dul man to deuyse
 He muste haue knowe loue & his seruyse 280
 And been a festelyche man as May
 That schulde ȝow deuyse swich aray
 Who coude tellen ȝow the forme of dauncis
 So vnouth & so frosche cuntenauncis 284
 Swich subtyl / lokyngis & dissimulyngis
 ffor drede of Ialuse mennys apercevyngis
 No man but lancelot & he is deed
 There-fore I passe ouyr al this lustyhed 288

I seye namore but in this iolynesse
 I leete hem tyl men to the soper dresse
 The styward bit spicis for to hye
 And ek the wyn in al this melodye 292
 The vsscheris & the squyeris been I-goon
 The spicis & the wyn be comyn a-noon
 They ete & d[r]ynke & whan this hadde an ende
 Vn-to the temple as reson was they wende 296
 The seruyse doun they soupy[n] al be day
 What nedyth ¹me reherce al here a-ray [1 m corrected]
 Eche man wiste wel þat a kyngis feste² [1 first e corrected]
 Hath plente to meste & ek to leste 300
 And deynteis moo than been to myn knowyng
 At after sopir goth this noble kyng
 To seen this hors of bras. with al the route
 Of lordis & of ladyis hym a-boute 304
 Swich wonderyng was on this hors of bras
 That syn the greete sege of Troye was
 Ne was there swich a wonderyng as was tho
 There as men wonderedyn on an hors also 308
 But finally this kyng askyth this knyght
 The vertu of this courser & the myȝt
 And preyede hym to telle his gouernaunce
 This hors anon be-gan to tryppe & daunce 312
 Whan that this knyght leyde hand vp-on his regne [leaf 281]
 And seyde sire there nys no moore to seyne
 But whan thu lyste to ryde any where
 ȝe mote trylle a pyn stant in his eere 316
 Whiche I schal ȝow telle be-twyxe vs two
 ȝe mote nemenyn hym to what place also
 Or to wat cuntre þat thow lyste to ryde
 And whan ȝe come there as ȝow leste abyde 320
 Bydde hym discende & trylle a nothir pyn
 ffor theere lyth theeffect of al the gyn
 And he wele doun descende & don ȝoure wille
 And in that place he wele stonde styлле 324

Thow al the world the contrarye haddyn swore
 He schal not thens been drawe ne bore
 Or ȝif þou wit bidde hym thenys goon
 Trille this pyn & he wele vanyche a-noon 328
 Out of the syzte of euery maneere wyȝt
 And come a-geyn be it day or nyght
 Whan that þou lystist to clepyn hym a-geyn
 In swich a gyse as I schal to ȝow seyn 332
 Bi-twixe ȝow & hym & that ful sone
 Ride whan þou lyste there is no moore to doone
 Enformede whan that kyng was of that knyght
 And hath conseuyd in his wit a ryȝt 336
 The manere & the forme of al this thyng
 Thus glad & blythe this nobele kyng
 Repeyrith to his reuel as by-foryn
 The brydyl is in to the tour I-boryn 340
 And kept a-mong hyse 'Iewelys leue & deere [*'on corrected*]
 The hors vanyschit I not in what maneere
 Out of hire syzte ȝe gete no more of me
 But thus I lete in lust & iolyte 344
 This Cambiscan hese lordis festenyng
 Tyl wol nygh þe day be-gan to sprynge

Secunda pars

T He noryce of digestyoun the sleep
 Gan on hem wynke & bad hem take kep 348
 That muche drynk & labour wolde han reste
 And with a galpyng mouth hem alle keste [*leaf 281, b. ek*]
 And seyde it was tyme to lye a-doun
 ffor blood was in his domynacioun 352
 Cherisshet blod naturys frend quod he
 They thankyn hym galpyng bi toȝ by thre
 And euery wyght gan drawyn hym to his reste
 As slep hem hadde they take it for the beste 356

Here dremys schul not been told for me
 fful weere here heedys of fumositee
 That causeth drem of whiche *pere* is no charge
 They slepyn tyl it was pryme large 360
 The moste part but it were Canacee
 Sche was ful mesurable as wemen bee
 ffor of hire fadyr hadde sche takyn leue
 To gon to reste sone aftyr it was eue 364
 Hire lyste not appallid for to bee
 Nor on the morwe onfestelyche for to se
 And slepte hire fyrste sleep & thanne a-wok
 ffor swich a slep sche¹ in hire herte tok [1 MS e] 368
 Bothe of hyre queynte ryng & hire Mirour
 That twenty tyme sche² changede hire colour [2 MS schangede]
 And in hire sleep ryzt for imprescioun
 Of hire Mirour sche hadde a visiou 372
 Where fore the sunne gan vp glyde
 Sche clepede on hire maysteresse hire be sylde
 And seyde þat hire luste for to ryse³ [3 corrected]
 These olde wemen that been gladly wyse 376
 As is hire Maysteresse answerede hire a-non
 And seyde madame wheþer wele 3e goon
 Thus erly for the folk been alle at reste
 I wele quod sche a-ryse for me leste 380
 No lengere for to slepe & walke a-bouȝte
 Hire Maystresse clepid wemen a greet route
 And vp they ryse weel a ten or twelue
 Vp rysyth frossche Canace hire selve 384
 As rody as brygh as doth the 3onge sunne
 That in the Ram is foure degreis vpronne
 Noon heyere was he / whan sche redy was [leaf 282]
 And forth sche walkyth esyly a pas 388
 A-rayed aftyr the lusty sesoun soote
 Lyztely for to pleye & walke on foote
 Not but with fyne or sexe of hyre meyne
 And in a trench forth in the park goth sche 392

The vapour which that from the erthe glod Made the sunne to seme rody & brood But natheles it was so fayr a syzt That it made alle here hertis for to lyzt	396
That for the sesoun & the morwenynge And for the foulys that sche herde synge ffor ryzt a-noon she wiste what they mente Ryzt by here song & knew al here entente	400
The kn te ¹ whi that eueri tale is told ȝif it be taryed tyl that lust be cold Of hem that han it after herkenyd ȝoore The sauour passith euere lengere the moore	404
ffor fulsumnesse of his prolixite And by the same resoun thynkyth me I schulde to þ ^e knotte condescende And makyn of hire walkynge sone an ende	408
¶ A-myddde a tre fordreyed as whyt as chalk As canasce was pleyinge in hire walk There sat a facoun ouyr hire heed ful hye That with a pytous voys so gan to crye	412
That al the wode resounned of hire cry I-beetyn hath sche hire self so pitously With bothe hire wyngis tyl the reede blood Ran endelyng the tree there sche stood	416
And euere in on sche cryede al wey & schr[i]kte And with hire bek hire seluyn so sche prykte That þere nys tygre ne non so crewel beste That dwellyth eythir in wode or in foreste	420
That nolde a wept ȝif that he weepe coude ffor sorwe of hire sche shrikte alwey so loude ffor there was neuere man ȝit on lyue If that I coude a facoun weel dyscryue	424
That herde of swich a nothyr / ȝit/ of fayrnesse As weel of plumage as of gentyllesse Of schap & of al that myghte I-reenede bee A facoun peregryn thanne semeede sche	428

[¹ ? first knite]

[leaf 222, 1b]

Of fremde lond / & eueremore as sche stood
 Sche swounnyth now & now for lak¹ of blod [1 or lak corr.]
 Tyl wel nygh is sche fallyn from the tree
 This fayre kyngis doughtir Canacee 432
 That on hire fyngyr bar the queynte ryng
 Thour whiche sche vndyrstod weel euery thyng
 That ony foul myghte in hise ledene seyn
 And coude answeere in his ledene ageyn 436
 Hath vndyrstonde what this facoun seyde
 And wel nygh for the routhe almost sche deyede
 And to the tre sche goth ful hastily
 And on this facoun lokyth pitously 440
 And held hire lappe a-brod for well sche wyste
 The facoun muste falle from the twyste
 Whan that it swounnede next for lak of blood
 A long while to waytyn hire sche stood 444
 Til at the laste sche spak in this maneere
 Vn-to the hauk as 3e schul after here
 ¶ What is the cause 3if it be for to telle
 That 3e been in this fural payne of helle 448
 Quod Canace vn-to this hauk a-boue
 Is this for sorwe of deth or los of loue
 ffor as I trowe these been causys two
 That causyn most a gentyl herte wo 452
 Of oper harm it needyth not to spekyn
 ffor 3e 3oure self vp-on 3oure self ben wrekyng
 Whiche prevyth weel that eythir loue or drede
 Moot been enchesoun of 3oure crewel deede 456
 Syn that I se non oper wight 3ow chace
 ffor loue of god as doth 3oure self sum grace
 Or what may been 3oure helpe for west nor est
 Ne saugh I neuere er now no brid ne beste 460
 That ferde with hym self so pitously
 3e sle me wyth 3oure sorwe verrayly
 I haue of 3ow so greet compassioun [leaf 223]
 ffor godis loue come from the tre a-doun 464

And as I am kyngis doughtyr trewe
 ȝif that I verrayly the cause knewe
 Of ȝoure deseese ȝif it lay in myn mygh[t]
 I wole amendyn it er it weere nyght 468
 As wisely helpe me greete god of kynde
 And erbis schal I ryȝt I-nowe fynde
 To heele with ȝoure hurtis hastely
 Tho schrykt this facoun moore ȝit pitously 472
 Than euere sche dede & fyl to grounde a-noon
 And lith¹ a swounne ded lych a stoon [1 lth corrected]
 Tyl canace hath in hire lappe hire take
 Vn-to the tyme sche gan of swow a-wake 476
 And aftyr that sche of hire swow a-breyde
 Rygh in hire haukys ledene thus sche seyde
 That pete rennyth sone in gentyl herte
 ffelynge his simylitud in peynys smerte 480
 Is preuyd alday as men may it I-se
 As weel by werk as by autorite
 ffor gentyl herte kytheth gentillesse
 I se weel ȝe han of myn distresse 484
 Compassioun myn fayre Canacee
 Of verray womanly benygnetee
 That nature in ȝoure prynciples han I-set
 But for noon hope for to fare the bet 488
 But for to obeye vnto ȝoure herte free
 And for to makyn opere / be war by me
 And bi the whelp chastysed is the lyoun
 Rygh for that cause & for that conclusioun 492
 Whil that I haue a leyser & a space
 Myn harm I wele confesse er I pace
 And euere whil that on hire tolde
 That othir wepte as sche to watyr wolde 496
 Tyl that the facoun bad hire to been styлле
 And wyth a syk ryȝt thus sche seyde hire tillе
 ¶ That I was brad allas that harde day
 And fosterede in a roche of marbyl gray 500

So tenderly eylyth / it¹ eylede me [¹ i corrected] [leaf 233, back]
 I nyste² not what was aduercyte [² y corrected]
 Tyl I coude fle ful hye vndyr the skye
 Tho dwellede a tarcelet me faste bye 504
 That semede weel of alle gentillesse
 Al weere he ful of tresoun & falsenesse
 It was so wrappid vndyr humble chire
 And vndyr hewe of trouthe in swych maneere 508
 Vndyr plesaunce & vndyr bisy pyne
 That I not ³ cude a wend he coude feyne [³ a word scratcht out]
 So deepe in greyn he dyede his colourys
 Ryȝt as a serpent hid hym vndyr flourys 512
 Tyl he may seen his tyme for to byte
 Rygh so this god of loue this ypocryte
 Doth so hise sermonys & obeysauncis
 And kepyth in semblaunt alle hise ⁴cuntenauncys⁴ [⁴—⁴ corr.]
 That sounnyn in to gentillesse of loue
 As in a tounge is al the fayrenesse a-boue
 And vndir is þ^e cors swich as ȝe woot
 Swich was this ypocryte bothe cold & hoot 520
 And in this wise he seruede his entent
 That saue the feend non wiste what he ment
 Til he so longe hadde wepid & compleyned
 And manye a ȝeer his seruyse to me feynyd 524
 Tyl that myn herte to pitous & to nyce
 Al innocent of his crounede malyce
 ffor-fered of his deth as thoughte me
 Vp-on hise othis & hise seuretee 528
 Grauntede hym loue vp-on this condicioun⁵ [⁵ is condicioun corrected]
 That euere more myn honour & renoun
 Were sauȝd bothe priue & apert
 This is to seyne that aftyr his desert 532
 I ȝaf hym al myn herte & al myn thought
 God wot & he / þat operwyse noght
 And tok his hert in chong of myn for ay
 But soth is seyȝd goon sithe manye a day 536

A trewe wigh & a thef thynkyn nat oon
 And whan he saugh the thyng so fer a-noon
 That I hadde grauntede fully myn looue [leaf 284]
 In swich a gise as it was seyde a-boue 540
 And ȝeuyn hym myn trewe herte as fre
 As he swoor he ȝaf his herte to me
 A-non this tigre ful of doubilnesse
 fil on hise kneis with so deuout humblesse 544
 With so high reuerence as bi hire cheere
 So lyk a gentil louere of manere
 So rauyschid as it semede for the Ioye
 That neuere Troylis Ne parys of Troye 548
 Iason certis ne non oper man
 Syn lameth was / þat aldyrferst be-gan
 To louyn too as wrytyn folk by-forn
 Ne neuere syn the fyrste man was born 552
 Ne coude man by twenty thousent part
 Countyrfete the sophemys of his art
 Ne were worthi onbokele his galoche
 There doubilnesse or feynynge schulde aproche 556
 Ne so coude thanke a whit as he dede me
 His manere was an heuene for to se
 To ony weman were [s]che neuere so wys
 So peyntede he & kembede at poynt deuyis 560
 As weel hise wordis as hise contenaunce
 And I louede hym for his obeysaunce
 And for the trouthe I demede in his herte
 That ȝif so were that ony thyng hym smerte 564
 Al were it neuere so lyte & I it wiste
 Me thouȝte I felte deth myn herte twyste
 And schortely so fer forth this thyng went
 That myn wil was his willis instrument 568
 This is to seye myn wil obeyede his wil
 In alle thyng as fer as resoun fil
 Kepyng the boundis of myn worchepe euere
 Ne neuere hadde I thyng so leef ne leuere 572

As hym god wot ne neuere schal no mo
 This lastede lengere than a ȝeer or twc
 That I supposede of hire not but good
 But finally thus at the laste it stood 576
 That fortune wolde that he muste twynne [leaf 281, back]
 Out of that place which that he is inne
 Where me was woo that is no questyoun
 I can not make of it discripcioun 580
 ffor on thyng dar I telle baldely
 I knowe what is the peyne of deth therby
 Swich harm I felte for he ne myȝte beleue
 So on a day of me he tok his leue 584
 So sorwefully ek that I wende verrayly
 That he hade felt as meche harm as I
 Whan that I herde hym speke & saw his hewe
 But natheles I thoute he was so trewe 588
 And ek that he repeyre schulde ageyn
 With-inne a lytil while soth to seyn
 And resoun wolde ek that he moste go
 ffor his honour as ofte it happith so 592
 That I maade vertu of necescitee
 And tok it weel syn that it muste bee
 As I best myghte I hidde from hym myn sorwe
 And tok hym by the hond seynt Iohn to borw 596
 And seyde hym thus lo I am ȝourys al¹ [¹ MS alle schalle, with
 the dotted under]
 Beth swich as I to ȝow haue been & schal¹
 What he answerde it nedyth not reherce
 Who can seye bet than he / ho can seye werse 600
 Whan he hath al I-seyd thanne hath he don
 Therefore byhouyth hire a ful long spon
 That schulde ete with a feend thus haue I herd seye
 So at the laste he mote forth his weye 604
 And forth he flyeth til he cam there hym leste
 Whan it cam hym to purpos for to reste
 I trowe he hadde thilke tyxt in mynde
 That alle thyng repeyrynge to hise kynde 608

Gladyth hym self thus seye men as I gesse
 Men loue of propyr kynde newefangilnesse
 As bryddys don that men in cage feede
 ffor thow thu nyzt & day of hem take heede 612
 And strawe hyre ¹ cage / as softe as ony silk ^[1 a word scratched out]
 And zeue hym sugere hony breed & Mylk ^[2 leaves out of the Camb. MS.]
 [3it riȝt a none as þat hys dore ys vppe ^[Sloane 1085, leaf 85, back]
 he with hys feete wille spurne doune hys Cuppe 616
 And to þe woode he wolle & wormes ete
 So newefangylle bene þei of hyr mete
 And louen noueleryes of propre kynde
 No gentyhnesse of bloode may hem bynde 620
 So farithe þis Tarselet allas þe day
 Thouȝe he were gentylle fresshe & gay
 And goodly for to sene and humble & fre
 he sawe opon a tyme a kyte fle 624
 And soleynty he louythe þis kyte so
 þat alle his loue ys clene fro me goo
 And hathe his trouthe falsehede in þis wyse
 Thus hathe þe kyte my loue in hys seruyce 628
 And I am lorne with oute remedy
 And with þat worde þis faucon gan to crye
 And swoned ofte in Canaces barme ^[leaf 86]
 Grete was þat sorowe of þat haukes harme 632
 þat Canacee and alle hir women made
 þei nyste howe þei myȝt þe faucon glade
 But Canace home berithe hir in hir lappe
 And softly in plastres gan hir wrappe 636
 There as she with hir beeke hathe hurte hir silfe
 Nowe can not Canace but erbys delue
 Of herbes precious and fyne of hewe
 Oute of þe grounde and maken salues newe 640
 To helyn with þe hauke fro day to nyzt
 Scho dothe hir besynesse & alle hir myȝt
 And by hir beddys hede sho made and muwe
 And couerid hit with velowetys blewe 644

CAMBRIDGE 326 (6-T. 496) [this page, Sloane 1085]

In sene of trouthe þat ys in woman sene [Sloane 1685]
 And alle with oute þe muve ys · peyntyd grene
 In whiche were paynted alle þese false foules
 And bethe þe Tydifs terselettys & owlys . 648
 Riȝt for dispyte were peyntid hem by syde
 Pyes on hem for to crye and chyde
 þus lete I Canace hir hauke kepyng
 I wolde no more as nowwe speke of hir ryng 652
 Tylle hit come eft to purpos for to sayn
 how þat þis faucon gate hir loue a ȝeyn
 Repentaunt as þe story tellithe vs
 By mediacion of Cambassus 656
 The kynges sone of whiche y you tolde
 But hennes I wolde processe holde
 To speken of adventures and of batayles
 þat ȝit was neuere herde so grete mervayles 660
 ffirst wolde I telle you of kambynsken
 þat in hys tyme many a Citee wan
 And aftyr wolde I speke of Algarsyf
 how þat he wan Theodora to his wyf 664
 ffor whanne fulle ofte in grete perelle he was
 Ne hade he ben holpen by þe hors of bras
 And aftyr wolde I speke with Camballo [leaf 86, back]
 þat fauȝt in lystes with þe bretheren two · 668
 ffor Canace or þat he myȝt hir wynne
 And þere I lefte I wolde a-gayne hy-gynne
 Appollo whirlithe vp hys chare so hyȝe
 Tylle þat þe god Marcurius hows þe skye 672

Here endith þe tale of þe squire] [Sloane 1685 extract stops]

[Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 86, back.]

[Here begynnnyth þe prologge of þe Marchaunt]

IN faythe sqyere þou haste þe wele quyt
 And gentely I preyse wele þi wytte
 Quod þe Marchaunte considerynge þis ȝouthe
 So felyngely thouȝthe spekist sir I the allouthe 676
 As to my dome þere ys none þat ys here
 Of eloquence þat shalle be þi pere
 [And if þou lif god ȝif þe goode chaunce [Hutton MS 1]
 And in vertu send þe perseueraunce] 680
 ffor of þi speche I haue grete deynte
 I haue a. sone *and* by þe trinite
 I hade leuere þan twenty ponde worth of londe
 þouȝe hit riȝt nowe were fallen in myne honde 684
 ye are a man of suche discrecion
 As þat ye ben fy vpon possession
 But yf a man by vertuous *with* alle
 I haue my sone snybbyd *and* ȝit I shalle 688
 ffor he to vertu listith not entende
 But for to pley at dyes *and* to dispende
 And lese alle þat he hathe ys hys vsage
 And he hade leuere talke *with* a page 692
 þan to commune *with* eny gentille wiȝt
 Where he myȝt lerne gentilnesse ariȝt
 Strawe for youre gentilnesse quod our' Oste
 What Marchaunt Sir parde wele þou woste 696
 þat eche of you mot tellen atte leste
 A tale or twoo or breken hys by-hest
 þat knowe I wele quod þe Marchaunt certayne
 I prey you not hauethe me in disdeyne 700

CAMBRIDGE 328 (6-T. 498) [this page, Sloane 1685]

Thouze to þis man yf I speke a worde or two [Sloane 1685]

Telle on þi tale with out wordes moo

Gladly Sir Oste quod he I wolde obey [leaf 87]

Vnto youre wille nowe herkeneth what I seye 704

I wolde not contrarie you in no wyse

As far as my wyttes wol suffice

I prey to god þat hit mot plesen you

þan wote I wele þat hit ys gode ynowe 708

Here endithe þe prologge of þe Marchaunt]

7

[*Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 145, back.*]

[and bygynnethe þe tale

[*THE PROEM.*]

This olde gentel Brytouns in hir/ dayes
 Of dyuerse auentures maden layes
 Remedyn in hert / first Britoun tonge 711
 Whiche layes with her/ Instrumentes þei songe
 Oþer elles radden hem for her plesaunce
 And of heme haue I in remembraunce
 Whiche shalle seye with as goode wille as I can
 But Sires be cause þat I am a burell man 716
 At my begynnynge firste I you be-seche
 hauethe me excused of my rude speche
 I lerned neuere rethorike certayne
 þenge þat I speke hit mote be bare & playne 720
 I slepe neuere on þe Mount of pernasos
 Ne neuere lered marchus Tullius ne Cithero
 Colours of rethoryke ne knew I none with outen drede
 But suche Colours as growen in þe mede 724
 Oþer elles suche as men dye or peynte
 Coloures of rethorike ben me to queynte
 Myne sperit felipe · nouȝt of suche matere
 But ȝif you luste my tale shalle ȝe not here] [*Sloane extr. ends*]

[*THE TALE.*]

IN Armoryk that callyd is Britayne [*Camb. MS, leaf 287*]
 There was a knyȝt that louede & dede his payne
 To serue a lady in his beste wyse
 And manye a labour / manye a gret emprise 732
 CAMBRIDGE 330 (6-T. 500) [part, Sloane 1685]

He for his lady wrouȝte er sche weere wonne
 ffor sche was on the fayreste vndyr sunne
 And ek therto come of so hegh kynrede
 That weel onethe durste this knyȝt for drede 736
 Telle hire his woo his payne & his distresse
 But at the laste / sche for his worthynesse
 And namely for his meke obeysaunce
 Hath swich a pete cauȝt for his penaunce 740
 That pruyuyly sche fel of his acord
 To take hym for hire husbonde & for hire lord
 Of swich lordschepe as men han of here wyuys
 And for to leede þe more in blysse hire lyuys 744
 Of his frewil he swoor hire as a knyȝt
 That he neuere his lyue day ne nyȝt
 Ne schulde vp on hym take maystrye
 A-geyn hire wil ne kythe hire lalusye 748
 But hire obeye & folwe hire wil in al
 As ony louere to his lady schal
 Sause that the name of souereynste
 That wele he haue for schame of his degre 752
 Sche thanked hym with ful greet humblesse
 And seyde sire seyth of ȝoure gentillesse
 ȝe profere me to haue so greet a reyne
 Ne wolde neuere god be-twyn vs twayne 756
 As in myn gylt were other werre or stryf
 Syre I wele be ȝoure humble trewe wyf
 Haue here myn trouthe tyl myn herte breste
 Thus been they in quyet & in reste 760
 ffor o thyng syrys sauely dare I seye
 That frendys eueryche oþer moote obeye
 ȝif they wele longe holde cumpannye¹ [1 F MS ind for nn]
 Loue wele not been constreynede by maystrye 764
 Whan maystrye comyth the god of loue anon
 Bethith his wyngis & farewel he is goon
 Lone is a thyng as ony spyryt free [leaf 257, back]
 Wemen of kynde desire libertee 768

And not to been constreynd as a thral
 And so don men ȝif I soth seyn schal
 Loke ho so most is pacient in loue
 He is at his auountag al a-boue 772
 Pacience is an high vertu certeyn
 ffor it venquyschith as these clerkis seyn
 Thyngis þat rygour schulde neuere atteyne
 ffor euery word men may not chide or pleyne 776
 Lernyth to suffere or ellis so mote I goon
 ȝe schul it lerne wheþer ȝe wele or non
 ¶ ffor in this world serteyn there no wyzt is
 That he ne doth or seyth sumtyme a-mys 780
 Ire seeknesse or constelacioun
 Wyn wo or chaungyng of complexioun
 Causeth oftyn to don amys or spekyn
 On euery wrong a man may not been wrekyng 784
 Aftyr the tyme muste be thatemperaunce
 To euery wyzt that can on gouernaunce
 And therfore hath this wyse worthi knyzt
 To leue in ese sufferance to hire hyzt 788
 And sche to hym ful wisely gan to swere
 That there schulde neuere been defaute in hire
 ¶ Heere may men se an humble wys a-cord
 Thus hath sche take hire seruauant & hire lord 792
 Seruauant in loue & lord in maryage
 Thanne was he bothe in lordschepe & seruage
 Seruage nay but in lo[r]dschepe a-boue
 Sythe he hath bothe his lady & his loue 796
 His lady certis & his wyf also
 To whiche the lawe of loue a-cordyth þerto
 And whan he was in this prosperitee
 Hom with his wyf he goth to his cuntre 800
 Nough fer fro pedmark þere his dwellynge was
 Where as he lyuyth in blysse & in solas
 Who coude telle but he hadde weddede bee
 The Ioye / the ese / & the prosperite 804

That is be-twyn an husbonde & his wyf [leaf 228]
 A 3eer & more lastyth this blysful lyf
 Tyl that the knyzt of whom I spak of thus
 That of kayrrud was clepid Arueragus 808
 Schoop hym to goon & dwelle a 3eer or tweyne
 In Ingelond that clepid was er Breteyne
 To seeke in armys worschepe & honour
 ffor al his lust he sette in swich labour 812
 And dwelte there too 3eer the bok seyth thus
 Now wele I stynte of this ¹Arueragus [1 A, first a]
 And speke I wele of dorigious his wyf
 That lounth hire husbonde as hire lyf 816
 ffor hyse² absence wepith sche & sykyth [2 A, first hire]
 As doon these noble wyuys whan hem lykyth
 Sche / mornyth / wakyth / waylyth / fastith pleynyth
 Desyr of hise presens so hire streynyth 820
 That al this wyde world sche sette at nouzt
 Hire frendys whiche that knewe hyre heuy thouzt
 Confortyn ³here in al³ that euere they may [3 → corrected]
 .They preche hire they telle hire nyght & day 824
 That causeles sche sleth hyre selue alas
 And euery confort possible in this cas
 They don to hire with al here besynesse
 Al for to make hire leue hire heuynesse 828
 By proces as 3e⁴ knowyn euerichoon [4 3e corrected]
 Man may so longe grauyn in a stoon
 Tyl sum fygure ther-in enpryntid be
 So longe han they confortid tyl that sche 832
 Resceyuede hath by hope & by resoun
 Thenprentying of ⁵hire consolacyoun [5 b, first 3]
 Thorw whiche / al hire sorwe gan swage
 .Sche may not al wey duryn in swych rage 836
 And ek ⁶Arueragus in al this care [6 A, first a]
 Hath sent hire lettere hom of his weelfare
 And that he hastely wele come a-geyn
 .Or ellis hadde this sorwe hire herte slayn 840

Here freendis saw hyre sorwe gan a-slake
 And preyede hire / on kneis for godis sake
 To comyn & romyn heere in cumpanye [leaf 228, back] 844
 A-way to dryue hire derke fantasye
 And finally sche grauntede that requeste
 ffor wel sche thouzte it was for the beste
 Now stood hire castel faste by the see
 And oftyn with hire frendis walkede sche 848
 Hire to disporte on this banke an high
 Where that sche manye a schip & barge seigh
 Seylynge here cours / where as hem leste goo
 But thanne was that a parcel of hire woo 852
 ffor to hire self ful ofte seyde sche
 Is there no schip / of so manye as I se
 Wil bryngyn hom myn lord thanne were myn herte
 Al warychid of hire bittere peynys smerte 856
 A nothir tyme there wolde sche sitte & thynke
 And caste hire eyen / doun fro the brynke
 But whan sche say / the gresely rokis blake
 ffor verray feer / so wolde hyre herte quake 860
 That on hire feet / sche myzt hire not sustene
 Thanne wolde sche sitte / adoun vp on the grene
 And pitoualy / in-to the se by-holde
 And seye ryzt thus / with sorweful sikys colde 864
 Eterne god / that thouw thyn puryaunce
 Ledist the world / be Iuste gouernaunce
 In ydil as men seyn / 3e nothyng make
 But lord these grysely / feendly rokkis blake 868
 That semyn rathere / a foul confusioun
 Of werk than ony fayr creacioun
 Of which / a parfyt / wys god & stable
 Why han 3e wrouzt this werk onresonable 872
 ffor bi this werk . South . North / West & Est
 There is I-fostered . no man / ne brid ne best
 It doth no good / to myn wit but a-noyith
 Se 3e nat lord how mankynde it distroyeth 876

An hunderede thousent / bodyis of mankynde
 Han rolkis slayn / al ben they nat in mynde
 Whiche mankynd is / so fayr a part of thyn werk
 That þou it madist / lyk to thyn owene merk 880
 Thanne semythit 3e hadde a gret chiertee [leaf 289]
 Toward¹ mankynde but how thanne may it be [¹ o corrected]
 That 3e sweche meenys make it to distroyen
 Whiche menys doon no good but euere a-noyen 884
 I wot wel clerkys wele seye as hem leste² [² este corrected]
 By argumentis that al is for the beste
 Thow I ne can the causis not I-knowe
 But that god / that made wynd to blowe 888
 As keepe myn lord / this is myn conclusioun
 To clerkis leete I al discripcioun
 But wolde god that alle these rokkis þlake
 Were sunkyn in-to helle for his sake 892
 These rokkis sleen myn herte for the fere
 Thus seyde sche with manye a pitous teere
 Hire fryndys saw that it was no disport
 To romyn by the se but discomfort 896
 And schopyn for to pleyen sum wher ellis
 They leddyn hire by reueris & by wellis
 And ek in othere places delectables
 Th[e]y dauncedyn the[y] pleyedyn at ches & tablys 900
 So on a day ryzt in the morwetide
 Vn-tyl a gardyn that was ther byside
 In whiche they haddyn mad here ordenaunce
 Of vitaylis & of othere puruyaunce 904
 They goon & pleye hem al the longe day
 And this was on the sexte morwe of may
 Whiche may hadde peyntid with³ hise softe schourys [³ h later]
 This gardyn ful of leuys & of flouris 908
 And craft of manys hand so curiously
 Arayed hadde this gardyn trewely
 That neuere was thare⁴ gardy of swich a prys [⁴ first that]
 But it hadde been the verray paradys 912

The odour of flourys & the frosche syght
 Wolde han maad ony herte for to lyzt
 That euere was born but zif to gret seknesse
 Or to greet sorwe hadde it in distresse 916
 So ful it was of beute with plesaunce
 At aftyr dyner gunne thei¹ to daunce [1 later]
 And syngre also saue dorygeen² alone [2 dorygeen cor.] [If 220, bk]
 Whiche maade alwey hire compleynt & hyre mone 920
 for sche ne saw hym on the daunce go
 That was hire husbonde & hire loue also
 But natheles sche mote a tyme (a-byde
 And wyth good hope lete hire here³ slyde [3 are corrected] 924
 Vp on this daunce a-mongis oþere men
 Daunsede a squier bi-fore Dorigen⁴ [4 o corrected]
 That froschere was & Iolyere of aray
 As to myn doon as is the monyth of may 928
 He syngith daunseth passyngre ony man
 That is or was syn the world be-gan
 Ther-with he was zif men schulde hym discryue
 On of te beste farynge man on lyue 932
 3ong. strong. ryght vertuous. & ryche. & wys
 And weel be-louyd & holdyn in greet prys
 And schortely zif the sothe tellyn schal
 Onwetyng of this Dorygen at al 936
 This lusty squyer seruauyn to venus
 Whiche þat I-clepede was aurelius
 Hadde louyd hire best of ony creature
 Too 3eer & more as was his auenture 940
 But neuere durste he telle hire his greuance
 Wyth-oute cuppe he drank al his penaunce
 He was dispeyred nothyng durste he seye
 Saue in his songis sumwhat wolde he wreye 944
 His woo as in a gentyl compleynynge
 He seyde he louede & was belouyd nothyng
 Of swiche matiere made he manye layis
 Songis compleyntis / roundelis virelayes 948

How he durste not his sorwe telle
 But languscht as a furye doth in helle
 And deye he muste he seyde as dede Ekko
 ffor Narcisus¹ that durste not telle his wo [¹ *was corrected*] 952
 In othere maner than 3e here me seye
 Ne durste he nat to hire his woo be-wreye
 Sane that paraenture sumtyme at daunces
 There 3onge folk kepyn here obseruaunces 956
 It may wel be he lokede on hire face [*leaf 290*]
 In swich a wyse as men that askyth grace
 But no thyng wiste sche of his entente
 Nathe-les it happid er they thens wente 960
 By cause that he was hire neghebour
 And was a man of worchepe & honour
 And hadde I-knowyn hym of tyme 3ore
 They fille in speche & they more & more 964
 Vn-to his purpos drow aurelius
 And whan he saw his tyme he seyde thus
 Madame quod he by god that this world maade
 So that I wyste it my3te 3oure herte glade 968
 I wolde þat day that 3oure arueragus
 Wente ouyr the se that I Aurelyus
 Hadde went there neuere I schulde a comyn a-geyn
 ffor weel I woot myn seruyse is in veyn 972
 My guerdoun is but brestynge of myn herte
 Madame rewyth on mynne peynys smerte
 ffor with a word 3e may ne sle & saue
 Heere at 3oure feet god wolde that I were graue 976
 I ne haue as now no leyser more² to seye [² *more corrected*]
 Hauyth mercy swete or ellis 3e do me deye
 ¶ Sche gan to lokyn vp on aurelius
 Is this 3oure wil quod sche & seye 3e thus 980
 Neuere erst quod sche ne wiste I³ what 3e mente [³ *I corrected*]
 But now⁴ Aurelius I knewe 3oure entente [⁴ *w corrected*]
 By-twixe god that 3af me soule & lyf
 Ne schal I neuere been vntrewe wyf 984

In word ne werk as fer as I haue wit	
I wele been his to whom that I am knyht	
Take this for fynal answer as of me	
But aftyr in pleyn thus seyde sche	988
Aurele quod sche bi hye god a-boue	
3it wolde I grauntyn 3ow to been 3oure loue	
Syn I se 3ow so pitoualy compleyne	
Loke what day that endelyng Breteyne	992
3e ramoue alle the rolkis ston be ston	
That they ne lette schyp ¹ ne boot to goon	[¹ <i>First schyp</i>]
I seye whan 3e han mad the cost so clene	[leaf 290, back]
Of rokis that there ne is no stoon I-seene	996
Thanne wele I loue 3ow best of ony man	
Haue here myn trouthe In al that euere I can	
Is there noon othis grace quod he	
No be that lord quod sche that makede me	1000
ffor wel I wot that I ¹ schal neuere betyde	
Lat sweche folyis out of 3oure herte alyde	
What deynte schulde a man han in his lyf	
ffor to go loue a-noþer manys wyf	1004
That hath hire body whan so that hym lykyth	
Aurelius ful ofte sore sykyth	
Wo was aurelius whan that he this herde	
And with a sorweful herte he thus answerde	1008
Madame quod he this were an Impossible	
Thanne mote I deye on sodeyn deth horrible	
And with that word he turnede hym a-non	
T ^o come here othere frendis manyon	1012
And in the aleyijs they romede vp & doun	
And no thyng wiste of this conclusioun	
But sodeynly begunne reuel newe	
Til that the bryȝte sunne loste his hewo	1016
ffor thorisonte refte þe sunne his lyȝt	
This is as meche to seye as it was nyȝt	
And hom they goon In Ioye & in solas	
Saue only wreche Aurelius allas	1020

He to his hous is goon with sorweful herte
 He seth he may not from his deth asterte
 Hym somede that he felte his herte colde
 Vp to the heuene hise hondis he gan holde 1024
 And on hise kneis bare he sette hym doun
 And in his rauynge seyde his orysoun
 ffor varray woo out of his wit he broyde
 He nyste what he spak but thus he seyde 1028
 With pitous herte his pleynt hath he bygunne
 Vnto the goddis & fyrst vp to the sunne
 ¶ He seyde Appollo god & gouernour
 Of euery plaunte herbe tre & flour 1032
 That zeuyt aftyr thi declinacioun
 [leaf 291]
 To eche of hem his tyme & his sesoun
 As thyn herberwe chaungith lowe & hyghe
 Lord phebus cast thyn merciabie Iye 1036
 On wrechede auryele wheche that am but lorn
 Lo lord myn lady hath myn deth I-sworn
 With-outyn gilt but thyn benyngnete
 Vp-on myn dedly herte haue sum petee 1040
 ffor wel I wot lord phebus If thou lest
 ze may me helpe saue myn lady best
 Now vouchith saf that I may 3ow deuyse
 How that I may been holpe & in what wyse 1044
 ¶ 3oure blysful systyr luciane the schene
 That of the see is cheef goddesse & queene
 Thow neptinius haue deyte on the see
 3it Enaparense a-bouyn hym is sche 1048
 ze knowyn weel lord that ryzt as hire desyr
 is to been quykyd & lyghtenyd of 3oure fyer
 ffor whiche sche folwyth 3ow ful busyly
 Ryzt so the see desyryth naturally 1052
 To folwyn hire as sche that is goddesse
 Bothe in the se & ryuerys more & lesse
 Therefore lord phebus this is myn request
 Do this myrakele or do myn herte brest 1056

That now next at this opposicioun
 Which in the sygne schal be of the lyoun
 As preyeth hire so greet a flood to brynge
 That fyue fademe at the leste it ouyr spryng 1060
 The hyeste rok in armorik briteyne
 And lat this fiod endure 3erys tweyne
 Thanne sertys to myn lady may I seye
 Holdyth 3oure heste the rokkis been a-vey 1064
 Lord phebus doth this myrakele for me
 Preyeth hyr sche go no fastere cours than 3e
 I seye preye 3oure systyr that sche goo
 Non fastere course / these 3erys two 1068
 Thanne schal sche been at the fulle alwey
 And spryng flood laste bothe nyght & day
 And but she wouchesaf in swich maneere [leaf 291, back]
 To graunte me myn souereyn lady deere 1072
 Preye hire to synke euery rokke a-doovn
 In to hire owene derke regioun
 Vndyr the ground there ¹pluto dwellyth Inne [plu corrected]
 Or neuere more schal I myn lady wyne 1076
 Thy temple in delphos wil I barfoot seke
 Lord phebus se the teris on myn cheke
 And of myn peyne haue compassioun
 And with word for sorwe he fel a-doun 1080
²And long tyme he lay / forth in a traunce² [² on an erasure]
 His brothir which that knew of his penance
 Vp cau3te hym / & to bedde hath hym brou3t
 Dispeyrede in this turnement & this thoght 1084
 Lete I this woful creature lye
 Chese he for me / where he wele leue or dye
 ¶ Arueragus / with heye³ & gret honour [y corrected]
 As he that was of chyualrye the flour 1088
 Is comyn hom & othere worthy men
 O blysful art tow now thow Dorigeoun
 That hast thyn lusty husbonde in thyne armys
 The frosche kny3t the worthi man of armys 1092

That louyt the as his owene hertis lyf
 Noth'ng luste hym to be ymaginatyf
 ȝif ony wight hadde spoke whil he was oute
 To hire of loue he hadde of it no doute 1096
 He not entandyth to no swich matere
 But daunceith lustyth makyth hire good chere
 And thus in Ioye & blysse I leete hem dwelle
 And of the sike Aurelyus I wele ȝow telle 1100
 ¶ In langure & in turnemen furyus
 Two ȝeer & moore lay wreche aurelyus
 Er ony foote he myȝte on erthe goon
 Ne confort in this tyme ne hadde he noon 1104
 Saue of his brothir which that was a clerk
 He knew of al this wo & al this werk
 ffor to noon othir creature certeyn
 Of this matere he durste no word seyn 1108
 Vndyr his brest he bar it sore
 And so fer forth it greuede hym ^{the} moore
 Than euere dede Pamplius or Galatheene [leaf 224] [spurious]
 His brest was sor *with*-outyn for to sene
 But in his herte ay was the arwe kene 1112
 And weel ȝe knowe that of a sursanuro
 In surgerye is *parlious* the cure
 But men myȝte tuche the arwe or come therby
 His brothir wep & waylede pryuely 1116
 Til at the laste hym fil in remembraunce
 That whil he was at orlionys in fraunce
 As ȝonge clerkis that been likerous
 To rendyn artis that been curious 1120
 Sekin in eueri halk & euery herne
 Particuler sciencis for to lerne
 He hym remembrede that vp-on a day
 At orlionys in stodie he say 1124
 Of magyk naturel whiche that his felawe
 That was that tyme a bachelor of lawe
 Al were he there to lerne a nothir craft
 Hadde priuily vp on his deske laft 1128

nota bacularius

Touchynge the eyghte & twenty manciousnys	1130
That longyn to the moone & swich folye	1131
Swich book that spak meche of the operaciounys	1129
[As in oure dayes nys not worpe a flye]	[Sloane 1686]
ffor holycherchis feyth in oure beleue	1133
Ne suffere noone illusiounys vs to greue	
And whan this bok was in remembraunce	
Anoon for ioye his harte gan to daunce	1136
And to hym self he seyde pryuyly	
Myn brother schal been warshit ¹ hastily	[¹ rahl corrected]
ffor I am sekyr that there ben sciencis	
By whiche men mak diuers apparencis	1140
Sweche as these subtile tregettours pleye	
ffor ofte at festis / haue I weel herd seye	
That tregettours with-inne an halle large	
Haue mad come in a watyr & a barge	1144
And in the halle rowyn vp & doun	
Sumtyme haue semyd to come a grym lyoun	
And sumtyme flouris sprynge as in a mede	[leaf 222, back]
Sumtyme a vine & grapis white & reede	1148
Sumtyme a castel al of lym & stoon	
And whan hym lykith woydede it anoon	
Thus semede it to euery manys syzt	
Now thanne conclude I thus as zif I myght	1152
At orlyonys sum old felaue I fynde	
That hadde these monys manciousnys in mynde	
Or othere Magyk naturel a-boue	
He schulde weel make myn brothir han his love	1156
ffor with apparens a clerk may make	
To manys syzt that alle the rokkis blake	
Of Brytayne were voydede euerychon	
And schippis by the brynke comyn & goon	1160
And in swich forme endure a day or two	
Thanne were myn brothir warsched of his woo	
Thanne muste sche nedys holdyn hyre by-hest	
Or ellis he schal schame hire at the leste	1164

What schulde I make a lengere tale of this
 Vnto hise brotheris bed he comyn is
 And swich confort he ȝaf hym for to goon
 To Orlyonys that he vp styrtē a-noon 1168
 And in his weye forward is he fare
 In hope for to been lessede of his care
 Whan they were come / almost to that cete
 But ȝif it were a two furlong or thre 1172
 A ȝong clerk romynge by hym self he mette
 Whiche that in latyn thurstily hym grette
 And aftyr that he seyde a wondyr thyng
 I knowe quod he the cause of ȝoure comyng 1176
 And er they ferthere ony foote wente
 He told hem al that was in here entente
 This Britoun Clerk hym askede of felawys
 The whiche hem had knowe of olde dawis 1180
 And he answerde hem that they dede were
 ffor which he wepte ful ofte manye a teere
 Doun of his hors Aurelyus lyȝte a-non
 And with this Magicien forth is he gon 1184
 Hom to his hous & maade hem wel at eese [leaf 202]
 Hem lakkedē no vitayle that myghte hem please
 So weel arayede hous as there was oon
 Aurelyus in his lyf saw neuere noon 1188
 He shewede hym er he wente to soper
 fforeetis / parkis ful of wylde deer
 There saugh he hertis w^{ith} here hornys hye
 The gretteste that euere were seyn¹ w^{ith} Iye [1 first seen]
 He saw of hem an hunderede weere slayn w^{ith} houndis
 And some w^{ith} arwis blodde of bittere wondys
 He say whan woyded were the wylde deer
 The fauncounneris vp-on a fayr reuer 1196
 That with here haukys han the heyroun slayn
 Tho saugh he knyȝtis slayn in a playn² [2 a altered]
 And aftyr this he dede hym swich plesaunce
 That he hym schewede his lady on a dau[n]ce 1200

On whiche hym selue daunsede as hym thouȝte
 And whanne this Maystyr that this Magik wrouȝt
 Saw it was tyme he clapte hise handis two
 And farweel al oure reuel was a go 1204
 And remouēde they neuere out of the hous
 Whil they seye al the syght meruelious
 But in hise stodie there as hise bokys be
 They seetyn stille & no whit but they thre 1208
 To hym his maystir callede his squyer
 And seyde thus is redy oure ¹soper [1 so altered]
 Almost an hour it is I vndyrtake
 Sythe I ȝow bad oure soper for to make 1212
 Whan that these worthi men wentyn with me
 In-to myne stodye there as mynne bokis be
 Syre quod this squyer whan that it lykyth ȝow
 It is al redy thow ȝe wele rygh now 1216
 Go we thanne suppe as for the beste
 These amerouse folk sumtyme mote han reste
 At aftyr soper felle they in trette
 What summe schulde this maysteris gerdoun bee 1220
 To remeuyñ alle the rokkis of bretayne
 And ek from Gerounde to the mount of Sayne [2 first strong]
 He made it straung² & swor so god hym saue [leaf 202, back]
 Lasse than a thousent pound wolde he nat haue 1224
 Ne gladli³ for that summe wolde he nat goon [2 1 later]
 Aurelyus with blysful herte a-noon
 Answerde thus fy on a thousent pound
 This wide world which that men seyn is round 1228
 I wolde it ȝeue ȝif I weere lord of it
 This bargayn is ful drewyn for we been knyȝt
 ȝe schal been payed trewely be myn trouthe
 But lokyth now for no necligence ne slouthe 1232
 ȝe tarye vs no lengere than to morwe
 Nay, quod this clerk / here myn feyth to borwe
 To bedde is goon Aurelius whan hym leste
 And wel nygh al that nyght he hadde his reste 1236

What for his labour & his hope of blys
 His woful herte of penaunce hadde a lys
 Vp on the morwe whan that it was day
 To bryteyne toke they the ryzte way 1240
 Aurelyus & the Magicoun by syde
 And been descendit there they wele vnbyde
 And this was as the bokys me remembre
 The colde frosty sesoun of decembre¹ [1 c corrected] 1244
 Phebus wex old & hewid lyk latoun
 That in his hote declynacioun
 Schon as the burnet gold with streemys bryzte
 But now in Caprycorn adoun he lyghte 1248
 Where as he schon ful pale I dar weel seyn
 The bittere frostis with the sleet & reyn
 Distroyed hat the grene & euery 3erd² [2 r altered]
 Ianus sit by the fyr with double berd 1252
 And drynkyth of hyse bugle horn the wyn
 By-forh hym stant braun / of the tuskyd swyn
 An Nowel syngyth / eueuery lusty man
 Aurelius in al that euere he can 1256
 Doth to his maystyr chier & reuerence
 And preyeth hym to don his dyligence
 To bryngyn hym out of hise peynys smerte
 Or with a sword that he wolde slytte his herte 1260
 This subtyl clerk swych routhe hadde of this man [leaf 204]
 That nygh[t] & day he spedde hym as he kan
 To waytyn a tyme of his conclusioun
 That is to seyne to makyn illusioun 1264
 By swich an apparens or iogilrye
 I ne can no termys of astrologie
 That sche & euery wygh[t] schulde wene & seye
 That of Brytayne the rokkys were a-weye 1268
 Or ellys they were sunkyn vndyr grounde
 So at the laste he hath his tyme I-founde
 To make hise Iapis & hise wrechedenesse
 Of swich a supersticious cursedenesse 1272

Hise tablis colletanes / forth he brouzte
 fful weel correctid / ne there lakkede nough[t]
 Neythir his collect / ne his expans 3eeris
 Ne hise rotis ne hise othere geris 1276
 As been hise sentris & hise argumentis
 And hise proporciounnys conuenientis
 ffor hise equation[n]s / in euery thyng
 And by his .8°. speere / in his werkyng 1280
 He knew ful weel / hu fer Alnath was schoue
 ffro the hed of thilke¹ / fixe aries a-boue [1. first thilke]
 That in the nynte speere considered is
 fful subtilly he calkelid al this 1284
 Whan he hadde founde his fyrste mancioun
 He knew the remenaunt / by proporeyoun
 And knew tharysyng of the moone weal
 And in whos face & terme euerideel 1288
 And knew ful weel the monys mancioun
 A-cordaunt to his operacioun
 And knew also hise othere obseruauncis
 ffor sweche illusiounnys & sweche myschauncis 1292
 As hethene folk vsedyn / in thilke dayis
 ffor which no lengere makyth he delayis
 But thour his magik for a wyke or tweye
 It samede þat alle the rokkys were aweye 1296
 ¶ Aurelyus which that ȝit dispeyred is
 Where he schal han his loue / or fare a mys
 Awaytht nygh[t] & day on this myrakele [leaf 294, back]
 And whan he knew þat there was noon obstakele 1300
 That woydede weere the rokkys euerychon
 Doun to hise maysteris feet he fel a-noon
 And seyde I woful wreche aurelyus
 Thanke I³ ȝow lord & lady myn Venus [1. ȝo corrected] 1304
 That me han holpyn of myne caris colde
 And to the temple his weye forth hath helde
 Where as he knew he schulde his lady see
 And whan he saw his tyme a-noon ryght he 1308

With dredful herte & with humble cheere
 Saluyth hath his souereyn lady deere
 ¶ Myn ryghte lady quod this woful man
 Whom I most dreede & loue as I best can 1312
 And lothest weere of al this world displeese
 Neere it þat I for 3ow / haue swich diseese
 That I muste deyen here at 3oure fot a-non.
 Nat wolde I telle how me is wo bygoon 1316
 But sertys othir muste I deye or playne
 3e sle me gittles for veray peyne
 But of myn deth thow 3e han no routhe
 A-vyseth 3ow er than 3e breke 3oure trouthe 1320
 repente 3ow for thilke god a-boue
 Er 3e me sle by cause that I 3ow loue
 ffor madame weel 3e wot what 3e han hy3t
 Nat that I chalange ony thyng of ryght 1324
 Of 3ow myn souereyn lady but 3oure grace
 But in a gardyn / 3ond in swich a place
 3e woot ry3t weel what 3e be-hyghtyn me
 And in myn hand 3oure trouthe plyghte 3e 1328
 To loue me god wot 3e seyde so
 Al be that I vnworthi am therto
 Madame I speke it for the honour of 3ow
 Moore than to saue myn hertys lyf ry3t now 1332
 I haue don so as 3e comaundede me
 And 3if 3e vouche saf 3e may go se
 Doth as 3ow lyste hauyth 3oure heste in mynde
 ffor quyk or ded rygh[t] there 3e schul me fynde 1336
 In 3ow lyth al to do me lyue or deye [leaf 290]
 But weel I wot the rolkis been a-weye
 He takyth his leue & sche a-stonyd stod
 In al hire face nas a drope of blood 1340
 Sche wenede neuere / haue come in swich a trappe
 Allas quod sche that euere this schulde happe
 ffor wende I neuere by possibilite
 That swich a monstre or merueyle myghte be 1344

It is ageyn the prosses of nature
 And hom sche goth a sorweful *criature*
 ffor verray fer onethe/ may sche go
 Sche wepith waylyth al a day or two 1348
 And swounnyth that routhe it was to see
 But whi it was to no wyzt tolde schee
 ffor out of touanne was goon arueragus
 But to hire self sche spak & seyde thus 1352
 With pale face & with ful sorweful cheere
 In hire compleynt as ȝe schal aftyr heere
 ¶ Allas quod sche on the fortune I pleyne
 That vndyr wrapped / hast me in thyn cheyne 1356
 ffor which to skape¹ woot I no socour [¹ kap corrected]
 Saue only deth / or ellys dishonour
 Oon of these two / by-howith me to cheese
 But na-theles ȝit haue I leuere to lese 1360
 Myn lyf than of myn body to han a schame
 Or knowyn myn self² fals or lese myn name [² el corrected]
 And with myn deth I may been quit I-wis
 Hat there nat manye a noble wyf er this 1364
 And manye a maydyn I-slayn hire self allas
 rathere than with hire body don trespas
 ȝis certis lo these storyis bere witnessse
 Whan thretty tirauntis ful of cursedenesse 1368
 Hadde slayn Phidoun in atthenes³ at the feste [³ h altered]
 They comaundit his doughtren for tareste
 And bryngyn here⁴ by-forn hym in despit [⁴ first he]
 Al nakid to fulfille his foule delyt 1372
 And in here fadyris blood they made hem daunce
 Vp on the pauement god ȝeue hym myschance
 ffor which these woful maydenys ful of drede [⁵ leaf 294, back]
 Rathere than thy wolde lese here maydynheede 1376
 They⁵ priuily ben styrt in-to a welle [⁵ ey corrected]
 And drenkte hem seluyn as the bokys telle
 ¶ They of Measene lete enquire & seke
 Of Iatedomye fifty madenys eke 1380

On whiche they wolde doon here lecherye
 But was theere noon of al that cumpaynye
 That sche nas slayn & with a good¹ entente [1 first god]
 Ches rathere for to deye / than assente 1384
 To been oppressed of hire maydynhede
 Whi schulde I thanne to deye been en drede
 ¶ Loke ek the ²tyraunt aristoclides [2 by corrected]
 That louede a mayden / hyghte stymphabides 1388
 Whan that hire fadyr slay was on a nyght
 On to dyane temple goth sche ryȝt
 And hente the emage in hire armys two
 from which I-mage wolde sche nat go 1392
 No whygh[t] myghte hire handys of it a-race
 Tyl sche was slayn ryȝt in the selue place
 ¶ Now sythe that maydenys / ³haddyn swich dispit [3 ad cor.]
 To been defoyled with manys foule delyt 1396
 Weel oghte a wyf⁴ rathere hyre selue slee [4 t corrected]
 Than been defoyled as it semyth mee
 What schal I seye of hasdrubales wyf
 That at cartage be-rafte hire self hire lyf 1400
 Whan⁵ sche say that romaynys wan the touzn [5 'that' scratched out]
 Sche tok hire chyldere alle & skypte a-doun
 In-to the fer & ches rathere to deye
 Than ony romayn dede hire vilanye⁶ [6 n altered] 1404
 ¶ Hath not lucesse I-slayn hire self allas
 At rome whan sche oppressed⁷ was [7 o. pres corrected]
 Of Tarquyn for hire thoughte it was a schame
 To lyuyn whan sche hadde lost hire name 1408
 ¶ The seuene maydenys of Melesye also
 Han slayn hem self for verray drede & wo
 rathere than folk of gaule hem schulde opperessse
 Mo than a thousent storyis as I gesse 1412
 Coude I now telle as touchynge this mateere [leaf 236]
 ¶ Whan Hadrabate was slayn his wyf so deere
 Hire selvyn slow / & leet hire blood to glyde
 In Hadrabis woundis deepe & wyde 1416

And seyde myn body at the leste way
 There schal no man defoylyn 3if I may
 What schulde I mo ensaumplys hereof sayn
 Syn that so manye / han hem selue slayn 1420
 Wel rathere than they wolde defoyled be
 I wele conclude that it is bet to me
 To slen myn self than ben defoyled thus
 I wele been trewe vn-to ¹Arueragus [¹ A corrected] 1424
 Or rathere slen myn self² in sum manere [² el corrected]
 ¶ As dede democienys doughtyr deere
 Bi-cause sche wolde not defoyld be
 ¶ O Cedasus it is ful greet pite 1428
 To redyn how thynne doughteryn deyedyn allas
 That slow hem self for swych manere cas
 ¶ As greet a pyte was it or wel moore
 The theban maydyn that for nychanore 1432
 Hire seluyn slow / ryzt for swych maner wo
 ¶ A nothir theban maydyn dede ryzt so
 ffor on of massedoyne hadde hire oppressed
 Sche with hyre deth hyre maydynhed redressed 1436
 ¶ What schal I seyn of nycherates wyf
 That for swich cas berafte hire self hyre lyf
 ¶ How trowe 3e ek was Althebiades
 Hyre loue al rathere for to deyen chees 1440
 Than for to sufferyn hyse³ body onburyede be [³ first hyre]
 ¶ Loo which a wyf was Alceste quod sche
 ¶ What seyth Omer of goode penolopee
 As Crece knowyth of hire chastitee 1444
 ¶ Parde of Lacedomya is wrytyn thus
 That whan at troye was slayn Protheselaus
 No lengere wolde sche leuyn after hise⁴ day [⁴ first hife]
 ¶ The same of noble porcya tellyn I may 1448
 With-outyn Brutus coude sche nat lyue
 To whom sche hadde al hol hire herte 3yue
 ¶ The parfyte wifhod of Arthemesye [leaf 296, back]
 Honoured is thour al the Barbarye 1452

¶ O Teuta queen / thyn wyfly chastitee
 To alle wyuys may a myroure bee
 [. *[Not in any Brit. Mus.,
 Cambr., or Bodleian MS,
 or Christ-Church.]*
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 Thus pleynede Dorigen a day or tweye 1457
 Purposynge euere that sche wolde deye
 But natheles vp-on the thredde nyȝt
 Hom cam Arueragus this worthy knyȝt 1460
 And axed hire why that sche weep so sore
 And sche gan wepyn euere lengere the more
 ¶ Allas quod sche that euere was I born
 Thus haue I seyde quod sche thus haue I sworn 1464
 And tolde hym al as ȝe han herd be-fore
 It nedith nat reherse ȝow no moore
 This husbonde with glad cheere in frendely wyse
 Answerede & seyde as I schal ȝow deuyse 1468
 Is there ought ellis / Dorigene but this
 Nay nay quod sche god helpe me so as wis
 This is to meche & it were godys wille
 ȝa wyf quod he / lat slepyn & be styлле 1472
 [hit may be wele ȝit perauenture to say *[Sloane 1685, l' 155, bk]*
 ȝe sholen yuore trouthe holden by youre fay]
 ffor god so wysely haue mercy vp-on me
 I hadde wel leuere I-stekyd for to be 1476
 ffor verray loue whiche that I to ȝow haue
 But ȝif ȝe schulde ȝoure trouthe kepe & ¹saue *[1st haue]*
 Trouthe is the heyeste thyng that man may kepe
 And with that word he brast a-non to weepe 1480
 And seyde I ȝow forbode vp payne of deth
 That neuere whil ȝow lastyt lyf or breth
 To wyght telle thow of this auenture
 As I best may I wele myn wo endure 1484
 Ne make no cuntenaunce of heuynesse
 That folk of ȝow may deme harm or gesse
 And forth he clepith a squyer & a mayde
 Goth forth a-non with Dorigene he sayde 1488

And bryngith hire to swich a place a-non
 They take here leue & on here weye they gon
 But they ne wyste why she thidyr wente
 He nolde no wight tellyn his entente 1492
 [. *[Not in any MS in the Brit. Mus., Cambridge or Oxford, or the Helmsingham MS. 1. 1493-8 known only in the Ellesmere MS.]*

 1496

 *no gap in the MS.]*
 This squier which that hy3te aurelyus [leaf 297]
 On Dorigene that was so amerous 1500
 Of auenture happede hire to meete
 A-myd the toun rygh[t] in the ¹quykkeste strete [¹y altered]
 As sche was boun to go the woye ful ry3t
 Toward the gardyn there that sche hadde hight 1504
 And he was to the gardynward also
 ffor weel he spyed whan sche wolde go
 Out of hire hous to ony maner place
 But thus they mette of auenture or grace 1508
 And he saluyth hire with good entente
 And axed hire whidyrward sche wente
 And sche answerde half as sche were mad
 Vn-to the gardyn as myn husbonde bad 1512
 Myn trouthe for to holde allas allas
 ¶ Aurelius gan wonderyn of this cas
 And in his herte hadde greet compassioun
 Of hire & of hire lamentacioun 1516
 And of Arueragus the worthi k³ight
 That bad hire holdyn al that sche hadde hi3t
 So loth hym was his wyf schulde breke hire trouthe
 And in his herte he caughte of this greet routhe 1520
 Considerynge the beste on euery syde
 That for his lust 3it were hym leuere a-byde
 Than don so high a cherliche wrechedenesse
 Agayns fraunchese of alle gentillesse² [² see later] 1524

for which in fewe wordys seyde he thus
 Madame sythe to 3oure lord Arueragus
 That sithe I se his grete gentillesse
 To 3ow & eek I se wel 3oure distresse 1528
 That he were leuere han schame & that were routhe
 Than 3e to me schulde breke thus 3oure trouthe
 I haue wel leuere euere to suffere wo
 Than I departe the loue by-twixe 3ow two 1532
 I 3ow relese madame in-to 3oure hond
 Quyt euery surement & euery bond
 That 3e han mad to me as here be-forn
 Sith thylke tyme which that 3e were born 1536
 Myn trouthe I¹ plyghte I schal 3ow neuere re-preue [1st 227, bk1]
 Of no behest & here I take myn leue [1st by first lnd]
 As of the treweste & the beste wyf
 That euere 3it I knew in al myn lyf 1540
 But euery wif be war of hire byheste
 On Dorigene / remembr[i]th at the leste
 Thus can a squyer doon a gentyl deede
 As weel as kan a kny3t / with-outyn drede 1544
 ¶ Sche thankede hym vp-on hire kneis al bare
 And hom vn-to hire husbonde is sche fare
 And told hym al a³ 3e han herd me seyd/
 And be 3e sykyr / he was so weel apayed 1548
 That weere impossible me to wryte
 What schulde I lengere / of this cas endyte
 Arueragus & Dorygene / his wyf
 In souereyn blysse leedyn forth here lyf 1552
 Neuere eft ne was there angyr hem be-twene
 He cherysseth hire ry3t as sche were a queene
 And sche was with hym trewe² for eueremoore [1st first trowe]
 Of these two folk 3e gete of me no more 1556
 ¶ Aurelyus that his cost hath al for-lorn
 Cursith the tyme that euere was he born
 Allas quod he allas that I be-hy3te
 Of purede gold a thousent pound of wighte 1560

On to this philysophere how schal I do
 I se namoore but that I am fordo
 Myn erytage mote I nedis selle
 And ben a beggere heere may I nat dwelle 1564
 And schamyn al myn kynrede in this place
 But I of hym may getyn betere grace
 But natheles I wele of hym assaye
 At serteyn dayis 3eer be 3er to paye 1568
 And thanke hym of his grette curteysye
 Myn trouthe wele I kepe I wele nat lye
 With herte sor he goth vnto his cofere
 And bryngith gold vn-to this philisophere 1572
 The valew of fyue hunderede pound I gesse
 And hym be-sechith of hise gentillesse¹ [¹ Camb. MS. leaves
298, 299, 300, and 301,
are cut out.]
 [To graunten hym dayes of þe payment [Sloane 1685, on f 157]
 And sayde Maystere .I. dare wele make a vaunte 1576
 I fayled neuere of my troupe 3et
 ffor sykerly my dette shalle be quyt
 Towardes 3owe howe þat euere I fare
 To gone a beggere in my kirtel bare 1580
 But wolde 3e vouche saue vpön suerte
 Two 3ere or þre for to respiten me
 Then were I welle for elles mot I selle
 Myne herytage þere nys no more to telle 1584
 Thys phylosophre soberly vnswareð
 And said þus when he þis worde herde
 haue I not holde Couenaunte vnto þe
 3ee certes wele and truly quod he 1588
 haste þou not hade þi lady as þe lykest
 No no quod he and sorowfuð he sizþe
 What was þe cause telle me yf þou can
 Aurelius his tale a-none be-gan 1592
 And tolde hym alle as 3e han hard by-fore
 hit nedith not to rehersen hit no more
 he sayd Arueragus of gentilnes [leaf 157, back]
 hade leuere dye in sorowe and dystresse 1596

CAMBRIDGE 364 (6-T. 524) [part, Sloane 1685]

Than hys wyf were of hir/ troupe false [Sloane 1685]
 The · sorowe of Doregen he tolde hym also
 howe · lope hir/ was to beñ a wykked wyf
 And þat she leuere þat day loſte · hir lyf 1600
 And þat hir/ troupe she · swore þorough Innocence
 Sche neuere erste herd ſpeke of apparence
 þat made me han of hir/ ſo grete pite
 And riȝt as frely as he ſent hir/ me 1604
 As frely ſent I hir/ to hym a-gayne
 Thys ys alle and ſomme þere nys no more to ſayne
 Thys phyloſofre answered leue broþer
 Euere yche of/ you did gentilneſſe to opere 1608
 þou arte a ſquyer/ and he ys a knyȝt
 But god for-bede for hys blyſfuȝt myȝt
 But ȝif a. Clerk' coupe do a gentel dede
 As wele as ony of you withouten drede 1612
 Sir/ I releſe þe þi þouſand pounde
 As þou riȝt nowe were copen oute of grounde
 Ne neuere or nowe hadest þou knowe me
 ffor I wylle not taken a peny of þe 1616
 ffor alle my craft and nouȝt for my travayle
 þou haſte y-payd wele for my vitayle
 It ys y-nouȝe and fare wele and haue god day
 And toke his hors and forth he gothe hys way 1620
 Lordynges. þis queſtion wylle I axe nowe
 Whiche was þe moſt fre as þenkeþe you
 Now telleþe me or þat I ferthere wende
 I can no more my tale ys at an ende 1624
 Here endithe þe Frankeleyns tale]

[The Doctor's Tale followed in the Cambridge MS: one
 leaf only, 302, is left.]

GROUP C. FRAGMENT IV.

§ 1. THE DOCTOR'S TALE.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

[and begynneth þe tale [Sloane MS 1685,
on leaf 178]

There was as tellith me Titus lyueus.
A knyȝt/ þat clepid was Virgineus
Fulfylld of honoures and of worþinesse
And stronge of ffrendes and of grete rychesse [leaf 178, back]
A douȝtyr/ he hade by hys wyf/ 5
And neuere hade he mo in alle hys lyf ·
ffayre was þis mayde in excellent beute
A-bouen euery wyȝt/ þat man may see · 8
ffor nature haþe with souereyne diligence
ffourmyd hir/ in so grete excellence
As þouȝe she wolde say loo I nature
Thus can I forme and peynt/ a creature 12
Whan þat/ me lyst/ who can me counterfet/
Pignalyon nouȝt þouȝe he alwey forge and beta
Or graue or peynte for y dare wele sayne
Apollus ȝepherus shulde worche in vayne 16
To graue or peynte or forge or bete
ȝif/ þei presumyd me forto conterfete
ffor he þat ys þe formour principal
Hath made me his Vikar/ general 20
To forme and peynte eche erthly creature
Ryȝt/ as me lyste for alle thynges ys in my cure
Vnder/ þe mone þat may wane or waxe
And for my werke no þenge wille I axe 24

CAMBRIDGE 356 (6-T. 303) [this page, Sloane 1685]

My lord/ and I ben fully at accorde [Sloane MS 1654]
 I made hir/ to þe worshiþe of my lord
 So do I alle myne opere creatures ·
 Of what coloure þei be or what figures 28
 þus semethe me þat nature wolle say
 This mayde was of/ age twelue þeere & twey
 In whiche þat nature hath suche delyte
 For riȝt/ as she can peynte as lyly white 32
 And rudy as roose riȝt with/ suche paynture
 She paynteth hath þis noble creature
 Or she was borne vpon hir/ lymes fre
 Were also bryȝt/ as suche coloures shuld be 36
 And Phebus dyed hade hir/ tressys grete
 Lyke to þe stremes of his bornyd heete
 And ȝif þat excellent was hir/ beaute ·
 A þousand sithe more Vertuose was she [leaf 179] 40
 In her/ ne lacked no condicioun
 That/ ys to preyse as by discrecioun
 As wele in body as goste Chast was she
 ffor whiche she floured in Virgynite 44
 With alle humilite and abstynence
 With alle temperance & pacience
 With mesure eke and berynge of array
 Discrete she was in answeyng alway 48
 Though she were wys as Pallas dar I sayne
 hir/ faucond eke fulle womanly & pleyne
 None counterfetid termes hade she
 To seme wys but / after/ hir/ degre 52
 Sche spake alle hir/ wordes more and lesse
 Sounynge in vertu and in gentilnesse
 Constant in hert / and euere in besynesse 56
 Schamefaste she was in maydens shamefastnesse 55
 To dryue hir/ oute of hir/ slougardy
 Bacus hade of/ hir/ mouthe no Maystrie
 ffor wyll and þouȝt done Venus encrece
 As men in fyre wille casten oyle or grece 60

And of/ hir/ owen vertu vnconstreyned [Sloane MS 1685]
 She hathe fulle ofte tyme hir/ seeke feyned
 ffor þat she wolde fle þe companye
 Where likly was to treten of foly 64
 As ys at feestes Reueles and at daunces
 þat/ bene occasions of/ dalyaunces
 Suche thynges maken · Chyldren for to be
 To sone rype and bolde as men may see 68
 Whyche ys fulle peryllous and hath bene yore
 ffor alle to sone may she lerne lore
 Of/ boldenesse whan she ys a wyf
 And 3e maystresses in youre olde lyf 72
 þat/ lordes douȝters han in gouernaunce
 Ne taketh of/ my worde no displesaunce
 Thynges þat ben sette in gouernynge ·
 Of lordes douȝters only for two thynges [leaf 178, back] 76
 Ouper for 3e han kepte youre honeste
 Opere elles 3e han fallen in frelete
 And knowen wele ynouȝe þe olde daunce
 And conne for-sake fully myschaunce 80
 ffor euermo · þerfore for crystes sake
 kepeth wele þo · þat 3e Vndirtake
 A theefe of venesof þat hath for-laft
 his lycouresnesse and alle his pefes craft 84
 kan kepe a forest best/ of any man
 Nowe kepeth hem wel for and 3e wele kan
 lokeþe wele þat to no vice 3e assent
 Leest/ 3e be dampned for youre euel entent 88
 ffor who so dothe a traytour ys certayn
 And taketh of þat þat I shal sayn
 Of/ alle tresoun suffreyn pestelence
 Ys whan a wyȝt be-trayth Innocence 92
 3e fadres and 3e modres eke also
 Thogh 3e haue Childre by it one or two
 3oure ys þe charge of alle her/ sufferaunce
 Whiles þei bene vnder/ gouernaunce 96

Be ware þat be ensample of/ youre liuyng [Sloane MS 1685]
 Outher by negligence of Chastisyng
 That þei ne peryssh for I dare wele say
 3if þat/ þei done 3e shulle fulle sore obeye 100
 Vnder .a. sheperð softe and negligente
 The wolfe hath many an sheepe & lambe to-rente
 Suffiseth on · ensample nowe as here
 ffor I mote turne a-eyne to my matere 104
 Thys mayde of whiche I telle my tale expresse
 Sche kepte hir selfe hir/ nedeth no maystresse
 ffor in hir lyuyng maydens myȝt/ rede
 As in a booke euery gode worde & dede 108
 That longethe to a mayde vertuous
 Sche was so prudent and so bounteuons ·
 ffor whiche oute spronge on euery syde
 Bothe of hir/ beaute and of hir/ bounte wyde [leaf 180] 112
 þat/ þorouȝe þe londe þei preysed hir eccheone
 That/ louyd vertu safe Envie allone
 þat/ sorye ys of opere mennes wele
 And glad ys of hys sorowe and vnhele 116
 The docture maketh þis discripcioun
 Thys mayde wente on a day into þe toun
 Toward þe temple with hir/ moder/ dere
 As ys of yonge maydens þe manere 120
 // Now was þere a Iustice in þe toun
 þat/ gouernour was of þat regioun
 And so by-felle thys Iuge hys eyȝen caste
 Vpon þis mayde avisynge hir/ fulle faste 124
 As she come forth by þere þe Iuge stode
 A-none his hert chaungeth and hys mode
 So was he/ cauȝt/ with beaute of þis mayde
 And to hym · self/ fulle pryuely he saide 128
 Thys mayde shalle be myne for ony man
 A-noone þe feende in-to hys hert/ ranne
 And tauȝte hym sodeynly by/ what sleiȝt/
 þe mayde to hys purpos wyne he myȝt/ 132

ffor certes by no force ne by no mede [Sloane MS 1685]
 hym þouȝt he was not able for to spede
 ffor he was stronge of frendes and eke she
 Confermyd was in suche souereyne beaute 136
 þat/ wele he wyste he myȝt/ hir/ nevere wynne
 As for to make hir with hir/ body synne
 ffor whiche with grete deliberacioun
 he sent/ aftyr/ a Clerk/ in-to þe toun 140
 The whiche he knewe for sotelle and for bolde
 Thys Iuge vnto þis Clerk' his tale hathe tolde
 I sece wyse and made hym to assure
 he shulde telle it to no creature 144
 And ȝif/ he did he shulde lese hys hede
 Whan ascented was þis cursid reede
 Glad was þe Iuge and made glad chere
 And ȝafe hym ȝiftes precious & dere [leaf 180, back] 148
 Whan shapen was alle þis conspiracie
 from poynt to poynt how þat his lecherie
 Perfourmed shulde be fulle sotelly
 As ȝe shalle here and afterwarð opunly 152
 home gothe þis. Clerk' þat hiȝt Claudius.
 Thys false Iuge þat/ hiȝt Apius.
 So was hys name for it ys no fable
 But/ knowen for an historialle penge notable 156
 The sentence of/ hit sothe ys oute of/ doute
 Thys false Iuge gothe nowe faste a-boute
 To hasten his delyte al þat/ he may
 And so by-felle sone after/ on a day 160
 Thys false Iuge as tellethe vs þe storie
 As he was wonte sat' in his consistorie
 And ȝaue his domes vpon sundry caas.
 This false clerke come forthe a wele gode paas. 164
 And said lord ȝif it be youre wille
 ȝis dothe me riȝt/ vpon þis pitous bille] [Sloane extract ends]
 In which I pleyne vp-on virginus [Camb. Univ. Lib. MS
Gg. 4. 27, leaf 302]
 And ȝif he wele seyn it is not thus 168

I wele it preue / & fynde it good witnessse
 That soth is that myn bille wele expresse
 The Iuge answerde / of this in his absence
 I may not ȝeue diffynytiue sentence 172
 Lat do hym calle & I wele gladli here
 Thow schalt haue alle ryȝt & no wrong heere
 Virgynyus cam to wete the Iugis wille
 And ryȝt a-non was rad this cursede bylle 176
 The sentence of it was as ȝe schul here
 To ȝow myn lord sire apius so deere
 Schewith ȝoure poure seruau[n]t claudyus
 How that a knygh[t] / callyd virgynyus 180
 A-geyns the lawe a-geyn alle equitye
 Holdyth expres a-geyn the wil of me
 Myn seruant which that 'is myn¹ thral be ryȝt [—¹ later]
 Whiche from myn hous was stole vp-on a nyȝt 184
 Whil that sche was ful ȝyng this wele I preue
 By witnessse lord so that it nat ȝow greue
 Sche nys his doughty[r] / nat what so he seye
 Wherefore to ȝow myn lord ȝe Iuge I preye 188
 ȝilde me my thral / ȝif þat it be ȝoure wille
 Lo this was al the sentens of his bille
 Virginius gan vp-on the cherl be-holde
 But hastyly er he his tale tolde 192
 And wolde a preued it as schulde a knyȝt
 And ek by witnessse of manye a wight
 That it was fals that seyde his aduersarye
 This cursede Iuge wolde no thyng tarye 196
 Ne here a word more of virginus
 But ȝaf his Iugement & seyde thus
 I deme a-noon / this cherl his seruau[n]t haue
 Thow schalt no lengere / in thyn hous² here saue³ [² ous & 1-2
corrected]
 Go brynge hire forth / & putte hire in owere warde 201
 This cherl schal han / his thral this I awrarde
 And whan this worthi / knyȝt virgynyus
 Thour sentence / of this Iustyse Apyus 204

✱

Muste be forse his dere douȝtyr ȝeuȝ [leaf 302, back]
 Vn-to the Iuge in lecherye to lyuyn
 He goth hym hom & settyth hym in his halle
 And leet a-non his deere douȝtyr calle 208
 And with a face ded as aschyn colde
 Vp-on hire humble face he gan by-holde
 With faderys pite styngynge thour his herte
 Al wolde he not from his purpos conuerte 212
 Douȝtyr quod he virginia bi thyn name
 There been two woyis othir ded or schame
 That þou muste suffere alas that I was bore
 ffor neuere thow deseruedist wherefore 216
 To deyen with a swerd or wit a knyf
 O deere douȝtyr endere of myn lyf
 Which I haue fostered vp with swich plesaunce
 That thow were neuere out of myn remembraunce 220
 O douȝtyr¹ which that art myn laste wo [yr corrected]
 And in myn lyf myn laste Ioye also
 O gemme of chastite in pacience
 Take thow thyn deth for this is myn sentence 224
 ffor loue & not for hate þou muste be deed
 Myn pitous hand mote smytyn of thyn heed
 Allas that euere apius the say
 Thus hath he falsely Iuged the to day 228
 And tolde hire al the case as ȝe be-fore². [2 a later]
 Han herd / nought nedyth for to telle it more.
 O mercy dere fadyr quod this mayde. 231
 And with that word sche bothe³ hire armys layde [3 he corr.]
 Aboute his nekke as sche was wont to do.
 The teris broste out of hise eyen two
 And seyde goode fadyr schal I deye
 Is there no grace is there no remedye 236
 No certis dere douȝtyr myn quod he
 Thanne ȝeue me leue fadyr myn quod sche
 Myn deth for to compleyne a lytyl space
 Pardo Iepte ȝaf his douȝtyr grace 240

ffor to compleyne er he hire slow allas
 And god it wot no thyng was hire trespas [Camh. MS has lost
a leaver]
 [But þat she ranne hir/ fadir/ fyrst/ to see [Sloane MS 1695,
on leaf 181, back]
 To welcome hym with grete sollempnité 244
 And with þat worde she felle on swoune a-noone
 And afty/ whan hir/ swonyng was gone
 Sche risethe vp and to hir/ fadir/ sayde
 Blessyd be god þat I shalle deye a mayda 248
 gif/ me my dethe or þat/ I haue a shame
 Dothe with youre childe youre wille of goddes name
 And with þat worde she praythe fulle ofte
 þat with his swerde he schulde smyte hir/ softe 252
 And with þat/ worde on swone doune she felle
 Hir fadyr/ with fulle sorowfulle hert/ and fel
 Hir/ heede of/ smote and by þe top it hent/
 And to þe Iuge he yaue it/ to present [leaf 182] 256
 As he sat in hys dome in consistorie
 What þe Iuge it sawe as saithe þe storie
 He bade take hym and honge hym also faste
 But riȝt/ a-nōōn alle þe peple in þraste 260
 To saue þe knyȝt/ for reuthe and for pite
 ffor knowen was þe folys Iniquyte
 The peple a-none hade suspecte in þis thyng
 By manere of thys Clerkes chalengyng 264
 That it was by þe assent/ of Apius .
 They wyste wele þat he was lecherous .
 ffor whiche vnto þis Apius þei gone
 And kysten hym in prison riȝt anone 268
 Where as he slouȝe hym self/ and claudius
 þat seruaunt was vnto þis apius .
 Was demed for [to] hange vpon a tre
 But Virgineus of/ his grete pite 272
 Prayde for hym þat he was exiled
 And elles certes he hade be begyled .
 The remenaunt were honged more & lesse
 þat consentid weren to his cursidnesse 276

311 SIX-TEXT
 GROUP C. § 1. DOCTOR'S TALE. Cambridge MS.

here may men see how synne hathe hys merite [Sloane MS 1685]

Be ware for no man wote howe god wille smyte

In no degre ne in whiche manere wyse ·

The worme of conscience wyll aryse 280

Of wycked lyf/ þouȝe it/ so preue be

þat/ no man woote of hit but god and he.

Wheþere he be lewed man or leryd

he note howe sone þat he may ben a-feryd · 284

Therefore I rede you þis counselle take

ffor-sakeþe synne or synne you for-sake

Here endethe þe tale of þe Mayster of phisyk/

[Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 182.]

[Here begynneth þe prologge of/ þe Perdonere

¹ O ure oste gan swere as he were woode [? MS Z, E, or I.]
 Harrowe quod he by nayles and by bloode 288
 Thys was a false Clerk/ and a false Iustice

As shamefulle deth as tonge can deuysel [leaf 182, back]

Come to þe Iustice and hir/ aduocase
 Algate þis sely woman ys slayne Alas. 292

Alas [to] dere a-bouȝte she Bewte
 Wherefore I say al day þat men may see
 þat ȝift/ of fortune or of nature
 Ben cause of/ dethe of many a creature 296

[.
 no gap in the MS.]

As bothe ȝiftes as I speke of nowe
 Men han fulle ofte more harme þen prowre 300

But/ truly myn owen Maystre dere
 Thys ys a pitous tale forto here
 But natheles passe ouere ys no force
 I pray to god so saue þi gentel corse 304

And þine vrynales/ and þyne Ioudans
 Thyne ypocras and eke þi galyans
 And euery Boxe fulle of þi letuary
 God blesse hem and oure lady seynt/ mary 308

So mot I the þou art/ a propre man
 And I-lyke a prelate be seynt Runyan
 Saue þat/ I kon not/ speke wele in terme
 But/ wele I woote þou doest/ myn hert' erme 312

þat/ I haue almoste cauȝt a Cardiache
 By corps bones but/ yf/ I haue treacle
 Or. elles a drauȝt/ of moost' or corny ale
 Or but/ I here a-none a mery tale 316

CAMBRIDGE 365 (6-T. 312) [this page, Sloane 1685]

My hert/ ys loste for pite of pis mayde [Sloane MS 1685]
 Than belamy Iohn pardoner/ he sayd
 Telle vs some myrthe or some lapes here anone
 hit shal be done quod he by seynt/ runyon 320
 But first/ quod/ he at þe next/ ale stake
 I wol bothe dryng and ete of a kake
 But/ riȝt anone þise gentelys gan to crye
 Nay let/ hym telle vs of/ no rebandrye 324
 Tel vs some moral thenge þat/ we may here
 Some wytte and þan wille we gladly here
 I graunte I-wys quod he but/ I mot/ thynke
 Vpon some honest/ thyng whyle þat I drynke [leaf 183] 328

[Here] endeth þe Prolooge

[*Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 183.*]

and begynneth þe tale

Lor]dynges quod/ he in Chirche whan I preche
 [I] peyne me to haue an hautyn speche
 [And] rynges it/ oute as rounde as goth a belle
 ffor I con alle by roote þat I telle 332
 [My teme] ys alle-way on and euere was
 Radix omnium malorum est cupiditas
 ffyrst/ I pronounce whens þat I come
 And þan my bulles shewen alle and somme 336
 Oure lege lordes seal on my patent
 þat/ shewe I ffyrst/ my body to warant/
 That no man be so bolde prest nor Clerk
 Me to disturbe of/ crystes holy werke 340
 And after þat telle I forthe my tales
 Bulles of Popes and of/ Cardynales
 Of Patryarkes and Bysahopes I shewe
 And in laten I speke wordes fewe 344
 To sauere with my predicacioun
 And forto styrrer men to deuocioun
 þan shewe I forth my longe Cristal stones
 I-crommed fulle of/ cloutys and of bones 348
 Relikes þei bene as wene þei ychone
 þan haue I in laton a shulder bone
 Whiche þat was an holy Iewes shepe
 Goode men say I take at my wordes kepe 352
 3if þat þis bone be wasshen in a welle
 3if/ cowe or Calf/ shepe or Ox swelle
 þat any worme hathe ete or stonge
 A-boute þe herte or elles þe longe 356

CAMBRIDGE 367 (6-T. 314) [this page, Sloane 1685]

And it is hole a-none and ferthermore [Sloane MS 1685]
 Of/ pockes and of scabbe and of/ euery sore
 Shaft euery shepe be hole þat of þis well
 Drenkyth a draught/ take hede what I telle 360
 3if þat þe godeman þat þe bestes ouzte
 Wolle euery wooke or þat/ þe Cok/ hym cronthe/
 ffastyng drynke of/ þis well a draut/ [leaf 188, back]
 As pilke holy Iewe oure eldres tauzt/ 364
 hys beestes and hys store shal multrie
 And sires also it heleth Ielousey
 And pouze a man be fallen in a Ielouse rage
 let maken with þis water/ hys potage 368
 And neuere shal he hys wyf mystruste
 Thouze he þe sothe of his defaute wyste
 Alle hade she taken preestes two or thre
 here ys a myteyne eke þat/ ye may se 372
 he þat/ hys honde wylle putte in his myteyne
 he shalle haue multiplyenge in his greyne
 Whan he hathe sown be it Whete or Otes
 So þat/ he brynge me gode pans or elles grotes 376
 And men and women oo þenge I warne you
 3if/ ony wizt/ be in þis Chirche now
 þat/ hathe done synne horrible þat/ he
 Dare not/ for shame of it/ shryuen be 380
 Or ony woman be she yonge or olde
 þat/ hath made hir/ husbonde Cokewolde
 Suche folke shul haue no power ne no grace
 To offe to my rellekes in þis place 384
 And who fyndeth hym oute of suche blame
 They wol come vp and offe in goddes name] [Sloane extract
 ends]
 And I assolie hym be the autorite [Oamb. Univ. Lib. MS
 Gg. 4. 27, leaf 306]
 Which that by bulle is grauntid on-to me 388
 By this gaude haue I wonne 3eer be 3eer
 An hunderede mark sythe I was pardounneer
 I stonde lyk a clerk in myn pulpet
 And whan that the lewede peple is doun I-set 392

I preche so as ȝe han herd by-fore	
And telle an hunderede false lapis more	
Thanne peyne I me to streche forth myn nekke	
And est & west vp-on the peple I bekke	396
As doth a douue syttyng on a berne	
Mynne handys & myn tunge goon so ȝerne	
That it is loye to se myn besynesse	
Of auarice & of swich cursedenesse	400
Is al myn prechyng for to makyn hem fre	
To ȝeun here penys & nameli on-to me	
ffor myn entent is not but for to wyne	
And no thyng for correccioun of synne	404
I rekke neuere whanne that they been beryed	
Thow tha ¹¹ here soulis goon a blakeberied	[¹ corrected]
ffor certis manye a predicacioun	
Comyth ofte of euele entencioun	408
Some for plesaunce of folk & flaterye	
To been a-vansed be ypcocrysie	
And some for veynglorie & some for hate	
And whanne I dar non othere woyis debate	412
Thanne wele I styng men with myn tunge smerte	
In prechyng so that I schal nat a-sterre	
To been defamyd falsely that he	
Hath trespassed to myne brothir or to me	416
ffor thow I telle nat his proper name	
Men schal wel knowe þat it is the same	
By sygnys & be othere circumstauncis	
Thus quyte I folk that don vs displeauncis	420
Thus spitte I out myn venym vndyr hewe	
Of holynesse to semyn holy & trewe	
But schortely myn entent I wele deuyse	
I preche of no thyng but of coueytise	424
Therefore myn teme is ȝit & euere was	[leaf 205, back]
Radix malorum est cupiditas	
Thus can I preche a-ȝen the same vice	
Whiche that I vse & that is aueryce	428

But thow myn self be gilty in that synne
 3it can I make othere folk to twynne
 ffrom aueryce & sore to repente
 But that is nat myn pryncipal entente 432
 I preche no thyng but for coueytyse
 Of this matire it ouzte I-nogh suffice
 Thanne telle I hem ensaumplys many on
 Of olde storyis long tyme a goon 436
 ffor lewede peple louyn talys olde
 Sweche thyngis can they wel reporte & holde
 What trowe 3e that whilis that I may preche
 And wyne gold & syluwr for I teche 440
 That I wele lyue in pouerte wilfully
 Nay nay I thouzte it neuere trewely
 ffor I wele preche & begge in sundery landis
 I wele don no labour with mynne handys 444
 Ne make basketys & lyue therby
 By cause I wele nat beggen ydely
 I wele none of the apostelys countyrfete
 I wele haue monye / wolle / cheese / & wheete 448
 Al weere it 3euyn of the poreste page
 Or of the poreste wedew in a village
 Al schulde hire chylderyn sterue for famyne
 Nay I wele drynke licour of the ¹vyne [v., *first w*] 452
 And haue a Ioly wenche in euery toun
 But herkenyth lordyngis in conclusioun
 3oure lykyng is that I schal telle a tale
 Now haue I dronke a draught of corny ale 456
 By god I hope I schal 3owe telle a thyng
 That schal be resoun been at 3oure lykyng
 ffor thow myn self be a ful vicious man
 A moral tale 3it I 3ow telle can 460
 Whiche I am wonet to preche for to wyne
 Now holde 3oure pes myn tale I wele begynne

[Painting of the Pardoner.]

[leaf 306]

Here begynnyth the Pardounner his tale

[The I runs the length of the page]

IN flanderys whilhom dwellede a cumpayne
 Of 3onge folk that hauntedyn folye 464
 As ryot hasard stewys & tauernys
 Where as with harpys lutys & geternys
 They daunce & pleye at deis bothe day & nyght
 And ete & drynke also ouyr here myzt 468
 Thoure whiche they don the deuyl sacryfise
 With-inne that deuyl^h ²temple in² cursede wyse [2→ corrected]
 By superfluyte / abominable
 Here othis been so greete & so dampnable 472
 That it is gresely for to here hem swere
 Oure blyssede lordis body they to-tere
 Ham thouzte that Iewis rente hym not I-nough
 And eche of hem at otherys synne lough 476
 And thanne ryzt a-non / comyn Tumbesteris
 ffetyse & smale & 3ynge frutesteris
 Syngeris with harpis / Baudis wafereris 479
 Whiche been / the ²werray devi^h offiseris³ [2→ corrected]
 To kyndeles & blowe the fyr of lecherye [leaf 306, back]
 That is annexed on-to Gloteny
 The holy writ take I to witnesse
 That luxurye is in wyn & dronkenesse 484
 Lo how that dronkyn looth vnkyndely
 Lay by his doughterys two on-wityngely
 So dronke he was he nyste what he wrouzte
 Herodes who so weel the storyis souzte 488

[.
 *no spurious lines in this MS.*]

CAMBRIDGE 371 (6-T. 318)

Whan he of wyn was replet at his feste 489
 Rygh at his owene table he ȝaf his heste
 To alen the Baptist Iohn ful gilteles
 Senek seyth a good word douteles Seneca. 492
 He seyth he can no difference fynde
 By-twixe a man that is out of his mynde
 And a man which that is dronkelewe
 But that wodnesse I-fallyn in a schrewe 496
 Perseueryth lengere than doth dronkenesse
 O glotenye ful of cursedenesse
 O cause fyrst of oure confusioun
 O original of oure dampnacioun 500
 Til Cryst hadde bouȝt vs with his blod a-geyn
 Lo how deere schortely for to seyn
 Abovghte was thilk cursede vilanye
 Corrup was al this world for glotenye 504
 Adam oure fadyr & his wif also
 ffrom paradys to labour & to wo
 Were dreuyn for that vice it is no drede
 ffor whil that adam fasted as I rede 508
 He was in paradys / & thil that he
 Eet of the frent defendit of the tre
 A-non he was out cast to wo & pyne
 O glotenye on the / wel ouȝte vs pleyne 512
 O wiste a man how manye maladyis
 ffolewyn¹ of exces & of glotenyis [1 e inserted]
 He wolde been the moore mesurable
 Of his dyete syttynge at his table 516
 Allas the schorte throte the tendere mouth
 Makyth that est & west & north & South
 In erthe in Ayr / in watyr men to swynke [leaf 307]
 To gete a glotoun / deinte mete & drynke 520
 Of this matire / O paul weel canst thow trete
 Mete on-to wombe / & wombe weel vn-to mete
 Schal god distroyen / bothe as paul seyth
 Allas a foul thyng is it / be myn feith 524

To seye this word / & foulere is the dede
 Whan man so drynkyth / of the white & reede
 That of his throte / he makyth his priue
 Thurgh thilke cursede / superfluite 528
 The apostale wepyng / seyth ful pytounly
 T[h]ere walkyn manye / of whiche ȝow told haue I
 I seye it now / wepyng with pitous woys
 There been enemyis / of crystis croys 532
 Of whiche the ende is deth / wombe is here god
 O wombe / O bely / O stynkyng Cod
 ffulfyld of dunge & of corrupcioun
 At eythyr ende of the foul is the soun 536
 How greet labour & cost is the to fynde
 These cookis¹ how they stampe & streyne & grynde [¹ is corr.]
 And turnyn substauns in-to accident
 To fulfille al the lykerous talent 540
 Out of the harde bonys knokke they
 The mary for thei caste nat a-wey
 That may goon thurgh the golet softe & soote
 Of spicerye / of lef / of bark / of roote 544
 Schal been his saus / makyd bi delyt
 To make hym ȝit / a newere apetit
 But certis he that / hauntyth swyche delicis
 Is ded whil that he / lyuyth in swiche vicis 548
 A lecherous thyng / is wyn and² dronkenesse [² and later]
 Is ful of stryuyng & of wrechedenesse
 O dronke man / disfigured is thyn face
 Sour is thyn breth / foul art þou to enbrace 552
 And thour thyn dronke nose / semyth the soun
 As thou þou seydyt euere / sampeoun Sampoun
 And ȝit god wot / Sampoun drank neuere no wyn
 Thow fallist / as it weere a stekyd swyn 556
 Thyn tunge is lost & al thyn honeste cure [leaf 907, back]
 ffor drunkenesse is verray sepulture
 Oof mannys wit & his discrecioun
 In whom that drynk hath dominacioun 560

He can no conseyl kepe it is no drede
 Now kepe 3ow from the white & from the reede
 And namely from the white wyn of lepe
 That is to selle in fiche streete or in Chepe 564
 This wyn of spayne crepyth subtilly
 In othere wynys growynge faste by
 Of which there rysith swich fumosite
 That whan a man haue dronkyn draughtis thre 568
 And weneth that he be at hom in chepe
 He is in spayne ryzt at the touz of leepe
 Nat at rochel / ne at burdeux toun
 And thanne wele he seye sampsoun sampsoun 572
 But herkenyth lordyngis o word I 3ow preye
 That alle the souereyn actis dar I seye
 Of victoryis in the olde testament
 Thurgh verray god that is omnypotent 576
 Were don in abstinence & in preyere
 Lokyth the bible & there 3e may it leere
 Loke attilla the greete conquerour
 Deyede in his slep / with schame & dishonour 580
 Bledynge at his nose in dronkenesse
 A Capitayn schulde leue in soberenesse
 And ouyr al this / aviseth 3ow ryzt weel
 What was comaundit to Lamuel 584
 Nat Samuel but Lamuel seye I
 Redyth the byble / & fynde it expresly
 Of wyn 3euynge to hem that han iustise
 Namore of this for it may I-nough suffyse 588
 And now that I haue spokyn of glotanye
 Now wele I 3ow defende hasarderye
 Hasard is verray modyr of leeyngis
 And of disseyd & cursed forsweyngis 592
 Blaspheme of Cryst manaulzt & wast also
 Of catel of tyme / & ferthere mo
 ¶ It is repref & contrarye to honour [leaf 306]
 ffor to ben holdyn a comoun hasardour 596

And euere the hegere he is of ¹estat¹ [—¹ corrected]
 The moore is he holdyn desolat
 3if that a prynce vseth hasarderye
 In alle gouernaunce & polycie 600
 He is as be comune opinioun
 I-holde the lesse in reputacioun
 Stilboun þat was a wys Embassadour
 Was sent to Corenthe in ful greet honour 604
 from latidomye to makyn hire allyaunce
 And whan he cam hym happede par chaunce
 That alle the gretteste that were of that lond
 Pleyinge at the hasard he hem fond 608
 ffor which as soone as it myghte be
 He stal hym hom a-geyn in-to his cuntre
 ¶ And seyde there wel I nat leese myn name
 Nay wil nat take on me so greet diffame 612
 3ow for to a-lye vn-to none hasardourys
 Sendyth othere wyse embassadourys
 ffor be myn trouthe me were leuere dye
 Than I 3ow schulde to hasardourys alye 616
 ffor 3e that been so gloryous in honourys
 Schal not a-lye 3ow to hasardourys
 By myn wil ne as bi myn trettee
 This wyse philisophere thus seyde he 620
 Loke ek that to the kyng demetryus
 The kyng of Parthes as the bok seyth vs
 Sente hym a payre of deis of gold in scorn
 ffor he hadde vsed hasard there by-forn 624
 ffor which he held his glorye or his renoun
 At no valu or reputacioun
 ¶ Lordis may fynde other maner play
 Honeste I-now to dryue the day a-wey 628
 Now wele I speke of othes false & greete
 A word or two as olde bokys trete
 Greet swerynge is a thyng abhominable
 And fals swerynge ²is 3it² more repreuable [—² corrected] 632

The hye god¹ forbad swerynge at al [¹first good] [leaf 308, back]
 Witnesse of Mathew but in special
 Of swerynge seyth the holy Ieremye
 Thow schalt swere soth thynne othis & not lye 636
 And swere in dom & ek in ryghtwysnesse
 But ydele swerynge is a cursedenesse
 Bi-hold & se that in the ferste table
 Of heye goddys hestis honorable 640
 How that the secounde heste of hym is this
 Take nat myn name in idil or a-mys
 Lo rathere he forbedyth sweche swerynge
 Than homyside or manye a cursed thyng 644
 I seye that as by ordere thus it standith
 This knowith that his bokys vndirstonde
 How that the secunde heste of god is that
 And ferthere ouyr / I wele the telle al plat 648
 That vengeance schal nat passe from his hous
 That of hise othis is to outrageous
 By godys precyus herte & by hise naylys
 And by the blod o crist that is in haylys 652
 Seuene is myn chaunce / & thyn is synk & treye
 By godys armys 3if thow falsely pheye
 This daggar schal thorgh out thyn herte go
 This freut comyth of þe bicche bonys twe 656
 ffor swerynge Ire falsenesse homysyde
 Now for the loue of cryst þat for vs deyede
 Leveth þoure swerynge bothe greete & smale
 But serys now wele I telle forth myn tale 660
 Theise riotourys thre of whiche I telle
 Longe erst er pryme rong the belle
 Were sett hem in a tauerne to drynke 663
 And as the[y] sat / they herde a belle ²clynke² [²later]
 By-forn a cors was caryed to his graue
 That on of hem gan callyn to his knaue
 Go bet quod he and axe redyly
 What cors is this that carved is forby 668

And loke that thow reporte his name wel
 Sere quod this boy it nedyth neuere a deel
 It was me told er ȝe cam here thre ouris [leaf 309]
 He was parde an old felawe of ouris 672
 And sodeynly he was I-slayn to nyght
 ffor-dronke as he sat on his bench vp ryȝt
 There cam a priue thef men clepyn deth
 That in this cuntre al the peple sleth 676
 And with his spere he smot his herte atwo
 And wente his weie *with*-outyn wordis mo
 And maystir er ȝe come in his presence 680
 He hath a thousent slayn this pestelence 679
 Methynkyth that it were necessarye
 ffor to ben war of swich an aduersarye
 Beth redy for to mete hym euere more
 Thus thaute me myn dame I seye nomore 684
 Be seynte marie seyde this tauernere
 The child seyth soth for he hath slayn this ȝere
 Hene ouyr a myle with-inne a greet village
 Bothe man & woman child & hewe & page 688
 I trowe his habitacioun be there
 To been a-vised greet wisdom it weere
 Er that he deyede a man a dishonour
 ¶ Ye goddis armys quod this riotour 692
 Is it swich peril with hym for to mete
 I schal hym seeke by woye & ek bi streete
 I make a wow to goddys digne bonys
 Herkenyth felawis we thre been a-lonys 696
 Lat ych of vs holdyn vp his hand to othir
 And eche of vs bi-comyn otherys brothir
 And we wale sleen this false traytour deth
 He schal been slayn he that so manye sleth 700
 By godis dygnete er it be nygh
 To-gederys han these thre here treuthes plyght
 To lyuyn & deyen eche of hem with othyr
 As though he were his owe brothir 704

And vp they stertyn & dronkyn in this rage
 And forth they gon towardys that village
 Of whiche the tauerner hadde spoke by-forn
 And manye a gresely oth thanne han they sworn 708
 And crystis blyssede body they to-rente [leaf 300, back]
 Deth schal ben ded ȝif they may hym hente
 Whan they han goon nat fully half a myle
 Ryght as they woldyn a trodyn onyr a style 712
 An old man & a poure 'with hem' mette [— corrected]
 This olde man ful mekely hem grette
 And seydyn thus now lordis god ȝow see
 The proudeste of these ryatourys three 716
 Answerede a-gayn what cherl with sory grace
 Why art thou for-wrappid saue thyn face
 Why lyggist thou so longe in so greet age
 This olde man gan lokyn in his visage 720
 And seyde thus for I ne can nat fynde
 A man thou I walkede in-to ynde
 Neythir in cete ne in non village
 That wolde chaunge his ȝouthe for myn age 724
 And therfore mote I holde myn age styлле
 As long tyme as it is godys wille
 Ne deth allas wele nat han myn lyf
 Thus walke I lych a recheles caytyf 728
 And on the ground whiche is myn moderys gate
 I knokke with myn staf bothe erly & late
 And seye leue modyr lete me in
 Lo how I vanyche bothe flesch & blood & skyn 732
 Allas whanne schal myne bonys been at reste
 Modyr with ȝow wolde I schauunge myn cheste
 That in myn chaumbre long tyme hath be
 ȝa for an heyre clout to wrappe me 736
 But ȝit to me ȝe wele nat do that grace
 ffor which ful pale & welkid is myn face
 But syrys to ȝow it is no curteysye
 To spekyn to an old man vilanye 740

But he trespace in word or ellis in dede
 In holy wryt ye may youre seluyn weel reede
 [A-geyns an olde man / hoor vp-on his hed [Cambr. Univ. MS
Dd. 4. 24, leaf 147]
 3e shulde aryse / wherfore I 3eue 3ow red] 744
 Ne doth vn-to an old man noon harm now
 Na more than 3e wolde men dede to 3ow
 In age 3if that 3e so longe a-byde
 And god be wyth 3ow where 3e go or ryde 748
 I mot go thedyr there I haue to go [leaf 110]
 ¶ Nay olde cherl by god thow schat nat so
 Seyde this othir hasardour a-non
 Thow partist nat so lyztely by seynt Iohn 752
 Thow speke ryzt now of thilke traytour deth
 That in oure cuntre alle oure frendys aleth
 Haue here myn treuthe as thow art his espie
 Telle where he is / or / thow schalt it a-bye 756
 By god & by holye sacrement
 ffor sothly thow art of his assent
 To sleen vs 3onge folk thow false thef
 Now seris quod he syn that ye be so lef 760
 To fynde deth turne vp this crokede wey
 ffor in that groue I lefte hym by myn fey
 Vndyr a tre & there he wolde a-byde
 Nat for youre bost he wele hym nat hyde 764
 Se ye that ook ryzt there ye schul hym fynde
 God saue yow that boughte a-3en man-kynde
 And 3ow a-mende thus seyde this olde man
 ¶ And eueryche of these ryotourys ran 768
 Til they come to that tre & there they founde
 Of floreynys fyne of gold I-coynede rounde
 Wel nygh an viij buschellis as hem thou3te
 No lengere thanne aftyr deth they sou3te 772
 But eche of hem so glad was of the syght
 ffor that floreynys been so fayre & bryzt
 That doun they sette hem by this precious hord
 The werste of hem spak the ferste word 776

Bretheryn quod he thyng what I seye
 Myn wit is greet thow that I borde & pleye
 This tresore hath fortune vn-to vs zeuyn
 In myrthe & Iolyte oure lyf to leuyn 780
 And lyghtely as it comyth so wele we spende
 Ey godys præcyous dignetee ho wende
 To day that we schuldyn han so fayr grace
 But myghte this gold been caryed from this place 784
 Hom to myn hous or ellys vn-to 3ourys
 ffor weel 3e wot that al this gold is ourys
 Thanne were we in high felicite [leaf 310, back]
 But treweli by day it may nat be 788
 Men woldyn seyn that we were thevis stronge
 And for oure owene tresore doon vs honge
 This tresore muste Icaryede been by nyght
 As wysely & as slyly as men myght 792
 Therefore I rede that cut a-mong vs alle
 Be drawe & lat se where the cut wele falle
 And he that hat the cut with herte blythe
 Schal renne to tounne & that ful swythe 796
 And brynge vs breed & wyn pryuyly
 And two of vs schal kepen subtily
 This tresor wel / if he wele nat tarye
 Whan it is nyght we wele this tresore carye 800
 By on assent / where as vs thynkyth best
 That on of hem the Cut brouȝte in his fest
 And bad hem drawe & loke wheere it wolde falle
 And it fel on the 3ongest of hem alle 804
 And forth toward the toun he wente a-non
 And al so soone as þat he was goon
 That oon of hem spak on-to that othyr
 Thow knowyst weel thow art myn swore brothir 808
 Thyn profyt wele I telle the a-noon
 Thow wist weel that oure falawe is goon
 And heere is gold & that ful greet plentee
 That schal departid be a-mong vs three 812

But natheles If I can speke it so
 That it departyd were a-mong vs two
 Hadde I nat doon a frendys turn to thee
 That othir answerde I not how that may bee 816
 He wot that the gold is with vs tweye
 What schal we do what schal we to hym seye
 Schal it be conseyll seyde the ferste schrewe
 And I schal tellyn in a wordys fewe 820
 What we schal doon & brynge it weel a-boute
 I graunte quod that othyr out of doute
 That by myn trouthe I wele the nat by-wrye
 Now quod he thow wost weel that we ben tweye 824
 And two of vs schal strengere been than oon [leaf 511]
 Loke whan he is set that ryȝt a-noon
 Arys as thow woldys with hym pleye
 And I schal ryue hym thour the sydys tweye 828
 Whil that thow strogelyst with hym as in game
 And with thyn daggere loke thow do the same
 And thanne schal al this gold departid be
 Myn deere frend be-twixe me & the 832
 Thanne may we bothe oure lustis al fulfyllen
 And pleye at the deis ryȝt at oure owene wille
 And thus acordede been these schrewys tweye
 To sleen the thredde as ȝe han herd me seye 836
 ¶ This ȝongeste wyght that wente to the toun
 ful ofte in hese¹ herte he rollede vp & doun [1st so corrected]
 The beute of the floreyngys newe & brighte
 O lord quod he If so were that I myȝte 840
 Haue al thes tresor to myn self a-lone
 There is no man that lyuyth vnder the trone
 Of-good that schulde liue so merye as I
 And at the laste the fend oure enemy 844
 Put in his herte / that he schulde poysounne² beye² [1st corr.]
 With whiche he myghte sleen hise felawis tweye
 ffor why the fend fond hym in swich lyuynge
 That he hadde leue hem to sorwe brynge 848

This was vttyrly his entente
 To slen hem bothe & neuere to repente
 And forth he goth no lengere wolde he tarye
 In-to the toun vn-to a potecarye 852
 And preyede hym that he hym wolde selle
 Sum poysoun that he myzte hise rattis quelle
 And eek there was a polkat in his hawe
 That as he seyde his capounnys hadde he slawe 856
 And fayn he wolde wreke hym jif he myzte
 On vermyn that destroyede hym be nyghte
 ¶ The potecarye answerde & thow schalt haue
 A thyng that also god myn soule saue 860
 In al this world there is no creature
 That etyn or drynk of this confyture¹ [1 y corrected]
 Nat but the moutenaunce of a corn of wheete [leaf 311, back]
 That he schal his lyf a-noon for-leete 864
 Ya sterue he schal and that in lasse while
 Than thow wylt gon a pas nat but a myle
 The poysoun is so strong & violent
 ¶ This cursede man hath in his hond I-hent 868
 The poysoun in a box & sythe he ran
 In-to the nexte streete vn-to a man
 And borwede hym large botellys tre
 And in the two his pousoun pourede he 872
 The thredde he kepte clene for his drynk
 ffor al the nygh[t] he schop hym for to swynk
 In carynge of that gold out of that place
 And whan this ryotour with sory grace 876
 Hadde fylled wyth wyn hise greete botellis thre
 To hise felas a-geyn repayrede hee
 ¶ What neede of it to sarmone moore
 ffor ryȝt as they hadde cast his deth byfore 880
 Rygh[t] so they han hym slayn & that a-noon
 And whan this was doon thus spak that oon
 Now lat vs sitte & drynke & make vs merye
 And aftr that we wele his body berye 884

And with that word it happede hym percas
 To take the botel there the poysoun was
 And drank & ȝaf his felawe d[r]ynke also
 ffor whiche a-noon they storve bothe two 888
 ¶ But certys I suppose that Aucion
 Wrot neuere in no canoun ne in no fei
 Mo wondere sygnys of enpoysounmynge
 Than hadde these wrechis two er hire endyng 892
 Thus endede been these homycidis two
 And ek the false enpoysouner also
 ¶ O cursed synne of alle cursedenesse
 O traytourys homycyde / o wikkedenesse 896
 O glotonye / luxurye / & hasarderye
 Thow blasphemere of cryst with vilonye
 And othis greete of vsage & of pryde
 Allas mankynde how may it betyde 900
 That to thyn creatour whiche that the wrough [leaf 312]
 And with hise precious blood the bough
 Thow art so fals & so vnkynde allas
 Now goode men god for-ȝeue ȝow ȝoure trespas 904
 And ware ȝow from the synne of aueryce
 Myn holy pardoun may ȝow alle waryce
 So that ȝe offere / noblis or starlyngis
 Or ellys syluyr sponys brochis ryngis 908
 Bowith ȝoure heed vndyr this holy bulle
 Comyth vp ȝe wyuys offerith of ȝoure wolle
 ȝoure name I entere here in myn rolle a-non
 In-to the blysse of heuene schul ȝe gon 912
 I ȝow assoyle by myn heye power
 Yow that wele offere as clene & eek as cleer
 As ȝe weryn born & lo seris thus I preche
 And Ihesu cryst that is oure soulys leche 916
 So graunte ȝow his pardoun to resceyue
 ffor that is best I wele ȝou nat disceyue
 But seris on word forȝat I in myn tale
 I haue relikys & pardoun in myn male 920

As fayre as ony man in yngeland
 Whiche were me 3ouyn by the popis hand
 3yf ony of yow wele of deuocyoun
 Offeryn & han myn absoluciou 924
 Comyth forth anon & knelyth here a-doun
 And mekely resseyuyth myn pardoun
 Or ellis takyth pardoun as 3e weende
 Al newe & frosch at euery mylys ende 928
 So that 3e offere alwey newe & newe
 Nobelis & penys whiche that been goode & trewe
 It is an honour to eueriche that is here
 That ye mowen haue a suffycient pardonere 932
 To a-soyle 3ow in cuntre as 3e ryde
 ffor auenture whiche that may be-tyde
 Perauenture there may falle on or two
 Doun of his hors & breke his nekke a two 936
 Loke which a seurete it is to 3ow alle
 That I am in 3oure felaueschep I-falle
 That may assoyle 3ow bothe more & lasse [leaf 312, back]
 Whan that the soule schal from the body passe 940
 I rede that oure ost here schal begynne
 ffor he is most enuolupid in syzne
 Come forth sere ost & offere here a-non
 And thow schat kysse myne relykys euerychoon 944
 Ye for a groote vnbokele a-noon thyn pors
 Nay nay quodd' he / thazne haue I crystis curs [a later]
 Lat be quod he it schal nat be so theech
 Thow woldyst make me to kysse thyȝno olde brech 948
 And swere it weere a relike of a seynt
 They it were with tyn fundement depeynt
 But by the cros that seynt elyne fond
 I wolde I hadde thyne colyounnys in myn hond 952
 In stede of relikys or of seyntewarye
 Let kutte hem of I wele from the hem carye
 They schul been schrynyd in an hoggis tord
 This pardouner answerde nat a word 956

So wroth he was he wolde no word seye	
Now quod oure ost I wele no lengere pleye	
With the ne with noon othyr angry man	
But rygh a-noon the worthy knygh be-gan	960
Whan that he saw that al the peple lough	
Na moore of this for it is ryght I-nough	
Sire pardoneer be merie & glad of cheere	
And sere ost that been to me so deere	964
I preye ȝow that ȝe kysse the pardounneer	
And pardounner I preye the drawe the neer	
And as we dede lat vs laughe & pleye	
Anon they kyste & rede forth here weye	968

Here endith the pardonneris¹ tale

[¹ ? second n]

GROUP B. (β. FRAGMENT III.)

§ 4 THE SHIPMAN'S TALE.

[& begynneth þe tale

[Sloane MS 1806, leaf 192.]

A Marchaunt whilom dwellyd at seynt denys
 þat riche was for which men helde hym wys
 A wyfe he hade of excellent beaute
 And compenable and reuerent was she
 Whiche ys a thyng þat causeth more dispense
 þan worthe ys alle þe chere and reuerence 1196
 þat men hem done at festees and at daunces
 Suche salutations and contenaunces
 Passeth as doth þe shadowe vpon a walle
 But woo ys hym þat payen mot for alle 1200
 þe cely husbonde algate he mot paie
 he mote vs clothe and vs arraie
 Alle for his owne worship rychely
 In whiche arraie we dauncen Iolilye 1204
 And yf þat he may not parauenture
 Or elles luste none suche espense to endure
 But thynkith þat it is waste and y-loste
 þan mote a-noþere paien for oure coste 1208
 Or lene vs golde & þat ys perilous
 This noble Marchaunt hylde a noble house
 ffor wwhiche he hade alday grete repaire
 ffor hys largesse and for hys wyf was faire 1212
 þat wonder ys but herkeneth to my tale
 Amonges alle hys gestes grete & smale
 pere was a monke a faire man & a bolde
 I trowe .xx. wynter he was olde 1216
 þat euere in on was drawynge to þat place
 þis yonge Monke þat was so faire of face

CAMBRIDGE 386 (6-T. 168) [this page, Sloane 1685]

A-queynted was so with þat gode man [Sloane MS 1685]

[. 1220

.

.

no gap in the Sloane MS, in Harl. 1758, or Reg. 18 C ii.]

And eke þis Monke of whiche I be-gan 1224

Were bothe two borne in oo vilage

þe Monke hym cleymed as for cosynage

And he a-yeyne saith not onys nay

But was as glade as any foule of day 1228

ffor in his hert' it was a grete plesaunce

Thus bene þe knyht with eterne aliaunce

Of Bretherheed/ whiles þat her lyf may dure

And ilke of hem gan oþere assure 1232

ffre was dan Iohn and namly of dispense

As in þat hous and fulle of diligence

To do plesaunce and also grete costage

he nouȝt for-yate to ȝene þe laste page 1236

In alle þat hous but aftyr hir degre

he ȝave þe lord / and siþens his meyne

whan þat he came some manere honest thyng

ffor whiche þei were as glade for hys comynge 1240

As foule ys fayne whan þe sonne vp rysethe

Nomore here-of as nowe for þis sufficethe

But so befelle þis Marchaunt on a day

Schope hym to make redy hys array 1244

Toward þe town of Bruggeys for to fare

To byen þere a porcion of ware

ffor whiche he hathe to parys / sent anone

A messangere and prayed hathe Dan Iohn 1248

þat he shulde come to seynt Denys to pleye

with hym and with his wyf a day or tweye

Or he to bruggeys went in alle wyse

This noble Monke of whiche I you deuyse] [Sloane extract

Hath of his abbot as hym leste lycence [Camb. MS, leaf 314]

By-cause he was a man of hygh prudence

CAMBRIDGE 387 (6-T. 169) [this page, Sloane 1685]

And ek an offycer out for to ryde
 To seen here granges & here bernys wyde 1256
 And vn-to seynt Denys he comyth a-noon
 Who was so wolcome as myn lord daun Iohn
 Oure deere cosyn ful of curteysye
 With hym he brouzte a Iubbe of Maluesye 1260
 And ek a nothir ful of fyn vernage
 And volatyl as was his vsage
 And thus I lete hem drynke & ete & pleye
 This Marchaunt & this Monk a day or tweye 1264
 The thredde day this Marchaunt vp a-ryseth
 And on hise nedis sadly hym auyseth
 And vp in-to his countour house goth he
 To rekene with hym self weel may be 1268
 Of thilke 3eer how that it with hym stod
 And how that he dispendit hadde his good
 And jif that he encresede were er non
 Hise bokis & hise baggis manyon 1272
 He leyth be-forn hym on his county[n]g bord
 ful ryche was his tresor & his hord
 ffor which ful faste his countour dore he schette
 And ek he nolde that no man schulde hym lette 1276
 Of hise acountis for the mene tyme
 And thus he syt¹ tyl it was passid pryme [1 a'tered]
 ¶ Daun Iohn was rysyn in the morwe also
 And in the gardyn walkith to & fro 1280
 And hath hise thyngis seyde ful curteysly
 This goode wyf cam walkynge pryuyly
 In-to the gardyn there as he walkyth softe
 And hym saluyth as he hath doon ofte 1284
 A maydechild cam in hyre cumpaynye
 Whiche as hyre lyste sche may gouerne & gye
 ffor 3it vndyr the 3erde was the mayde
 ¶ O deere Cosyn myn daun Iohn sche sayde 1288
 What aylyth 3ow so rathe for to ryse
 Nece quod he it oghte I-nogh suffyse

ffyue hourys for to slepe vp-on a nyght [leaf 314, back]
 But it were for an old appollyd wyght 1292
 As been these weddede men that lye & dare
 As in a forme sit a very hare
 Were al for-straucht with houndys greet & smale
 But dere nece why be 3e so pale 1296
 I trowe certis that 3oure goode man
 Hath 3ow laboured sythe the nyght be-gan
 That 3ow were nede to restyn hastily
 And with that word he lough ful meryely 1300
 And of his owene thougt he wex al red
 This fayre wyf gan for to schake hire heed
 And seyde thus 3a god wot al quod she
 [Nay cosyn myne hit stont not so *with* me [Elcane MS 1665,
 ffor by pat god pat yave me soule & lyf leaf 193, back].
 In alle þe reme of fraunce ys þere no wyf
 pat lasse luste hathe to þat sorie playe
 ffor I may syngen alas and weel awaye 1308
 pat I was borne but to no wiȝt quod she] [Elcane extract ends]
 Dare I nat telle how that it stant with me [Cambr. MS]
 Wherefore I thynke out of this world to wende (no gap above)
 Or ellis of myn self to make an ende 1312
 So ful am I of drede & of care /
 This Monk be-gan vp-on this wif to stare
 And seyde allas myn nece god for-beede
 That 3e for ony sorwe or ony drede 1316
 ffor-do 3oure self but tellyth me 3oure greef
 Paraenture I may in 3oure myschif
 Conseyle or helpe / & therfore tellyth mee
 Alle 3oure a-noy for it schal be secree 1320
 ffor on myn portooos here I make an oth
 That neuere in myn lyue for lef ne loth
 Ne schal I of no conseyl 3ow be-wreie
 The same a-geyn to 3ow quod sche I seye 1324
 By god & by this portos I 3ow swere
 Thow men woldyn me al in-to pecis tere

Ne schal I neuere for to goon to helle
 Be-wreye a word of thyng that 3e me telle 1328
 Noght for no Cosynage ne allyaunce
 But verrayly for loue & affyaunce
 Thus been th[e]y swore & here vp-on they keste
 And eche of hem told othir what hem leste 1332
 Cosyn quod sche 3if that I hadde a space
 As I haue non & namely in this place
 Thanne wolde I telle a legende of myn lyf [leaf 215]
 What I haue suffered sithe that I was a wyf 1336
 With myn¹ husbonde al be he youre cosyn [altered]
 Nay quod this monk by god & seynt martyn
 He nys no moore Cosyn vpon to me
 Than is the lef that hangyth on the tre 1340
 I clepe hym so by seynt denys of fraunce
 To han the moore cause of acqueyntaunce
 Of 3ow whiche I haue louyd specyally
 A-bouyn alle wemen sikyrlly 1344
 This swere I 3ow on myn perfeccioun
 Tellyth 3oure gref lest that he come a doun
 And hastyth 3ow & goth a-wey a-non
 Myn deere loue quod sche o myn daun Iohn 1348
 fful leef were me this conseyll for to hyde
 But out it mot it may no moore a-byde
 ¶ Myn husbonde is to me the worste man
 That euere was sithe the world be-gan 1352
 But sithe I am a wyf it sit nat me
 To telle no wigh of oure pryuyte
 Neythir a bedde ne in non othyr place
 God schilde I schulde it telle for his grace 1356
 A wyf ne schal nat seyn of hyre housbonde
 But al honour as I can vndyrstonde
 Saue on to 3ow thus tellyn I schal
 As helpe me god he nys nat worth an al 1360
 In no degre the valeu of a flye
 But 3it me greuyth that most his negarderye

And weel 3e wot that women naturally
 Desyryn thyngis gaye¹ as wel as I [*altered*] 1364
 They wolde that here husbondys schulde bee
 Hardy. & ryche & wys & therto free
 And buxsom vnto his wyf & frosch a-bedde
 But by that ilke lord that for vs bledde 1368
 ffor his honour mynself for to araye
 A sunday next I mot nedys paye
 An hunderede frankis or ellys am I lorn
 3it weere me leuere that I weere on born 1372
 Than me were don a slaundere or velanye [*leaf 815, back*]
 And 3if myn husbonde ek myghte it espye
 I nere but lost & therefore I 3ow preye
 Lene me this summe or ellys mote I deye 1376
 Daun Ion I seye lene me these hunderede frankys
 Parde I wele nat fayle yow myn thankys
 If that yow lyste to don that I 3ow praye
 ffor at a certeyn day I wele 3ow paye 1380
 And don to 3ow that plesaunce & seruyse
 That I may don ryght as 3ow leste deuyse
 And but I do god take on me vengeance
 As foul as hadde Genyloun of fraunce 1384
 ¶ This gemtil Monk answerde in this manere
 Now trewely myn owene lady dere
 I haue quod he on 3ow so greet routhe
 That I 3ow swere & plyzte 3ow myn trouthe 1388
 That whan youre husbonde is to flaunders yare
 I wele delyuere yow out of this care
 ffor I wele brynge 3ow an hunderede frankys
 And with that word he caughte hire by the flankys 1392
 And hire enbrasith harde & kyste hire ofte
 Goth now 3oure wey quod he al styлле & softe
 And lat vs dyne as sone as euere he may
 ffor by myn Chylendere it is pryme of day 1396
 Goth now & beth as trewe as I schal be
 Now ellys god forbeede sire quod sche

And forth sche goth as Ioly as a pye
 And bad the Cokys that they schulde hem hye 1400
 So that men myghte dyne and that a-non
 Vp to this husbonde is this wyf a-gon
 And knockyth at his countour boldely
 Who there quod he / petyr it am I 1404
 Quod sche what sere how longe wele 3e faste
 How long tyme wele 3e / rekene & caste
 Youre summys & youre bokys & 3oure thyngis
 The deuyll haue part of alle sweche rekenyngis 1408
 Ye haue I-now parde of godys sonde
 Come down to day & lat 3oure baggis stonde
 Ne be 3e nat aschamyd that daun Iohn [leaf 316]
 Schal fastyng al this day alenge goon 1412
 What lat vs heere a masse & go we dyne
 Wyf quod this man lytyl canst thow deuyne
 The Curyouse besynesse that we haue
 ffor of vs Chapmen al so god me saue 1416
 And by that lord that clepid is seynt Yue
 Skarsely a-mongis twelve ten schul thryue
 Contynewelly lastyng vn-to oure age
 We may wel make cher & good visage 1420
 And dryue forth the world as it may be
 And kepyn oure estat in pryuytee
 Tyl we been ded or ellis that we pleye
 A pylgrymage or goon out of the weye 1424
 And therefore haue I greet necessite
 Vp-on this queynte world tauyse me
 ffor euere mo we mote stonde in drede
 Of hap & fortune in oure Chapmanhede 1428
 To flaunderis wele I go to morwe at day
 And come a-geyn as sone as euere I may
 ffor whiche myn deere wyf I the beseke
 As beth to to euery whit buxsom & meke 1432
 And for to keepe oure good been curyous
 And honestely gouerne weel oure hous

Thow hast I-nough in euery maner wyse
 That to a thryfty houshold may suffyse 1436
 The lakkyth non aray ne non vitayle
 Of syluyr in thyn purs schalt thow non fayle
 And with that word his countour dore he schette
 And doun he goth no lengere wolde he lette 1440
 And hastily a masse was theere seyde
 And spedly the tabelys weere I-leyde
 And to the dyner faste hem spedde
 And rychely this Monk the Chapman fedde 1444
 At aftyr dyner daun Iohn sobyrly
 This Chapman tok apart & pryuyly
 He seyde hym thus / Cosyn it standyth so
 That wel I se to Bruggis wele Iego 1448
 God & seynt Augustyn speede 3ow & gyde [leaf 316, back]
 I preye 3ow cosyn wysely that 3e ryde
 Gouernyth 3ow also of 3oure dyete
 Attemprely & namely in this heete 1452
 By-twixe vs two nedyth ne straunge fare
 ffare weel cosyn god schylde 3ow from care
 And 3if that ony by day or by nyght
 If it lye in myn power & myn myght 1456
 That 3e me wele¹ comaunde in ony wyse [? later]
 It schal be don ryght as 3e wele deuyse
 othyng Or that 3e go If it may be
 I wolde preye 3ow for to lene me 1460
 An hunderede frankys for a wyke or tweye
 ffor serteyn bestes that I muste beye
 To store with a place & that is oures
 God helpe me so I wolde it were 3ourys 1464
 I schal not fayle surely of myn day
 Nat for a thousent frankys a myle way
 But lat this thyng been secre I 3ow prey
 ffor 3it to nygh[t] these bestis mot I beye 1468
 And fare now weel myn owene cosyn deere
 Graunt mercy of 3oure cost & of 3oure goodely chere

This noble Marchaunt gentely a-non
 Answerede & seyde o cosyn myn daun Iohn 1472
 Now sekyrly this is a smal requeste
 Myn gold is 3ourys whan that it 3ow leste
 And not only myn gold but myn chafare
 Taake what 3ow lyste god schilde that 3e spare 1476
 But o thyng is 3e knowe it wel I-now
 Of chapmen that here monye is here plogh
 We may encrece whil we han a name
 But goldeles for to been it is a schame 1480
 Payeth it a-geyn whan it lyth in 3oure ese
 Aftyr myn myth ful fayn I wolde 3ow plese
 These hunderede frankys he fette forth a-noon
 And pryuyly he tok hem to daun Iohn 1484
 No whyt of al this world wyste of this lone
 Sauynge this marchaunt & daun Iohn a-lone
 They drynke & speke & rome a whyle & pleye [leaf 317]
 Tyl that daun Iohn rydyth to his abbey 1488
 The morwe cam & forth this marchaunt ridith
 To flaunderis ward his prentys weel hym gydith
 Tyl he cam in-to Bruggis myriely
 Now goth this Marchaunt faste & busyly 1492
 Aboute his neede & byeth & creaunceth
 He neythir pleyeth at deis ne daunceth
 But as a marchaunt schortely for to telle
 He lat his lyf & there I lete hym dwelle 1496
 The soneday next the marchaunt was a-goon
 To seynt Denys is come daun Iohn
 With croune & berd al frosch & newe schawe
 In al the hous ne was so lyte a knawe 1500
 Ne no whit ellys that he nas ful fayn
 That myn lord daun Iohn was come a-gayn
 And schortely to the poynt rygh[t] for to goon
 This fayre wyf a-cordyt with daun Iohn 1504
 That for hise hunderede frankys he schulde al nyght
 Haue hyre in hise armys bolt vp ryzt

And this acord parforned was in deede
 In myrthe al nyght a busy lyf they leede 1508
 Til it was day that daun Iohn wante his way
 And bad the meyne fare wel haue good day
 ffor non of hem ne no wyght in the toun
 Hath of daun Iohn rygh non suspecyoun 1512
 And forth he rydyth hom to his abbey
 Or where hym luste no more of hym I seye
 ¶ This Marchaunt whan that endit was the fayre
 To seynt Denys he gan for to rapayre 1516
 And with his wyf he makyth feste & cheere
 And tellyth hyre that chaffare is so deere
 That nedys muste he make a cheyuyssance
 ffor he was boundyn in a reconyssance 1520
 To payen twenty thousent sheeld a-non
 ffor with this marchaunt is to parys goo
 To borwe of certeyn frendys that he hadde
 A certeyn frankys & some with hym he ladde 1524
 ¶ And whan that he was come in to the toun [leaf 217, back]
 ffor gret chierete & greet facoun
 Vn-too daun Iohn he fyrst goth hym to pleye
 Nat for to axe or borwe of hym monye 1528
 But for to wete & se of his weel fare
 And for to tellyn hym of hys chaffare
 As frendys doon whan they been met in feere
 Daun Iohn hym makyth feste & myry chieere 1532
 And hym tolde a-geyn ful specially
 How he hadde weel I-bouzt & graciously
 Thankede be god al hol his marchaundyse
 Saue that he wolde in alle wyse 1536
 Makyn a cheuyciaunce as for hise beste
 And thanne he schulde ben In Ioye & reste
 ¶ Daun Iohn answerede sertis I am fayn
 That 3e in heele are comyn hom a-gayn 1540
 And 3if that I were ryche as I haue blys
 Of twenty thousand sheld schulde 3e nat mys

ffor 3e so kyndely this othir day
 Lente me gold & as I can & may 1544
 I-thankedede be god & by seynt Iame
 But natheles I tok vn-to oure dame
 3oure wyf at hom the same gold agayn
 Vp-on 3oure benche sche wot it wel certeyn 1548
 By certeyn tokenys that I can 3ow telle
 Now by 3oure leue I may no lengere dwelle
 Oure abbot wole out of this toun a-noon
 And in his cumpaynye mote I goo 1552
 Grete weel oure dāme myn owene nece sweete
 And fare wel deere cosyn tyl we meete
 ¶ This marchaunt which that was ful war & wys
 Creanced hath & payed ek in parys 1556
 To certeyn lumbardys redy in here hond
 The summe of gold & gat of hem his bond
 And hom he goth myrre as a popyniay
 ffor weele he knew he stood In swich aray 1560
 That nedys mote he wynne in that vyage
 A thousent frankys a-bouyn al his Costage
 [Hys wyf fulle redy mette hym at þe 3aate
 And she was wonte of olde vsage algate 1564
 And alle þat nyzt in myrthe þei be sette
 ffor he was ryche and clerely oute of dette
 Whan it was day þis Marchaunt gan embrace
 Hys wyf alle newe and kyssed here in þe face 1568
 And pp he gothe and makethe hit wonder towre
 No more quod she be god ye haue ynou3e
 And wantonly with hym agayne she playde
 Tylle at þe laste þis Marchaunt sayde 1572
 By god quod he I am a lytelle wrothe
 With you my wyfe alle þou3e yt be me lothe
 And woote 3e why by god as þat I gesse
 ffor ye haue made a manere of straungenesse 1576
 Be-twexte me and my Cosyn Daun Iohn
 3e shulde haue warned me or I hade goon.

[Sloane MS 1085,
leaf 197]

þat he hæde you an hundred frankes payde [Sloane MS 1685;
 Be redy token and he helde hym euel y-payde 1580
 ffor þat I to hym spake of Cheuesauunce
 Me semyd so as by hys contenaunce
 But nathelees be god þat ys heuen kynge
 I þoaȝte nouȝt to axe of hym no thyng 1584
 I pray þe wyf ne do no more soo.
 Telle me alle way or þat I fro þe goo
 ȝeue eny detoure hathe in myn absence
 I-payede þe laste þoroue þi necligence [leaf 197, back]
 I myȝt hym axe as thyng þat he hade payde
 Thys wyf was not aferde nor afrayde
 But boldely she sayd and þat a-none
 Mare I defye þat false Monke Daū Iohā 1592
 I kepe not of hys tokens neuere a dele
 He toke me certayne golde I woote hit wele
 What euel þedom of hys monke snowet
 ffor god it woote I wende withoute doute 1596
 þat he hade yeue it me be cause of you
 To done þere-with myne honoure & my prowē
 ffor cosynage and eke for beel chere
 þat he hath hade full ofte tyme here 1600
 But siþen I see I stonde in suche disioynt
 I wylle answeere you shortly to þe poynt
 ȝe haue mo slacker' dettours þan am I
 ffor I wille pay you wele and redely 1604
 ffor day to day and if so be þat I fayle
 I am youre wyf score it on my tayle
 And I shalle pay as sone as euere I may
 ffor be myn troupe I haue on myn array 1608
 And not in waste bestowed euery dele
 And for I haue bestoyed it so wele
 To youre honour for goddes sake y say
 As be not wrothe bot let vs jape & play 1612
 ȝe shalle my Ioly body haue to wedde
 Be god I nelle not pay you but a bed

CAMBRIDGE 397 (6-T. 179) [this page, Sloane 1685]

ffor-yeue yt me myn owen spouse dere [Sloane MS 1685]
 Turne hyderward and make me better chere 1616
 Thys Marchaunt sawe þere was no remedy
 And forto chyde it nere but foly
 Seþen hit may not amendid be
 And wyfe he sayde I forþene it þe 1620
 But by þi lyf be no more so large.
 Kepe better my gode þis zeue I þe in charge
 Thus endeth nowe my tale and god vs sende
 Talynge ynouþe vnto our lyfes ende // Amen [leaf 196]

Here endeth þe tale of þe Shipman

Here begynneth þe Prolooge of þe Pryoresse [Sloane MS 1685,
leaf 198]

WEle y-sayde þe corpus *Dominus quod* oure hoost
 Nowe longe mote ye sayle be see cooste
 Sir gentil mayster gentil marynere
 God-yeue þe Monke a þousand laste of quad zeere 1628
 A ha felaw be ware of suche a jape
 The Monke putte in þe mannes hooðe an ape
 And yn hys wyfes eke by seynt Dunstyn
 Droweth noñ monkes to your ynne 1632
 But nowe passe ouere and let vs seke aboute
 Who shalle nowe telle of alle þis route
 An opere tale and with þat worde he sayde
 As curteysely as hit had bene a Mayde 1636
 My lady Pryoresse with our leue
 So þat I you not wille to greue
 I wolde deme þat ye telle shulde
 A tale nexte yf so be þat ye wolde 1640
 Nowe wolle þe vowchesafe my lady dere
 Gladly quod she and sayde as ye shaft here

Here endeth þe Prolooge and begynneth þe tale

[No breaks between the stanzas in Sloane, Cambr. or Harl. MS.]

[The Prologue.]

O lord oure lord þi nane so marvelous [Sloane MS 1685]
 ys in þis worlde y-sprad quod she
 ffor not only þi laude precious
 performed ys by men of dignyte 1646
 But be þe mouthe of Children þi bownte
 Perfourmed ys for in oure brest soukyng
 Some tyme shewen þei þine herynge 1649

Wherefore in lawde as I can beste & may
 Of the þat and of þe þat holy flour
 [. no gap in the MS.]
 To tellen a storie I wold do my labour 1653
 Not þat I may encrece hir honoure
 ffor she hir self ys honoure & þerto roote
 Of bounte next hir sone of saules bote 1656

[. no gap in the MS.]
 O. bussþ vnbrent brennyng in Moses sight
 But rauyssheþ down fro þe dignete [leaf 198, back]
 Thorouþe þine humblenesse þe goste þat in þe lyzt 1660
 Of whos vertu whan he in þine hert lyzt
 Conceyued was þe fadres sapience
 helpe me to telle yt in þine reuerence 1663

¶ Lady þi bounte and þi magnificence
 Thy vertu and thy grete humilite
 There may no þinge expresse in no sentence
 ffor som tyme lady or men pray to þe 1667
 þou geste be-fore of þi benygnyte
 And geteste vs þe lyzt/ þorouþe þi prayere
 To leden vs vnto þi soþe so clere 1670

CAMBRIDGE 400 (6-T. 182) [this page, Sloane 1685]

Iy comynge ys to weyke O. blysfult quene [Sloane MS 1685.]
 fforto declare þi grete worthynesse
 þat I ne may þe wyȝt not sustene
 But as a chylde of twelfe moneth of age or lesse 1674
 þat can vnneth eny worde expresse
 ffor so fare I and þerfore I you pray
 Gydeþ my songe þat I shalle to you say 1677

[THE TALE.]

There was a Chylde in a grēte cite
 Amonge crysten folke in þe Iewrye
 Susteyned by a lord of þat countre
 ffor foule vsurye and lucre of vlanye 1681
 þat felle to Cryste and to hys companye
 And þorouȝe þe streete men myȝt ryde & wende
 ffor hyt was fre and open at eybere ende 1684

Plyte scoole of crysten folke þere stode
 Doun atte fyrthere ende in whiche þere were
 Chyldren an heepe comen of crysten bloode
 þat lerned in þat scole yere by ȝeere 1688
 Suche manere doctryne as men vsyd þere
 Thys ys to say to synge and to rede
 As smale Chyldren do in hir Chylde-heede 1691

Amonge þese children was a wydowe sone
 A lytel Clerygion seuen yeere of age
 þat day by day to scole was hys wone
 And also eke where as he saw þe ymage [leaf 169] 1695
 Of crystes modere hade he in vsage
 As hym was tauȝte to knele a-down & say
 hys Aue marie as he goth by þe way 1698

CAMBRIDGE 401 (A-T. 183). [this page, Sloane 1685.]

Thus hathe þis wydowe hir litel Child tauȝt [Sloane MS 1685.]

Oure blysfull lady Crystes modir dere
 To worshiþe ay and he for-yate hit nouȝt
 ffor sely Chylde wyllē al day sone lere 1702
 But ay when I remembre me of þis matere
 Seynt Nicholace stonte euere in my presence
 ffor he so yonge to Crist dyd reuerence 1705

Thys Child his lytel booke lernynge
 As he sat in þe scole at hys primere
 he alma redemptoris mater herd synge 1709
 As Children lernyd hir antephonere
 As · as he durste he drowe hym nere & nere
 And herkened ay þe wordes & þe noote
 Tylle he þe fyrste verse coude by roote 1712

Not what þat latyne was to seye
 ffor he so yonge and tendre was of age
 But on a day hys felawe he gan preye
 To expoune hym þis songe in hys langeage 1716
 Or tellen hym why þis songe was in vsage
 Thus prayde him to construe and declare
 ffulle ofte tymes . on his knees bare 1719

Hys felawe whiche was eldere þan he
 Answeryd hym þus . þis songe I herde seye
 was made of oure blesfulle lady fre 1723
 here to salowe and eke hir to preye
 To bene oure helpe and our' socour' whan we deye
 I can no more expone in þis matere
 I lerne songe I can but lytel gramere 1726

And ys þis songe made in reuerence
 Of crystes moder sayd þis Innocent
 Now certes I wyllē do my diligent
 To konne þis or crystemasse be went 1730

CAMBRIDGE 402 (6-T. 184) [this page, Sloane 1685.]

Thouze I for my prymer shalle be shent [Sloane MS 1095, ff 190, bk]
 And to be beten pryse on an oure
 I wolle yt konne oure lady to honoure 1733

Hys felawe tauzte hym hamward pryuely
 ffro day to day til he coude yt by roote
 And þan he songe it wele and boldely
 ffro worde to worde accordyng with þe note 1737
 Thrys on a day it passed þorouze hys þrote
 To scoleward and hamward whan he went
 On Crystes modir sett was hys entente 1740

¶ As I haue sayd þorouze oute þe Iewrie
 Thys Chylde as he came to & fro
 ffulle merely þan wolde he synge & crye
 O alma redemptoris mater euere mo 1744
 The swetnesse hath hys hert percid so
 Of Crystes moder þat to hir to praye
 he can not stynte of syngynge by þe weie] [Sloane extract ends.]

Oure fyrste fo the serpent satirnas [Camb. MS, leaf 321]
 That hath in Ieues herte his waspis nest
 Vp swal & seyde O ebraik peple allas
 Is this to yow a thyng that is honest 1751
 That swich a boy schal walkyn as hym lest
 In þoure despyt & syngyn of swich centence
 Which is a-ȝens oure lawys reuerence 1754

ffrom thenys forth the Iewys han conspyred
 This innocent out of this world to chace
 An homycyde thereto han they heryd
 Rygh in an aley at a pryue place 1758
 And as the child gan forth by-for to pace
 This cursede Iew hym hente & held hym faste
 And kitte his throte & in a pit hym caste 1761

I seye that in a warderope they hym threwe
 Where as these Iewys purgyn here entrayle
 O cursede folk of herodes al newe
 What may zoure euele entent 3ow a-vayle 1765
 Mordere wele out certeyn it wele nat fayle
 And namely there as thonour of god schal sprede
 The blod out cryeth on youre cursede dede 1768

O martyr soudede to virginite
 Now mayst tow syngyn folwynge euere in on
 The whyte lamb celestial quod sche
 Of whiche the greete euangelyst seynt Iohn 1772
 In pathmos wrot / which seyth that they that gon
 By-forn this lamb & syng a song al newe
 That neuere fleschely woman they ne knewe 1775

This pore widewe which that waytith al that nyȝt
 Aftyr hire lytyl chil[d] & he cam nouȝt
 ffor which as sone as it was dayis lyȝt
 With face pale of drede & busy thouȝt 1779
 Sche hath at scole & elles were hym souȝt
 Tyl fynally sche gan so fer espye
 That he last seyn was in the Ieuerye 1782

With moderis pite in hire brest enclosed [leaf 321, back]
 Sche goth as sche were half out of hire mynde
 To eueriplace where as sche hath supposid
 Be liklyhede / hire litil child to fynde 1786
 And euere on crystis modyr meke & kynde
 Sche cryede & at the laste thus sche wrouȝte
 Among the cursede Iewys sche hym souȝhte 1789

Sche askyth & sche fraynyth pitously
 Of euery Iue that dwelte in thilke place
 To telle hire of hire child wente out forth by
 They seydyn nay but Ihesu of his grace 1793

Yaf in hire thouȝt with inne a lytyl space
 That in that place aftyr hire sone sche cryede
 Where he was casten in a pit be-syde 1796

O greete god that parformedist this laude
 By mouth of innocentis lo here thyn myght
 This gemme of chastite this emeroude
 And ek of martyredom the rubye bryȝt 1800
 There he with throte I-korvyn lygh vp ryght
 He alma redemptoris gan to synge
 So loude that al the place gan to ryng 1803

The cristene folk that thurgh the strete wente
 In comyn for to wonderyn vp-on this thyng
 And hastyliche they for the prouost sente
 He cam a-non with-outyn taryeng 1807
 And heryeth Crist that is of heuene kyng
 And his modyr honour of mankynde
 And aftyr that the Iewis leet he bynde 1810

This child with pitous lamentacioun
 Vp takyn was syngyng his song alwey
 And with honour of greet processyoun
 They caryen hym vn-to the nexte abbey 1814
 His modyr swoūnyng by the beere lay
 Vnnethe mygh[t]e the puple that was there
 This newe Rachel bryngyn from the beere 1817

With turnement & with schameful deth echon [leaf 322]
 This prouost doth these Iewis for to sterue
 That of this mustere wiste & that a-noon
 He nolde non swich cursedenesse obserue 1821
 Euele schal he haue that euele wele disserue
 Therefore with wilde hors he dede hem drawe
 And aftyr that he hyng hem by the lawe 1824

Vp-on this beere lyth ay this Innocent
 Byfore the highe auteer whil the masse laste
 And aftyr that the albot with his couent
 Han sped hem for to buryen hym ful faste 1828
 And whan they holy watyr on hem caste
 3it spak this child whan spreut was holy watyr
 And song. O alma redemptoris mater 1831

This Abbot which that was an holy man
 As monkys been or ellis oughten bee
 This yonge child to coniure he be-gan
 And seyde o deere child I halse the 1835
 In vertu of the holy trynytee
 Telle me what is thyn cause for to synge
 Sithe that thyn throte is kit to myn lokynge 1838

Myn throte is kit vn-to myn nekke bon
 Seyde this child & as be woye of kynde
 I schulde a deyed 3a longe tyme a-gon
 But Ihesu Crist as 3e in bokys fynde 1842
 Wele that his glorye laste & be in mynde
 And for the worschepe of his modyr deere
 3it may I synge O Alma. loude & cleere 1845

This welle of mercy cristis modyr swete
 I louede alwey as aftyr myn cunnyng
 And whan that I myn lyf schulde for-lete
 To me sche cam & bad me for to synge 1849
 This anteme verayly in myn deyenge
 As 3e han herd & whan that I hadde sunge
 Me thouthe sche leyde a greyn vp-on myn tunge 1852

Wherfore I synge & synge mot certeyn [leaf 522, back]
 In honour of that blysfyl maydyn fre
 Tyl fro myn tunge I-takyn is the greyn
 And aftyr that thus seyde sche to me 1856

Myn lytyl child now wele I feche the
 Whan that the greyn is from thyn tunge take
 Be nat agast I wele þe nat for-sake 1859

This holy monk this abbot hym mene I
 His tunge out caughte & tok away the greyn
 And he ȝaf vp the gost ful softely
 And whan this abbot hadde this wondyr seyn 1863
 Hise salte teris trekelede down as reyn
 And grof he fel al flat vn-to the grounde
 And stille he lay / as he hadde leyn I-bounde 1866

The Conuent ek lay on the pauement
 Wepyng & herynge Cristis modyr deere
 And aftyr that they ryse & forth been went
 And toke away this martir from his beere 1870
 And in a tounbe of marbilstonys cleere
 Enclosyn they this lytil body sweete
 There he is now god leue vs for to meete 1873

O yonge Hugh of Lyncoln slayn also
 With cursede Iewis as it is notable
 ffor it is but a lytil while I-go
 Priye ek for vs we synful folk vnstable 1877
 That of his mercy god so merciable
 On vs his greete mercy multiplye
 ffor reuerence of his modyr marye / Amen 1880

Heere hath the Prioress endid hire tale

Byhold the myrie talkynge of the Hoost to [leaf 322, back]
Chaucer

WHan seyð was al this myrakele euery man [leaf 323]
As sobere was that wondir was to see
Til that oure hoost Iapyn tho¹ be-gan [¹ /a'ev]
And thanne aterst he lokede vp-on mee .i. Chaucer
And seide thus what man art thou quod he
Thow lokyst as thou woldyst fynde an hare
ffor euere vp-on the ground I se the staare 1887

Approchith neer & loke vp myrvely
Now ware þow seris & lat this man haue place
He in the wast is schape as weel as I
This weere a popet in an arm tenbrace 1891
ffor only weman smal & fayr of face
He semyth eluych by his cuntenaunce
ffor vn-to no wygh doth he no dalyaunce 1894

Sey now sumwhat syn othere folk han seyð
Telle vs a tale of myrthe & that a-non
Hoost quod I ne beth nat yuele apayed
ffor othir tale certis can I non 1898
But of a rým I lernede longe a-goon
þe that is good quod he now schul we here
Sum deynte thyng me thynkyth by hise cheere 1901

[No breaks in the MS between the stanzas: third lines set
on the right.]

Heere begynnyth Chaucers tale of sere Thopas

[Fyt I.]

T^lEstyth lordyngis in good entent. [The Illuminator has
put T, instead of L as
directed.]
And I wele telle verrayment

Of myrthe & solas 1904

And of a knyght was fayr & gent

In batayle & in turnement

His name was sere Thopas 1907

I-born he was in fer cuntre

In flaunderis al be-ȝounde þ^e see

At poperyng in the place 1910

His fadir was a man ful fre

And lord he was of that cuntre

As it was godis grace 1913

Syre Thopas wex a doghty sweyn

Whit was hise face as payn demayn

Hise lippis rede as rose 1916

His rode is lyk skarlet engrayn

As I ȝow telle in good certayn

He hade a semely nose 1919

His heer his berd was lik saferon

[leaf 223, back]

That to his گردil raughte a-doun

Hise schon of cordewayne 1922

Of brugis were hire hosyn broun

His robe was of siklatoun

That coste manye a layne 1925

He coude hunte at wilde deer
 And ryde on hauking for ryueer
 With grey goshawk & hunde 1928
 Therto he was a good archier
 Of wrastelyng was theere non his pir
 Theere ony ram schal stonde 1931

fful manye a maydyn brygh in bour
 They mornede for hym paramour
 whan hem were bet to slepe 1934
 But he was chast and no lechour
 And sweete as is the brymbil flour
 that beryth the rede hepe 1937

And so it fil vp-on a day
 ffor-sothe as I 3ow telle may
 Sire Thopas wolde out ryde 1940
 He worthith vp-on hise stede bay
 And in his hand a launcegay
 A long sword by his syde 1943

He prykyth thorw a fayr forest
 Therein is manye a wylde best
 ye bothe bukkys & hare 1946
 And as he prykyth north & est
 I telle it 3ow hym hadde al-mest
 Bytid a sory care 1949

Theere spryngyn erbis grete & smale
 The lycorys & the Cetewale
 And manye a clowe Ielofere 1952
 And notemuge to putte in ale
 Whethir it be moyst or stale
 Or for to leye in cofere 1955

The bryddys syngre it is non nay
 The sperhauk & the popyniay
 That Ioye it was to heere 1958
 The thrustilcock made ek his lay
 The wode douwe vp-on the spray
 seche song ful loude & cleere 1961

Sire Thopas fil in loue longynge
 Al whan he herde the thrustil syngre
 And prikede as he were wod 1964
 Hise fayre stede in hise prykyngre
 So swatte that men myzte hym wryngre
 Hise sydys were al blod 1967

Sere topas ek so wery was
 ffor prykyngre on the softe gras
 So fiers was hise corage 1970
 That doun he leyde hym in the plas
 To makyn his stede sum solas
 And 3af hym good forage 1973

O seynte marye benedicite
 What eylyth this loue at me
 To bynde me so soore 1976
 Me dremede al this nyght parde [leaf 324]
 An Elf queene schal myn leman be
 And slepe vndyr myn goore 1979

An Elf queene wele I haue I-wis
 ffor in this world no woman is
 Worthi to ben myn make 1982
 In tounne
 Alle othere women I forsake
 And to an elf queene I me be-take
 by dale & ek by doune 1986

In-to his sadyl he clomb a-non
 And prykyth ouyr style & ton
 An elf queen for tespye 1989
 Til he so longe hath rydyn & goon
 That he fond in a pryue woon
 The cūntre of fayrye 1992
 So wilde
 for in that cuntree was there non
 [. *no gap in the MS.*]
 Neythir wif ne childe 1996

Til that theere cam a greet geaunt
 His name was sire olyfaunt
 A *parlious* man of dede 1999
 He seyde child by termagaunt
 But ȝif thou pryke out of myn haunt
 Anon I sle thyn steede 2002
 With Mace
 Here is this queen of fayrye
 With harpe & pype & Symphonye
 Dwellynge in this place 2006

The child seyde also mote I the
 To morwe wele I meete the
 Whan I haue myn armoure 2009
 And ȝit I hope parmafay
 That thou schat with thyn launcegay
 Abyen it ful soure 2012
 Thy mawe
 Thyn hauberk schal I persen if I may
 Er it be fully pryme of the day
 ffor heere schalt thou¹ been slawe [*altered*] 2016

Syre Thopas drow a-bok ful faste
 This Ieaunt at hym stonys caste
 Out of a fel staf slynge 2019
 But fayre eschapith sire thopas
 And al was thour godys gras
 And thour his fayre berynge 2022

Yit lestyth lordyngis to myn tale
 Muryere than the nyghtyngale
 I wele ȝow rounne 2025
 How sire Thopas with sydis smale
 Prykyngge ouyr hil & dale
 Is comyn a-geyn to toūne 2028

Hise merye men comaundede hee
 To make hym bothe gamyn & glee
 for nedys muste he fyghte 2031
 With a geaunt with hedis thre
 ffor paramour & Iolyte
 Of oon that schon ful bryȝt 2034

Do come he seyde myne mynstralis
 And Gestourys for to tellyn talys
 A-non in myn armyng 2037
 Of romauncis that been royalis
 Of popis & of Cardenalys
 And ek of loue lykyng 2040

They fette hym fyrst swete wyn
 And mede ek in a Mahelyn
 And royal spicerye 2043
 Of gyngre breed that was ful fyn
 And lychorys & ek comyn
 With sugere that is trye 2046

He dede next his white lere
 Of cloth of lake fyn & cleere
 A brech & ek a scherte 2049
 And next his schirte an aketoun
 And ouyr that an habyrioun¹ X [1 altered]
 for persynge of his herte 2052

And ouyr that a fyn hauberk
 Was al I-wrouzt of Iewys werk
 ful stronge it was of plate 2055
 And ouyr that his coote armour
 As whit as is a lylve flour
 In whiche he wolde debate 2058

Hese shild was al of gold so red¹ [1 These lines are written in an
 And there in was a borys hed¹ other hand over an erasure.]
 A Charbokele by his syde 2061
 And there he swor on ale & breed
 How that the Ieaunt schulde be deed
 By-tyde what betyde 2064

Hise Iambieux were of quyrboyly
 His swerdys schede of yuory
 Hise helm of latoun bryzt 2067
 His sadil was of rewel boon
 His brydyl as the sunne It schon
 Or as the moone lyght 2070

Hise spere was of fyn cipres
 That biddyth werre and no thlyng pees
 The hed ful scharpe Igrounde 2073
 Hise steede was of dapil gray
 It goth an ambil in the way
 ful softeli & rounde 2076

In londe

Lo lordyngis¹ myne here is a fyt [1 altered]
 If ȝe wele ony moore of it
 To telle it wele I fonde 2080

[Fyt II.]

Now holdyth ȝoure mouth for charyte
 bothe knygh & lady free

And herkenyth to myn spelle 2083

Of batayle & of chyualry

And of ladyis loue drewery

A-noon I wele ȝow telle 2086

Men spekyn of romauncis of prys

Of hornchild & of Ipotys

Of Beevis & sire Gy 2089

Of sire lybeus & playndamour

But sire Thopas beryth the flour

Of royal chyualry 2092

His goode stede al he be-strod

And forth vp-on his weye he glod

As sparkele out of bronde 2095

[Vp on his creste he bar a tour. [Harl. MS 1756, leaf 166, back]

And ther yn stiked a lilye flour.

God schilde his cors fro schonde. 2098

¶ And for he was knyght Auntrous.

He ne slepte in non hous.

But logged in his hood. 2101

His bright helme was his wonger

And bi hym baited his dester.

Of herbis fyn & good. 2104

¶ Hym self drank water of the welle. [Harl. MS 1758]

As dide the knyght sir Percynelle.

So worthely vnder wede.

Till it was on a daye. 2108

¶ Here endeth Sir Thopas.]

[The prolog of Mellibe]

[MS Reg. 18 C II, leaf 196, back.]

NO more of this for goddes dignite
 Quod oure oost for þou makest me
 So wery of þin lewdenes
 That also wisly god me bles 2112
 Myn eres ake of thi darsty speche
 Now suche a ryme þe deuel I be-teche
 This may be wel ryme dogerett quod he
 Whi so quod I why wilt þou lette me 2116
 More of my tale than an other man
 Sethyns it is þe beste ryme I can
 By god quod he pleylnly I the say
 Thou shalt no lenger rymen here to day 2120
 Thow dost noght elles but dyspendest tyme
 Sire oo word þou shalt no lenger ryme
 Let see wheþer þou canst telle ought in geste
 Or telle in prose somewhat at þe leste 2124
 In whiche þer be somme merthe & som doctrine
 Gladly quod I by goddes swete pyne
 I wil ȝou telle a lital thing in prose
 That oughte lyke ȝou as I suppose 2128
 Other elles certes ȝe ben to daungerous
 Hit is a moral tale vertuous
 Al be hit tolde somtyme in sundry wyse
 Of sondry folk as I shal ȝou deuyse 2132
 As þus ȝe wote wel euery euangeliste
 þat telleth vs of Ihesu Crist
 Ne saith not al þing as his felawe doth
 But natheles her sentence is al soth 2136
 And alle accorden as in her sentence
 Al be ther in her tellynge difference

CAMBRIDGE 417 (c-T. 199) [this page, MS Reg. 18 C ii]

for some of hem seyn more & somme seyn lesse	
when þey his pitous passion expresse	2140
I mene of Marc Mathew Luke and Iohn	
But douteles her sentence is al on	[leaf 197]
þerfore lordynges alle [I] þou beseche	
þif þat ȝe þinke I varye in my speche	2144
As þus þif þat I telle somewhat more	
Of prouerbes þen ȝe haue herd byfore	
Comprehendid in þis litel tretys here	
To enforce with þe effecte of my matere	2148
And þoughe I nadde þe same wordes saye	
As ȝe han herd ȝit to alle þou I praye	
Blameth me not for as in myn sentence	
ȝe schal not fynden moche difference	2152
ffro þe sentence of þe tretys lyte	
After þe whiche þis mery tale I wryte	
And herkeneth what I schal seye	
And lete me telle my tale I preye	2156

Here endith the prolog //]

[There are no line-numbers or breaks between the paragraphs in the MS. Tyrwhitt's breaks are kept here to prevent slight differences in the Six Texts throwing out many lines.]

[MS Reg. 18 C II, on leaf 197.]

[Here endith the prolog // And begynne] the tale of Melibe

[2157]

A Yong man whilom celled Melibe myghti and ryche
bygat vpon his wyf þat called was prudence a
doughter whiche þat cleped sapience.

[2158] vpon a day fel þat he for his disport
is went in to þe felde him to pleye / [2159] his wyf
and eke his doghter hath he left with-ynne his hous of
whiche þe dores were faste I-schet // [2160] ffoure of his
olde foos han hit aspyed. and. setten laddres to þe walles
of his hous and by þe wyndowes ben entred [2161] and
betyn hys wyf and wounded his doughter with fyue
mortal woundes in fyue sondry places / [2162] This is to
sayn in here feet in here hond and in here eres in hire
nose and in here mouth & laften her for deed and
wenten here way //

[2163] When Melibeus retorned was aȝeyn vntil his hous
and sawh all þis meschief // And he I-lyke a mad man rend-
yng his clothes gan to wpe and crye euerlenger þe more //

[2164] Prudence his wyf as ferforth as sche durste
by-soght him of his wepyng^r for to stynte [2165] but noght
for-thi he gan to wipe & crye euer the lenger þe more //

[2166] This noble wyf prudence remembred here
on þe sentence of Ovide in his book^r þat cleped is þe ^{Ovidius}
remedye of loue / where he saith: [2167] he is a fool
þat desturbeth þe moder for to wipe in þe deeth of hire
child til sche haue wepte her fille for a certeyn tyme:

[2168] Then schal man don his diligence with
amyable wordes hire to conforte and ¹to preye hire of
[leaf 197,
back]

CAMBRIDGE 419 [this page, MS Reg. 18 C ii] (6-T. 201)

[MS Reg.
18 C II,
leaf 197.]

her wepyng^r for to stynt^q: [2169] for whiche reson this noble prudence suffred her housbonde for to wepe and crye as for a certayn space // [2170] And when she sawh her tyme she saide him in pis wyse / Alas my lord quod she whi make 3e 3oure self for to be lyke a fool: [2171] fforsothe it perteyneth not to a wisman to maken suche a sorwe / [2172] 3oure Doughter with þe grace of god shal be warisched and askape / [2173] And aft were it so þat sche right now were deed 3e oughte not as for her deth] ¹3oure self dystroye // [2174] ¶ Senec seyth the wyse man schal nat take to greet discomfort for the deth of hise childeryn / [2175] but certis he schulde sufferyn it in pacience As wel as he a-bydyth the deth of hise propre persone /

[leaf 237,
Camb. Univ.
Libr. MS
Gg. 4. 37,
beginns here.]

[2176] ¶ This Melibeus answerde a-noon & seyde / What man quod he schulde of his wepynge stynte / that hath so greet a cause for to weepe / [2177] Ihesu crist oure lord hym self wepte for the deth of lasarus his freend [2178] ¶ Prudence answerede / crertys weel I wot / Atemptre wepyng is no thyng defendit to hym that sorweful is a-mongis folk / in sorwe / but it is rathere graunted hym to weepe [2179] ¶ The apostele paule vn-to the romayns wrythth / Man schal reioyse with hem that makyn Ioye / And wepyn with sweche folk as wepyn / [2180] but thogh attempere wepyng be grauntid / outrageous wepynge certis is defendid / [2181] mesure of wepynge schulde been consideryd aftyr the loore that techith vs Senek [2182] ¶ Whan that thyn frend is deed quod he / let not thynne eyen to moyste been of teerys / ne to meche dreye / Al-thow thynne terys comyn to thynne eyen / lat hem nat fallyn [2183] And whan thou hast forgoon thyn freend [. . . no gap in the MS.] & this is moore wysdom / than for to wepyn for thyn frend / whiche that thou hast loryn / for there-inne is no boote / [2184] And therefore 3if 3e gouerne 3ow be sapience putte away sorwe out of 3oure hertis / [2185] Rememberyth yow that Ihesus Syrat seyth

A man that is ioyous & glad in herte / it hym conseruyth floryschynge in his Age / & sothly sorweful herte makyt hise bonys dreye [2186] he seyth ek thus that sorwe in herte: sleth ful manye a man [2187] ¶ Salomon seyth / that ryght as mothis in the schepis flesch anoyeth to the clothis / & the smale wermys to the tree / rygh so anoyith sorwe to the herte. [2188] Wherefore vs oughte as weel in the deth of oure childeryn: as in the loos of oure goodys temperelys haue pacience

[2189] ¶ Remembrith yow vp-on the paciente Iob / Whan he hadde lost hise childeryn & his temperel sustaunce / & in his body enduryng & resceyuyd ful manye a greuous trybulacioun / yet seyde he thus [2190] ¶ Oure lord hath [sente it me / oure lord hath] be-raft it me / rygh so as oure lord hath wold / rygh so it is don / I-blyssede be the name of oure lord / [2191] ¶ To these forseiede thyngis Answerde Melybeus to his wyf prudence ¶ Alle thynne wordys quod he been sothe & therto profitabele / but trewely myn herte is troubeled / with this sorwe so greuously / that I not what to don. [2192] ¶ Lat calle quod Prudence thyn trewe frendys alle And thyn lynage / whiche that been wyse tellyth *zoure* cas And herkenyth what they seye in conseylunge And *zow* gouerne aftyr here sentente [2193] ¶ Salomon seith werke alle thyn thyngis by conseyl: & thow schalt neuere repente

[2194] ¶ Thanne by the conseyl of his wyf Prudence: this Mellibeus leet callyn / a gret congregacioun / of folk / [2195] as Surgeons Phisiciens olde folk And *zyng*e & some of hise olde enemyis reconsyled As by here semblaunt / to his loue & in to hise grace / [2196] & therewithal there come some of hise negheboris That dydyn hem reuerence / moore for dreede than for loue as it happith ofte / [2197] There comyn also manye subtile flatererys / & wise aduocatys / lernede in the lawe

[2198] ¶ And whan these folk togedere assemblede were / this Mellibeus in sorweful wyse / schewede hem his cas /

[2199] & by the manere of hise speche / it semyd
that in herte he bar a crewel yre / redy to doon venge-
aunce vp-on hise fois / & sodeynly desyrede that the
werre schulde begynne / [2200] but neuere the les 3it axede
he here conseyll / vp-on this matyere / [2201] A surgen by
lycence / And assent of sweche as were wyse vp ros & vn-
to Melybeus seyde as ye may here

[2202] ¶ Sire quod he / as to vs surgenys apertenyt
that we do to euery wight the beste / that we can where as
we been with holdyn / And to oure pacient that we don no
damage / [2203] Wherefore it happith manye tyme / & ofte
that whan twey men / hath euerych woundyd othyr .O.
same surgen helyth hem bothe / [2204] Wherefore vn-to
oure art it is nat perteynent to noryche werre / ne partyis
to supporte [2205] ¶ But sertys as to the waryschyng 'of
goure doughtir Al be it so sche be perlyously
woundit we schul do so ententyf bysynesse / from day to
nygh That with the grace of god sche schal been hool &
sound / as soone as is possible / [2206] Almost ry3t
in the same wyse the phisycionys answeredyn / Saue that
they seydyn a fewe wordys moore / [2207] that ryght
as maladyis ben cureede by here contraryis / rygh so schal
men waryche / werre: by vengeaunce [2208] ¶ Hise neghe-
boris ful of enuye / Hise feynede frendis that semede
reconsyld & hise flatererys [2209] madyn semblaunt
Of wepyng / & empeyrede & agregede meche of this
matyr. in preysynge greetly Mellibie / of mygh of power /
of rychesse & of frendys / despisyng the power of hise
aduersaryis [2210] & seydyn vtrelly that thy schuldyn Anon
wrekyn hym on hise fois & begynne werre /

[2211] vp ros thanne an Aduocat / that was wys /
by leue & by conseyll of othere / that weere wyse & seyde
[2212] ¶ Lordyngis the neede which that we been assembled
in this place / is ful heuy thyng / & an heygh matire
[2213] by cause of the wrong & the wikkedenesse that
hath been doon / & ek by resoun of the greete damages / that

in tyme comynge been possible to fallyn for the same /
 [2214] & ek by resoun of the greette rychesse &
 power of the partyis bothe [2215] for the whiche resonys /
 it weere a ful greet peril / to erryn in this matyer [2216]
 ¶ Wherefore Mellybeus this is oure sentens. we conseyle
 ȝow a-bouyn alle thyng / that rygh a-non thow do thyn
 dylygence / in kepynge of thyn *propre* persone in swich a
 wyse / that thow ne wante noon espie / ne wache thyn body
 for to saue [2217] ¶ And aftyr that we conseyle That in
 thyn hous thu sette sufficiaunt garnysoun. so that they may
 as weel thyn body as thyn hous defende [2218] But certys
 for to meue werre / ne sodeynly for to doon vengeauns
 we may not deme in so lytyl tyme. that it weere profit-
 able / [2219] Wherefore we axe leyser & espaſe to haue
 delyberacioun / in this cas to deeme [2220] for the comune
 prouerbe seyth this / He that soone demyth sone
 schal repente: [2221] & ek men seyn that ¹thylke Iuge is
 wys that sone vndyrstondyth a matiere And Iugith be
 leyseer / [2222] for al be it so that alle tarynge be a-noyeful
 algatis it is not to be repreuyd in yeuyng of iugement / ne in
 vengeaunce takynge whan it is suffisaunt & resonabele /
 [2223] & that schewede oure lord Ihesu cryst by en-
 saumple / for whan that woman was takyn in
 auouterye was brough in his presence to knowyn what
 schulde been don of hire persone / al be it that he wyste
 weel / hym self what that he wolde answer: yet ne wolde he
 nat answer sodeynly but he wolde haue deliberacioun &
 in the ground he wrot / twyis / [2224] & by these
 causis: we axe deliberacioun & we schul thanne by
 the grace of god conseyle the thyng that schal been
 profitable //

[2225] vp styrtyn thanne the ȝonge fok at onys &
 the moste partye of that companye / han skorned this olde
 wise man And begunne to make noyse / & seydyn / that
 [2226] ryght so as whil that yryn is hoot / men schuldyn
 smytyn. rygh so schuldyn men wreke here wrongis / whil

that they been frosche & newe & with loude voys.
[*se escrièrent, "guerre! guerre! guerre!"*]

[2227] *Adonc se leva un des anciens,*] And with hise hand made contenaunce that men schuldyn holdyn hem styлле / and ȝeuyⁿ hym audience. [2228] lordyngis quod he theere is ful manye a man that cryeth werre werre: that wot ful lytil what werre amountyث / [2229] werre at hise begynny[n]g hath so greet an entre and so large; that euery whight may entre whan hym lykyth / & lyghtely fynde werre / [2230] but certis what ende therof schal falle: it is nat lyght to knowe [2231] ffor sothly whan that werre is onys begunne: there is ful manye a child born of hise modyr that schal sterue ȝong be cause of thilke werre / & ellys lyue in sorwe & deye in wrechedenesse / [2232] And therefore or that ony werre begynne men must haue gret conseyل / & gret deliberacyoun [2233] And whan this olde man wende for to enforse his tale be resouns wel nygh alleattonys/bygunne they to ryse/for to brekyn his tale & bodyn hym ful oftyⁿ hise wordis to abreggo [2234] for sothly he that pre'chith to hem / that lestyth not to heere hise wordys: his: sarmoun hem anoyeth [2235] ¶ ffor Ihesus Syrak seyث. that Musik in wepynge: is a-noyous thyng this is to seyne / as meche awaylyth to speke by-fore folk / to whiche hise speche anoyeth as doth to synge be-fore hym that wepith [2236] ¶ And whan that pis wyse man wantede audience: al schamefast he sette hym down / agayn [2237] ¶ ffor salomon seyث. There as thow maght haue noon audience / enforce the not to speke / [2238] I se weel quod this wyse man that the comune prouerbe is soth that good conseyل wantyth whan it is most neede. [2239]

And ȝit hadde this Mellibeus in his conseyل manye folk that priuily in hise eere conseylede hym / certeyn thyng. & conseyllede hym the contrarye: in general audyence// [2240] Whanne Melibeus hadde herd that the grettere

partye of his conseyll were acorded that he schulde make werre: a-noon he concentede to here conseylynge And fully affermede hire centence [2241] ¶ Thanne dame. prudence / whan that sche saw how that hire husbonde schop hym for to wreke hym on hise fois & to begynne werre / Sche in ful humble wyse whan sche sagh hire tyme / seyde hym these wordys [2242] Myn lord quod sche / I ȝow beseche al hertyly / as I dar & can. ne hastyth ȝow to faste / And for alle guerdounys as ȝeuyth me audyence [2243] ¶ ffor Piers Alfonse seyth / who so that doth to the othir good or harm / haste the not to quite it / for in this wise / thi frend wole abyde / & thyn enemy schal the lengere lyue in drede // [2244] The prouerbe seyth / he hastyth weel that wisely can abyde / And in wikke hast is no profyt

[2245] ¶ This Melibee answerede vn-to his wyf prudence I purpose [. . .] not to werkyn by thyn conseyll for manye causis & resonys / for certys euery whit wele holdyn me thanne a fool / [2246] this is to seyne / If I for thyn conseylynge wolde schaunge thyngis that been ordeyned And affermede be so manye wise [2247] ¶ Secondly I seye. ¹That alle wemen been wekke & noon good of hem alle. ffor of a thousent men seyth Salomon / I fond on good man / but certis of alle wemen good weman fond I neuere [2248] ¶ And also certys ȝif I gouernede me by thyn conseyll: it schulde seme that I hadde ȝouyn the the maisterye / & goddys forbode that it so were / [2249] for Ihesus Sirak seyth / that ȝif the wyf haue the maysterye / sche is contraryous to hire husbonde [2250] ¶ And Salomon seyth neuere in thyn lyf to thyn wyf / ne thyn child / ne to thyn frend ne ȝeue power ouyr thyn self / for bettere it weere That thyne childeryn axsyn of thyn persone thyngis that hem nedyth: than thow see thyn self in the hondys of thyne childeryn / [2251] And also ȝif I wolde werke by thyn conseylyng / certis myn conseyll muste been secre til it weere tyme that it muste ben

knowe & this it may nat bee [2252. For it is written, 'the Iangelerye of women can hide thyngis that they wot nought.' [2253] Furthermore the philosopher saith, 'in wikkede conseyl wemen venquysse men;' and for these reasons I ought not to make use of thy counsel. *See lines 2274, 2280, p. 209, 210, below.*] [2254]

WHan dame Prudence ful debonerly & with greet pacience hadde herd al that hire husbonde hadde seyde & that hym likede for to seyne / thanne axed sche of hym lycence for to spekyng & seyde in this wyse [2255] ¶ Myn lord quod sche as to *zoure* fyrste resoun certis it may lyghtely been answered ffor I seye that it is no folye for to chaunge conseyl / whan the thyng is chaungit / or ellys whan the þyng semyth othir wyse than it was by forn / [2256] And moore-ouyr I seye / that thogh that ȝe han sworn & by-hight to perforce *zoure* emprise / & nathe-les ȝe weyue to perforce tilkesame emprise by iuste cause / men schulde nat seyn therefore / that ȝe weere a lyere ne for-sworn [2257] for the bok seyth that the wyse man makyth no lesynge: whan he turnyth hise corage to the bettere. [2258] And al be it so that *zoure* emprise be establid & ordeined / by gret multitude of folk / ȝit thar ȝe not accomplyssche thikke same ordynau[n]ce but ȝow lyke // [2259] ffor the trouthe of thyngis & the profyt been rather ffoundyn in fewe folk that been wyse & ful of resoun than by greet multytude of folk theere euery man cryeth & clateryth what that hym lykyth / sothly swich ¹multytude is nat honest / [2260] And to the secunde resoun where that ȝe seyn that alle wemen been wekke. saue *zoure* grace / certis ȝe dispise alle wemen in this wyse / & he that alle dispiseth: alle displesyth as seyth the book / [2261] & senek seyth / that who so wele haue sapience. schal no man dispriyse / but he schal gladly teche the cience that he can: with-outyn *presumpcioun* or *pride* / [2262] And sweche thyngis as he nought ne can: he schal not been aschamed to lerne hem / & enquiry of lasse

folk than hym self [2263] And syre that theree hath
 been ful manye a good woman: may lyghtely been preuyd /
 [2264] for certys / sere oure lord Ihesu crist / wolde
 neuere han descendit to been born of a woman: zif alle
 wemen hadde been wekke / [2265] And aftyr that for
 the greete bounte / that is in oure lord Ihesu crist /
 whan he was resyn from deth to lyue / aperede rathere to a
 woman than to hise apostellis / [2266] And thogh
 that salomon seyth that he ne fond neuere woman
 good: it ne folwyth nat therfore that alle wemen been
 wikke / [2267] for thow that he ne fond no good
 woman: certys manye a nothir man hat foundyn
 manye a woman ful good & trewe [2268] ¶ Or ellis
 the entent of Salomon perauenture was this / that as in
 souerein bounte he fond no woman / [2269] this is to
 seyne that theree is no wyȝt that hath souereyn bountee
 saue god a-lone / as he hym self recordyth in hise Euaun-
 gelie [2270] for theree is no cryature so good: that he
 ne wanthith sumwhat of the perfeccioun of god that is his
 makere [2271] ¶ Your thredde resoun is this / ȝe seyn þat zif
 ȝe gouerne ȝow by myn conseyll: it schulde seme that ȝe
 hadde ȝeue me the maystrye & the lordschepe ouyr ȝoure
 persone / [2272] Sire saue ȝoure grace / it is nat so / for
 if it so were that no man schulde been conseyled but only
 of hem that hadde lordschepe & maystrye of his persone:
 men wolde nat been conseyled / so ofte / [2273] for sothly
 thilke man that axsith conseyll of a purpos / ȝit hath he
 fre choys whether he wele werke by that conseyll / or
 noon [2274] ¶ And ¹as to ȝoure forte resoun / there ȝe
 seyen that the Iangelerye of women can hide thyngis that
 they wot nought As ho sey that a woman can not
 hyde that sche wot [2275] Sire these wordys been vndyr-
 stonde / of women that been Iangleressis / & wekkede /
 [2276] of whiche wemen men seyn / that thre thyngis
 dryuyn a man out of his hous / that is to seyne smoke /
 droppynge of reyn & wikkede wyuys / [2277] And

of sweche wemen seythesalomon / that it weere bettere to dwelle
in disert: than with a wekkede woman that is rytous / [2278]
And sire by youre leue that am not .I. [2279] for 3e han ful
ofte assayed myn grete sylence & myn greete pacience / &
ek how wel that I can hyde & helyn thyngis that
men oughtyn secrely to hidyn [2280] ¶ And sothly as to
your fyfte resoun where as 3e seyn that in wikkede con-
seyl / wemen venquysse men / god wot thikke resoun
stant heere in no stede / [2281] for vndyrstonde now 3e
axe conseyl to do wekkedenesse / [2282. *et se tu vouloies user
de mauvais conseil et de mal faire*] & youre wif restreynth
thilke wekkede purpos / & ouyr-comyth 3ow be resoun & be
good conseyl / [2283] certys youre wyf: oughte rather be
preysed / than I-blamyd / [2284] thus schul 3e vndyr-
stonde the philysophere / that seyth In wekkede conseyl
women wenquysschyn here husbondys [2285] ¶ And there
as 3e blamyn alle wemen & here resonys / I schal schewe
manye ensaumplys that manye a woman hath
been ful good and 3it been / & here conseyls holsom
& profitable [2286] ¶ Ek sum men han seyde that the
conseyllynge of women is othir to dere or to
lytyl of prys [2287] but al be it so that ful manie a
woman is badde & here conseyl vile / & not worth /
3it han men foundyn ful manye a good woman / & ful
descreet & wis in conseyllynge / [2288] lo Iacob by
conseyl of hise moodyr Rebekka / wan the benysoun of
ysaak his fadyr & the lordschepe ouyr alle hise bretheryn /
[2289] Iudith by hire goode conseyl: delyuerede the cete of
Bethulye in whiche sche dwellede out of the bondys of
Olofernus / that hadde it be-segit & wolde it al distroye
[2290] ¶ Abygail deliuerede Nabal hire husbonde¹ from
Dauid the kyng þat wolde han slayn hym & a-paysed
the yre of the kyng bi hire wit / & by hyre goode con-
seyllynge [2291] Hester by hire goode conseyl / enhaunsede
gretly the peple of god in the regne / of Assuerus the kyng
[2292] ¶ And the same bountee in good conseyllynge of

manye a good woman may men telle / [2293] & moore
ouyr / whan that oure lord hadde creat Adam / oure forme
fadyr / he seyde in this wyse / [2294] It is not good to be a
man a-loone / make we to hym an helpe / semblable to hym
self // [2295] Heere may 3e se / that if that women
weere not goode / ne here conseyll good & profytable
[2296] oure lord god of heuene wolde neythir han wrouȝt
hem / ne callede hem helpe of man / but rather confusoun of
man / [2297] And there seyde onys a clerk in two wers /
What is betere than gold. Iaspre. What is betere than
Iaspre / Wysdom / [2298] What is betere than
wysdom / woman / & What is betere than good
woman / no thyng. [2299] And sire by manye opere
resonys may 3e se þat manye weemen been goode /
& here conseyll good & profitable / [2300] and therefore
ȝif 3e wele troste to myn conseyll: I schal restore ȝow
ȝoure douȝtyr hol & sound / [2301] and ek I wele do ȝow
so mechil that 3e schul haue honour in this cause [2302]

WHan Melibee / hadde herd the wordys / of his wyf
Prudence / he seyde thus [2303] ¶ I sawel that the
word of Salomon is soth // he seyth that wordis /
that been spokyn discretly by ordenaunce: been hony-
combis / for they ȝeue swetenesse / to the soule / & holsom-
nesse to the body [2304] ¶ And wif by cause / offe thyne
swete wordys / and ek for I haue asayed & preuyd thyn greete
sapience / & thyn greete trouthe / I wele gouerne me by thyn
conseyll in alle thyng. [2305]

NOw seere quod dame prudence / an syn 3e wouche
saf to been gouernyd by myn conseyll / I wele
enforme ȝow / how 3e schul gouerne ȝow / self in
chesynge of ȝoure conseyll [2306] ¶ 3e schal fyrst in alle ȝoure
werkys / meekely besekyn to the hye god that he wele
been ȝoure conseyllour / [2307] and schapith ȝow to swych
entente that he ȝeue ȝow conseyll & confort as tauȝte
Thobie his sone // [2308] At alle tymys thow schat 'plese

god / And preye hym to dresse thynne weyis / and loke þat
 alle thynne conseylis / been in hym for euere moore / [2309]
 seynt Iame / ek seyth / If onye of 3ow haue nede of sapience /
 axe it of god / [2310] And aftyrward thanne schal 3e take
 conseyll in 3oure self / & examyne wel 3oure thougtis / of
 sweche thyngis / as 3ow thynkyth that been best for 3oure
 profyt [2311] and thanne schul 3e dryue forth / from 3oure
 herte the thyngis that been contrarious to good conseyll /
 [2312] that is to seyne / yre coueytise / & hastyfnesse /

[2313] ffyrst he that axsith conseyll of hymself / certis
 he muste ben with-outyn Ire / for manye causes // [2314]
 The ferste is this / he that hat gret wrathe & yre in
 hym self he wenyth alwey that he may don thyng: that he
 may not doon / [2315] And secundely he that is yrouis /
 & wratheful / he ne may not wel deme / [2316] And he
 that may not wel deme / may not weel conseyle [2317] ¶ A-
 nothir is this / that he that is yrouis & wratheful as seyth
 Senek / ne may not spekyn but blameful thyngis / [2318]
 and with hise vicyous wordis he steryth othere folk to
 angir / & to yre [2319] ¶ And ek sere 3e muste dryue
 coueytise out of 3oure herte [2320] ffor thapostele seyth /
 that coueytise / is rote of alle harmys / [2321] & truste
 weel / that a coueytous man ne can not deeme ne thynke:
 but only to fulfyll the ende of his coueytise / [2322] and
 sertis that ne may neuere / been aconplichit / ffor euere
 the moore habundaunce that he hath of rychesse the more
 he desyryth [2323] ¶ And the moste also dryuyth out
 of 3oure herte / hastyfnesse / for certys [2324] 3e may
 not demyn for the beste of a sodeyn thougt that fallyth in
 3oure herte but 3e muste avyse 3ow on it ful ofte /
 [2325] for as 3e herde heere be-forn / the comune prouerbe / is
 this / that he that sone demyth soone repentyth //

[2326] Sire 3e been not alwey I-lyk in disposicioun /
 [2327] for certys sum thyng / that sumtyme semyth to
 3ow that it is good for to do: a nothir tyme it semyth
 to 3ow the contrarye

[2328] ¶ Whan 3e han takyn conseyll in 3oure self / & han demyd by good deliberacioun / swych thyng as 3ow semyth best / [2329] thanne rede I 3ow 'that 3e kepe it secree / [2330] bewreye not 3oure conseyll to no persone / but if so be that 3e wenyn sekryly / that thorw 3oure bewreyinge / 3oure condycioun schal ben to 3ow the moore profitable // [2331] ffor Ihesus Syrak seyth neythir to thyn fo ne to thyn frend / discouere not thyn secree ne thyn folye / [2332] for they wele 3eue 3ow audyence & lokinge & supportacioun in 3oure presence / & skorne 3ow in 3oure absence / [2333] A nothir clerk seyth / that skarsely schalt thou fyndyn ony persone / that may kepe conseyll secrely / [2334] the bok seyth / whil that thou kepist thyn conseyll in thyn herte thou kepist it in thyn prysoun / [2335] And whan thou bewreyist thyn conseyll to ony whit he holdyth the in his snare [2336] And therefore 3ow is betere / to hyde 3oure conseil in 3oure herte: than preyen hym to whom 3e han bewreyed 3oure conseyll: that he wele kepe it clos & styll [2337] ¶ ffor Seneca seyth If so be that thou ne mayst / not thyn owene conseyll hyde: how mayst thou preye ony othir whit thyn conseyll secrely to kepyn / [2338] But natheles 3if thou wene sekryly that thyn bewreyinge of thyn conseyll to a persone wele make thyn condycioun stondyn in the betere plyt thanne schat thou telle hym tyn conseyll in this wyse [2339] flyrst thou schat make no semblaunt whethir the were leuere pes or werre / or this or that / ne shew hym nat thyn wil ne thyn entent / [2340] for troste weel that comounly these / conseyllourys been flatererys [2341] namely the conseyllourys of greete lordis / [2342] for they enforse hem alwey rathere to speke plesaunte wordis enclynyng to othere lordys lust: than othere that been trewe / & profitable / [2343] And therefore men seyn / that ryche men / han selde good conseyll / but if he haue it of hym self / [2344] and aftyr that thou schat considere thyne frendys / & thynne enemyis . [2345] And as touchinge thyne frendys / thou schat con-

sideryn whiche are most feythful / & most
 wys & oldeste & most apreuid in conseylunge /
 [2346] & of hem schalt thow axe thyne conseyle: as the
 caas requiryth /

[2347] I seyde that fyrst ¹3e schul clepyn to 3oure con-
 seyl 3owre frendis that been trewe // [2348] ffor Salomon
 seyth that ry3t as the herte of a man delythth in sauour
 that is sote / ry3t so the conseyl of trewe frendys
 3euyth swetnesse to the soule / [2349] & he seyth also there
 may no thyng [be] to the trewe frend / [2350] for
 certis gold ne syluyr ben not so meche worth: as the
 goode wyl of a trewe frend [2351] ¶ And ek he seyth
 that a trewe frend / is a strong defens / who so that
 it fyndyth: sertis he fyndyth a greet tresor
 [2352] ¶ Thanne schul 3e ek considere If that 3oure
 trewe frendis: been descreete / & wise ffor the bok
 seyth / Axse alwey thyn conseyl of hem that been wyse /
 [2353] And by this same resoun / schul 3e clepyn to 3oure
 conseyl / of 3oure frendis / that been of age / Sweche as han
 seyn / & been expert in manye thyngis And been apreuyd
 in manye thyngis conseilynge / [2354] ffor the bok seyth
 that in olde men is the sapience / & in long tyme
 the prudence // [2355] And tullius seyth / that greeete
 thyngis ne ben not ay accompliced / be strenthe ne be
 delyuerenesse of body / But by conseyl be autoritee
 of personys / & by science / the whiche thre thyngis
 ben not feblid by age / but certys they enforsyn & en-
 cresyn day be day // [2356] And thanne schal 3e keepe
 this for a general reule / ffyrst schal 3e clepe to 3oure
 conseyl a fewe of 3oure frendys that been especial
 [2357] ffor Salomon seyth / Manye frendis haue thow /
 but a-mong a thousent cheese the on to been thyn conseyl-
 our [2358] ffor al be it so / that thow ne telle thyn
 conseyl but to a fewe / thow mayst aftyrward tellyn it to
 mo yf it be neede / [2359] but loke alwey that thyn
 conseylouris haue thilke thre condiciounys / that I haue seyd

before / þat is to seye / that they been trewe wyse &
 of old experience / [2360] And werke not in euery
 thingis alwey be on conseylour alone / for sumtyme byhouyth
 it to been conseyled by manye / [2361] ffor salomon seyth /
 Saluacioun of thyngis is / where as there been manye
 conseylourys

[2362] ¶ Now sithe that I haue told 3ow / of which folk
 3e schul ben conseylid. now wele I teeche 3ow which
 conseyl 3e oughte to eschewe [2363] ¶ ffyrst 3eschul eschewe /
 the con¹seylyng of folys / for salomon seyth take no con-
 seyl of a fool / for he ne can not conseyle but aftyr his
 owene lust & his affeccioun / [2364] The book seyth /
 that the *properte* of a fol is this he trowyth lyghtely
 harm of euery wight / & lytely trowyth alle bounte in
 hym self / [2365] Thow schalt ek eschewe / the conseylunge
 of alle flatereris wheche as enforseen hem rathere to preysyn
 3oure persone by flaterye than to telle 3ow the sothe-
 fastnesse of thyngis /

[2366] Wherfore Thullyus seyth / among alle the
 pestelences that been / in frenchepe / the gretteste is
 flaterye / & therfore it is more neede / that thow eschewe
 & drede flatereris than any othir peple // [2367] The
 bok seyth thow schalt rathere drede & fle from the
 swete wordis of flaterynge preyseris / than from the egere
 wordis of thyn frend that seyth the thyne sothis [2368]
 ¶ Salomon seyth that the wordis of a flaterere is a snare
 to cachyn innocentis / [2369] he seyth also / that he
 that spekyth to hise frend / wordis of swetnesse & of
 plesaunce: settith a net be-forh hise feet to cachyn hym /
 [2370] & therfore seyth Tullius / Encline not thyne
 eris to flatereris / ne take no conseyl of wordis of
 flaterye / [2371] And Catoun seyth Auyse the weel &
 eschewe wordis of swetnesse & of plesaunce
 [2372] ¶ And ek thow schalt eschewe the conseylunge of
 thyne olde enemyis that been reconsyled // [2373] The
 bok seyth that no wight retornyth sauely into the

grace of hise olde enemy [2374] ¶ And ysope seyth / ne
 truste not to hem to wheche thow hast had sumtyme werre
 or enmytee ne telle hem not thyn conseyll / [2375] And
 Seneca tellyth the cause why / It may not be seyth he /
 that where as greet feer long tyme hath deured: that
 there ne dwellyth sum vapour of warmnesse [2376] And
 therfore Seyth Salomon / in thyn olde fo truste neuere /
 [2377] ffor sekirly / thow thyn enemy be reconseyled /
 & makyth the cheer of humylite / & loutyth to the
 with hise heed / ne truste hym neuere / [2378] ffor sekirly
 hemakyth thilke feynede humylitee more for his owene profyt
 than for loue of thyn persone / by cause that he dem-
 yth to haue victorie ouyr thyn persone / by swich feynede
 contenance / the ¹ whiche victorie / he myzte not haue be
 stryf or werre / [2379] & Petyr Alfonse seyth make non
 felaueschepe with thynne olde enemyis / for ȝif thow do hem
 bounte: they wele peruertyn it in to wikkedenesse //
 [2380] And ek thow muste eschewe the wekedenesse of hem
 & the conseyll that been thynne seruauantis & beryn the grete
 reuerence / for peraunture they seyn / it moore for drede than
 for loue. [2381] And therfore seyth a philisofere in this
 wyse / There is no whit perfytely trewe to hym that he to
 soore dredyth / [2382] And Tullius seyth / there is no
 myzt so greet of ony Emperour / that longe may endure /
 but ȝif he haue moore loue of the peple than drede
 [2383] ¶ Thow schalt also enchewe the conseylynge of folk
 that been dronkelewe / for they ne can no conseyll hyde /
 [2384] ffor Salomon seyth there is no priuyte: there as
 regnyth dronkenesse // [2385] ȝe schal also han in suspect /
 the conseylynge of sweche folk as conseyle ȝow o thyng
 priuily / & conseyle ȝow the contrarie opynly [2386]
 ¶ ffor Cassiodore seyth / that it is a manere sleite to
 hynderyn whan a man schewith to don on thyng pryuyly &
 werkynth the contrarye opynly / [2387] Thow schalt also
 haue in suspect / the conseylynge of wekede folk ffor the
 bok seyth the conseylynge of wekede folk: is alwey ful

of fraude / [2388] And Dauid seyth blisful is that man
that hath not folwid the conseylunge of schrewis / [2389]
Thow schalt also eschewe the conseylunge of zonge folk
for here conseyl is not rype [2390]

NOW sere sithe I haue schewyd to 3ow of whiche folk
3e schul take 3oure conseyl / & of whiche folk 3e schul
folwe the conseyl: [2391] now wele I teche 3ow
how 3e schul examyne 3oure conseyl after the doctryne of.
thullyus [2392] ¶ In examynynge of 3oure conseylourys:
3e schul considere many thyngis / [2393] Aldyrferst thow
schat considere that in thilke thyng that thow purposyst
& vp-on what thyng thow wilt haue conseyl / that verray
trouthe be seyde & conseruyd / This is to seyne / Telle
trewely thyn tale / [2394] for he that seyth fals may not
weel been conseyled / in that cas of whiche he lyeth / [2395]
And ¹after this thow schat considere the thyngis that
acordyn to that / thow purposist to don by thyn conseyl-
ours 3if resoun acordyn therto / [2396] & ek 3if thyn
my3t may atteyne therto / & 3if the more part / & the
betere part of thyne conseylouris acordyn therto / or no //
[2397] Thanne schalt thow considere / What thyng schal
folwe of that conseyllynge as. hate. pees. w[e]rre.
grace. profyt or damage & manye othere thyngis /
[2398] [*et en toutes ces choses*] thow schalt chese the
beste / & weyuyn alle othere thyngis [2399] ¶ Thanne
schaltthow considere / of what rote is engenderede the matyre
of this conseyl / & what freut it may conteyne / & engen-
deryn [2400] ¶ Thanne schalt [thow] considere ek alle these
causes from whens they been sprongyn [2401] And
whanne 3e han examynyde 3oure conseyl as 3e haue seyde /
& whiche partye is the betere & more profitable And
han aproued it be manye wyse folk & olde. [2402]
thanne schat thow considere: 3if thow may3t performe it &
makyn of it a good ende / [2403] ffor resoun wele /
that ony man schulde begynne a thyng / but 3if he my3te
performe it as hym oughthe / [2404] Ne no wi3t schulde

take vp-on hym / so heuy charge / that he myzte not bere
 it / [2405] for the prouerbe seyth / he that to meche
 enbraset distreynyth lityl / [2406] And catoun seyth /
 Assay to don swich thyng as thow hast power to don /
 lest that the charge appresse the not so sore / that the
 be-houith to weyue thyng that thow hast begunne
 [2407] & ȝif so be that thow be endoute / wheþer thow
 mayzt perforce it or non chese rather to suffere
 than begynne / [2408] And Petyr Alfonse seyth / ȝif
 thow hast myzt to doon a thyng / of whiche thow muste
 repente: it is betere // ȝa // than nay / [2409] this is
 to seyne the is betere to helde thyn tunge styll: than
 for to spekyn / [2410] Thanne may ȝe vnderstonde by
 strongere resonys / that ȝif thow hast power / to perforce a
 werk of whiche thow auht repente: thanne is it betere /
 that thow suffere / than begynne / [2411] weel seyn they that
 defendyn euery wȝt to assay a thyng of whiche he is
 endoute / whethir he may perforce it or no [2412]
 And aftyr whan ȝe han examynyd ȝoure ¹conseyl as I
 haue seyð befor / & knowyn weel that ȝe may per-
 force ȝoure emprise conforme it thanne sadli til it be at
 an ende— [2413]

NOW is it resoun & tyme that I schewe ȝow
 whanne & wherfore / that ȝe may chaunge ȝoure con-
 seylourys with-outyn repreue / [2414] Sothly a man
 may chaungyn hise [*conseil et son*] purpos ¶ ȝif the cause
 cesseth or whanne a new cas betydyth [2415] ¶ ffor the lawe
 seyth that vp-on thyngis / that newly betydyn / byhouyth
 newe conseyl / [2416] & seneca seyth / ȝif thyn conseyl
 is come to the eeris of thyne enemy / chaunge thyn conseyl.
 [2417] Thow mayst also chaunge thyn conseyl: ȝif so be
 that thow fynde that be errour / or be othere
 cause / harm or damage / may betyde / [2418] Also
 ȝif thyn conseyl [*est deshonneste, ou vient de cause
 deshonneste*, [2419] *car les lois dient que toutes pro-
 messes* that] be dishonest. been of no value /

[2420] And ek ȝif it so be / that it be impossible / or may
not been goodly performyd or kept //

[2421] And take this for a general rewle / that euery
conseyl þat is affermyd so strongly that it may not been
chongit for no condicioun that may betyde / I seye that
thilke conseyl is wikke [2422]

THIS Melibeus whan he hadde herd the doctryne / of
his wyf / Dame Prudence answered in this wise
[2423] Dame quod he as ȝit into this tyme / ȝe
han weel & conabely tauȝt me as in general / how I
schal gouerne me in chesyng & in wotholdyng
of myne conseylouris [2424] ¶ But now wolde I fayn that
ȝe woldyn condessendyn in especial / [2425] & tellyn
how ȝow lykyth or what semyth ȝow by oure conseylouris
that we han chosyn in oure present neede / [2426]

MYn lord quod sche I beseke ȝow in alle humblesse that
ȝe wele nat wilfully repleye // a-ȝen myne resonys /
ne distempere ȝoure herte thow I speke thyng that
ȝow displese / [2427] ffor god wot that as in myn entent /
I speke it for ȝoure beste. for ȝoure honour & for ȝoure
profit ek / [2428] And sothly I hope that ȝoure be-
nyngnete wele takyn it in pacience / [2429] Trustith me
weel / quod sche that ȝoure conseyl / as in this cas 'ne schulde
nat as to spekyn propirly / been callyd a conseylunge / But a
mocioun or a meuyng of foly [2430] in whiche conseyl
ȝe han erred / [*en moult de manière*]

[2431] [*Premièrement, tu as erré*] in the assem-
blyng of ȝoure conseylouris / [2432] ffor ȝe schulde
ferst a clepid a fewe folk / [*et puis après
plusieurs*] if it hadde been neede /
[2433] But certis ȝe han clepid sodeynly to ȝoure con-
seyl / a greet multitude of peple ful chargeaunt & ful
anoyous for to heere [2434] ¶ Also ȝe han errid for
there as ȝe schulde only haue clepid to ȝoure conseyl
ȝoure trewe frendis olde & wyse / [2435] ȝe han I-clepid
straunge folk. ȝonge folk. false flatereris / & enemyis

reconsyled / & folk þat don 3ow reuerence with-outyn
loue / [2436] And ek also 3e han erred / for 3e han
brougt with 3ow to 3oure conseyll: Ire. Coueytyse. &
Hastifnesse / [2437] the wheche thre thyngis been con-
traryous / to euery conseyll honeste & profitable / [2438] And
the whiche thre thyngis: 3e han not anientissed or destroyed
hem neythir in 3oure self ne in 3oure conseyllourys / as 3e ouȝte
[2439] ¶ 3e han erred also for 3e han schewid to 3oure
conseyllouris 3oure talent & 3oure affeccoun to makyn
werre anon & for to doon vengeance / [2440] they han
espied be 3oure wordis to what thyng 3e been enclyned /
[2441] & therefore han they conseylid 3ow rather to
3oure talent: than to 3oure profit [2442] ¶ 3e han errid
also / for it semyth that 3ow suffysith to han been con-
seylid by these conseyllouris only / & with litil avis
[2443] where as in so greet & in so high a neede / it hadde
been necessarye / mo conseyllouris / & moore deliberacioun /
to performe 3oure emprise [2444] ¶ 3e han errid also ffor
3e han not examynynd / 3oure conseyll in the for seyde
manere / ne due maneere / as the caas requiryth [2445] ¶ 3e
han errid also for 3e han makid non deuysoun / bytwixe
3oure conseyllouris / [.
. no gap] [2446] ne 3e ne haue
not knowe / the wil of 3oure trewe frendis olde & wyse /
[2447] but 3e han cast alle here wordys in an hochepot /
& enclyned 3oure herte to the more part & to the
grettere numbere // And there been 3e condescendit /
[2448] & sith 3e wote weel that men schal 'alwey fynde a
grettere nombre of folys than of wise men / [2449] &
therefore in the conseyllis that been at congregaciounys &
multitudis of folk there as men take more reward to the
nombre than to the sapience of personis / [2450] 3e seen weel
that in sweche conseylyngis foolis han the maistrie [2451]
MElibeus answered agē & seyde I graunte wel that
I haue erryd / [2452] but there as thow hast told /
me heere be-for / that he nys to blame that chaungith his con-

seyl in certeyn cas / & for certeyn Iuste causis
 [2453] I am al redy to schauunge myn conseylouris / ryȝt
 as thow wolt deuyse / [2454] the prouerbe seyth that
 for to do synne / is mannyssch / But certis to perseuere
 longe therinne: is werk of the deuyll [2455]

TO this centence answerede anon Dame prudence /
 & seyde // [2456] Examynyth quod sche ȝoure con-
 seyl / & lat vs se the whiche of hem han spokyn
 moost resonably & taught ȝow best conseyl // [2457]
 And for as meche as the examynacioun is necessarie /
 lat vs begynne at the Surgens / & at the phisiciens / that
 fyrst spekyn in this matyere / [2458] I seye ȝow that the
 surgeens & phisiciens han seyde ȝow in ȝoure conseyl
 descretly as hem ouȝte / [2459] & in here space
 seydyn ful wysely / that to the offyse of hem aperteynyth to
 doon to euery wyȝt honour & profyt / & no wyȝt
 to anoyen [2460] & aftyr here craft to don greet diligence
 vnto the cure of hem whiche that they han in here gouern-
 aunce / [2461] And sire ryȝt as they han answerid
 wisely & discretly / [2462] ryȝt so rede I that they
 been heyly & souereynly gwerdounnyd for here noble
 speche / [2463] And ek for they schuldyn don the moore
 ententif besynesse in the curacioun of thyn doughtyr deere /
 [2464] for al be it so / that they been ȝoure frendis /
 therfore schal ȝe nat sufferyn: that they serve ȝow for
 naught [2465] but ȝe oughtyn rathere gwerdounnyu hem &
 schewyn hem ȝoure largesse / [2466] And as touchynge the
 preprocicioun whiche the phisiciounys encresedyn in this
 cas / this is to seyne / [2467] that in maladyis / that on
 contrarye is war^lchid by a-nothir contrarye / [2468] I
 wolde fayn knowyn how ȝe vndyrstonde thilke text / &
 what is ȝoure sentence. [2469] Certis quod Melibeus I
 vndirstonde it in this wise / [2470] that ryȝt as they han
 don. a contrarye ryȝt so schulde I doon hem a-nothir /
 [2471] ffor ryȝt as they han vengede hem on me / &
 don me wrong: ryȝt so schal I wengyn me vp-on hem

& doon hem wrong / [2472] And thanne haue I cured on
contrarye by a-nothir [2473]

LO lo quod Dame Prudence how lyztely is euery
man enclyned to his owene desyr / & to his owene
plesaunce / [2474] Certis quod see the wordis of the
phisiciens ne schuldyn not han been vndyrstondyn in this
wise / [2475] for certis wikkedenesse is not contrarye
to wikkedenesse / ne vengeaunce to vengeaunce / ne wrong
to wrong / but [*sont semblables* [2476] *Et pour*
ce, vengeance par vengeance, ne injure
par injure, n'est pas curé, [2477] *mais*]
euerich of hem encresith & morith othir // [2478]
But certis the wordis of the phisiciens / schuldyn ben
vndirstondyn in this wise / [2479] ffor good & wekede-
nesse been two contraryis / & pees & werre / & venge-
aunce & sufferraunce / discord & acord / and manye
othere thyngis / [2480] But certis wikkedenesse: may been
waryschid by goodnesse discord: by acord / werre: by pees /
& so forth of othere thyngis // [2481] And heereto a-cordyth
seynt Poule the apostelle in manye placis [2482] he
seyth / Ne ȝildith not harm for harm / ne wikkede speche
for wikkede speche / [2483] but doth weel to hym that doth
the harm / And blysse hym that seyth to the harm / [2484]
& in manye othere placis he amonestyth pees &
accord / [2485] But now wele I spekyn to ȝow of the con-
seyll that was ȝouyn to ȝow of the meen of lawe /
and the wise folk [2486] that seydyn alle by on acord /
as ȝe han herd by-fore / [2487] That ouer alle thyng ȝe
schal don ȝoure diligence to kepyn ȝoure persone &
to warnestore ȝoure hous / [2488] and seydyn also that
in this caas ȝe oughtyn for to werkyn ful a-visely / &
with greet delib[er]acioun / [2489] And sere as to the fyrste
poynt that touchith to the kepyng of ȝoure persone /
[2490] ȝe schul vndyrstonde that he that hath werre schal
eueremore deuoutely & meekely preyen ¹ before alle
thyng [2491] that Thesu cryst of his mercy / wele

han hym in hise protexioun / & ben his souereyn helpynge
 at hise neede / [2492] for certys in this world / there is no
 wyȝt that may been conseyled ne kept sufficyantly / with-
 outyn the keping of oure lord Ihesu Cryst / [2493] To this
 sentence acordyth þ^e prophete dauid / that seyth / [2494]
 If god ne kepe the cete. In idyl. wake he that kepeth
 [2495] ¶ Now sere thanne schul ȝe commytte the keypyng of
 ȝoure persone to ȝoure trewe frendis that been aprouyd
 & I-knowe / [2496] & of hem schul ȝe axen helpe ȝoure
 persone for to kepe ¶ ffor catoūn seyth / ȝif thu hast
 nede of helpe: axe it of thyne frendis / [2497] ffor there ne
 is noon so good a phisicien as thyn trewe frend / [2498]
 And aftyr this thanne schul ȝe keepe ȝow ffrom alle
 straunge folk and from lyeris / and haue alwey in suspekt /
 hire compaynye / [2499] ffor pers Alphonse seyth Ne
 take no compaignye by the weye of a strāng man but ȝif it
 be so that thou haue knowyn hym by a long tyme befor /
 [2500] & ȝif so be that he falle / in-to thyn cumpanye per-
 auenture with-outyn thyn assent / [2501] enquire thanne
 as subtyly as thu mayst / of his conuersacioun / & of his lyf
 be-fore / & feyne thyn weye / Sey that thou wel go thedyr
 there that thou wilt not go / [2502] an ȝif he beryth a spere /
 hold the on the ryȝt syde / & ȝif he bere a swerd /
 hold the on the left syde [2503] ¶ And aftyr this
 thanne schal ȝe kepe ȝow wisely from alle sweche manere
 peple / as I haue seyð be-fore / And hem & here conseyl
 eschewe / [2504] And aftyr this thanne schal ȝe kepyn ȝow
 in swich maner / [2505] that for ony presumpcioun of ȝoure
 strenthe / that ȝe ne dispise / ne attempte not the
 myȝte of ȝoure aduersarye / so lite that ȝe lete the
 keypyng of ȝoure persone / for ȝoure presumpcioun / [2506]
 for euery wise man dredyth his enemy / [2507] And
 salomonseyth / Weleful is he that of alle thyng hath dreede /
 [2508] ffor certys he that pour the hardynesse of his
 herte or thorw the hardynesse of hym-self / hath to
 greet presumpcioun / hym schal euele betyde / [2509] Thanne

schal 3e eueremoore countre wayte embusschement; / &
 espiaiH // [2510] for Seneca seyth / that the wise man
 that dredith harmys / eschewith harmys / [2511] ne ¹he ne
 fallith in-to perilye / that perilis eschewyth / [2512] And al-
 be-it so / that it seeme that thow art in sekyr place / 3it
 schalt thow alwey doon diligence in kepyng of thyn persone /
 [2513] this is to seyn ne be not negligent to kepen thyn
 persone / not only for thynne gretteste enemyis / but from
 thyn leste enemye / [2514] Seneca seyth / a man / that is
 weel auysed / he dredyth his leste enemye // [2515] Ouyde
 seith / that the litelle wele / wele sle the grette bole & the
 wilde hert // [2516] And the book seyth that the lytil thorn
 may pryke a kyng wol sore / & an hound wele
 holde the wylde boor / [2517] But natheles I sey nat þat
 thow schat been so caward that thow doute there wheere-as is
 no drede / [2518] The book seyth / that sum folk han
 greet lust / to disseyue; but 3it they dredyn hem to been dis-
 seyuyd / [2519] 3it schalt thow dreede to ben enpoyssounnyd /
 And keepe the from the cumpaygnye of skornerys / [2520]
 ffor the book seyth / woth skornerys make no compaignye /
 but fle here wordys as venym /

[2521] Now as to the secunde poynt / wheere-as 3oure
 wise conseylourys / conseylede 3ow to warnestore / 3oure hous
 with greet diligence / [2522] I wolde knowe how that 3e
 vndyrstande / thilke wordis & what is 3oure sentence [2523]

MElibeus answered & seyde / certis I vndyrstonde
 it in this wyse / That I schal warnestore myn hous /
 with touris & sweche as han casteH & othere manere
 edifices & armure and artelleries / [2524] by whiche
 thyngis I may myn persone & myn hous so kepyn &
 defendyn / that myne enemyis schul been in dreede myn
 hous for to aprochyn [2525]

TO this centence answered anon Prudence // warne-
 storynge is quodsche of heye tourys & of grette edifices /
 [appertaining *aucune fois a orgueil* [2526] *apres on*
fait les tours et les grans edifices (MS Reg. 19 C vii, lf 133, bk)]

with grette costagis & with grette trauayle / And whan that
they been accomplesed / 3it be they not worth a stre but if they
been defendit by trewe frendys that been olde & wyse // [2527]
And vndyrstonde weel that the gretteste & the strengeste
garnesoun that a ryche man may han / as weel to kepyn his
persone ¹as hese goodis / is [2528] that he be belouyd with
hise subiectis. And with hise neigheboris / [2529] ffor thus
seyth thullyus that there is a manere garnesoun / that no
man may venquische / Ne desconfite / & that is [2530] a
lord to been belouyd / of hise citesynys & of his peple [2531]

Now sere as to the thredde poynt wheer - as
3oure olde & wise conseylouris / seydyn that 3ow ne
ou3tyn / not sodeynly ne not to hastily procedyn in
this neede / [2532] But that 3ow ou3tyn purueyen / & appar-
aylyn 3ow / in this cas / with greet diligence / & greet delyber-
acioun / [2533] trewely I trowe that they seydyn / ry3t wisely
& ry3t soth / [2534] for tullyus seyth in euery
neede / er thow begynne it / apparayle the with gret
diligence / [2535] Thanne seye I that in vengeance
takyng in werre / in batayle / & in warnestoryng /
[2536] er thow begynne I reede / that thow apparayle the
not therto & do it with greet dyligence & greet deliberacioun //
[2537] ffor Thullyus seyth that longe apparaylynge / by-forn
þ^r batayle / makyt schort victorye [2538] ¶ And Cassiodorus
seyth The garnesoun is strongere whan it is longe tyme auysed

But now lat vs spekyn of the conseyl / that was
acordit be 3oure neigheboris / Sweche as doon 3ow
reuereunce with-outyn loue / [2540] 3oure olde enenyis
reconsyld / 3oure flatereris [2541] that conseyledyn 3ow cer-
teyn thyngis pryuyly / & opynly conseyledyn 3ow / the
contrarye / [2542] The 3onge folk also that conseylede
3ow / to venge 3ow & make werre a-noon [2543] And
certis sere as I haue seyde be-forn^r 3e han greetly errid /
to han clepid / swich manere folk to 3oure conseil [2544]
whiche conseylouris / been I-nowgh repreuyd / be the resonys
a-fore-seyd / [2545] but natheles lat vs now dessende to

the special // 3e schul fyrst procedyn / aftyr the doctrine / of
thullius / [2546] Certis the trouthe of this matire or of
this conseyl / nedyth not diligently enquire [2547] for it
is weel wist whiche they been that han don to 3ow this
trespas / and vilenye / [2548] and how manye trespassouris /
and in what manere they han doon to 3ow al this
wrong & al this vilenye // [2549] And aftyr this
3e ¹schuln examyne al the secunde condicioun whiche
pat the same thullyus addyth in this mateere / [2550] ffor
tullius put a thyng whiche that he clepith consentynge / This
is to seyne / [2551] who been they / & whiche
been they / and how manye been they / & whiche
been thei that consentedyn to 3oure aduersaryis /
[2552] [*et considérons aussi qui sont ceulx, et quans,
qui se consentent à tes adversaires. (Le Mén. i. 211.)*] [2553]
And certis as to the fyrste poynt / it is weel knowyn whiche
folk been they / that consentedyn to 3oure hastif wilful-
nesse / [2554] ffor trewely alle tho that consentede 3ow
to makyn sodeyn werre / ne been noȝ 3oure frendis / [2555]
lat vs now considere [*qui tu es et*] whiche been they that
3e holdyn 3owre frendis / as to 3oure persone [2556] ffor
al be it so / that 3e been myghty & ryche / Certis 3e ne
been but a-loone / [2557] for certis 3e ne han no child
but a douȝtyr / [2558] ne 3e ne han breteren ne cosyns
germayns / ne noon othir nygh kenrede [2559] wherefore
that 3oure enemyis / for drede schulde stynte to plede / witiȝ
3ow or distroye 3oure persone / [2560] 3e knowyn
also that 3oure rychesse mote been despendit in
dyuerce partis / [2561] and whan that euery wigh hath
his part / they ne wele takyn but lityl reward to vengyn
thyn deth // [2562] But thynne enemyis been thre and
they han manye childeryn / bretheryn cosyns & othere nygh
kenrede / [2563] and thow so weere / thow hadyst
slayn of hem two or thre / 3et dwellyn þere I-nowe to wrekyng
here deth / & to sle tyn persone / [2564] & thow so
be that 3oure kynreede / be moore sekyr & stefast / than

the kenreede of 3oure aduersarye / [2565] 3et natheles / 3oure
 kenrede nys but a fer kynrede they been but lytil sibbe
 to 3ow / [2566] and the kyn of 3oure enenyis been nygh sibbe
 to hem / & certis as in þat heere condicioun is betere than
 is 3ourys // [2567] Tanne lat vs considere also / if the
 conseyllynge of hem that conseyledyn / 3ow to takyn sodeyn
 vengeauns / whethir it acorded to resoun or no / [2568] And
 certis 3e knowe wel nay / [2569] for as be ryȝt & resoun /
 theere may no man taʔkyn venieaunce on no wight but the
 Iuge that hath the Iurysdixioun of it / [2570] whanne it is
 I-grauntid / to take thilke vengeaunce / hastily or at-
 temprelly. as the lawe requyrith / [2571] & 3it moore
 ouyr / of thilke word that Thullius clepith consentynge
 [2572] thow schalt considered 3if thyn myȝt & thyn power /
 may consente & suffise / to thyn wilfulnesse / & to thynne
 conseylourys [2573] and sertis thow mayst weel seyn
 þat nay / [2574] ffor sekirly as for to spekyn proprely.
 we may doon nothyng but only swich thyng as we may
 don it rihtfully / [2575] & certis ryȝtfully may 3e
 take no venieaunce / as of 3oure propre autorite [2576]
 thanne may 3e seen / that 3oure power ne consentith
 nat ne acordith nat with 3oure wilfulnesse [2577] ¶ Lat
 vs now examyne the thredde poynt that / Thullius clepith
 consequent / [2578] Thow schalt vndyrstonde / that the
 vengeaunce that thow purposest for to take is the conse-
 quent / [2579] And therof folwith a-nothir uengeau[n]s /
 peril & werre & othere vengeaunce & damagis with-outyn
 noumbere / of whiche we been not war as at this tyme //
 [2580] And as touchynge the / fourte poynt / That Thullius
 clepith engenderynge / [2581] thow schalt considere that
 this wrong whiche that is doon to the: is engenderyd / of
 the hate of thynne enemyis / [2582] & of the vengeaunce
 takynge vp-on that / wolde engendere a-nothir / vengeaunce.
 And meche sorwe / in wastynge of rychessis as I seyde

[2583] ¶ Now sere as to the poynt that tullius
 clepith causes / with that is the laste poynt / [2584] thow

schalt vndirstonde / that the wrong that thow hast reseyuid
 hath certeyn causes / [2585] whiche that clerkis clepyen
 Oriens / & efficiens / And Causa longinqua / & Causa
 Propinqua / this is to seyne the ffer cause / & the nygh
 cause / [2586] the fer cause is almyghti god / that is
 cause of alle thyngis / [2587] the nygh cause is thynne
 thre enemyis / [2588] the cause accidental was hate /
 [2589] the cause material: been the fyue woundis of
 thyn doughtre [2590] The cause formal is the manere of
 here werkynge / that broughtyn ladderys & clombyn in at
 thyne wyndowis / [2591] the cause final was for to sle thyn
 dougtyr / It lettede nat in as meche as in hem ¹was // [2592]
 But for to spekyn of the ferthe cause as to what ende they
 schul come / or what schal finally betyde of hem in this
 caas / ne can I nat deeme / but be coniectynge & by
 supposynge [2593] for we schul suppose / that they schul
 come to a wekkede ende / [2594] bi-cause that the bok of
 Decreis seyth / Seldeorwith greet payne been causis I-brougt
 to a good ende / Whan they been baldely begunne [2595]

Now sere ȝif meen wolde axsyn me whi that god
 sufferede / men to doon ȝow this veleny certis I can-
 not weel answeryn as for no Sothfastnesse / [2596] for
 thapostelle seyth that the sciencis & the iugementis of
 oure lord god / almyȝty: been ful deepe / [2597] there may
 no man comprehende / ne serchyn hem sufficiently [2598]
 ¶ Natheless / bi certeyn presumpciounys / & coneytyngis
 I holde & bileue / [2599] that god whiche that is ful of
 iustise / & of ryghtwisnesse hath suffered this betyde by
 iuste cause / resonable

[2600] Thyn name is Melibee this is to seyne a man /
 that drynkyth hony / [2601] or he that hath I-dronkyn
 hony / so meche of sweete temperel richesse & delicis of
 honouris of this world [2602] that thow art dronkyn / &
 hast forgetyn Ihesu cryst thyn creature / [2603] thow ne
 hast nat doon to hym swich honour & reuerence / as the
 ouȝte [2604] ne thow ne hast not weel takyn keep to

the wordis of Ouide that seyth [2605] vndyr the hony
of the goodis / of the body is hid the venym that sleth
the soule / [2606] And salomon seyth ȝif thou hast
foundyn hony / ete of it that suffyseth / [2607] ffor ȝif thou
ete of it out of mesure / thou schalt spewe / & been nedy /
& poure / [2608] & perauenture / cryst hat the in
dispyt and hath turnede away from the hys face & hise
eeris of mysericorde / [2609] And also he hath sufferede /
that thou hast been ponyschid / in the maneere that thou
hast trespassed / [2610] Thou hast doon synne a-geyn
oure lord Ihesu cryst / [2611] ffor certis the thre enemyis /
of mankynde that is to seyne / the flesch the feend & the
world / [2612] thou hast suffred hem to entre in-to thyn
herte wilfulli by the wyndowys / of thyn body / [2613] &
hast not defendit thyn self sufficiiauntly a-geyn here assautis /
& here temptaciouns So that they han woundede thyn
soule in fyue placis [2614] this is to seyne: the dedly
synnys that been entered in-to thyn herte / by thyne fyue
wittis / [2615] And in the same manere / oure lord crist
hath wold & suffered that thyne .iiij. enemyis been entrede
in-to thyn hous by the wyndowys [2616] And han
I-wounded thyne douȝtyr / in the forseide manere / [2617]

Certis quod Melibee I se wel that ȝe enforce
ȝow mechel by wordis to ouyrcome me in swich
manere: that I schal nat venge me of myne enemyis / [2618]
Schewynge me the perilis & the eueff that myȝtyn fallyn
of this vengeaunce // [2619] But who so wolde considere /
in alle vengeauncis the perilis & the yuylls that myȝte sewe
of vengeaunce takynge / [2620] a man wolde neuere take
vengeaunce / & that were harm / [2621] for by the venge-
aunce takynge: been the wikkede men disseuered from the
goode men / [2622] And thei that han wil to doon wikkede-
nesse: restreyn here wikkede purpos / whan they seen the
ponyschyng & the chastisyng of the trespasourys / [2623]

Ad ce respont dame prudence Certes dist elle le te
ottroie que de vengeance vient moult de biens

[2624] *Mais faire vengeance n'appartient pas a vn chascun
fors aux iuges / Et a ceulz qui ont les iuridicions
sur les malfauteurs* (MS Reg. 19 C xi, leaf 59, back, col. 2.)]

[2625] And ȝit seye I moore / that ryȝt as a senguler
persone synnyth in takynge vengeance / of a-nothir man :

[2626] righ so synnyth the Iuge ȝif he do no vengeance /
of hem that it han deseruyd / [2627] for Senek seyth /

that maystir is good that preuyth schrewis / [2628]
And as Cassiodere seyth / A man dredith to doon

outrages / whan he wot & knowith that it displeseth to the
Iugis / & to the souereynys / [2629] And a-nother seyth /

The Iuge that dredith to doon ryȝt : makyth men schrewis //

[2630] And seynt poule thapostelle seyth in his epistelle /
whan he wrythith vnto the romaynys / that the Iuges berith

not the spere / with-outyn cause : [2631] but they beryn it
to ponysche þe schrewis & mysdoerys / & for to defendyn

the Goode men [2632] ȝif ȝe wele than^{ne} take vengeance
of ȝoure enemyis / ȝe schul returne or haue ȝoure recours /

to the Iuge that hath the Iuridiccioun / vp-on hem / [2633] &
he schal punyschyn hem as the lawe axit & requirith [2634]

A quod Melibee this vengeance likyth me nothyng /
[2635] I bethynke me now & take heed how
fortune hath norichid me / from myn chyldheede /

& hath holpyn me to passyn manye a strong paas / [2636]
now wele I assayen hire trowynge with godis helpe / that

sche schal helpyn me myn schame for to venge [2637]

C Ertis quod Prudence / If ȝe wele werke by myn con-
seyl / ȝe schul not assaye fortune by no way / [2638] ne

ȝe schul not lene / or bowe / on to here aftyr the word
of senek / [2639] for thyngis that been folylly doon / & that

been doon in hope of fortune / schuln neuere been brouȝt to
good ende / [2640] And as the same Senek seyth / the moore

cleer & the more schynynge that fortune is : the moore
bretil & the sunnere brokyn sche is / [2641] truste nat

in here for sche nys nat stedefast ne stable / [2642] ffor
whan thow trowist to been most sekyr or sewir of hire

helpe: sche wale fayle & disseyue the / [2643] And
 where as 3e seyn that Fortune hath norichid 3oure
 childheede [2644] I seye that in so meche schul 3e
 the lasse truste in here wit / [2645] For senek
 seyth / what man that is norichid by ffortune: sche makyth
 hym a greet fool / [2646] Now thanne syn 3e desyre
 & aske vengeaunce / & the vengeaunce that is doon aftyr
 the lawe / & by-fore the Iuge / ne likyth 3ow nat [2647]
 And the vengeaunce that is doon in hope of fortune is perli-
 ous & vncerteyn / [2648] thanne haue 3e noon othir
 remedie / but for to haue 3oure recours / vn-to the souereyn
 Iuge that vengith alle vilanyis / & wrongis / [2649]
 & he schal venge 3ow aftyr / that hym self witnessith
 where as he seyth / [2650] leuyth the vengeaunce ¶ to me
 & I schal doon it [2651]

MElibie answerede / If I ne venge me not of the
 vilanye that men doon to me / [2652] I somoune or
¹ warne hem that han doon to me that vilenye & alle
 othere to doon to me a-nothir vilenye / [2653] for it is wretyn/
 3if thou take ne vengeaunce of an opyn vilanye / thowsomoun-
 yst thynne aduersaryis: to do the a newe velanye [2654]
 And also for myn sufferaunce men woldyn do me so
 meche vilenye / that I ne myghte neythir beere it ne sus-
 teene / [2655] & so schulde I bee put & holdyn ouyr
 lowe / [2656] ffor men seyn in meche sufferynge schal
 a manye thyngis falle vn-to the whiche thou schalt nat
 mowe suffere [2657]

CErtis quod .prudencia. I graunte now that ouyr
 meche sufferaunce / is nat good [2658] But 3it ne
 folwith it not therof / that euery persone to whom men
 doon vilenye: tak of it vengeaunce / [2659] for that aper-
 tenyth & longith al only to the Iugis / for they schul
 venge / the vilanyis & the Iniurijs / [2660] And therefore
 to two autoriteis / that 3e han seyde a-bouyn / been only
 vndyrstondyn In the Iugis / [2661] For whan they sufferyn
 ouermeche the wrongis & vilenyis to been doon

with-outyn punyschyng [2662] they somone nat a man al
only for to doon newe wrongis / but they comaundyn it /
[2663] also a wys man seyth / that the Iuge that cor-
rectith nat the synnere comaundyth / & biddyth hym to do
synne / [2664] & the Iugis & souereynys / my3tyn in
here land so meche suffere of the schrewis & mysdoerys :
[2665] that they schuldyn by swich sufferaunce / by processe
of tyme / waxen of swich poweer & my3t / that they schuldyn
puttyn out / the Iugis & the souereynys from here placis
[2666] & at the laste makyn hem to lesyn here lordschepe //

[2667] But lat vs now putte that ye han leue to
vengen 3ow / [2668] I seye 3e been nat of my3t &
power as now to venge 3ow / [2669] ffor 3if 3e wele make
comparisoun vn-to þ^e my3t of 3oure aduersaryis / 3e schul
fynde in manye thyngis that I haue schewid 3ow er this /
that hire condicioun is bettere than 3oures [2670] &
therefore seye I that it is good / as now / that 3e suffere &
been pacient

[2671] Fertheremore 3e knowe wel / that aftyr the
comu'ne sawe. it is a woodnesse a man to stryue with a
strongere / or a moore my3ty man / than he is hym selue /
[2672] & for to stryue with a man of euene strenthe /
that is to seyne with as strong a man as he is hymself / it is
peril / [2673] And for to stryue with a weykere man : it is
folye / [2674] & therfore schulde a man fle stryuyng / as
meche as he my3te // [2675] ffor Salomon seyth it is a
greet worschepe / to a man to kepyn hym from noyse / &
stryf. [2676] & If it so befaller or happe / that a man be
of grettere my3t & strenthe / than thow art / do the
greuance / [2677] stodye & besye the rather to styлле
the same greuance : than to venge the / [2678] ffor
senek seyth / that he puttith hym in greet peryl / that
stryuyth with a grettere man than he is hym self / [2679]
And catoun seyth // If a man of heyere staat or degre or
moore my3t than thow / do the ony noye or greuance /
suffere hym / [2680] ffor he that onys hath greuyd the /

mai a-nothir tyme releue the & helpe // [2681] 3it
 sette I caas 3e han bothe a lycence / for to
 venge 3ow / [2682] I seye that there been ful manye
 thyngis / that schul restreyne 3ow of vengeaunce takynge /
 [2683] & make 3ow for to enclyne to sufferre & for
 to han pacience / in the wrongis that han been don to
 3ow / [2684] ffirst & foreward 3if 3e wele / considere
 the defaultis / [. [2685]
 *no gap*] god hath suffered 3ow to haue this
 tribulacioun / as I haue seyd 3ow heere by-fore / [2686] For
 the Poete seyth that we ouȝtyn paciently / takyn the tribu-
 laciounnys that comyn to vs whan that we thynkyn & con-
 sideryn that we han deseruyd to han hem [2687] ¶ Andseynt
 Gregorie seyth that whan a man considerith weel the
 nombere of hise defaultis & of hise synnys / [2688] the
 peynys & the tribulaciounnys that he sufferyth semyn the
 lasse vnto hym / [2689] And in as meche as hym sem-
 yth his synne is moore heuy / & greuous [2690] in so
 meche semyth his peyne the lyttere & the esiere vnto
 hym // [2691] Also 3e owyn to enclyne / & bowe 3oure
 herte to 'take the pacience' of oure lord Ihesu cryst / as
 seyth seynt petyr / In hise epistoles / [2692] Ihesu Crist he
 seith hath suffered for vs / & 3euyn ensample to euery
 man to folwe / & sewyn hym / [2693] for he dede neuere
 synne ne neuere cam there / A vileyns word out of his
 mouth [2694] whan men cursede hym: he cursede hem
 not / [. *no gap*
in the MS.] [2695] Also the greete pacience / whiche
 seyntis that been in paradys han had in tribulaciounnys / that
 they been I-sufferid with-outyn here desert or gilt / [2696]
 oughte meche stere 3ow to pacience / [2697] Ferthere
 more 3e schul enforse 3ow to haue pacience / [2698]
 considerynge that the tribulaciounnys / of this world but
 lityl while endure / & soone passede been & goone /
 [2699] And the Ioye that a man sekyth for to han bi
 pacience in trybulaciounnys / is perdurable / aftyr that

[MS repeats
 the pacience]

thapostele seyth in his epistele [2700] ¶ The Ioye of God
 is perdurable that is to seyne euere lastynge / [2701]
 Also trowith & bileuyth stedefastly / that he nys not
 weel I-noryschid / ne weel I-tauzt that can nothaue pacience /
 or wele not receyue pacyence / [2702] For salomon seyth /
 that the doctryne & the wit of a man is knowyn by
 pacience / [2703] And in a-nothir place he seyth that he
 that is pacient gouernyth hym by greet prudence / [2704]
 And the same Salomon seyth / That the angry & the wratheful
 man: makyth noysis / & the pacient man attempereth
 hym & stillith / [2705] he seyth also it is moore
 worth to ben pacient: than for to ben ryzt strong / [2706]
 And he that may haue the lordschepe of hese owene herte:
 he is moore to preyse / than he that by his force or strenthe:
 takyth greete ceteis [2707] And therefore seyth seynt
 Iame In his epistle / that Pacience is a greet vertu of
 perfeccioun. [2708]

C Ertis quod Melibee I graunte 3ow dame Prudence /
 that Pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun [2709]
 But every man may not han the perfeccioun that 3e
 seekyn / [2710] ne I am not of the noubre of ryzt per-
 fite men / [2711] For myn herte may neuere been in
 pees / vnto the tyme it be ven'git / [2712] And al be it so /
 that it was greet peril to mynne enemyis to doon me a
 vilenye / in takynge vengeaunce vp-on me: [2713] 3it
 take they noon heede at the peril / but fulfilledyn here
 wekede wil / & here corage / [2714] & therfore me
 thynkyth men ouzte nat repreue me thogh I putte me
 in a lityl peril / For to vengyn me / [2715] And thow I do
 a greet excesse / that is to seyne that I venge oon outrage /
 by a-nothir. [2716]

A quod dame Prudence / 3e seyn 3oure wil & As 3ow
 likyth / [2717] but in noo cas of the world a man
 schulde nat doon outrage ne exces. ffor to vengyn
 hym / [2718] For Cassiodere seyth / that as euele doth
 he that vengith hym by outrage: as he that doth the

outrage / [2719] And therefore 3e schul venge 3ow! aftyr
 the ordere of ryzt / that is to seyne by the lawe / & nat
 by excesse / ne by outrage [2720] And also 3if 3e wele
 venge 3ow / of the outrage of 3oure aduersarijs in othere
 maneere than ryzt comaundyth / 3e synnyn [2721] &
 therfore seyth Senek / that a man schal neuere venge
 schrewedenesse by schrewedenesse / [2722] & 3if 3e seyn
 that ryzt axeth a man to defende violence / [.]
 & fy3tynge. By fytynge [2723] certis 3e seyn soth /
 whan the defence is doon a-noon with-outyn interual or
 with-outyn taryinge or delay [2724] for to defende hym!
 & not for to venge hym / [2725] And it behouth
 that a man putte swich attemperaunce in his defence /
 [2726] that men haue no cause / ne matere to repreuyn
 hym! that defendyth hym from excesse & outrage / for ellis
 weere it a-geyn resoun / [2727] ¶ Parde 3e knowyn weel
 that 3e makyn no defence / as now for to defende 3ow!
 but for to venge 3ow / [2728] And so sewith it that 3e
 hau no wil / to doon 3oure deede atemperelly / [2729] And
 therfore me thynkyth / that Pacience is good ffor Salomon
 seyth / that he that is not pacient! schal haue greet
 harm [2730]

Certis quod Melibee I graunte 3ow that whan a man
 is impacient & wroth of that that touchith hym /
 not / & that apertenyth 'nat vn-to hym! thow it
 harme hym it is no wondyr / [2731] for the lawe seyth
 that he is coupable that entyrmetith or medelyth with
 swich thyng / as apertenyth nat vn-to hym [2732] ¶ And
 Salomon seith that he that entirmetyth hym of the
 noyse of stryf / of a-nothir man / is lyk to hym that takith
 an hound bi the eeris / [2733] For ryzt as he that takith
 a strong hound bi the eris! is othirwhile betyn with
 the hound / [2734] Ryzt in the same wise is it resoun that
 he haue harm that by his enpacience medelyth hymself bi
 the noyse of a-nothir man where as it aperteynyth not vn-to
 hym / [2735] But 3e knowyn weel that this deede that

is to seyne / myn greef & myn deseese touchith me ryzt
 now / [2736] And therfore thow I be wroth & in-
 pacient: it is no meruayle // [2737] And sauynge youre
 grace / I can not seen that it myzte greetly harme me
 thow I tok vengeance [2738] ffor I am richere &
 moore myzty than myne enemy is been // [2739] And weel
 knowe 3e that by monee & by hauynge / greete posses-
 siouns been alle thyngis of this world / gouernyd [2740]
 ¶ And salomon seith That alle these thyngis obeys to
 monye. [2741]

WHanne Prudence hadde herd these wordis of hire
 hosisbonde how he auauunted hym of hese richesse /
 and of hise mene / dispreysynge the poweer / of hise
 aduersaryis / sche spak & seyde in this wyse / [2742] Certis
 deere sere / I graunte 3ow that 3e been riche / & myghty /
 [2743] & that the richessis been goode to hem / that han weel
 I-getyn hem and that weel cunne vse hem // [2744] For rygh
 as the body of a man may not leue with-outyn the soule: no
 moore may it leue with-oute the temperel goodis / [2745] and
 by richessis may a man getyn hym best frendis / [2746] And
 therefore seyth Pamphilles ¶ If Auerthes doughtir he seyth
 be ryche / Sche may chesen of a thousent men [. . .
 [2747] . .
no gap in the MS.] / oon wele not forsakyn hyre ne refusyn
 hire / [2748] And this Pamphilles seith also / If thow be
 ryzt happy / that is to seyne / If ¹thow be ryzt ryche / thow
 schat fyndyn a greet noumbere of felawys & frendis / [2749]
 And 3if thyn fortune chonge Fare weel
 freendschepe & felaweschepe / [2750] for thow schat been
 a-loone / with-outyn ony cumpanye But if it be the
 cumpanye of poore folk [2751] ¶ And 3it seyth this
 Pamphilles moore ouyr That they that been / boonde &
 thralle / of linage schuln been made worthy & noble bi
 the richesses [2752] & ryzt so as by richessis there
 comyn manye goodys: ryzt so by pouerte / comyn there
 manye harmys / & euellis / [2753] For greet pouerte: con-

streynnyth a man to doon manye euellis / [2754] And th[e]r-
 fore clepith Cassiodore / pouerte the moodyr of ruine /
 [2755] that is to seyne the modyr of ouyrthrowynge or
 of fallynge down / [2756] And therfore seyth Peers alfonce
 On of the gretteste aduersaiteis of this world is [2757]
 whan a fre man by kynde / or of burthe is constreyned /
 bi pouerte / to ete te almesse / of hise enemy / [2758] &
 the same seyth Innocent in oon of hise bookis / he seith
 that sorweful & myshappi is the condicioun of a poore
 beggere / [2759] for if he axe nat his meete / he dieth fore
 hungir / [2760] And 3if he axe / he dieth for ¶ schame /
 And algatis necescitee constreynnyth hym to axe / [2761]
 And therefore seith Salomon / betere is it to deye than
 for to haue swich pouerte / [2762] And as the same Salo-
 mon seith Betere it is to deye of bittere deth: than for to
 leuyn in swich wyse / [2763] By these resonys that I
 haue seyd vn-to 3ow / & by manye othere resonys / that I
 coude seye / [2764] I graunte 3ow that richessis been
 goode to hem that hem getyn weel / And to hem that weel
 vsyn the rychessis / [2765] and therfore wele I schewe
 3ow how 3e schul haue 3ow in [*amassant les*
 (*Le Ménagier*, i. 222)] rychessis & in what maneere 3e schul
 vse hem /

[2766] Fyrst 3e schul geete hem with-outyn greet
 desyr / bi good leyseer / sokyngely but nat ouer hastyfely /
 [2767] For a man that is to desyrynge / to geete rychessis /
 abandonyth hym fyrst to thefte & to alle othere euyllis /
 [2768] And therfore seyth Salomon he that hastyth hym to
 busily to wexen ryche / he schal been noon innocent / [2769]
 he seyth also that the rychesse that hastily comyth to
 a man: soone anlyghtely goth & passith from a man /
 [2770] But that richesse that comyth lityl & ly3til /
 waxeth alwey & multiplyeth / [2771] And sere 3e schul
 gete richessis by 3oure wit / & by 3oure trauayle / vn-to
 3oure profyt [2772] & that with-outyn wrong or harm
 doinge to ony othir persone / [2773] For the law

seyth / that there makyth no man hym ryche / ȝif he dō
 harm to a-nothyr witht. [2774] this is to seyne / that
 nature defendyth / & forbedyth by ryght / that no man
 make hym self ryche: vn-to the harm of a-nothyr / persone.
 [2775] And thullius seyth / that no sorwe ne no drede /
 of deth ne nothing that may falle vn-to a man [2776]
 is so meche ageyns nature: as a man to encrease his
 owene profit / to the harm of a-nothir man / [2777] And thow
 the greete men / & the myȝty men / getyn richchess / moore
 lyȝtely than thow / [2778] ȝit schalt thu nat been ydyl ne
 slow to don thyn profit ffor thow schalt in alle wise / fleen
 ydilnesse / [2779] ffor Salomon seyth / that idilnesse techith
 a man to doon manye euyllis / [2780] And the Same Salomon
 seyth that he that trauaylith / & besijth hym to tilyin
 his lond schal etyn breed / [2781] But he that is idyl &
 castyth hym to no besynesse / ne ocupacioun schal falle in-to
 pouerte / & deye for hungir / [2782] And he that is
 ydil & slow / can neuere fyndyn conabele tyme for to
 doon his profyt [2783] ffor there is a versefiour seyth / that
 the ydele man excuseth hym in wyntyr bi cause of
 greet cold / & in somyr by cause of the greete heete /
 [2784] For these causes / seyth catoun wakyth & enclynyth
 ȝow nat ouyrmeche for to slepe / ffor ouyrmeche slep
 causeth & norichith manye viciis [2785] And therefore
 seyth seynt Ierome / doth some goode dedys / that the deuyl
 whiche is oure enemy / ne fynde ȝow nat vn-ocupied /
 [2786] For the deuyl takyth nat lyȝtely vn-to hise werk-
 ynge sweche as he fyndyth ocupied in goode werkis /

[2787] Thanne thus in getynge richesses the
 muste fleen Idilnesse / [2788] & afterward ȝe schul v̄e
 the rychesses / whiche ȝe han getyn by ȝoure wit And by
 ȝoure trauayle / [2789] in swich manere that men
 holdyn ȝow nat to scars ne to sparynge / ne fool large /
 that is to seyne ouyr large a spendere / [2790] For ryȝt as
 men blamyn an auericious man / by cause of hise scarcite &
 chyncherye: [2791] ryȝt so / in the same wise / is he to blame

that spendyth ouyr largely / [2792] And therefore seyth
 Catoun vse he seyth thynne richessis / that þ^a hast getyn
 [2793] in swich a maner / that men haue ne matier ne
 cause to calle the neythir wreche ne chinchere / [2794]
 ffor it is greet schame to a man to haue a poore herte
 & a ryche purs [2795] he seyth also the goodis that
 thow hast getyn / vse hem by mesure / that is to s[e]yne
 spende mesurably / [2796] for they that follyly wastyn
 & despendyn the goodis that they han / [2797] whan
 they han no moore propre of here owene / they schapyn hem
 to takyn the goodis of a-nothyr man [2798] ¶ I seye thanne
 3e schul fleen aueryce [2799] vsynge 3oure richessis
 in swich manere / that men seye nat that 3oure richessis
 been I-buried / [2800] But that 3e haue hem in 3oure
 my3t & in 3oure weldynge // [2801] ffor a wys man
 repreunth the auericious man / & seyth thus in two
 vers / [2802] Wherto & whi buryeth a man hise
 goodis bi his greete aueryce / & knowyth weel that nedis
 muste he deye / [2803] for deth is the ende of euery man
 as in this present lyf / [2804] And for what cause & what
 enchesoun / ioynyth he hym or knyttyth he hym / so faste
 vnto hise goodis / [2805] that alle hise wittys mour nat
 disseueneren hym ne departyn hym from hise goodis /
 [2806] & knowith weel or oughte to knowyn / that whan he
 is deed he schal no thyng bere with hym / ou3t of þis
 world / [2807] And therefore seyth seynt Augustyn / that
 the auarycious man is lykkened vn-to helle / [2808] that the
 more it swolwith / the moode desyr it hath to swolwe / &
 deuoure / [2809] And as weel as 3e wolde eschewe / to been
 called an auerycious man / or chynche / [2810] as weel
 schulde 3e keepe 3ow & gouerne 3ow in swich a wyse /
 that men ne calle 3ow nat fool large / [2811] Therfore seyth
 Tullius / the goodis he seyth of thyn hous schulde
 not been kept ¹ne hid so cloos / But that they my3tyn
 been openyd bi pete & debonayeretee / [2812] that is to
 seyne to 3eunyn hem part / that han greet neede / [2813]

Ne thynne goodis schulde not been so opyn / to been euery
manys goodis [2814] ¶ Aftyward in getyng of 3oure
rychesse & in vsynge hem / 3e schul alwey haue thre
thyngis in 3oure herte / [2815] that is to seyne oure lord
god Conscience / And good name // [2816] ffyrst 3e schul
haue god in 3oure herte / [2817] And for no rychesse 3e
schul doon no thyng that schulde displese oure
lord good / that is 3oure creature & makere / [2818] ffor afty
the word of salomon / It is bettere to haue a lytil good with
the loue of god [2819] than to haue meche good / & tresor And
leese the loue of hise lord god / [2820] And the prophete
seyth / that t[h]e moore prophit & the betere it is to been a
good man / & haue lytil good & tresore! [2821] than to
been heldyn a schrewe & haue greete rycheissis [2822]
And 3it seye I ferthere moore / that 3e schul alwey
doon 3oure besynesse to gete 3ow rycheissis [2823] so that
3e gete hem with good conscience // [2824] And thapostelle
seyth / that there ne is thyng in this world of whiche 3e
schulde haue so greet Ioye / as whan oure conscience beryth
vs witnesse / [2825] And the wise man seyth. The
substaunce of a man is ful good / whan synne is not in
mannys conscience / [2826] Aftyward in getyng of 3oure
rycheissis / & in vsynge of hem [2827] 3ow muste haue
greet besynesse / And greet dilligence / that 3oure goode
name be alwey kept & conseruyd / [2828] ffor Salo-
mon seyth that betere it is / & moore it a-vaylyth a man
to haue a good name than for to haue manye ryche[ssis] /
[2829] And therefore he seyth in a-nothir place / Doo greet
dilligence seyth salomon in kepyng of thyn frend & of
thyn goode name / [2830] for it schal longere a-bydyn / with
the than ony tresore be it neuere so precious / [2831]
and certis he schulde nat been callid a gentil man that
afty god & good conscience / alle thyng left / ne doth
his dilligence / & bisynesse to kepyn his goode name //
[2832] And Cassiodore seyth / That it is ¹signe of a gentil
herte / whan a man lough & desiryth to haue a good name /

[2833] And therfore seyth seynt austyn / that there
 been two thyngis that been necessarye & nedeful
 [2834] & that is good Conscience & good los / [2835]
 that is to seyne good conscience to thyn owene parson /
 In word and good los / for thyn neyghebore owtward /
 [2836] And he that trustith hym so mechil in hise goode
 conscience / [2837] that he displesith & settyth at
 nouȝt / his goode name or los / & rekkith nat thow
 he kepith nat his goode name / nys but a crewel cherl /

[2838] Sire now haue I schewid ȝow / how ȝe schuldyn
 doon to getyn rychessis / & how ȝe schuldyn vsyn hem /
 [2839] And I se weel that for the trust that ȝe han in
 ȝoure richessis / ȝe wele meue werre / & batayle [2840]
 ¶ I conseyle ȝow that ȝe begynne no werre in trust of
 ȝoure rychessis / for they ne suffyse not / werry to mayn-
 tene / [2841] And therfore seyth a philysophere That
 man that desyryth & wele algatis han werre / schal
 neuere han suffisaunce / [2842] for the ryche that he is
 the grettere dispencis wolde he makyn / ȝif he wele haue wor-
 schepe & victorie [2843] And Salomon seyth / that the
 grettere rychessis that a man hath : the mo dispendouris / he
 hath [2844] ¶ And deere sere / al be it so that for ȝoure
 rychessis / ȝe mowe haue meche folk / [2845] ȝit behouyth
 it nat / ne it is nat good to bryngyn werre / where as ȝe
 mowe in othere manere haue pees / vn-to ȝoure worschepe
 & profyt / [2846] ffor the victorie of bataylis / that been
 in this world / lyth not in grete nou[m]bre or multitude of
 peple / ne in the vertew of man / [2847] but it lyth in
 the wil & in the vertu of oure lord god / almighty /
 [2848] & therfore Iudas / Machabeus / whiche was
 goddis knygh / [2849] whanne he schulde fyghte aȝen hyse
 aduersaryis that a grettere noumbre & a grettere mul-
 titude of puple of folk & was strongere / than was his puple of
 Machabye / [2850] ȝit he reconfortyth his litil companye / &
 seyde ryȝt in this wise / [2851] Also lyghtely quod he
 may oure lord god / almyghty ȝeue victorie to a fewe folk :

as to manye folk / [2852]¹ for the victorie of batayle / comyth
 not by the greete noubre of peple [2853] but it comyth
 from oure lord god / of heuene [2854] ¶ And deere sere for
 as meche as theere is no man / certeyn if it be worthi that
 god ȝeue hym victorie / [.
 no gap in the MS.] or noght aftyr that
 salomon seyth / [2855] therfore euery man / schulde greetly
 drede werris / to begyne / [2856] And by cause that in
 bataylis fallyn manye perilis / [2857] And happith othir-
 while / that as soone as the greete man slayn as the lityl
 man / [2858] And as it is I-wretyn in the secunde book of
 kyngis / the deedis of bataylis been auenturouse And no
 thyng certeyn / [2859] for as lyȝtely is on hurt with a
 spere as a-nothir / [2860] And for there is gret peril in
 werre / therfore schulde a man fle & eschewe werre in
 as meche as a man may goodly / [2861] ffor Salomon
 seyth / he that louthyng peril / schal falle in peril / [2862]

Aftyr that Dame Prudence hadde spokyn in this
 manere / Melibee answerede & seyde [2863] I se
 weel dame prudence / that be ȝoure fayre wordys and
 by ȝoure resonys / that ȝe han schewede me: that the werre
 lykyth ȝow no thyng / [2864] but I haue not ȝit herd ȝoure
 conseyl / how I schal doon / in this neede [2865]

Certis quod sche / I conseyle ȝow that ȝe
 acorde with ȝoure aduersaryis / & that ȝe han pees
 with hem / [2866] ffor seynt Iame seyth / in hise
 epistellis That by concord & pees / the smale rycheess waxen
 greete / [2867] & by debat & discord / the greete richess
 fallyn doun [2868] & ȝe knowyn weel that on of the
 gretteste / & most souereyn thyng that is in this world /
 is vnytee & pees / [2869] and therfore seyde oure lord
 Ihesu Crist to hise apostell in this wyse / [2870] wol
 happi & blyssede been they / that louyn & purchasyn
 pees / for they been callede childeryn of god / [2871] A Quod
 Melibee / Now se I that ȝe louyn not myn honour /
 ne myn worchepe / [2872] ȝe knowyn weel that mynne

aduersaryis han begunne this debaat & brige / by here
outrage [2873] & 3e seen weel that they ne requiryn ne
preyen me nat of pees / ne they axsyn nat to been reconsylyd /
[2874] wele 3e thanne that I goo and meeke / me &
obeye me to hem / & crye hem mercy / [2875] for sothe
that weere nat myn worschepe / [2876] ffor ryzt as men 'seyn/
that oure greete homelynesse / engenderyth dispreysynge so
faryth it / by too gret humilte or meeknesse [2877]

Thanne bygan Daame Prudence / to makyn sem-
blaunt of wrethe & seyde [2878] Certis sire saue
3oure grace / I loue 3oure honour & 3oure profyt as I do
myn owene / & euere haue do / [2879] ne 3e ne noon
othir seyen neuere the contrarye / [2880] And 3it If I
hadde seyd / that 3e schulde / han purchasyd / the pees &
the reconsyliacyoun / I ne hadde nat meche mystake me /
ne sayd a-mys // [2881] ffor the wise man seyth / The dis-
scencioun begynnith by a-nothir man / & the reconsylyng
bygynnith by thi self / [2882] And the prophete seyth
fle schrewedenesse & do goodnesse / [2883] Seeke pees &
folwe it in-asmeche as 3e may / [2884] 3it seye I nat /
that 3e schul rather / pursewe to 3oure aduersarye / for pees /
than they schul to 3ow / [2885] ffor I knowe weel that 3e
been so hard hertid / that 3e weele doon no thyng for me //
[2886] And Salomon seyth / that he that hath ouyr hard an
herte / that he at the laste schal myshappe or mystyde .

Whanne Melibee hadde herd dame Prudence makyn
semblaunt / of wrathe / he seyde in this wise /
[2888] Dame I preye 3ow that 3e been nat displeid /
of thyngis that I seye / [2889] ffor 3e knowe weel / that I am
angery & wroth / & that is no wondyr / [2890] & they that
been wrothe / wetyn nat weel what they doon / ne what they
seyn / [2891] Therefore the prophete seyth / that
troubled eynen han no cleer syzt / [2892] but seyth
& conseylyth me / as 3ou lykyth / for I am redy to do /
ryght as 3e wele desire / [2893] and 3if 3e repreue me of myn
folye / I am the moore holdyn for to loue 3ow & to preyse

30w // [2894] ffor Salomon seyth / that he that repreuyth
hym that doth folye [2895] he schal fynde grettere grace /
than he that disseyuyth hym with sweete wordys / [2896]

Thanne seyde dame Prudence / I make no semblaund /
of wrathe ne of angir : but for 3oure greete profyith /
[2897] ffor Salomon seyth he is more worth / that re-
preuyth or chydyth / a fool for hise folye / schewynge hym
semelaunt of wrethe : [2898] than he that support[*it*]h hym /
& preysith hym in his mysdoinge . 'and laught at hise
folye / [2899] and this same salamon seyth afterward /
that by the sorweful visage of a man that is to seyne by
the sorye & heuy cuntenaunce / of a man [2900] the fool /
correctyth & amendyth hymself / [2901]

Thanne seyde Melibee / I schal nat cunne answere to
so manye & fayr resonys as 3e puttyn on to me / &
schewyn / [2902] seyth schortely vn-to me 3oure wil
& 3oure conseyll / & I am al redy to performe it & fulfille it /

Whanne Dame Prudence discouered al hire wiȝt on to
hym & seyde / [2904] I conseyle 3ow *quod* sche
abouyn alle thynges / that 3e makyn pees by-twexe
god and 3ow / [2905] & beth reconsyld vn-to hym / & to hise
grace / [2906] ffor as I haue seyde 3ow heere by-forn / God
hath sufferid 3ow to haue this tribulacioun & dissesse for
3oure synnys / [2907] and 3if 3e do as I seyde 3ow / god wele
sende 3ore aduersarijs vn-to 3ow / [2908] & make hem
to falle at 3oure feet / redy to doon 3oure wil & 3oure com-
aundement / [2909] for Salomon seyth / whanne the con-
dicioun of a man / is plesaunt & lykyng to god / [2910] he
chaungith the hertis of the mannys aduersarijs & con-
streynyth hem to beseke hym of pees & of grace
[2911] & I preye 3ow lat me spekyn with 3oure aduersarijs
pryuyly / [2912] for they schal nat knowe that it
be of 3oure wil / or 3oure assent / [2913] and thanne whanne
I knowe here wil & here entent I may conseyle 3ow
the moore sewerly

[2914] Dame *quod* Melibee doth 3oure wil &

þoure lykyng / [2915] for I putte me holly in þoure
disposicioun and ordynauce [2916]

Thanne dame Prudence whanne sche saw the greet
wil of hire husbonde / delibered & took ays in
hireself / [2917] thynkyng how sche myȝte bryng this
neede into a good conclusioun / & to a good ende
[2918] And whan sche saw hire tyme sche sente for hise
aduersaryis / to come vn-to hire into a priue place /
[2919] & schewede wisely vn-to hem / the greet goodis
that comyn of pees [2920] & the greet harmys / &
perilis that comyn in werre / [2921] & seyde to hem in
a goodely manere / how that ¹hem oughte to han greet re-
pentaunce / [2922] of the Iniurie & the wrong that they
hadde doon to hire lord / and vn-to hire & to
hyre douȝtyr [2923]

And whanne / they herdyn the goodelyche wordis off
Dame Prudence / [2924] they weere so suppreysed / &
rauschit & haddyn so greet loye of hire that wondyr
was to seen / or telle // [2925] A lady quod they ȝe han
schewyd vnto vs / the blyssynge of swetnesse / aftyr the sawe
of dauyth the prophete / [2926] ffor the reconsilyng whiche
we ne been nat worthi for to haue / in no maneere / [2927] but
we ouȝtyn to requiryn it with vericontrycioun / & humilitee
that [2928] ȝe of þoure greet goodnesse / haue presentid vn-
to vs / [2929] Now se we weel / that the science & the cun-
nyng / of Salomon is ful trewe / [2930] ffor he seyth that
sweete wordys / multiplen & encresyn frendis / &
makyn schrewys to been debonayre & meeke /

[2931] Certis quod they / we putte oure deede &
al oure matyere & cause al only in þoure goode wil /
[2932] and been redy to obeye to the comaunde-
ment of myn lord / Melibee / [2933] And therefore deere
& benygne lady / we preye ȝow & beseke ȝow as
mekely as we cunne / And moun / [2934] that it like vnto
þoure greet goodnesse / to fulfille in deede þoure good-
lyche wordis // [2935] ffor we consideryn & knowelechyn /

that we haue offendit & greuyd myn lord Melibee out of
 mesure [2936] so fer forth that we been nat of poweer / to
 makyn hise amendis / [2937] And therfore we obligyn &
 byndyn vs & oure frendis for to doon his wil / & al his
 comaundementz / [2938] but perauenture he hath swich
 heuynesse & swich wrathe to vsward / by cause of oure
 offence [2939] that he wele enioynyn vs swich a peyne
 as we mowe nat bere ne sustene / [2940] And therfore
 noble lady we besekyn to thyn womanly pete / [2941]
 to takyn swich auysement / in this neede / that we ne oure
 frendis been nat diseritid ne distroyed / thorw oure
 folye [2942]

Certis quod Prudence / it is an hard thyng [*et per-
 illeuse*] [2943] that a man putte hym al vtreenly
 in arbitracioun / and Iugement & in the mygh &
 power of hyse enemyis / [2944] ffor Salomon seyth / Leenyth
 me ¹ & 3euyth credence to that that I schal seyn / I seye
quod he the puple / folk / & gouernouris of holy cherche
 [2945] to thyn sone to thyn wif / to thyn frend ne to
 thyn brothyr [2946] ne 3eue thow neuere mygh ne
 maystrye / of thyn body whil thow leuyt [2947] ¶ Now
 sithyn that he defendyth that a man schulde nat 3euyt to
 hise brothir ne to his frend the my3t of hise body /
 [2948] by a strongere resoun / he defendith & forbedyth a
 man / to 3euyt hym self to his enemy / [2949] And nathe-
 les I conseyle 3ow that 3e mystruste nat myn lord /
 [2950] for I wot weel & knowe verrayly / that he is
 debonayre / and meeke large curteys / [2951] & no-
 thyng desyrous / ne coueytous of good ne rychesse / [2952]
 for there ne is no thyng in this world / that he desiryth
 saue only worschepe & honour / [2953] fferthere-moore
 I knowe & am ry3t sekyr that he schal nothyng
 doon in this neede with-outyn myn conseyll / [2954] And I
 schal so werkyn in this cause / that by the grace of oure
 lord god 3e schul been reconsyld vn-to vs

[2955] Thanne seydyn they with oon wois / worschepe-

ful lady we putte vs & alle oure goodis // all fully in 3oure
wil & disposicioun [2956] and been redy to come / what
day it lyke vnto 3oure noblesse / to lymite vs / or assigne
vs / [2957] for to makyn oure obligacioun / & boond as strong
as it likith vn-to 3oure goodnesse / [2958] that we mowe
fulfille the wil of 3ow // and of myn lord Melibee [2959]

Whanne Dame Prudence / hadde herd the answerys
of these men / sche bad hem gon a-gayn priuily /
[2960] and scheretornede to hire lord Melibee / and
tolde hym how sche foond hise aduersarijs ful repentaunt /
[2961] knowelechyng ful lowely here synnys & trespase and
how they were redy / to suffere alle payne / [2962] requirynge
& preyinge hym / of merci & pete [2963]

Thanne seyde Melibee / he is weel worthi to haue
pardoun & for3euenesse of hise synne / that excusith
nat his synne / [2964] but ¹knowelecheth & repentith
hym axinge indulgence [2965] ffor Senek saith there
is the remissioun & for3euenesse of synne / wheere as the con-
fessioun is / [2966] neighbore to innocence: is confessioun /
[2967] [.]

. : *no gap in the MS.*
And therefore I assente / & conferme me to haue pees /
[2968] but it is good that we doon not with-outyn the assent
& wil of oure frendis [2969]

Thanne was prudence / ry3t glad & Ioyeful and
seyde / [2970] Certis sere quod sche / 3e han weel &
goodly answeyrd / [2971] for rygh as by the conseyll /
assent & helpe of 3oure frendis / 3e han been stirid
to venge 3ow / & make werre / [2972] ry3t so with-
outyn hire conseyll / schul 3e nat acordyn / 3ow / ne haue
pees with 3oure aduersarijs / [2973] ffor the lawe seith
There ne is no thyng so good be woye of kynde as a thyng
to been onbounde / by hym that it was I-bou[n]de //

[2974] And thanne Dame Prudence / with-outyn delay
or taryng / sente a-non hire messagis for hire kyn & for
hire olde frendis / whiche that were trewe / & wyse [2975]

& tolde hem bi ordere in the presence of Melibee / al
 this matieere as it is a-boue expressid / & declared / [2976]
 And preyede hem that they wolde ȝeue hire a-vis & con-
 seyl / what best were to don in this neede // [2977] And
 whanne Melibees frendis haddyn takyn hire ays / & deliber-
 acioun of the forseide matieere [2978] & hadde examynede
 it bi greet auysement & besynesse & greet diligence / [2979]
 they ȝeue ful consey / for to haue pees & reste / [2980] And
 that melibee schulde resseyue with good herte hise aduer-
 saryis / to forȝeuenesse & mercy

[2981] ¶ And whanne dame Prudence / hadde herd
 thassent of hire lord / Melibee & the consey / of hise frendis /
 [2982] acord / with hire wil / & hyre entencioun [2983]
 sche was wondirly glad / in hire herte / & seyde / [2984]
 there is an old prouerbe / quod sche / that seyth That the
 goodnesse that thow mayght don this day do it / [2985] &
 abyde not ne delaye it not til tomorwe / [2986] &
 therefore I conseyle that ȝe sende ȝoure massagis / sweche
 as been discreete / & wyse. [2987] vn-to ȝoure aduersaryis /
 tellynge ¹hem on ȝoure behalue / [2988] that ȝif they wele
 trete of pees / & of acord / [2989] that they schape hem
 with-outyn delay or tarynge to comyn vn-to vs / [2990]
 whiche thing perfornede was / in deede [2991] &
 whanne these trespasouris & repentyng folk of here
 folyis / that is to seyne the aduersaryis of Melibee / [2992]
 haddyn herd what these messageris seydyn vn-to hem /
 [2993] they weere right glad & ioyeful / & answeredyn
 ful mekely & benygely [2994] ȝeldyng gracis / &
 thankyngis to here lord Melibee & to alle his cumpaynye /
 [2995] & schopyn hem with-outyn delay to gon with the
 massangeris / & obeye to the comaundement of here lord
 Melibee //

[2996] & ryȝt a-noon they toke here woye to the
 court / of Melibee / [2997] & tokyn with hem summe
 of here trewe frendis to make feith for hem / & for to
 been here borwys / [2998] And whanne they were come to

the presence / of Melibee / he seyde hem these wordys /
 [2999] It standith thus quod Melibee / & soth it is
 that [3000] causeles & with-outyn skille / & resoun 3e
 [3001] han doon greete Iniurijs & wrongis / to me &
 to myn wif Prudence And to myn doughtyr also / [3002] for
 3e han entred in-to myn hous by violence / [3003] & han
 doon swich outrage that alle men knowyn wel / that 3e han
 deseruyd the deth / [3004] And therfore wele I knowe
 & wete of 3ow [3005] whethir 3e wele putte the
 ponyschyng and the chastisyng in-to vengeance / of
 this outrage in the wil of me / & of myn wyf:
 or 3e wele nat [3006]

THanne the wyseste of hem thre / answered for
 hem alle & seyde / [3007] Sire we knowe
 wel that we been onworthy to come to the court
 of so gret a lord & so worthy as 3e been [3008] ffor
 we han so greetly mystakyn vs / & han offendit & agilt
 in swich a wise ageyn 3oure hye lordschepe / [3009] that
 trewely we han deseruyd the deth / [3010] But 3it for
 the greete goodnesse & debonaierete / that al the world
 witnessith of 3oure persooone / [3011] we submyttyn vs to
 the excellence & the benygnete of 3oure graciouse lordschepe
 [3012] And been redy to obeye ² to alle 3oure comãdementis /
 [3013] besekynge 3ow that of 3oure Merciable pete / 3e
 wolde considere oure geeete repentaunce & lowe submissioun
 [3014] & graunte vs for3euenesse of oure outrageous
 trespassis and offence [3015] for weel we knowyn / that 3oure
 liberal grace / & mercy / strechyn hem ferthere / in-to good-
 nesse: than don oure outrageous giltis & trespassis in-to
 wekedenesse [3016] Albe-it that cursedly & damp-
 nably we han gilt agen 3oure highe lordschepe. ¹ [3017]

THanne Melibee tok hem vp from the ground ful
 benygnel / [3018] & resseyuede here oblygacyounys
 & here bondis / by here othis vpon here plegges / &
 borewis / [3019] and assignede hem a certeyn day to retourne
 vn-to hise courtt [3020] forto resceyue & accepte the sentence /

[¹—¹ All this
 paragraph
 is repeated
 in the MS, begin-
 ning Whanne
 instead of
 Thanne.]

& Iugement that Melibee wolde commaunde to been doon on hem / by the cause afforseid. [3021] whyche thyngis ordeynyd / euery man retourned to his hous //

[3022] And whanne that dame Prudence saw hire tyme sche feynede and axede hire lord Melibee [3023] ¹what vengeance he thouȝte to takyn of hise aduersaries [3024]

TO which Melibee answered & seyde certis *quod* he I thynke & purpose me fully [3025] to dyscrete hem of al that they han / & for to putte hem in exil for euere. [3026]

CErtis *quod* dame prudence this were a crewel sentence / & mechil a-geyn resoun / [3027] for ȝe been riche I-now / & han non ned of othere menys / [3028] & ȝe myȝtyn lyȝtely in this wyse / getyn ȝow a coueytous name [3029] which is a vicious thyng & oughte to been eschewid of euery good man / [3030] ffor aftyr the sawe of the word of thapostele / Coueytise is roote of alle harmys / [3031] & therefore it were betere / for ȝow to lese so meche good / of ȝoure owene: than for to takyn of hire good / in this manere [3032] ffor betere it is to lese good / with worchepe: thanne it is to wyne good with vilanye / & schame / [3033] And eueryman oughte to doon his diligence / & his besynesse / to getyn hym a good name / [3034] & ȝit schal he nat only / besye hym in kepyng his good name: [3035] but he schal also enforsyn hym alwey to doon sumthing by which he may renouelle / hise goode name [3036] ffor it is wretyn / that the olde goode loos / or goode name / of a man is soone goon & passid / whanne it nys nat newid ne renouellyd / [3037] And as touchyng that ȝe seyn ȝe wele exile ȝoure aduersaryis / [3038] that thynkyth me mekyl ageyn resoun And out of meseure / [3039] conseyderede the power that they han ȝeuyȝ ȝow vp-on hem-self / [3040] And it is wretyn that he is worthy to leese hise priuylege that mysuseth & the poweer / that is ȝeuyȝ hym / [3041] & I sette caas / ȝe myȝte enioyne hem / that peyne by ryȝt / & by lawe / [3042] which I

trowe 3e ne may not do / [3043] I seye 3e myght nat
 putte it to execucioun paraunture [3044] & thanne
 weere it likly to returne to the werre as it was by-form
 [3045] & therefore 3if 3e wele that men doon 3ow obeys-
 aunce / 3e muste deeme moore curteysly [3046] this is to
 seye 3e muste 3eue moore esy sentence3 & Iugementis /
 [3047] ffor it is wrete / that he that most curteysli
 comaundyth / to hym: meen muste obeye / [3048] & there-
 fore I preye 3ow / that in this necescite / & this neede
 3e caste 3ow to ouercome 3oure herte // [3049] ffor senek
 seyth that he that [ones] ouyrecomyth^{1 2} [his/herte ouercomeþ
 twies/ [3050] And Tullius/ seith. þer is/ no þing/ so
 comendable in a gret lorde. [3051] as/ when he is/ debon-
 aire & meke. & appesiþ hym mekeli. [3052] And I prai-
 e you þat ye wolþ/ forbere now to do vengeance [3053] in
 suche a maner þat your good name maie be kept &
 conseruod. [3054] & þat men maie haue cause &
 mater/ to preise you in pite & mercy. [3055] &
 þat ye haue no cause to repent you of þing/ þat ye done.
 [3056] ffor Senek seith. he ouercomeþ in euyþ/
 maner þat repentþ hym of his/ victorie. [3057] Where-
 fore I prai- e you lat/ mercy ben in your
 herte [3058] to þ^e effecte & þ^e entente þat god
 almy3ti haue mercy vp-on you in his/ last iugement [3059]
²¶ ffor seynt/ Iame seith in his/ epistell/. Iugement² with
 out mercy schalþ/ be do to. hym. þat haþ no mercy of
 anoper wight.

[1 leaf 330 is
 cut out]
 [2 Harl. MS 1758,
 on leaf 181, back]
 ¶ Tullius/.

¶ Seneca.

¶ Iacobus/.
 [2 in margin]

[3060] When Me⁴libe had herd þ^e grete skiles/ [1 leaf 187]
 & resons/ of dame Prudence & of/ her/ wise informacions/
 & techinges/. [3061] his herte gan enclyne to þ^e wille of
 his/ wif. considering/ to her trewe entent/. [3062] con-
 formed hym anon & assentid fulli to wirchen aftir/ hir/
 counceile. [3063] & þankid god of/ whom procediþ aH/
 goodnes/ þat hym sent a wif/ of so gret
 discrecion. [3064] And when þ^e daie come þat his/ aduer-
 saries/ schulden appere in his presence. [3065] he spak/

CAMBRIDGE 469 (6-T. 251) [this page, Harl. 1758]

to hem full/ goodli & seide to hem in þis/ wise. [3066] ¶ AH/
 be it/ so þat of *your* pride & hie *presumpcion* & folie
 & of *your* necligence & vnkonnyng'. [3067] Ye haue
 mys/ born you & trespaced to me. [3068] Yet for as/
 meche as/ I se & beholde *your* gret humylite
 [3069] & þat ye ben sorie & repentaunt of/ *your* giltes/
 [3070] it/ constreyneth me to do yow grace & mercy ·
 [3071] wherfore I receyue you to my grace. [3072] &
 foryeuen/ you intierli alle þ^e offences/ yniuries/ & wrongis/
 þat ye han done ayenst/ me & myn. [3073] to þis/
 effecte & to þis/ ende þat god of his/ endeles/ mercy ·
 [3074] wiþ/ at þe tyme of diyng/. foryeuen/ our/
 giltes/ þat we haue trespaced vn-to hym in þis/ wrecchid
 worlde. [3075] ffor doutles/ if/ we be sorie & repentaunt/
 of þ^e synnes/ & giltes/ in þ^e whiche we han trespaced in þ^e
 sight/ of our/ lord god. [3076] he is/ so fre & so merci-
 full/. [3077] þat he wiþ/ foryeuen/ vs/ our/ giltes/. [3078]
 & bryngen vs/ to þilke blis/ þat neuer hath ende.
 To whiche blis/ he vs/ brynge · þat blood on crois/ for vs/
 did sprynge. Qui cum deo patre. & cetera. //

Here/ endith Chaucers/ tale/ of Melibe/ And Prudence/]¹

[¹ Harl. MS 1756 extract ends]

[Here be-gynneth þe Prolooge of þe Monke. [Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 201, bk]

Whan endid was þis tale of Melybe
 And of / Prudence and of hir/ benygnyte 3080
 Oure hoste sayd as I am a · feyth-fuht man
 And by þe precieuse corpus madryan
 I hade leuere þan a Barelle of ale
 þat godeleve my wyf hade hard þis tale 3084
 ffor she nys no þenge of suche pacience ·
 As was þis Melibeus wyfes prudence
 Be godes bones whan I bete my knaues .
 Sche bryngeth me þe grete clubbed staves . 3088
 And cryethe slee þe dogges euereycheon
 And breke bothe backe and bone
 And 3if þat ony neghebour of myne
 Wolle not in chirche to my wyf enclyne 3092
 Or be so hardy to her/ to trespace
 When she cometh home she renneth in my face
 And cryeth false caward wreke þi wyfe
 By corpus bonus I wylle haue þi knyfe 3096
 And þou shalte haue my distafe and go spyne
 ffor day to nyzt riȝt þus she wolle begynne
 Alas she seithe þat euere I was shape
 To wedde a melke soppe or so grete an ape 3100
 þat wolle bene ouere lade with euery wyȝt
 þou dorste not stonde by þi wyf a ryȝt
 Thys ys my lyfe but 3if I wolde fyȝt
 And oute at þe dore a-none I mote me dyȝt 3104
 Or elles I am lost but 3if þat I
 Be lyke a wyld lyonn foule hardy
 I wote wele she wylle do me slee som day [leaf 202] 3107
 Some neyȝeboure and þan go my way] [Sloane extract ends]
 For I am perlious with knyfe in honde [Camb. Univ. Lib. MS
Gg. 4. 57, leaf 361]
 Al be it that I dar nat hire with-sonde

CAMBRIDGE 471 (6-T. 253) [this page, Sloane MS]

For sche is big in armys by myn feyth
 That schal he fynde that hire mys doth or seyth 3112
 But lat vs passe a-way from this matiere
 Myn lord the Monk be merye of cheere
 For 3e schul telle a tale trewely
 Lo rouchestre stant heere faste by 3116
 Ryde forth myn owene lord / brek nat oure game
 But by myn trouthe I knowe nat 3oure name
 Wher schal I calle 3ow myn lord daund Iohn
 Or daun Thomas or ellis daun Alboñ 3120
 Of what hous be 3e by 3oure fadyr kyn
 I voue to god thow hast a ful fayr skyn
 It is a gentyl pasture theere thow gost
 Thow art nat lyk a penaunt or a gost 3124
 Vp-on myn feyth thow art sum offyseer
 Sum worthi Sexteyn or sum Celereer
 ffor by myn fadyr soule as to myn doom
 Thow art a maystyr whan thow art at hom 3128
 No poore Cloysterer ne non nouys
 But a gouernour worthy & wis
 And therwithal of braun & of bonys
 A weel farynge persone for the nonys 3132
 I preye to god 3eue hem confusioun
 That ferst the brouzte vn-to relygeoun
 Thow woldyst a been a tredefowel aryzt
 Haddyst thow as greet a leue as thow hast myght 3136
 To perforce al this lust in engendernge
 Thow haddyst begetyn manye a creature
 Allas why werys thow so syd a cope
 God 3eue me sorwe but & I were a pope 3140
 Nat only thow but euery myghty man
 Thow he were schore hye vp on his pan
 Schulde han a wif for al the world is lorn
 Religeous hath takyn vp al the corñ 3144
 Of tythyng / & we borel meen been schrympis [leaf 351, back]
 Of feble treis theere comyn febele ympis

This makyth that oure eyris been so sklendere	
And feble that they may not weel engendere	3148
This makyth that oure wiuis wele assaye	
Relygeous folk for ȝe mowe the betere paye	
Of Venus payementis than mowe we	
God wot no lusschebruis paye ȝe	3152
But be nat wroth myn lord thow that I pleye	
Ful ofte in game a sothe I haue herd seye	
T His worthy Monk tok al in pacience	
And seyde I wele don al myn diligence	3156
As fer as sounyth in-to honeste	
To telle ȝow a tale or two or three	
And ȝif thow leste to herkyn hedyrward	
I wele ȝow seyn the lyf of seynt Edeward	3160
Or ellis fyrst tragedeis wele I telle	
Of whiche I haue an hundered in myn celle	
Tragedie is to seyne a certeyn storye	
As olde bokys makyn vs memorie	3164
Of hym that stod in greet prosperitee	
& is I-fallyn out of hygh degre	
In-to myserye & endyth wrechedely	
And they been vercified comounly	3168
Of sexe feet whiche men callyn exametroun	
In prose ek endytid been many on	
And ek in metre in manye a sundery wyse	
Lo this declarynge oughte I-nough suffyse	3172
Now herkyth ȝif ȝow lyke for to heere	
But fyrst I ȝow be-seke in this matiere	
Thow I be ordere telle nat these thyngis	
Be it of popis emperourys or kyngis	3176
Aftr here agis as men rede & fynde	
But telle hem some by-fore & some be-hynde	
As it comyth to myn remembraunce	
Haue me excusede of myn ygnoraunce	3180

[*Painting of the Monk on horseback.*]

[leaf 352]

Here begynnyth the Monk his tale

I¹ Wole be-wayle in manere of Tragedie
 The harm of hem that stood in hey degre

[¹ This initial I is
 carried down to
 line 3196, in MS.]

And fellyn so that there nas no remedie
 To brynge hem out of here aduercitee 3184
 For certeyn whan that fortune leste to fle
 There may no man the cours of hire withholde
 Lat not man truste on blynd prosperitee
 By-war by these exsaumplys trewe & olde 3188

[*Lucifer.*]

At ludyfer thow he an aungel weere Lucifer
 And not a man at hym I wele begynne
 For thow fortune may noon aungel deere
 From high degre ȝit fel he for his synne 3192
 Doun in-to helle where as he ȝit is inne
 O lucifer bryȝteste / of aungellis alle
 Now art thow satenas that mayst not twynne
 Out of myserie / in which that thow art falle 3196

[*Adam.*]

Loo Adam in the feeld of damassene Adam
 With goddys owene fyngyr mad was hee
 And not begetyn of manys sperme onclene
 And welte al paradys sauynge on tree 3200
 Hadde neuere wordely man so heigh degre
 As adam tyl he for mysgouernaunce
 Was dreue out of his hye prosperite
 To labour & to helle & to myschaunce 3204

[*Sampson.*]

Loo Sampson that was annunciat [leaf 352, back] Samson
 By aungel longe er his natyuite
 And was to god almyghty consecrat
 And stood in noblesse whil he myzte see 3208
 Was neuere swich a-nothir as was hee
 To speke of strenthe & therwyth hardynesse
 But to hise wiuys tolde he his secree
 Thorw whiche he slow hym self for wrechedenesse 3212

Sampson this noble almyghty champioun
 With-outyn wepene saue hise handis tweye
 He slow & al to-rente the lyoun
 Toward his weddyng walkynge by the weye 3216
 His false wif coude hym so please & preye
 Til sche his conseyl knew & sche vntrewe
 Vn-to hise fois his conseyl gan be-wrewe
 And hym forsok & tok a-nothir newe 3220

Thre hunderede foxis tok Sampson for yre
 And alle here taylys he to-gedere bond
 And sette the foxis taylys alle on feere
 For he on euery tayl hadde knyt a brond 3224
 And they brende alle the corn in that lond
 On alle hire Oliueis' & vyny ek [? is corrected]
 A thousent men ek slow he with his bond
 And hadde non wepene but an assis cheeke 3228

Whan they were slayn so trustede hym that he
 Was wol nygh lorn for which he gan to preye
 That god wolde on his peyne han sum pete
 And sende hym drynk / or ellis muste he deye 3232
 And of this Assis cheke that was dreye
 Owt of a wange tooth / sprong a-noon a welle
 Of whiche he drank I-nough schortely to seye
 Thus helpede hym god as Indicum can telle 3236

By verray force at a Gazan on a nyght
 Maugere philistienys of that Citee
 The ȝatis of the toun he hath vp plyȝt [leaf 335r]
 And on his bak I-karyede hem hath hee 3240
 Hye on an hil where as men myȝte hym se
 O noble almyghty Sampson leue & deere
 Haddist thou nat told to women thyn secre
 In al this world ne hadde be thyn peere 3244

This Sampson neythir Sythir drank ne wyn
 Nor on his heed cam rasor non ne scheere
 By precept of the massangeer defyn /
 For alle hise strenthis in hise heris weere 3248
 And fully twenty wyntyr ȝeer be ȝeere
 He hadde of Israel the gouernaunce
 But soone schal he wepe ful manye a teere
 For women schal hym brynge to myschaunce 3252

Vn-to his leman Dalida he tolde
 That in hise heris al hise strenthe lay
 And falsely to hise fomen sche hym solde
 And slepynge vp in hire barm vp-on a day 3256
 Sche maade to clippe or schere his heer a-way
 And made his fomen his craft espyen
 And whan that they hym fond in this aray
 They boundyn hym faste & puttyn out hise eyen 3260

But er his heed / was clyppid or I-schaue
 There was no bond¹ / with whiche men² mygh hym bynde
 But now is he / in prisoun in a Caue [1nd, 2^{en}, corrected]
 Where as they made / hym at the querne to grynde 3264
 O noble Sampson / strongeste of man kynde
 O whilom Iuge / in glorye & in rychesse
 Now mayst thou wepyn / with thynne eyen blynde
 Sythe thou from wele / art fallyn in wrechedenesse 3268

The ende of this caytyf was as I schal seye
 Hise fomen made / a feste vp-on a day
 And made hym as a fool / by-fore hem pleye
 And this was in a temple / of greet aray 3272
 But at the laste he maade a foul affray [leaf 252, back]
 For he two pilleris schok / & made hem falle
 And doun fil temple & al there it lay
 And slow hym self & ek hise fo-men alle 3276

This is to seyne the pryncis euerychon
 And ek thre hunderede bodyis weere theere slayn
 With fallynge of the greete temple of stoon
 Of Sampson wele I no moore seyn 3280
 Beth war bi this 'exsaumple olde & pleyn¹ [—1 later]
 That no man telle here conseyll to here wyuys
 Of swich thyng as they wele haue secre fayn
 If that it touche / hire / lymys or hire lyuys 3284

[Hercules.]

Of Hercules the souereyn conquerour ¶ Hercules
 Syngyn his laude his werkis & his renoun
 For in his tyme of² strenthe he was the flour [2 of corrected]
 He slow & rafte the skyn from the lyoun 3288
 He of Centauros leyde the beste a-doun
 He arpijs slow the crewel briddys felle
 He goldene appillis / rafte of the dragoun
 He drow out Cerberus out of helle 3292

He slow the crewel tyraunt Busirus
 And made his hors to frete hym flesch & boon
 He slow the fery serpent venymous
 Of Achilois hornys ³too / he brak on³ [3—3 corrected] 3296
 And he slow Cakus in a Caue of stoon.
 He slow the geaunt Antheus the stronge
 He slow the gresely boor & that a-noon
 And bar the heed vp-on his spere longe 3300

Was neuere wight swich siþe that this world began
 That slow so manye monstres as dede he
 Thourw out this wide world his name ran
 What for his strenthe & for his hye bounte 3304
 And euery reume wente he for to se
 He was so strong that no man myghte hym lette
 At boothe the wordys endis seyth trophee [leaf 354]
 In-stede of boundis / he a pillar sette 3308

A lemman hadde this noble Champioun
 That highte dianira / frosch as may
 And as these clerkis makyn mencyoun
 Sche hath hym sent a scherte frosch & gay 3312
 Allas this scherte allas & weyleaway
 Enuenymyd was so subtyl with alle
 That er that he hadde wered it half a day
 It made his flesch al from hise bonys falle 3316

But natheles summe clerkis hire excusyn
 By on that hyghte Nessius that it makid
 Be as be may I wele hire not excusyn
 But on his bak this scherte he werede al nakid 3320
 Til that the scherte was for the venym blakid
 And whan he saw noon othir remedye
 In hoote colys he hath hym self I-rakyd
 For with no venym deyneþe hym to deye 3324

Thus starf this myghti Hercules
 Lo ho may truste on fortune ony throwe
 ffor hym that folwith al this world of prees
 Er he be war is ofte I-leyd ful lowe 3328
 fful wis Is he that can hym seluyn knowe
 Beeth war for whanne that fortune leste to glose
 Thanne waytith¹ sche hire man to ouerthrowe [1th corrected]
 By swich a weye as he wolde lest suppoose 3332

[*Nebuchadnezzar.*]

¶ The myȝty trone the precious tresor ¶ Nabegodonosor
 The gloriouse Ceptre & royal mageste
 That hadde the kyng Nabegodonosor
 With tunge onethe may discryuede be 3336
 He twijs wan Ierusalem Cete
 The vessel of the temple he with hym ladde
 At babiloine was his souereyn see
 In whiche his glorye & his delyt he ladde 3340

The fayreste childeryn of the blod royal [leaf 354, back]
 Of Israel he leet do gilde a-noon
 And makede eche of hem to been his thral
 A-mongis othere Danyel was oon 3344
 That was the wiseste child of euerichon
 For he the dremys of the child expoungnede
 Where-as in chaldeye clerk was there noon
 That wiste to what fyn hise dremys sounede 3348

The proude kyng leet make a statute of gold
 Syxti Cubitis longe & seuene in breede
 To whiche ymage he bothe ȝonge & olde
 Comaunded to loute & haue in dreede 3352
 Or in a furneyis ful of flaumbis reede
 He schal been brend that wolde not obeye
 But neuere wolde assente to that deede
 Danyel ne hise ȝonge felawys tweye 3356

This kyng of kyngis proud was & elayt
 He wende that god that sit in Mageste
 Ne myghte hym not byrene of his estat
 And sodeynly he loste his dygnetee 3360
 And lik a beste hym semede for to bee
 And eet hey as an oxe & lay there oute
 In reyn with wilde bestis walkede he
 Tyl certeyn tyme was I-comyn a-boute 3364

And lyk an egellis federis wexsyn his erys
 Hise naylis lyk a briddis clawis weere
 Til god relesede hym a certeyn 3erys
 And 3af hym wit & thanne with manye a teere 3368
 He thankede god & euere his lyf in feere
 Was he to doon a-mys or moore trespase
 And tyl that tyme / he leyde was on his beere
 He knew that god was ful of myzt & graace 3372

[*Belshazzar.*]

His sone which that hyzte Balthasar Baltasar
 That held the regne after hire fadyris day
 He by his fader coude not be war [leaf 355]
 ffor proud he was of herte & of aray 3376
 And ek an ydolastre was he ay
 Hise hye estat assurede hym in pryde
 But fortune caste hym down & there he lay
 And sodeynly his regne he gan deuyde 3380

A feste he made vnto hise lordis alle
 Vpon a day & bad hem blythe bee
 And thanne hise offiseris gan he calle
 Goth bryngith forth the vessel quod he 3384
 Which that myn fadyr in his prosperite
 Out of the temple of ¹Ierusalem¹ berafte [1-1 corrected]
 And to oure hye goddis thanke we
 Of honour that oure olderis with vs lafte 3388

His wif hise lordis & hise concubynys
 Ay dronkyn whil here apetitis laste
 Out of these noble vessellis sundery wynys
 And on a wal this kyng his eyen caste 3392
 And saw an hand armles that wrot ful faste
 ffor ¹feere¹ of whiche he quok & sykede soore
 This hand that balthasar so soore a-gaste
 Wroot Mane ¹techel¹ phares & na moore 3396

In al that land magicien was non
 That coude expoungne what these letterys mente
 But danyel expoungnede it a-noon
 And seyde kyng god to thyn fadyr sente 3400
 Glorie & honour / regne tresor rente
 And he was proud / & no thyng god ne dradde
 And therefore god greet ¹wreche¹ on hym sente [—¹ corrected]
 And hym berafte / the regne that he hadde 3404

He was out cast of manny compaynye
 With assis was his habytacioun
 And eet hay as a beste / in weet & drye
 Tyl that he knew by grace & by resoun 3408
 That god of heuene hath domynacioun [leaf 355, back]
 Of euery regne / & euery creature
 And thanne hadde god of hym compascioun
 And hym restorede his regne & his figure 3412

Ek thow that art his sone art proud also
 And knowist alle these sygnys verrayly
 And art rebel to god & art his foo
 Thow drank ek of hise wellys holdely 3416
 Thyn wyf ek & thynne wenchis synfully
 Dronke of the same vessel sundery wynys
 And heryist false goddis cursedly
 Therefore to the I-schapyn ful greet pyne is 3420

This hand was sent from god that on the wal
 Wroot mane techel phares trust to me
 Thyn regne is doon thow weyest noght at al
 Deuidit is thyn regne / & it schal bee 3424
 To Medes & to perses ȝeuyn quod he
 And tilke same nyȝt this kyng was slawe
 And Daryus ocupied his degree
 Thow he thereto hadde neythir ryȝt ne lawe 3428

Lordyngis ensaample hereby may 3e take .
 How that in lordschepe is no sekyrnesse .
 For whan fortune wele a man forsake .
 Sche beryth a-wey his regne & hys rychesse . 3432
 And ek hise frendis bothe moore & lasse .
 For what that hath frendis thourr fortune .
 Mishap wele make hem enemyis I gesse .
 This prouerbe is ful soth & ful comune . 3436

[Zenobia.]

¶ Cenobia of palimerye queene	¶ Cenobia
As wrytyn Percyens of hire noblesse	
So worthi was in armys & so keene	
That no whit passede hire in hardynesse	3440
Ne in lynage nor othir gentillesse	
Of kyngis blod of perse is sche dessendid	
I seye that sche hadde not mooste fayrenesse	[leaf 356]
But of hire schap sche myȝte nat been a-mendid .	3444

From hire childhod / I fynde that sche fledde
 Offise of women & to wode sche wente
 And manye a wylde hertis blood sche schedde
 With arwis broode that sche to hym sente 3448
 Sche was so swift that sche anon hem hente
 And whan that sche was eldere sche wolde kylle
 Leonys lebardis & beris al to-rente
 And in hire armys wilde hem at hire wille 3452

Sche durste wilde beestis denys seeke
 And rennyȝ in the mountaigny[s] al be nyght
 And slepyȝ vndyr the busch / & sche coude ek
 Wrastellyȝ by verray forse & verray myght 3456
 With any ȝong man were he neuere so wight
 There myghte no thyȝȝ in hire armys stonde
 Sche kepte hire maydynheed from euery wyght
 To no man deguede hire for to been bonde 3460

But at the laste hire frendys haddyn hire maryed
 To onedake a prynce of that cuntree
 Al weere it so that sche hem longe taryed
 And 3e schal vnderstonde how that he¹ [¹ he corrected] 3464
 Hadde swiche fantasie as hadde sche
 But natheles whan they weere knyght in feere
 They leuede in loye & in felycite
 For eche of hem hadde othir leef & deere 3468

Sane on thyng that sche wolde neuere assente
 By no wey: that he schulde by hire lye
 But ones: for it was hire pleyn entente
 To haue a childe the world to multiplye 3472
 And also sone as sche myghe espye
 That sche was nat with childe with that deede
 Thanne wolde sche suffere hym don his fantasie
 Eft sonys & not but onys out of drede 3476

And If sche were with childe² at tylke cast [^{leaf 356, back}
 Namore² schulde he pleyen tylke game [² childe, more,
 Tyl fynally fourty dayis weere past corrected]
 Thanne wolde sche onys suffere hym the same 3480
 Al weere this Onedake wilde or tame
 He gat na moore of hire for thus sche sayde
 It was to wyuys lecherye & schame
 In othir cas 3if men with hem playede 3484

Two sonys bi this Onedake hadde sche
 The whiche sche kepte / in vertu & lettyrure
 But now vn-to oure tale turne we
 I seye so worschepeful a criature 3488
 And wis therewith & large with mesure
 So peynyble in the werre & curteys ek
 Ne moore labour myghte in werre endure
 Was noon thow al this world men schulde seeke 3492

Hyre ryche aray myghte not be told
 As wel in vessel as in hyre clothyng
 Sche was al clad in perre & in golde
 And ek sche lafte not for noon huntyng 3496
 To haue of sundery tungis ful knowyng
 Whan that sche leyseer hadde / & for to entende
 To lerne bokys was hire lykyng
 How sche myghte in wertu hire lyf dyspende 3500

And schortely of this story for to trete
 So doughty was hire husbonde & ek sche
 That they conquerede manye regnys greeke
 In the oryent with manye a fayr cete 3504
 Apertenaut vn-to the mageste
 Of rome & with strong hand held hem faste
 Ne neuere myghte hire fomen don hem fle
 Ay whil 'that Onadakys dayis laste' ^[later correction] 3508

Hyre bataylis who so lyste hem for to reede
 A-gayn soper the kyng & othere moo
 And how that al this proces fyl in deede [leaf 357]
 Why sche conquerede & what tyle therto 3512
 And aftyr of hire myschif & hire wo
 Hov ² that sche was be-segit & I-take [² Hov corrected]
 Let hym vn-to myn maystir Petraik go
 That writ I-nough of this I vndyrtake 3516

Whan Onedake was deed sche myghtyly
 The regnys held & with hire propre hond
 A-gayns hire fois sche faught so crewelly
 That theree nas kyng nor prynce in al that lond 3520
 That he nas glad 3if he that grace fond
 That sche ne wolde vp-on his lond werreye
 With hire they made allyaunce by bond
 To been in pees & leete hire ryde & pleye 3524

The Emperour of rome Claudius
 Ne hym be-forn the ¹Romen Galyeen [1 R corrected] 3528
 Ne durste neuere been so corageous
 Ne noon Ermyn ne non Egipcien 3528
 Ne Surreyn ne non Arabieen
 With-inne the feeldys that durste with hire fyȝt
 Lest that sche wolde hem wit hire handis sleen
 Or with hire meyne puttyn hem to flyght 3532

In kyngis habite wente hire sonys two
 As heyris of hire faderys regnes alle
 And hermanno / & thimalao
 Hire namys were as .persiens. hem calle¹ [1st calde] 3536
 But ay fortune hath in hire hony galle
 This myghty queen may no while endure
 Fortune out of hire regne / made hire falle
 To wrechedenesse & to mysauenture 3540

Aurelyan whan that the gouernaunce Aurelian
 Of Rome cam In-to hire handis tweye
 He schop vp-on his queen to doon vengeance
 And with hise legiounys he tok his weye 3544
 Toward Senobie & schortely for to seye [leaf 257, back]
 He made hire fle / & at the laste hire hente
 And feterede hire & ek hire chyldere tweye
 And wan the lond & hom to rome he wente 3548

A-mongis othere thyngis that he wan
 Hire chaar that was with gold wrought & perre
 This greete roman this aurelian
 Hath with hym lad for that men schulde it se 3552
 By-forn his triumphe walkyth sche
 With gilte cheynys ¹vp-on here nekke hangynge¹
 Corounede was sche as ²after hyre degree [1—1, 2: after corrections]
 And ful of perre chargit hire clothyng 3556

Allas fortune sche that whilom was
 Dredeful to kyngis & to emperourys
 Now gauryth al the peple on hire allas
 And sche that helmede was in starke stourys 3560
 And wan by force tounnys stronge & tourys
 Schal on hire heed now were a vitremyte
 And sche that bar the Ceptre ful of flour
 Schal bere a distaf hire cost forto quyte 3564

[The modern instances which should come here, are at the end of the Tale in this MS]

[Nero.]

Al-thow that Nero were vicious Nero
 As ony feend that lyth ful lowe a-doun 3654
 3it as tellyth vs Switonyus
 This wide world hadde in subieccioun 3656
 Bothe est & west / North & Septemptrioun
 Of Rubees Safferys / & of perlys whyte
 Weere alle hise clothis broudede vp & doun
 For he in gemmys gretly gan delyte 3660

More delicat / more pompous of aray
 Moore proud was neuere emperour than hee
 That ilke cloth that he hadde wered a day
 Aftyr that tyme he wolde it neuere se 3664
 Nettis of gold thred hadde he greet plente
 To fysche in tibre whan hym lyste to pleye
 His lustis were alle lawe in his decree [leaf 356]
 For fortune as his frend / hym wolde obeye 3668

He Rome brende for his delicacie
 The Senatouris he slow vp-on a day
 To heere how that men schulde weepe & crye
 And slow his brothir & by his sistyr lay 3672
 His modyr made he in pytous array
 ffor he hyre wombe slytte to byholde
 Where he conseyuede was so weyle-away
 That he so lytyl of his modyr tolde 3676

No teer out of hise eyen for that syght
 Ne cam but seyde a fayr woman was sche
 Greet wondyr is how that he coude or myghte
 Be domysman of hire deede beaute 3680
 The wyn to bryngyn hym comaundede he
 And drank a-noon / non ofhyr wo he made
 Whan myght is loyned on to creweltee
 Allas to deepe wil the venym wade 3684

In 3outhe a maystyr hadde this Emperour
 To teche hym letterure & curteysye
 For of moralite he was the floure
 As in his tyme but 3if bokis lye 3688
 And whil this Maystyr hadde of hym maystrye
 He makede hym so cunning¹ & so souple [1 ing corrected]
 That long tyme it was er tyranye
 Or ony vice durste on hym oncouple 3692

This Seneca / of which that I deuyse
 By cause that Nero hadde of hym swich drede
 For he from vicis wolde hym ay chastyse
 Discretly by word & not by deede 3696
 Syre wolde he seyn an emperour mot neede
 Been vertyuuous & hatyn tyrannye
 For which he in a bath made hym to bleede
 On bothe hise armys tyl he muste deye 3700

This Nero hadde ek of a custumance [leaf 358, back]
 In 3outhe a-geyn his maystyr for to ryse
 Which aftyrward hym thoughte a greet greuauunce
 Therefore he made hym deye in this wyse 3704
 But natheles this Seneca the wise
 Ches in a bath to deye in this ²manere² [2—3 corrected:]
 Rathere than han a-nothir ³turmantrise³ [2—3 tur, lse corrected]
 And thus hath Nero slayn his maystir deere 3708

Now fil it so that fortune leste no lengere
 The hyghe pryde of nero to cheryce
 For thow that he were strong 3it was sche strengere
 Sche thouzte thus bi god I am to nyce 3712
 To sette a man that is fulfylde of vice
 In high degre & emperour hym calle
 By god out of his seete I wele hym tryce
 Whan he lest wenyth / sonest schal he falle 3716

The peple ros vp on hym on a nygh[t]
 For his defaute & whan he it espyed
 Out of his doris he hath a-non hym dygh[t]
 A-loone & theere he wende a been alyed 3720
 He knokkede faste & ay the more he cryede
 The fastere schettyn they the dorys alle
 Tho wiste he weel he hadde hym self mys gyede
 And wente his wey no lengere durste he calle 3724

The peple cryede / & rumblede vp & doun
 That with hise eris herde he how they seyde
 Where is this false tyraunt this neroun
 For fer almost out of his wit he broyde 3728
 And to hise goddis pitously he preyede
 For socour but it myghte not be-tyde
 For dreded of this hym thoughte he deyede
 And ran in-to a gardyn hym to hyde 3732

And in this gardyn fond he cherlys tweye
 That seetyn by a fyr / greet & reed
 And to these cherlys two he gan to preye [leaf 350]
 To sleen hym & to gyrdyn of his heed 3736
 That to his body whan that he was deed
 Weere no dispyt doon / for his defame
 Hym selue he slow be coude no betere red
 Of whiche fortune lough & hadde game 3740

[*Holofernes.*]

¶ Was neuere a capitayn vndyr a kyng	Olifern
That regnys mo pute in subieccioun	
Ne strongero was in feeld ¹ of alle thyng	[d later]
As in his tyme ne grettere of renoun	3744
Ne moore pompous in high presumpcioun	
Than oloferne whiche fortune ay kyste	
So licorously & ladde hym vp. & down	
Til that his hed was of or that he wyste	3748
Nat only that this world hadde hym in awe	
For lesynge of rychesse or liberte	
But made euery man reneye his lawe	
Nabugodonosor was god seyde hee	3752
Noon othir god schulde adowred bee	
A-geyn this heste no whigh dar trespace	
Saue in Bethulia a strong cete	
Where Eliachym a prest was of that place	3756
But tak keep of the deth of Oloferne	
A-mydde his ost / he dronke lay a nyght	
With-inne his tente / as large as is a berne	
And ȝit for al his pompe & al his myght	3760
Iudith a woman as he lay vp-right	
Slepynge his heed of smot / & from his tente	
Ful prynly sche stal from euery wight	
And with his heed / vn-to hire towr sche wente	3764

[*Antiochus.*]

What nedyth it of kyng antiochus	Antiochus
To telle his hyghe royal mageste	
His hyghe pride hise werkys venymous	
For swich a-nothyr was there non as he	3768
Reede which that he was in machabee	[leaf 359, back]
And reede the proude wordis that he seyde	
And whi he fyl from high prosperite	
And in an hil how wrechedely he deyde	3772

Fortune hadde hym¹ enchauntede so in pride [? MS bys]
 That verrayly he wende he myghte attayne
 On-to the sterris vp-on euery syde
 And in a balaunce weyn eche mountayne 3776
 And alle the flodys of the see restrayne
 And goddis peple hadde he most in hate
 Hem wolde he slen in turnement & in peyne
 Wenynge that god ne myghte his pride a-bate 3780

And for that nychanore & thymothee
 With Iewis were venquischid myghtily
 Vn-to the Iewis swich an hate hadde he
 That he bad ordeyne his char ful hastily 3784
 And swoor & seyde ful dispitously
 Vn-to Ierusalem he wolde eft soone
 To wreeke his yre on it ful crewelly
 But of his purpos he was let ful soone 3788

God for his manace hym so soore smot
 With inuisible wounde ay incurable
 That in hise guttis carveit so & bot
 That hise peynys were Importable 3792
 And certeynly the wreche was resonable
 For manye a manys guttis dede he peyne
 But from his purpos cursede & dampnable
 For al his smert he wolde hym nat restrayne 3796

But bad a-noon aparaylyn his host
 And sodeynly er he was of it war
 God dauntede al his pryde & al his bost
 For he so sore fil out of his Chaar 3800
 That ²it hese² lymys & his skyn to-tar [? — ² corrected]
 So that he neythir myghte go ne ryde
 But in a chaar men a-boute hym bar [leaf 300]
 Al forbrosed bothe bak & syde 3804

The wreche of god hym smoot so crewelly
 That thurgh his body wikkede wormys crepte
 And therwythal he stank so horybely
 That noon of al his meyne that hym kepte 3808
 Whethir so he a-wok or ellis sleepte
 Ne myghte not the styngk of hym endure
 In this myschef he waylede & ek wepte
 And knew god lord of euery cryature 3812

To al his host & to hym self also
 Ful wlatom was the styngk of his carayne
 No man myghte hym beryn to ne fro
 And in this styngk & in this horrible peyne 3816
 He starf ful wrechedely in a mounteyne
 Thus hath this robbour & this homycyde
 That manye a man made to weepe & pleyne
 Swich gwerdoun as bylongith on-to pryde 3820

[*Alexander the Great.*]

¶ The storye of alysaundir is so comune Alisaundyr
 That euery wight that hath discrecioun
 Hath herd al or sumwhat of his fortune
 This wyde world as in conclusioun 3824
 He wan by strenthe / & for his highe renoun
 They weere glad for pees vn-to hym sende
 The pride of man & beste he leyde a-doun
 Wheere so he cam vn-to the worldis ende 3828

Comparisoun myghte neuere ȝit been makyd
 By-twixen hym & a-nothir conquerour
 For al this world for dreed of hym hath quakyd
 He of knyghthod & of fredom flour 3832
 Fortune hym made the heyere of hire honour
 Save wyn & wemen no thyng myȝte aswage
 His hye entente in armys & labour
 So ful he was of lyonyn corage 3836

What preys weere it for hym thow that I tolde [leaf 390, back]
 Of daryus & an hunderede thousent mo
 Of Kyngis Dukis . Erlis . pryncis bolde
 Whiche he conquerede & broughte in-to woo 3840
 I seye as fer as men may ryde or go
 The world was his what schulde I moore deuyse
 For thow I wryte or tolde 3ow euere mo
 Of his knyghthod it myghte not suffyse 3844

Twelue 3eer he regnede / as seyth Maohabee
 Philippis sone of Macidonye he was
 That fyrst was kyng of grece the cuntre
 O worthi gentile Alisaundere allas 3848
 That euere schulde fallyn swich a cas
 Enpoisounnede of thynne owene folk thow weere
 Thyn sys fortune hath turnede in-to aas
 And for the ne wepe sche neuere a teere 3852

Who schal me 3euyn teerys to compleyne
 The deth of gentillesse & of fraunchise
 That al this world weldede in his demeigne
 And 3it hym thoughte it myghte nat suffyse 3856
 So ful was his corage / of high emprise
 Allas ho schal me helpe to endyte
 ffals fortune & poyoun to dispise
 The whiche two of al this wo I wyte 3860

[*Julius Caesar.*]

¶ By wisdam manhod & by greet labour Iulius
 From homble bed to royal mageste
 Vp ros he Iulius the conquerour
 That wau al th¹ occydent bothe lond & se [1^o corrected] 3864
 By strenthe of hand or ellys by trettee
 And vn-to Roome made hem trybutarye
 And sithe the Emperour of rome was he
 Tyl that fortune wex his Aduersarye 3868

¶ O myghty Cesar that in Thessalye	Cesar
A-geyns Pompeynys fadyr thyn in lawe	
That of thorient hadde al the Chialrye	[leaf 261]
As fer as that the day be-gynnyth dawe	3872
Thow thour thyn kyngnod hast hem take & slawe	
Saue fewe folk that with Pompeious fledde	
Thorw which thow puttist al the oryent in awe	
Thanke fortune that so weel the spedde	3876

But now a lytyl while I wele bewayle /	
This Pompeyous this nobele gouvernour	
Of Rome whiche that fleigh at this batayle	
I seye on of his men a fals traytour	3880
His hed of smot to wynnyn hym fauour	
Of Iulius & hym the hed he broughte	
Allas Pompeye of thorient Conquerour	
That fortune vn-to swich a fyn the broughte	3884

To Rome a-gayn repayrith Iulius	
With his tryumphe lauryat ful hye	
But on a tyme Brutus Cassius	
That euere hadde of his estaat enuye	3888
Ful pryuyly hath mad conspiracye	
A-geyns this Iulius in subtyl wise	
And caste the place in whiche he schulde deye	
With boydekynys / as I schal 3ow deuyse	3892

This Iulius to the capitolye wente	
Vp-on a day as he was wone to goon	
And in the Capitolye a-non hym hente	
This false Brutus & ¹ hese othere ffoon ¹ [— ¹ corrected]	3896
And stikede hym with Boydekynys a-noon	
With manye a wounde & thus they leete hym lye	
But neuere gront he at no strok but oon	
Or ellis at two / but if his storye lye	3900

So manly was this Iulyus at herte
 And so weel louyd estatly honeste
 That thow hise dedly woundis soore smerte
 His mental ouer his hepis castyth he 3904
 For non man schulde seen his priuyte [leaf 361, back]
 And as he lay on deyinge in a traunce
 And wiste verrayly that deed he muste bee
 Of honeste zit hadde he remembraunce 3908

Lucan to this storye I recomende
 And to Swetoun & to valerius also
 That of the storye wrytyn word & ende
 How that these greete Conquerourys two 3912
 Fortune was fyrst freend & sithe a foo
 No man ne truste vp-on hire fauour longe
 But haue hire in a-wayte for euere mo
 Witnesse on alle these conquerourys stronge 3916

[*Cresus.*]

¶ This ryche crysus whilom kyng of lyde Crisus
 Of whiche Cresus / Cirus soore hym dradde
 Zit was he caught a-myddre al his pryde
 And to be brent men to the fuyr hym ladde 3920
 But swich a reyn doun from the walkyn shadde
 That slow the fuyr & made hym to escape
 But to be war no grace zit he hadde
 Til fortune on the galwis made hym gape 3924

Whan he escapid was ¹he can nat stente¹ [1—1 corrected]
 For to begynne a newe werre a-gayn
 He wende weel for that fortune hym sente
 Swich hap that he escapid thour the rayn 3928
 That of hise fois he myghte nat been slayn
 And ek a sweuene vp-on a nyght he mette
 Of which he was so proud & ek so fayn
 That in vengeance he al his herte sette 3932

Vp-on a tre he was as that hym thouzte
 Where Iubiter hym wesch bothe bak & syde
 And phebus ek a fayr towayle hym broughte
 To dreye hym with & therfore wex his pryde 3936
 And to his doughtyr which that stod hym besyde
 Which that he knew in high science habounde
 He bad hire telle hym¹ what it signefye [*m corrected*] [*leaf 262*]
 And sche his droem bygan ryght thus expounge 3940

The tre quod sche the galwis is to meene.
 And Iubiter bitokenyth snow & reyn.
 And Phebus with his towayle so cleene.
 Tho been the sunnys stremys for to seyn. 3944
 Thow schat an hangede been fadyr certayn.
 Reyn schal the wasche & sounne schal the dreye.
 Thus warnede hym ful plat & ful pleyn.
 His doughtyr which that callede was Phanye. 3948

An hangede was Cresus the proude kyng
 His royal trone myghte hym not a-vayle
 Tragedy is noon othir manere thyng
 Ne can in syngynge crye ne bewayle 3952
 But for that fortune al day wele assayle
 With vn-war strok the regnys that been proude.
 For whan men trustyth hire thazne wele sche fayle
 And couere hire brighte face with a cloude 3956

[*These & modern instances should follow 'Zenobia,' p. 436 (6-T. 268).]*

[*Peter the Cruel, of Spain.*]

.O. noble .O. worthy Petro glorie of Spayne Petro
 Whom fortune heeld² so highe in mageste [*2 d late*]
 Weel oughtyn men thyn petous deth to compleyne
 Out of thyn land thyn brothir made the fle 3568
 And aftyr at a sege by subtyletee
 Thow were betrayed & lad vn-to his tente
 Wheere as he with his owene hand slow the
 Succedyng in thy regne & in thyn rente 3572

The feld¹ of snow / with the egel¹ of blak¹ therin ^[1 d, g, ak, corrected]
 Caught with the lymerod coloured al with glede. ^[Bertrand du Guesclin.]

He brew this cursedenesse & al this synne

The wekede nest was werkere of this neede 3576

Nought Charles / Olyuer that tok ay hede

Of trouthe & honour but of armoryke ^[Officer de Marney of Britanny.]

Genyloun Olyuer corrupt for meede

Broughte this worthi kyng to swich a bryke 3580

[*Peter of Cyprus.*]

O worthy Petro Kyng of Cipre also ^[leaf 362, back] Petro

That Alisaundere wan by high maystrye

fful manye an hethene wroughtist thow ful wo

Of whiche tweyne oun lyges hadde envie 3584

And for no thyng but for thy chialrye

They in thyn bed han slayn the by the morwe

Thus can fortune / hire wheel gouerne & gye

And out of Loye brynge men to sorwe 3588

[*Bernabo Visconti, of Milan.*]

¶ Of Melan grete ²Bernabo Viscounte ^[? ? MS. ? G]

God of delyt & schorge of lumbardye

Whi schulde I nough thyn Infortune acounte

Syn in estat thow clombyn weere so hye 3592

Thyn brotherys sone that was thyn double allye

ffor he thyn newew was & sone in lawe

With-inne his prysoun made the to deye

But why he how not I that thow weere slawe 3596

[*Ugolino, Count of Pisa.*]

¶ Of the Erl hugelyn of Pyre the langour

Theere may no tunge telle for pite

But lytyl out of Pize stant a tour

In which tour in prysoun put was he 3600

And with hym been hise lyte childere thre

The oldeste skarsely fyue 3eer was of age

Allas fortune it was greet crewelte

Swiche bryddis to putte in swich a cage 3604

Dampnede was he to deye in that prysoun
 For Roger which that bischop was of Pyze
 Hadde on hym mad a fals suggestioun
 Thour the peple gan vp-on hym ryse 3608
 And putty[n] hym in prysoun in swich wyse
 As 3e han herd & mete & drynk he hadde
 So smal that wel anethe it may suffyse
 And there withal it was fful poore & badde 3612

And on a day hy-fel that in that hour
 Whan that his meete / wont was to been brought [Leaves 269-4, Camb. MS, are cut out; till l. 3653.]
 [The Ieylour shet þe dores of þe toure [Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 200]
 he herd it wele but he sawe it nouȝt 3616
 As in hys herte a-none þere felle a þouȝt
 þat þei for hungre wolde done hem dye
 Alas. quod he Alas þat I was wrouȝt
 þere-with þe teeres felle fro þe eye 3620

His ȝonge sonne þre ȝeere was of age
 Vnto hym said fader why do ȝe wepe
 Whan wille þe Gaylour brynge our potage
 Is þere no morselle brede þat ȝe do kepe 3624
 I am so hongerye þat I may not slepe
 Nowe wolde god þat I myȝte slepen euere
 [Than schulde non hungre in my wombe crepe. [Harl. 1758, leaf 118, bk]
 Ther/ is/ nothyng saue breed that me were leuyr./] 3628

Thys day by day þe childe gan to crye [Sloane MS 1685, on l' 200]
 Tylt in hys ffadere barme a doune hit lay
 And said fadir/ fare wele I mot deye
 And kyste hys fader and deyde þe same daye 3632
 And whan hys woofulle fadere did hym saye
 ffor. woo hys armes too he gan to byte
 And sayde fortune Alas and weylaway
 þi. false wyles my woo I may wyte 3636

His children þat fortune hungry was [Sloane MS 1065]

þat he hys armes gnewe and not for woo

And said fader' do not so Alas .

But rathere ete þe flesshe vpon vs twoo 3640

Oure . flesh þou yaveste vs take oure flesshe vs fro .

And ete y-nouȝe riȝt þus to hym þei saide [leaf 219, back]

And after þat with-In a day or two

þei leyde hem doune in his lappe & dyed 3644

Hym selfe dispeyred eke for hunger starfe

Thus endid ys þe myȝti Erle of pyse

fro hyeȝe estate fortune fro hym carf

Of þis Tregedye hit ouȝt ynouȝe suffice 3648

ho · so wylle here hit/ in a lenger wyse

Redeth þe grete poete of Itayle

þat/ hyȝt/ Daunte for he can hit deuysen 3651

fro poynte to poynte not oo worde wille he fayle] [Sloane extract ends.]

[Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 213, back.]

[Here begynneth þe Prolooge of þe Nunne Preoste]

Hoo quod / þe knyzt gode sir / no more of thys
 þat 3e han sayde ys riȝt ynoweȝ y-wys.
 And mochel more for litel hevynesse
 ys ryȝt ynouȝe to mechel folk' as I gesse 3960
 I sey for me hit ys a grete disease
 Where as men hañ beñ in grete helth & eese [leaf 214]
 To herene of her/ sodeynñ fañ Alas
 And þe Contrarye is . grete Ioy & solace 3964
 And whan a man hath beñ in pore estate
 And clymbith vþ and wexeth fortunate
 And þere abydeth in prosperite
 Suche thynges ys gladsom as hit thynketh me 3968
 And þouȝe suche thynges were goodely forto telle
 // Ye . quod/ oure hoost by Seynt Poules belle
 Ye say riȝt sothe þis Monke clappeth loude
 he . spake howe fortune couered with a cloude 3972
 I note neuere what & also of a treaide
 Ryȝt/ nowe ye herd & parde no remedie
 hit ys forto be-wayle & complayne .
 þat þat ys done and als hit ys a payne 3976
 As ye haue sayd/ to here of/ hevynesse
 Sir/ Monke no more of þis so god you blesse
 Your/ tale annoyeth al þis companye
 Suche talkynge ys not worth a butter-flyeȝ 3980
 And þere-in ys . no sporte nor/ no game
 Where-fore Sir/ Monke doun Piers by your' name
 I pray you hertely telle vs som what elles
 ffor siker' nere clynkynges of/ your' belles 3984

CAMBRIDGE 499 (G-T. 281) [this page, Sloane 1685]

þat in your' brideht hongeth on euery sydo. [Sloane MS 1085]
 By heuen kynge þat for vs alle dyede
 I shalle for þis falle down for slepe
 Al þouze þe sloweȝ hade neuere be so depe 3988
 þan hathi youre tale ben tolde in vayne
 ffor certeynly as þese clerkes sayne
 Where as a man may han none audience
 Nouȝt helpeth to tellen hys sentence 3992
 And wele I woote þe substaunce ys in me
 yf ony thyng shal wele reportid be
 Sir/ saye some what of huntynge I you praye
 Nay quod / þe Monke I haue no luste to playe 3996
 Nowe let a noȝer' telle as I haue tolde
 þan spake our Oste with rude speche and bolde [leaf 214, back]
 And sayd vnto þe Nonnes Preost a-none
 Come nere Sir Preost comme nere sir Iohn 4000
 Telle vs suche thenges as may our' hertes glade
 Be mery þouze þou ryde vpon A Iade.
 þat/ þei þine hors. be foul or lene
 Yf/ he wille serve þe recke þe nouȝt/ a bene 4004
 looke þat þine hert/ be mery euere mo ·
 ȝis. hoste [q]uod he so mote I ryde or go ·
 But/ I be mery y-wys I wille be blamed
 And riȝt/ a-none he hathe hys tale y-tamed · 4008
 And þus he sayde to vs euereichon
 Thys swete preost/ þis gode man Sir/ Iohn

Here endeth þe Prologge

[*Sloane MS 1685, on leaf 214, back.*]

& begynneth þe tale

A pore wydowe some dele stope in age
 Was whilom dwellynge in a narow cotage 4012
 Be-sydes a grove stondynge in a dale
 Thys wydow of whiche I telle you my tale
 Syþens þilke day þat she was laste a wyfe
 In pacience ladde a fulle symple lyf 4016
 ffor lytelle was hir/ catelle & hir rent
 By husbondry of suche þat god hir/ sent
 Sche fondē hir/ self / & eke hir douȝtren two
 Thre large sowes hade she & no moo 4020
 Thre kyne & eke a shepe þat hiȝt/ mal
 fful soty was hir/ boure and eke hir / haȝ
 In whiche she ete many a sclender mele
 Of/ poynaunte sawce hir nedeth nevers a dele 4024
 No deynte Morseth passed hir/ throote
 hir diete was accordaunt to hir coote
 Replecion ne made her neuere seke
 A-tempre dyete was alle hir/ physike 4028
 And excercise & hert sufficiunce.
 þe gowte let hir/ no thyng to daunce
 Ne poplexie ne shente nouȝt hir/ heede
 Ne wyne dronke she neiþer whyte nor reede 4032
 Her bord was served moste with white & blake [*leaf 215*]
 Mylke and browne brede in whiche she fonde no lake
 Seynde bakon and some tyme an eye or tweio
 ffor she was as hit were a manere of a deis 4036
 A gardeyne she hade enclosed alle aboute
 With stykes and a drye dyche with-oute
 In whiche she hade a Cok/ þat hiȝt Chauntelere
 In alle þe londe of Crawynge was hys peere 4040

CAMBRIDGE 501 (6-T. 283) [this page, Sloane 1685]

hys voice was murer þan þe murye orgōn [Sloane MS 1685]

On masse dayes þat in þe Chirche goōn

Wele sykerere was þe crowynge in hys logg

Then ys a Clok /. or an Abbey orlogge 4044

Be nature he knewe eche ascencioun

Of equynoxiol of þilke toun

ffor when degrees xv were discended

þan knewe he þat it myȝt not be amendid] [Sloane extract ends]

His colour was reddere than the fyne coral [Camb. Univ. MS
Gg. 4. 27, leaf 365]

And batayled as it were a castel wal

His byl was blak / and as the Iet it schoon

Like asure weere hise leggis & hise toon 4052

Hise naylis whittere / than the lylle flour

And lik the burnede gold was his colour

This gentil kok hadde in his gouernaunce

Seuene hennys for to doon al his plesaunce 4056

Whiche weere hise susterys & hise paramouris

And wondyr lyk to hym of colourys

Of whiche the fayreste hewyd on hire throte

Was clepid fayre dameselle Pertelote 4060

Curteys sche was / discreet & debonayre

And compaynable & bar hire self so fayre

Syn thilke day that sche was seue ȝeer old

That trewely sche hath the herte in hold 4064

Of Chauntecleer lokyn in euery lith

He louede hym so that weel was hym therwith

But swich a Ioye it was to heere hem synge

Whan that the bryghte sune be-gan to sprynge 4068

With sweete a-cord myn lef is faryn on londe

ffor thilke tyme as I haue vnderstonde

Bestis & bryddis coude speke & synge

And so be-fel that in a dawenyngge 4072

As Chauntecleer a-mong hise wyuys alle

Sat on his perche that was in an halle

And next hym sat Dame Pertelote

This Chauntecleer gan gronyn in his throte 4076

As man that in his drem is drechid sore
 And whan that pertelote thus herde hym roore
 Sche was a-gast & seyde herte deere
 What eylyth 3ow to groone in this maneere 4080
 3e been a verray slepere fy for schame
 And he answerde thus / & seide Madame
 I preye 3ow that 3e take it nat at gref
 By god me mette I was in swich myschef 4084
 Rygh now that 3it myn herte is score afrit
 Now god quod he myn sweuene reche a-rygh[t]
 And kepe myn body out of foul prysoun (leaf 365, back)
 Me mette how that I romede vp & doun 4088
 With-inne oure 3erd where that I saw a beste
 Was lik an hound & wolde han mad a-reste
 Vp-on myn body & anhad me deed
 His colour was be-twixe 3elw & reed 4092
 And typpid was his tayl & bothe hise eris
 With blak onlyk the remenaunt of hise heris
 His snoute smal with glowynge eyen tweye
 3it for his lok for fer almost I deye 4096
 This causede me myn gronyng douteles
 Avoy quod sche fy on 3ow herteles
 Allas quod sche for by that god a-boue
 Now han 3e lost myn herte & al myn loue 4100
 I can nat loue a coward by myn feyth
 ffor certys what so any woman seyth
 We alle desyryn 3if it myghte be
 To han husbondis hardy wyse & fre 4104
 And secre / & no nygard ne no fool
 Ne hym that is agast of euery tool
 Ne noon auantour by that god a-boue
 How durste 3e seyn for schame on to 3oure loue 4108
 That any thyng myghte make 3ow a-feryd
 Han 3e no manys herte & han a berd
 Allas & cunne 3e been agast of sweuenys
 No thyng god wot but vanite in sweuen is 4112

Sweuenys engenderyn / of repleciounys
 And ofte of fume & of complexiounys
 Whanne humouris been to haboundaunt in a wight
 Sertis this drem whiche 3e han met to nyght 4110
 Comyth of the groete superfluite
 Of 3oure reede colera parde
 Whiche causyn folk to dredyn in here dremys
 Of arwis & of fyr with rede lemys 4120
 Of rede bestis that they wele hym byte
 Of contek & of whelpis greete & lite
 Righ as the humour of malencolye
 Causith ful manye a man in slep to crye 4124
 ffor feer of blake beris / or of bolys blake [leaf 308]
 Or ellis blake deuyllis wole hem take
 Of othere humouris coude I telle also
 That werkyn manye a man in sleep ful wo 4128
 But I wele passe as lyghtely as I can
 To Catoun which that was so wis a man
 Seyde he nat thus ne do no fors of dremys *Sompnia ne cures*
 Now sire quod sche whan we flye from the bemys 4132
 ffor godis loue tak sum laxatyf
 Vp peril of myn soule & of myn lyf
 I conseyle 3ow the beste I wele nat lye
 That bothe of colere & of malencolye 4136
 3e porge 3ow & for 3e schal nat tarye
 Thow in this touz is non apotecarye
 I schal myn self to erbis techyn 3ow
 That schul been for 3oure hele & for 3oure prow 4140
 And in oure 3erd two erbis schal I fynde
 The whiche han of here propirte by kynde
 To porge 3ow be-nethe & ek a-bove
 ffor-3et nat this for godis owene lowe 4144
 3e been ful colerik of complexioun
 Ware the sunne in his ascencioun
 Ne fynde 3ow nat replet / of humouris hoote
 ffor yef he do / I dar leye a grote 4148.

That 3e schul han a feuere terciane
 Or an agu that may been 3oure bane
 A day or two 3e schul haue digestivis
 Of wermys er 3e take 3oure laxatyues 4152
 Of lauriolē sentaurye / & fumeteere
 Or ellis of Elebre that growith theere
 Of Catapuce / or of Gattris beryis
 Or Erbe Iue that growith in oure 3erd theere merye is
 Pikke hem vp righ as they growe & ete hem in 4157
 Be merye husbonde for 3oure fadyr kyn
 Dredyth no dreem I can seye 3ow no moore
 Madame quod he grauntt mercy of 3oure lore 4160
 But natheles as touchith Daun Catoun
 That hath of wisdam swich a greet renoun
 Thow that he bad no dremys for to dreede [leaf 306, back]
 By god men may in olde bokis rede 4164
 Of manye a man moore of autorite
 Than euere catoun was so mote I the
 That al the reuers seyn of his sentence
 And han weel foundyn by experience 4168
 That dremys been signyficiaciounys
 As wel of ioye as of tribulaciounys
 That folk enduryn in this lyf present
 Theree nedyth of this makyn non argument 4172
 The verray preue schewith it in dede
 ¶ Some of the gretteste autourys as men reede Naracie
 Seyth thus that to felawys wente
 On pilgrymage with a ful good ente[n]te 4176
 And happede so they comyn in a toun
 Where as theree was swich a congregacioun
 Of peple & ek so streyt of herbigage
 That they ne founde as meche as a cotage 4180
 In whiche they myghe bothe I-loggede be
 Wherefore they musten of necescite
 As for that nyght departyn cumpaynye
 And eche of hem goth to his ostellerye 4184

And tok his logyng as it wolde falle
 That on of hem was logit in a stalle
 ffer in a 3erd with oxin of the plough
 That othir man was logid weel I-nough 4188
 As was his auenture / or his fortune
 That vs gouernyth alle as in comune
 And so be-fel that longe er it was day
 This man mette in his bed there as he lay 4192
 How that his felawe gan vp-on hym calle
 And seyde allas for in an oxis stalle
 This nyght I schal been morderid there I lye
 Now help me deere brotyr er I deye . 4196
 In alle haste come to me he seyde
 This man out of his slep for fer abreyde
 And whan that he was wakenede of his slep
 He turnede hym & tok of this no keep 4200
 Hym thoughte his dreem nas but a vanyte [leaf 357]
 Thus twyis in his slepyng dremede he
 And at the thredde tyme / 3it his felawe
 Cam as hym thoughte / & seyde I am now slawe 4204
 Byhold mynne bloody woundis deepe & wyde
 A-ris vp erly in the morwe tyde
 And at the west gate / of the toun quod he
 A carteful of donge / there thu schat se 4208
 In wich myn body is hid ful pryuyly
 Do thilke carte a-reste boldly
 Myn gold causede myn mordere certeyn
 And tolde hym euery poynt how he was slayn 4212
 With a wol pitous face pale of hewe
 And truste weel this drem he fond ful trewe
 ffor on the morwe as sone as it was day
 To his felawe he tok te nexte way 4216
 And whan that he cam to his oxis stalle
 Aftyr his felawe he be-gan to calle
 ¶ The hosteleer answerede hym a-non
 And seyde sere 3oure felawe is a-goon 4220

As sone as day he wente out of the toun
 This man gan fallyn in suspecioun
 Remembrynge hym on the dremys that he mette
 And forth he goth no lengere wolde he lette 4224
 Vn-to the Westgate of the toun & fond
 A dong' carte wente as it weere to dunge lond
 That was a-rayed in that same wyse
 As 3e han herd the dede man deuyse 4228
 And with an hardy herte he gan to crye
 Vengeaunce & Iustise of this felonye
 Myn felawe morderede is this same nyght
 And in this carte heere he lyth gapyng vp-ryght 4232
 I crye out on the mynystis quod he
 That schulde kepe & rewele this cete
 Harrowe allas here lyth myn felawe slayn
 What schulde I moore vnto this tale sayn 4236
 The peple out starte & caste the carte to grounde
 And in the myddyl of the donge they founde
 The dede man that morderede was al newe [leaf 267, back]
 O blysfyl god that art so Iuste & trewe 4240
 Lo how that thow bewreyis mordre alway
 Mordre wele out that se we day be day
 Mordre is so wlatome & abhomynable
 To god that is so Iust & resonable 4244
 That he ne wele not suffere that it helid be
 Thow it abyde a 3eer or two or thre
 Mordre wele out this myn conclusioun
 And ryght a-noon mynyste of that toun 4248
 Han hent the cartere & so sore hym pynyd
 And ek the hosteller so soore engyned
 That they be-knewe here wikkedenesse a-non
 And weere an hangede by the nekke boon 4252
 Here may men seen that dremys been to drede
 ¶ And certis in the same bok I reede
 Rygh in the nexte chapitere aftr this
 I gabbe not so haue I ioie or blys 4256

Two men that wolde a passed ouyr the see
 ffor certeyn cause in-to a fer cuntre
 If that the wynd ne hadde been contrarye
 That made hem in a cete for to tarye 4260
 That stod ful merye vp-on an hauene syde
 But on a day a-geyn the euetyde
 The wynd gan schaunge & blew rygh as hem leste
 Iolyf & glad they wente to here reste 4264
 And castyn hem ful erly for to sayle
 But herkenyth to that on man fyl a gret meruayle
 That on of hem in slepyng as he lay
 Hym mette a wondyr drem a-geyn the day 4268
 Hym though[t]e a man stod bi his bedys side
 And hym comaunded that he schulde a-byde
 And seyde hym thus ȝif thow to morwe wende
 Thow schat ben dreynk / myn tale is at an ende 4272
 He wok & tolde / his felawe what he mette
 And preyede hym his viage for to lette
 As for that day he preyede hym for to a-bide
 His felawe that lay bi his bedys syde 4276
 Gan for to lauhe & skornde hym ful faste [leaf 308]
 No drem quod he may so myn herte agaste
 That I wele lette for to do myne thyngis
 I sette not a straw / by thynne dremyngis 4280
 ffor dremys been but uanyteis & Iapis
 Men dreme al day of oulis & of apis
 And of manye a mase there withal
 Men dreme of thyng that neuere was ne schal 4284
 But sithe I se that thow wild here a-byde
 And thus for slouthen / wilfully thyn tyde
 God wot it rewith me / & hane good day
 And thus he tok his leue & wente his way 4288
 But er that he hadde half his cours I-seyled
 Not I not why / ne what myschaunce it eyled
 But casewelly / the schipis boteme it rente
 And schip & man vndyr the watyr wente 4292

In sight of othere schepis besyde
 That with hem seyled at the morwe tyde
 And therefore fayre pertelote so deere
 By sweche ensaumplis olde mayst thow leere 4296
 That no man schulde been so recheles
 Of dremys for I seye the douteles
 That manye a drem / ful soore is for to drede
 Lo in the lyf of seynt kenelm I reede 4300
 That was kenulphus sone the noble kyng
 Of Merturyke how kenelm mette a thyng
 A lite er he was mordered on a day
 His morderer in his auysoun he say 4304
 His noryce hym expoungnede euerydel
 His sweuene / & bad hym / for to keepe hym weel
 from tresoun but he was but seuene 3eer old
 And therefore lytil taale hath he told 4308
 Of any drem so holy was his herte
 By god I hadde leuere than myn scherte
 That 3e hadde rad his legende as haue I
 Dame pertelote I seye 3ow trewely 4312
 Matrobeus that wret thauiysioun
 In Affryk of the worthi Ciprioun
 Affermyth dremys & seyth that they been [leaf 308, back]
 Warnynge of thyngis that men aftryr seen 4316
 And ferthere more I prey 3ow lokyth weel
 In the olde testament of danyel
 3if he helde dremys ony vanyte
 Redyth ek of Iosep & there 3e schul se 4320
 Wheere dremys ben sumtyme I seye nat alle
 Warnynge of thyngis that schul aftryr falle
 Loke of Egip the kyng daun pharao
 His bakere & his boteler also 4324
 Wheere they ne feltyn non effect in dremys
 Who so wele seke actis of sundery remys
 May reede of dremys manye a sundery thyng
 Lo Cresus that was of lide kyng 4328

Mette he nat how that he sat vp-on a tre
 Whiche signefyed anhangid schulde bee
 Lo heere Andromatha ectoris wif
 That day that Ector schulde lese his lyf 4332
 Sche dremede on the same nyght by-foren
 How that the lyf of Ector schulde been loryn
 3if thilke day he wente in-to batayle
 Sche warnede hym but it myghte nat auayle 4336
 He wente for to fyghte netheles
 But he was slayn a-noon of Achilles
 But tylke tale is al to long to telle
 And ek it is nygh day I may nat dwelle 4340
 Certeynly I seye as for conclusioun
 That I schal han of this auysioun
 Aduersite / & I seye ferthere-moore
 That I ne telle of laxatyus no store 4344
 ffor they been venimes I wot it weel
 I hem defye I loue hem neuere a deel
 Now lat vs speke of myrthe & stynte al this
 Madame pertelote so haue I blys 4348
 Of on thyng god hath sent me large grace
 ffor whanne I se the beute in 3oure face
 3e been so skarlet red aboute 3oure eyen
 It makyth al myn dred / for to deyen 4352
 ffor al so sekyr as In principio [leaf 350r]
 Mulier est homin[i]s confusio
 Madame the sentence of this latyn is
 Woman is manys loye & al his blys 4356
 ffor whan I fele a nyght 3oure-softe syde
 Al be it that I may nat on 3ow ryde
 ffor that oure perche is mad so narw allas
 I am so ful of loye & of solas 4360
 That I defye bothe sweuene & drem
 And with th[a]t word he fleydoun from the beam
 ffor it was day & ek hise hennys alle
 And with a chuk he gan hem for to culle 4364

for he hadde foundyn a corn lay in the 3erd
 Royal he was he nas no moore aferyd
 He feterede Pertelote twenty tyme
 And trad as ofte er it was pryme 4368
 He lokyth as it weere a grym lyoun
 And on hise tois he romyth vp & doun
 Hym deynyth nat to sette hise feet to grounde
 He chukkith whan he hath a corn I-founde 4372
 And to hym rennyth thanne hise wyuys alle
 Thus royal as a prynce is in an halle
 Leue I this chauntecleer in his pasture
 And aftyr wele I telle his auenture 4376
 ¶ Whan that the monythe / in which that the world began
 That high[t]e March / whan god ferst makede man
 Was compleet & passede weere also
 Syn March bygan .30. dayis & two 4380
 By-fel that chauntecleer in al his pryde
 His seuene wyuys walkynge hym by-syde
 Caste vp hire eyen to the bryghte sunne
 That in the signe of taurus hadde I-rounne 4384
 Twenty degreis & on & sumwhat moore
 And knew by kynde & by noon othir lore
 That It was pryme & krew with b[l]ysful steuene
 The sunne on heye is clombyn vp on heuene 4388
 .90. degreis & on & moore I-wis
 Madame pertelote myn wordelis blys
 Herkenyth these blysfyl brydis how they synge [leaf 309, back]
 And se the frosche flouris how they sprynge 4392
 ful is myn herte of reuel & solas
 But sodeynly hym fel a sorweful cas
 for euere the lattere ende of Ioye is wo
 God wot that wordely ioye / is soone ago 4396
 And gif a retor coude fayre endyte
 He in a cronicle sauely myghte it wryte
 As for a souereyn notabilyte
 Now every wise man now herkene me 4400

This storye is also trewe I vndyrtake
 As Is the bok of launcelot de lake
 That women heelde in ful greet reuerence
 Now wele I turne a-geyn to myn sentence 4404
 A col fox ful of sly Iniquite
 That in the groue hadde dwelled 3eris thre
 By hygh Imaginacioun for-cast
 The same nyght thour-out the hegis brast 4408
 In-to the 3erd there chauntecleer the fayre
 Was wont & ek hise wyuys to repayre
 And In a bed of wortis styлле he lay
 Til it was passed onderen of the day 4412
 Waytynge his tyme on Chauntecleer to falle
 As gladly doon these homycidis alle
 That in a-wayt liggyn to morderen men
 O false morderour lurkyng in thyn den 4416
 O newe Scariot / newe Genysoun
 ffalse dissimylour / O Grek Synoun
 That broughtist Troye al vttyrly to sorwe
 O Chauntecheer a-cursed be that morwe 4420
 That thow in-to that 3erd / flaw from the bemys
 Thow weere ful weel I-warnede be thynne dremys
 That thilke day was perlyous to the
 But what that god forwot mot nedis be 4424
 Aftyr the opynioun of certeyn clerkis
 Witnesse on hym that ony perfyт clerk is
 That in scole is greet altercacioun
 In this matiere & greet disputacioun 4428
 And han been of an hunderede thousent men [leaf 270]
 But I can not butte it to the breen
 As can the holy doctour Augustyn
 Or Boece or the bisshop Bradwardyn 4432
 Whethir that goddys worthi forwetyng
 Streynyth me nedely for to do that thyng
 Needely clepe I symple necescite
 Or ellis fre choys be graunted me 4436

To do that same thyng or do it not
 Thow god fore-wot it er that I was wrought
 Or ȝif his wetyng streynyth neuere a deel
 But by necescite condiciounel 4440
 I wele not han to done of swich mateere
 Myn tale is of a cok as ȝe may here
 That tok his conseil of his wif with sorwe
 To walkyn in the ȝerd vp-on that morwe 4444
 That he hadde met the drem that I ȝow tolde
 Womenys conseilis been ful oftyn colde
 Womenys conseilis broughte vs ferst to woo
 And made Adam from paradys to go 4448
 Theree as he was ful merye & weel at ese
 But for I not to whom I myghte displese
 ȝif I conseil of women wolde blame
 Passe ouyr for I seyde it in myn game 4452
 Reede autouris wheree they trete of sweche matiere
 And what they sey / of women / ȝe may here
 These been the cokkis wordis & nat myne
 I can noon harm on no woman deuyne 4456
 ffayre in the sond to bathe hire meryely
 Lyth Pertelote & alle hire susteryn by
 A-geyn the sunne & Chauntecleer so free
 Song meryere than the mermeydyn in the se 4460
 ffor physiologus seyth sekyrly
 How that they syngyn weel & meryely
 And so be-fel that as he caste his yen
 A-mong the wortis on a botyrflye 4464
 He was war of this fox that lay ful lowe
 No thyng ne lyste hym thanne for to crowe
 But criede a-noon kok kok & vp he styrted [leaf 270, back]
 As man that was afrayed in his herte 4468
 ffor naturelly / a beste desirith fle
 ffrom his contrarye / ȝif he myghte it se
 Thow he neuere erst hadde sey it with his Iye
 ¶ This chauntecleer whan he gan hym espye 4472

He wolde a fled but that the fox a-noon
 Seyde gentyl sire / allas whidyr wole 3e goon
 Be 3e afrayed of me that am 3oure freend
 Now certys I were werse than a feend 4476
 3yf I to 3ow harm or velenye
 I am nat come 3oure conseyl for tespie
 But trewely the cause of myn comyng
 Was only for to herkene how that 3e synge 4480
 ffor trewely 3e han so merie a steuene
 As ony aungel hath that is in heuene
 Therewith 3e han In musik moore felyng
 Than hadde. boece. or ony that can syng 4484
 Myn lord 3oure fadyr god his soule blys
 And ek 3oure modyr of hire gentilles
 Han in myn hous I-been to myn greete ese
 But certys syre ful fayn wolde I 3ow pleese 4488
 ¶ But for men speke of syngyng I wil seye
 So mote I broukyn weel myn eyen tweye
 Saue 3ow I herde neuere man so synge
 As dede 3oure fadyr in the morwenyng 4492
 Certis it was of herte al that he song
 And for to make his voys the moore strong
 He wolde peyne hym that with bothe hise eyen
 He muste wynke so loude he muste cryen 4496
 And stondyn on his typton therewithal
 And streche forth his nekke long & smal
 And ek he was of swich discrecyoun
 That there was no man in no regioun 4500
 That hym in song or wisdam myghte passe
 I haue weel red in daun burnel the Asse
 A-mong hise vers how that ther was a kok
 ffor a prestis sone 3af hym a knok 4504
 Vp-on his leg whil he was 3ond & nyce [leaf 571]
 He made hym for to lese his benefice
 But certeyn there ne is no comparisoun
 By-twixe the wisdom. & discrecioun 4508

Of þoure fadyr & of his subtiltee
 Now syngith sere for seynte charite
 Lat se cunne þe þoure fadyr countyrfete
 This chauntecleer hise wyngis gan to beete 4512
 As man that coude his tresoun nat aspye
 So was he rauyschid with his flaterye
 ¶ Allas þe lordis manye a flaterour
 Is in þoure court & manye a losengeour 4516
 That plesen þow weel more be myn fayth
 Than he that sothfastnesse vn to þow sayth
 Redyth ecclesiaste of flaterye
 Bethwar þe lordis of hire trecherye 4520
 This Chauntecleer stood hye vp-on hise tois
 Strechyng his neke & held his eyen clos
 And gan to crowe loude for the nonys
 And daun Ruseh the fox styrt vp at at anys 4524
 And by the garget hente Chauntecleer
 And on his bak to the wode hym beer
 ffor þit there ne was no man that hym sewid
 O destene that mayst nat been eschewid 4528
 Allas that Chauntecleer fley from the bemys
 Allas his wyf ne roughete nat of dremys
 And on a fryday fil al this myschaunce
 O venus that art goddesse of plesaunce 4532
 Syn that thyn seruauant was this chau[n]tecleer
 And in thyn seruyse dede al his power
 Moore for delyt than world to multeplye
 Why woldist tow suffere hym on thyn day to deye 4536
 O ganfryd deere maystyr souereyn
 That whan thyn worthy kyng Richard was slayn
 With schot compleynedist his deth so soore
 Whi ne hadde I-nough thyn centence & thyn loore 4540
 The fryday for to chide as dedyn þe
 ffor on a fryday sothly slayn was he
 Thanne wolde I schewyn how that I coude pleyne [leaf 571, back]
 ffor Chauntecleeres dreede & for his peyne 4544

¶ Certis swich cry ne lamentacioun
 Was neuere of ladijs mad whan ylyoun
 Was wone & Pirrus with his streyte swerd
 Whan that he hadde hent kyng priame bi the berd 4548
 And slayn hym as seyth vs Enidos
 As madyn alle the hennys in the cloos
 Whan they hadde of Chauntecler the syght
 But souereynly dame Pertelote shryght 4552
 fful loudere than dede Hasdrubalis wyf
 Whan that hire husbonde hadde y-lost his lyf
 And that the Romaynys haddyn brent Cartage
 Sche was so ful of turnement & of rage 4556
 That wilfully in-to the feer sche sterte
 And brende hire seluyn with a stedefaste herte
 O woful hennys ryght so cryedyn 3e
 As whan that nero brende the Cete 4560
 Of Rome cryedyn / Senatouris wyuys
 ffor that here husbondys lostyn alle here lyuys
 With-outyn gylt this Nero hath hem slayn
 Now wole I turne to myn tale agayn 4564
 ¶ The sely wedewe & ek here doughteryn two
 Herdyn these hennys crye & makyn wo
 And out at the dorys stirte they a-non
 And seyen the fox toward the groue gon 4568
 And bar vp-on his bak the Cok away
 And cryedyn out harow & weyleaway
 .Ha. ha. the fox & after hym they ran
 And ek with stonys many a-nothir man 4572
 Ran Colle oure doge & talbot & Garland
 And Malkyn with a distaf in hire hand
 Ran cow & Calf & ek the verray hoggis
 ffor-fered for berkynge of the doggis 4576
 And schoutyng of the men & women ek
 They ronne so they thoute here herte brek
 They zelledyn as fendis doon in helle
 The dokis cryedyn as men wolde hem quelle

[Leaf 372 of the
 Cambr. MS is
 cut out.]

[Out of the hyues/ come the swarme of bees/. [Harl. 1758, on l^y 199]

The gees/ for feer/ flowyn ouyr/ the trees/.

So hidous/ was/ the nois/ a benedicite.

Certis/ he Iak/ strawe & his/ meyne. 4584

Ne made neuyr/ schoutis/ half so schrille.

When that thei wolde anye flemynge kille.

As/ that/ ilke daie was/ made vp-on the ffox. [leaf 199]

Of/ bras/ thei broght bemes/ & of box. 4588

Of horn & boon in whiche thei poupid.

And ther with aH/ thei schrichid & schoutid.

It semyd as/ that/ heuyn schulde falle.

Now good men I prairie you herkenyth alle. 4592

Lo how fortune turneth sodenlye.

The hope & eke pride of her/ enuye.

This/ Cok/ that laie vp on the ffox bak.

In aH his/ drede vn-to the ffox spak/. 4596

And seide sir/ if/ I were as/ ye.

Yet schulde I seie as/ wis/ god helpe me.

Turne a-yen ye proude chirles/ alle.

A verry pestilence vp-on you falle. 4600

Now am I come vn-to this/ Wode side.

Maugre your/ heed the Cok schaff/ here a-bide.

I woh/ hym ete in feyth & that a-non.

The ffox answerid in feith it schaff be don. 4604

And he spak/ that word aH/ sodenly.

This Cok brak/ fro his/ mouthe delyuerly.

And hie vp on a tre he flewe a non.

And when the ffox sawe that/ he was/ gon. 4608

Alas quod he O chauntecler/ allas/.

I haue quod he don to you trespass/.

In as/ meche as/ I made you a-ferde.

When I you hent & broght out/ of/ the yerde. 4612

But sir/ I dide it noght in no wicked entent/.

Cometh downe & I schaff/ telle you what I ment.

I schaff/ seie soth so god helpe me so.

Naie than quod he I schrewe vs/ bothe two. 4616

CAMBRIDGE 517 (6-T 299) [this page, Harl. 1758]

And first/ I schrewe my self bothe blood & bones/. [Harl. 1758]
 If thou be-gile me ofter/ than ones.
 Thou schalt/ no more with thi flaterie.
 Do me syng^r & wynke with myn ye. 4620
 ffor he that wyuketh when he schulde se.
 As/ wisly god lete hym neuyr/ the.
 Naie *quod* the ffox god yeue hym myschaunce.
 That is/ so vndiscrete of gouernaunce. 4624
 That iangleth when he schulde haue pees/.
 Lo suche is/ for to be recheles/.
 And negligent/ & trusteth on flaterie.
 But ye that/ holdyn this/ folie. 4628
 As/ of a ffox of a Cok/ & of an hen.
 Taketh the moralite good men.
 ffor seynt Poule seith aH that writen is/.
 To our/ doctryne it is/ writen y-wis/. 4632
 Taketh the fruyt & letith the chaf^r be stille/.
 Now good god if it be thi wille. [leaf 200]
 As/ seith my lorde so make vs/ alle good men.
 And bryng^r vs/ alle to his/ hye blis/ amen. 4636

Here endith the/ tale/ of the Nonnes/ Preest/. [Harl. 1758
 extract
 ends.]

[The Manciple's Prologue follows in Harl. 1758, after a
 space of 28 lines in the middle of page 200.]

GROUP G. FRAGMENT VIII.

§ 1. THE SECOND NUN'S TALE.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

[THE PROEM.]

[Here begynneth the Prologe of the Secound Nunne
[Sloane 1685, on f^o 157, bk: no breaks
between the stanzas in Sloane.]

(1)

The mynystre of the Noryce vnto vices. 1
whiche that men clepen in englys ydylnesse
The portere of the gate ys of delycles
To eschewe and by hir contraryry hym oppresse 4
that ys to say by lefefulle besynesse [leaf 158]
wele ouȝte we doȝn oure entent
leste that the fende þoruȝe ydelnesse vs hent 7

(2)

for he that with his þousand cordes aliȝ 8
Contynuelly vs awayteth to be-clappe
þan he may man in ydelnes aspye
he can so liztly cacche hym in his trappe 11
Tylle that a man be hent riȝt/ by the lappe
he nys not ware the fende haȝe hym in honde
wele ouȝt vs worche and ydelnesse with stonde] [Sloane 1685
extract stops]

(3)

And thow men dreddyn neuere for to deyin [Camb. MS Gg. 4. 27,
leaf 373]
ȝit seen men weel by resoun douteles
That ydylnesse is rote slogardye
Of whiche there neuere comyth encrees 18
And seen that slouthe hire holdyt in a lees
Only for to slepe & ete & drynke
And to deuoure al that othir swynke 21

CAMBRIDGE 519 (6-T. 527) [part, Sloane 1685]

(4)

And for to putte vs from swich ydilnes	22
That cause is of so greet confusioun	
I haue here don myn feythful businesse	
Aftr the legende in translacioun	25
Rygh of thyn glorious lyf & pascioun	.id est. cecilie
Thow with thyn garland wrogh[t] with rose & lilye	
Tho meene I mayde & martyr Seyn Cecyle	28

(5)

And thow that flour of virgynis art alle	29
Of whom that bernard lyste so weel to write	
To the at myn begynnynge I leste to calle .i. ihesus [MS ihc]	
Thow confort of vs wrechis do me endite ^[later]	32
Thyn maydenys deth / that wan thour hire meryte	
The eternal lyf & ouyr the fend victorye	
As man may aftr redyn in h[i]re storye	35

(6)

Thow maydyn & modyr doghtir of the sone	36
Thow welle of mercy synful soulys cure	
In whom that god of mercy ches to wone	
Thow humble & heig ouer euery creature	39
Thow nobledist so fer forth oure nature	
That no disdayn the makere hadde of kynde	
His sone in blood & flesch to clothe & wynde	42

(7)

With-inne the cloystre blisful of thyne sydis	43
Tok manyns schap the eternal loue & pees	
That of the tryne cumpas lord & gide is	
Won heuene & se & erthe out of reles	46
Ay heryen & ^[1 h altered] thow virgyne wemmelees	
Bar of thyn body & dweldist mayde pure	
The creatour of euery creature	49

(8)

Assembled is in the magnyficence	[leaf 573, back]	50
With mercy goodnesse & swich pete		
That thow that art the sunne of excellence		
Nat only helpist hem that preyen the		53
But ofte tyme of thyn benygnetee		
fful frely er that men thyn helpe be-scehe		
Thow gost by-forn & art oure lyuys leche		56

(9)

Now help thow meke & blysful fayre mayde		57
Me flemede wreche in this desert of galle		
Thynk on the woman Canane that sayde	.i. Maria [later]	
That whelpis etyn some of the cromys alle		60
That from hire lordis table been I-falle		
And thow that I onworthi sone of eue		
Be synful ȝit accepte myn beleue		63

(10)

And for that feyth is deed with outyn werkis		64
So for to werkyn ȝeue me wit & space		
That I be quyt from thens that most derk is		
O thow that art so fayr & ful of grace		67
Be myn aduocat in that hyge place		
Theere that withoutyn ende is sunge osanne		
Thow cristis modir doughtir deere of Anne ¹	[¹ first anne]	

(11)

And of thyn grace ² myn soule in prisoun lighte	[² corr.]	71
That troblid is bi the cogitacioun ³	[³ as in Arch. Seld. B. 16]	
Of myn body & also by the whighte		
Of ertheli lust & fals affeccioun		74
O hauen of refut / O saluacioun		
Of hem that been in sorwe & in distresse		
Now help for to myn werk I wele me dresse		77

(12)

3it preye ych ¹3ow þat¹ redyn that I wryte [— corrected] 78
 ffor-3eue me that I do / no diligence
 This ilke story / subtilly tendite
 ffor bothe haue I / the wordis & the sentence 81
 Of hym that at the / seyntis reuerence
 The storye wrot / & folwe hire legende
 And preye 3ow that 3e / wele myn werk amende [leaf 374 is out of
 the Camb. MS.]

(13) [THE TALE.]

[ffyrst wolle I you þe name of Seynt Cecile [Sloane 1685,
 on leaf 159]
 Expoune as men may in hir stories see
 hit ys to say on englysshe heuen lilie
 Pure Chastnesse of Virginite 88
 Or for she wytnesse hade of honeste
 Of greue of conscience and of gode fame
 The swoote sauoure lylie was hir name 91

(14)

Other / Cecile ys to say þe wey to blynde 92
 ffor she ensample was by god techynge
 Or elles Ceciles as I wryten fynde
 Is ioyned by manere comoyntyng 95
 Of heuen and lya and hizer/ in figuryng
 þe heuen ys . sette for þouzt of holynesse
 And lya for hir lastyng besynesse 98

(15)

Cecile may eke be sayde in þis manere 99
 Wantynge hir blyndnesse for hir grete lizt
 Of sapience for hir/ thewes clere
 Or elles lo þis maydons name brizt 102
 Of/ heuen and loos comethe for whiche be rizt
 Men myzt þe heuen of peple hir/ calle
 Ensamle of god and wyse werkes with alle 105

(16)

ffor leos peple in Englyssh in to say	[Sloane 1685]	106
And riȝt/ as men may in þis heuen se		
The sonne and mone and sterres euery way		
Riȝt/ so gostely in þis mayden fre		109
Seyen þe feithe of Magnificence		
And eke of helthe and of sapience		
And sondry werkes briȝt of Excellence		112

(17)

And riȝt as þe phylosophre wryte	[leaf 159, back]	113
þat heuen ys swyfte rounde and brennyng		
Riȝt so was fayre Cecile þe white		
fulle swyfte and besy euere in goode wirkyng		116
And rounde and hoole in goode perseueryng		
And brenne euere in Charite liȝt		
Nowe haue I declared you what she hiȝt		119

Here endethe þe Prologge and begynneth þe tale

(18)

T his mayd bryȝt Cecile as hir/ lyf sayþe	120
Was comen of Romayns & of noble kynde	
And so forthe forstred vp in þe feiþe	
Of Cryst and bare his Gospel in hir mynde	123
Sche neuere sesede as I wryten fynde	
Of hir/ prayers but god to loue & drede	
Besechyng hym to kepen hir/ maydenhede	126

(19)

And whan þis Mayde shulde vnto a man	127
y-wedded be þat was so ȝonge of age	
The whiche y-cleped was Valerian	
And þe day was come of/ hir/ maryage	130
She fulle deuoute and humble in hir corage	
Vnder hir robe of golde þat sat fulle fayre	
And nexte hir/ flesshe ycladde was in heyre	133

CAMBRIDGE 523 (6-T. 531) [this page, Sloane 1685]

(20)

And while þe Organes made melodye [Sloane 1685] 134
 To god alle loue þus in hert sange she
 O lord my saule and eke my body gye
 Vnwemmed leste I confounded be 137
 And for hys loue þat deyde vpon a tre
 Euery second or þrid day she faste
 Ay bydyng in hir Orisons fulle faste] [Sloane 1685 *extract slops*]

(21)

¹The nyght cam & to bedde muste sche goon [Camb. MS Gg. 4. 27,
 leaf 375]
 With her husbond as ofte is the manner [—¹ rewritten by the
 corrector!]
 And preuily to hym sche saide A-noon¹
 O sweete & weel belouyd spouse deere 144
 There is a conseyll & 3e wele it here
 Whiche that rygh fayn I wolde vn-to 3ow seye
 So that 3e swere 3e schul it nat bewreye 147

(22)

Valerian gan faste vn-to hire swere 148
 That for no cas ne thyng that myghte be
 He schulde neueremore bewreyen hire
 And thanne at erst to hym seyde sche 151
 I haue an aungel whiche that louygh me
 That with greet loue wheere so I wake or sleepe
 Is redy ay myn body for to keepe 154

(23)

But 3if that he m^y felyn out of dreede 155
 That 3e me touche or loue in vilenye
 He rygh a-noon wele sle 3ow with the dede
 [And in your yowthe thus ye shulden dye] [Harl. 7835, f^o 62, bk.
 No gap in the Camb.
 MS, but at the end of
 the stanza there is
 space for a line.]
 And 3if that 3e in cleene loue me gye
 He wele 3ow loue as me for 3oure clenness
 And schewe to 3ow his ioie & his bryghtnesse 161

(24)

This valerian corektid as god wolde	162
Answerede a-geyn as I schal truste the	
Lat me that angel se & ek beholde	
And ȝif that it a verray aungel be	165
Thanne wele I doon as thow hast preyed me	
And ȝif thow loue a-nothir man forsothe	
Ryght with this swerd I wele sle ȝow bothe	168

(25)

Cecyle answerede a-noon rygh in this wise	169
ȝif that ȝe lyste the aungel schal ȝe se	
So that ȝe trowe on cryst & ȝow baptyse	
Goth forth to via apia quod sche	172
That from this toun stant but mylis three	
And to the poure folkys that theere dwelle	
Seye hem righ as I schal ȝow telle	175

(26)

Telle hem that I Cecile ȝow to hem sente	[leaf 875, back]
To shewyn ȝow the goode vrbān the olde	
ffor secre nedis & for good entente	
And whan that ȝe seynt vrbān han beholde	179
Telle hym the wordis whiche I to ȝow tolde	
And whan that he hath purged ȝow from synne	
Thanne schal ȝe seen that aungel er ȝe twynne	182

(27)

This valerian is to the place I-gon	183
And rygh as he was taught by his lernynge	
He fond this holye olde vrbān a-non	
A-mong the seyntis veryely lokynge	186
And he a-non with-oute tarynge	
Dede his massage & whan that he it tolde	
Vrbān for loye / hisse handys gan vp holde	189

(28)

The teeris from hise eyen leet he falle	190
Almyghty lord now <i>Thesu</i> cryst quod he	
Sowere of chast conseyll / herde of vs alle	
The freut of thilke seed of chastite	193
That thow hast sowe in Cecyle take to the	
Lo lyk a bisy bee with-outyn gile	
The seruyth ay thyn owene thral Cecile	196

(29)

ffor thilke spouse that sche tok but now	197
fful lik a feers ¹ leoun / sche sendyth hire	[¹ <i>first feerie</i>]
As make ² as enere was ony lamb to 3ow	[² <i>he corrected</i>]
And with that word a-noon there gan apeere	200
An old man clad in white clothis cleere	
That hadde a bok with lettere of gold in honde	
And gan byforn valeryan to stonde	203

(30)

Valerian as deed fil down for dreede	204
Whan he hym saw / & he vp hente hym tho	
And on his bok rygh thus he gan to reede	
O lord o god o feith with-outyn mo	207
O cristendom & fadyr of alle also	
Abouyn alle & ouer alle euerywhere	
These wordys alle of gold I-wretyn weere	210

(31)

Whanne this was rad thanne seyde this olde man	[leaf 376]
Leuyt this thyng or no sey 3e or nay	
I leue al this thyng quod Valeryan	
ffor sothere thyng this / I dar weel say	214
Vndyr the heuene no wight thynkyn may	
Tho vaneschid this olde man he nyste wheere	
And Poope vrbayn hym cristenede ryght theere	217

(32)

Valarian goth hom & fynd Cecile	218
In-with his chambir with an Au[n]gel stonde	
This aungel hadde of rosis & of lylle	
Corouznys two the whiche he bar in honde	221
And fyrst to cecilie as I vndirstonde	
He ȝaf that on & aftyr gan he take	
That othir to valeryan hire make	224

(33)

With body cleene & with vnwemmede thought	225
Kepith ay cleene these coronys quod he	
from paradys to ȝow / I haue hem brought	
Ne neuere mo ne schal they rote be	228
Ne leese here sote sauour trustith me	-
Ne neuere wigh schal seen hem with his ye	
But he be chast & haate vilenye	231

(34)

And thow Valerian for thow so soone	232
Assentedist to good conseyll also	
Sey what the lyst & thow schat haue thyn boone	
I haue a brothir quod valeryan tho	235
That in this world I loue no man so	
I preye ȝow that myn brothir may han grace	
To knowe the trouthe as I do in this place	238

(35)

The aungel seyde god lykyth thyn requeste	239
And bothe with the palm of martyrdom	
ȝe schul come vn-tyl his blysful feste	
And with that word Tiburse his brothyr coom	242
And whan that he the sauour Vndyrnom	
Which that the rosis & the lylis caste	
With-inne his herte he gan to wondere faste	245

(36)

And seyde I wondere this tyme of the 3eer [leaf 276, back]
 Whens that the sote sauour comyth so
 Of rose & lylyis / that I smelle heere /
 ffor thow I hadde hem in myne handis two 249
 The sauour myghte in me no deppere go
 The swete smel that in myn herte I fynde
 Hath chaunged me al in a nothir kynde 252

(37)

Valerian seyde two corounnys han we 253
 Snow whit & rose reed that schynyn cleere
 Whiche that thynne eyne han no myght to se
 And as thow smellyst hem thour myn preyere 256
 So schalt thou seen hem leue brothir deere
 3if it so be thou wolt with-outyn slouthe
 Byleue arygh & knowyn werray trouthe 259

(38)

Tiburce answerde seyst thou this to me 260
 In sothnesse or in drem I herkene this
 In dremys quod Valerian haue we be
 Vn-to this tyme brothir myn I-wis 263
 But now at erst in trouthe oure dwellynge is
 How wost thou this quod Tiburce & in what wyse
 Quod valerian that schal I the deuyse 266

(39)

The Au[n]gel of god hath me the trouthe taught 267
 Which thou schalt se 3if that thou wilt reneye
 Thynne Idolis & been cleene & ellis not
 And of the myrakele of these coronys tweye 270
 Seynt Ambrose in his prefas leste to seye
 Solempnely this noble doughtyr dere
 Commendyth it & seyth in this maneere 273

(40)

The palme of marterdam for to reseeyue	274
Seynt Secile fulfild of godis ȝifte	
The world & ek hire ¹ chambre gan sche weyue	[<i>1st</i> hise]
Witnesse Tiburce & Cecilies schryfte	277
To whiche god of his bounte wolde shifte	
Corounnys two of flouris sweete smellynge	
And made his aungel hem the corounnys to brynge	280

(41)

This maydyn hath brought hem to blysse a-boue	[leaf 377]
The world hat wist / what it is wroth certeyn	
Deuocioun of chastite to loue	
Tho schewede hym Cecile al opyn & playn	284
That alle ydolis nys but a thyng in veyn	
ffor they been dombe & therto they been deeu	
And chargede hym hise ydolis for to leue	287

(42)

Who so that trowith not this a beste he is	288
Quod tho tyburse ȝif that I schal nat lye	
And sche gan kisse his brest that herde this	
And was ful glad he coude trouthe espye	291
This day I take the for myn alye	
Seyde this blysful fayre mayde deere	
And aftyr that sche seyde as ȝe may here	294

(43)

Lo right so as the loue of Crist quod she	295
Made me thyn brothir wif rygh in that wise	
A-noon for myn alye I here take the	
So that thou wolt thynne ydolis espie	298
Go with thyn brothir now & the baptyse	
And make the clene so that thou mowe be-holde	
The aungellis face of which then brothir tolde	301

(44)

Tyburce answerde & seyde brothir deere	302
ffyrst telle me whidyr that I schal & to what man	
To whom quod he come forth with rygh good cheere	
I wele the lede vn-to the pope vrban	305
Tyl vrban brothir myn valerian	
Quod tho Tiburce / wilt thow me dedyr leede	
Me thynkyth that it were a wondyr deede	308

(45)

Ne knowyst tow nat vrban quod he tho	309
That is so ofte dampned to be deed	
And wonyth in halkis alwey two & fro	
And dar nat onys putte forth his heed	312
Men schulde hym brenne in a fyr so reed	
ȝif he were founde or ȝif men myghte hym spye	
And we also to bere hym compaynye ¹ [1 o altered]	315

(46)

And whil we seke thilke dyuinite	[leaf 377, back]
That is I-hid in heuene pryuyly	
Algate I-brend in this world schul we be	
To whom Cecile answerde boldely	319
Men myghtyn dredyn weel & skylfully	
This lif to lese myn owene dere brothir	
If this weere lyuynge only & non othir	322

(47)

But theere is betere lyf in othir place	323
That neuere schal been lost ne drede the not	
With godys sone / vs tolde thour his grace	
That faderis sone hath alle thyngis wrouȝt	326
And al that wrouȝt is with a skylful thouȝt	
The gost that from the fadyr gan procede	
Hath soulede hem with-outyn ony dreede	329

CAMBRIDGE 530 (6-T. 538)

(48)

By word & by myrakele he goddis sone	330
Whan he was in this world declared heere	
That theere is othir lyf / theere men may wone	
To whom answerde Tiburce o sistyr deere	333
Ne seydist tow right now in this maneere	
Theere nys but on god / in sothfastnesse	
And now of thre / how maystow bere witnesse	336

(49)

That schal I telle quod sche er ¹ than I ¹ go [— altered]	337
Ryght as a man hath sapiencis thre	
Memorye engyn & intellect also	
So in o beyinge of dyuynytee	340
Thre personys may theere weel bee	
Tho gan sche hym ful busili to preche	
Of Cristis sone & of hise peynys teche	343

(50)

And manye poyntis of hise passioun	344
How goddis sone in this world was with-holde	
To doon mankynde pleyn remyssion	
That was I-boundyn in synne & caris colde	347
Al this thyng sche vn-to tiburce tolde	
And aftyr this Thiburce with good entente	
With valerian to pope vrban he wente	350

(51)

That thankede god & with good herte & lyght	[leaf 378]
He cristenede hym & made hym in that place	
Parfit in his lernynge goddis knyght	
And aftyr this Tibur[c]e gat swich grace	354
That eueri day he saw in tyme & space	
The aungel of god & euery manere boone	
That he god axed it was sped ful soone	357

(52)

It weere ful hard by ordere for to seyn	358
How manye wonderis Ihesu for hem wroughte	
But at the laste to tellyn schort & pleyn	
The sergeauntis of the toun of rome hem souȝte	361
And hem by-forn almache the prefect broughte	
Which hem opposede & knew al hire entente	
And to the ymage of Iupiter hem sente.—	364

(53)

And seyde ho so wele not sacrifice	365
Swap of his heed this myn centence heere	
Anoon these martiris that I ȝow deuysel	
On Maximus that was an officere	368
Of the Prefectis & his Corniculeere	
Hem hente & whan he forth the seyntis ladde	
Hym self he wepte for pite that he hadde	371

(54)

Whan Maximus hadde herd the seyntis loore	372
He gat hym of the turmentouris leue	
And ladde hem to his hous with-outyn moore	
And with heere prechyng er than it was eue	375
They gunne from the turmentouris to reue	
And from Maxime & from hise folk echoone	
The false feith to trowe in god a-loone	378

(55)

Cecile cam whan it was wexe nyght	379
With prestis that hem cristenede alle in feere	
And aftyrward whan day was wexen lyght	
Cecile hem seyde with a ful sobere cheere	382
Now cristis owene knyghtis leue & deere	
Cast al a-wey the werkis of derknesse	
And armyth ȝow in armys / of brightnesse.	385

(56)

3e han forsothe don a greet batayle / [leaf 378, back] 386
 3oure cours is don / 3oure feyth haue 3e conseruyd
 Goth to the coroun of lyf that may nat fayle
 The rightful Iuge / which that 3e han seruyd 389
 Schal 3eue it 3ow right as 3e han 'seruyd [dis in the margin]
 And whan this thyng was seyde as I deuyse
 Men ledde hem forth / to don the sacrifice 392

(57)

But whan they weere to the place brought 393
 To tellyn schortely the conclusioun
 The nolde encense² ne sacrifice right nocht [2 first encense]
 But on here kneis they settyn hem a-doun 396
 With humble herte & sad deuocioun
 And leftyn bothe here heuedis in the place
 Here soulis wentyn to the kyng of grace 399

(58)

This Maximus that saw this thyng betyde 400
 With pituse teris tolde it a-non right
 That he here soulis saw to heuene glyde
 With aungellis ful of cleernesse & of ligh 403
 And with his word conuertede manye a wight
 ffor whiche Almachius dide hym so beete
 With whippe of leed til he his lyf gan lete 406

(59)

Cecile hym tok & buried a-non 407
 Bi Tiburce & Valirian softly
 With-inne hire buriinge place vndyr the stoon
 And after this Almathius hastili 410
 Bad hise mynystris fightyn opynly
 Cecile so that sche myghte in hise presence
 Don sacrifice & Iupiter encense 413

(60)

But they conuertid at here wise loore	414
Weptyn ful soore & 3euy ⁿ ful credence	
Vn-to hire word & cryedyn moore & moore	
Crist goddis sone with-outyn difference	417
Is verray goddys sone this al oure centence	
That hath so good a seruau ⁿ t hym to serue	
This with on vois we trowyn thow we sterue	420

(61)

Almachius that herde al this doing	[leaf 579]	421
Bad feche Cecile that he myghte hire se		
And aldyr ferst lo this was his axsyng		
What manere woman art thou quod he		424
I am a gentil woman born quod sche		
I axe the quod he thou it the greene		
Of thyn religioun & of thin beleene		427

(62)

3e han begunne 3oure questioun folyly	428
Quod sche that woldyn to answeris conclude	
In on demaunde 3e axsyn lewedely	
Almache answerede vnto that simylytude	431
Of whens comyth thyn answeyng ^e so rude	
Of whens quod sche / whan that sche was freyny ^d	
Of concience & of good feyth vnfeyny ^d	434

(63)

Almachius seyde ne takist thou noon hede	435
Of myn powere & sche answerde him thus	
3oure myght quod sche ful lytil is to drede	
ffor euery manys mortal power nys	438
But lyk a bladdere ful of wynd I-wis	
ffor with a nedellis poynt whan it is blowe	
May al the bost of it been ley ^d ful lowe	441

(64)

fful wrongfully bigunne thow quod sche	442
And ȝit in wrong is al thyn perseueraunce	
Wost tow not how oure myghti pryncis free	
Han thus comaundit & mad ordenaunce	445
That euery cristene whight schal han penaunce	
But ȝif that he his cristendom withseye	
And goon al quik ȝif he welo it reneye	448

(65)

ȝoure pryncis erryn as ȝoure nobleye doth	449
Quod tho Cecile / & with a wood sentence	
ȝe makyn vs gilty & is nat soth	
ffor ȝe that knowyn weel oure Innocence	452
ffor as meche as we doon a reuerence	
'To Cryst & for we bere a cristene name	
ȝe puttyn on vs a cryme & ek a blame	455

(66)

But we that knowen thilke name	[leaf 379, back]	456
ffor vertuous we may it not with-seye		
Almache answerde chees on of these two		
Do sacrifice & cristendam reneye		459
That thow mowe escape by that weye		
At which this holy blysfyl fayre mayde		
Gan for to laughe & to the Iuge sayde		462

(67)

O Iuge confus in thyn nycete	463
Wilt thow that I reneye Innocence	
To makyn me a wikkede wight quod sche	
Lo he dissimulyth here in audience	466
He starith & wodit in hise aduertence	
To whom Almachi ^{us} onsely wreche	
Ne wost thow not how fer mygh may streche	469

(68)

Han not oure mighti pryncis to me ȝeuyne	470
ȝe boothe power & autorite	
To makyn folk to deyne or to leuyne	
Whi spekest thou so proudly thanne to me	473
I speke noght but stedefastly quod sche	
Nat proudly I seye as for myn side	
We hatyn dedly thilke vyce of pryde—	476

(69)

And ȝif thou dreede nat a soth to heere	477
Thanne wele I schewe al opynly be ryght	
That thou hast mad a ful greet lesyng heere	
Thow seyst thynne pryncis han the ȝonyn myght	480
Bothe for to slen & for to quekyn a wight	
Thow that ne mayst but only lyf bereue	
Thow hast non othir power ne no leue	483

(70)

But thou mayst seyn thynne pryncis han the makid	484
Ministre of deth / for ȝif thou speke of mo	
Thow lyst for thyn power is ful nakyd	
Do wey thyn boldenesse seyde Almathius thoo	487
And sacrifice to the goddis er thou go	
I reche nat what wrong that thou me profere	
for I can suffere it as a Philisophere	490

(71)

But thilke wrongis may I not endure	[leaf 280] 491
That thou spekest of oure goddis heere quod he	
Cecile answerde o nyce creature	
Thow seydist no word syn thou spake with me	494
That I ne knew therwith thyn nycetee	
And that thou were in euery maner wise	
A lewede offiser & veyn Iustise	497

(72)

Teere lakkyth no thyng to thyn vtter Iyen	498
That thow nart blynd / for thyng that we seen alle	
That is a stoon that men may wel espyen	
That ilke stoon a god thow wilt it calle	501
I rede the let thyn hond vp-on it falle	
And taste it weel & ston thow schalt it fynde	
Syn that thow sest nat with thyne eyin blynde	504

(73)

It is schame that the peple schal	505
So scorne the & laghe at thyn folye	
ffor comounly men wot it weel oueral	
That myghty god is in hise heuenys hye	508
And these ymagis weel thow mayst espie	
To the ne to hem self may nought profyghte	
ffor in effect they been nat worth a myghte	511

(74)

These wordis & swiche othere seyde sche	512
And he wex wroth & bad men schulde hire leede	
Hom to hire hous / & in hire hous quod he	
Brenne hire right in a bath with flambis reede	515
And as he bad ryzt so was doon the dede	
ffor in a bath the gune hire faste schette	
And nygh & day greet fyr they vndyr bette	518

(75)

The longe nyght & ek a day also	519
ffor al the feer & ek the bathis heete	
Sche sat al cold & felede no woo	
It made hire not a drope for to sweete	522
But in that bath hire lyf muste sche lete	
ffor he Almachiuz with a wekkede entent	
To sleen hire in the bath his sonde sent/	525

(76)

Thre strokis in the nekke he smoot hire tho [leaf 290, back]
 The turmentour but for no manere chaunce
 He myghte nat smyte al hire nekke a two
 And for there was that tyme an ordynaunce 529
 That no man schulde doon / *man* swich penaunce
 The fourte strook to smyte soffte or sore
 This turmentour ne durste doon no moore 532

(77)

But half deed with hire nekke I-koruyne theere 533
 He lefte hire lye / & on his woye is went
 The cristene folk whiche that a-boute hire weere
 With scheetis han the blood ful fayre I-hent 536
 Thre dayis leuede sche in that turnement
 And neuere sesede hem the feyth to teche
 That sche hadde fosterede hem sche gan to preche 539

(78)

And hem sche 3af hire meoblis & hire thyng 540
 And to the Poope Vrban bi-tok hem tho
 And seyde I axede this of heuene kyng
 To haue thre dayis respit & namo 543
 To recomende to 3ow / er that I go
 These soulis lo & that I myghte do werche
 Heere of myn hous perpetuelly a cherche 546

(79)

Seynt vrban with hise dekenys priuily 547
 The body fette & beriede it be nyght
 Among hise othere seyntis honestely
 Hyre hous the cherche of seynt cecile hyghte 550
 Seynt Vrban halwede it as he weel myght
 In which in to this day in noble wyse
 Meen don to Cryst & to his seynt seruyse 553

**Here folwyn the mery wordys of chaucer & of þ^e host
And the prologe of the chanonnys man** [on leaf 380, back]

hat told was the lif of seynt Cecile	[leaf 381]
[¹ Er w]e fully haddyn redyn fyue myle	[¹ page filled-in from Sloane 1086, leaf 165, except that at ² it has "Borton."]
[At ² Bong]hton vndyr Blee vs gan a take	
[A man] that clotheð was in clothis blake	557
[And vn]dyr that he hadde a whit surpys	
[hys ha]keny that was al pomele gris	
[So swa]tte that it wondir was to se	
[hit seme]de that he hadde prekede mylis thre	561
[The hors eke þat hys yoman r]od vpon	
[So swet þat vnneþe my]hte ³ it goon	[³ "myȝt," in Sloane 1086]
Aboute þe pey[trelle stode the] fom ful hye	
He was of foom al flekked as a pye	565
A male twifold on his croper lay	
It semede that he cariede lyte aray	
Al lyth for somyr rod this worthi man	
And in myn herte wonderyn I began	569
What that he was that I vndyrstood	
How that his cloke was sowid to his hood	
ffor which whanne I longe hadde auysede me	
I demede hym * schanoun for to be	573
His hat hyng down at his bak by a lace	
ffor he hadde redyn moore than trot or pace	
He hadde ay prikyd lyk as he were wood	
A cloote lef he hadde vndyr his hood	577
firo swot & for to kepe his heed from heete	
But it was Ioye for to seen hym sweete	
His forhed dropped as a stillatorie	
Were ful of plauntayn & of permytorye	581

And whān that he was come he gan to crye 582
 God saue quod he this fayre compaynye
 ffaste haue I prikyd quod he for 3oure sake
 By cause that I wolde 3ow a take 585
 To rydyn in this murye cumpaynye
 His 3eman ek was ful of curteysie
 And seyde sens now in the morwe tyde
 Out of 3oure hostelrye I saw 3ow ryde 589
 And warnede heere myn lord & myn souereyn
 Which for to ridyn with 3ow is ful fayn
 ffor his disport he lout[h¹ dalyaunce] [leaf 581, back]
 freend for thyn warny[nge god 3eue þe gode chaunce] 593
 Thanne seyde oure h[Oste certes hit wolde seme] [¹ *pape Alled-in*
 Thyn lord weere w[yse and so I may wele deme] *from Sloane*
 He is ful Iocunde a[lso dare I leye] 1685]
 Can he ough a me[ry tale or tweye] 597
 With which he glade [may þis companye]
 // Who sere myn lord [3e with out lie]
 He can of merthe & [eke of Iolyte]
 Nat but I-now also [sir trestyȝh me] 601
 And 3e hym knewe a[lso wele as] that do I
 3e woldyn wondere how weel & craftyly
 He coude werke & that in sundery wise
 He hath takyn on hym manye a greet emprise 605
 Whiche were ful hard for ony that is heere
 To brynge a-boute but ²they of hym it leere ² [— later]
 As hoomely as he rit a-mongis 3ow
 3if 3e hym knewe it wolde be for 3oure prow 609
 3e wolde nat forgoon his aqueyntaunce
 ffor meche good I dare leye in balaunce
 Al that I haue in myn possessioun
 He is a man of heigh discrecioun 613
 I warne 3ow weel he is a passynge man
 Weel quod oure host I preye the telle me than
 Is he clerk or noon I preye the telle me this
 Nay he is grettere than a clerk I-wis 617

Seyde this ȝeman & in wordis fewe	618
Hoost of his craft sumwhat I wele ȝow schewe	
I seye myn lord can swich sotyletee	
But al his craft ȝe may nat wete at me	621
And sumwhat helpe I ȝit to his werkyng	
That al this ground on which we been rydyng	
Til that we comyn to cauntyrbery toun	
He coude al clene turne vp so doun	625
And paue it al of syluyr & of gold /	
And whan this ȝeman hadde this I-told	
Vn-to oure host he seyde benedicite	
This thyng is wondyr meruelious to me	629
Syn that thyn lord is of so hegh prudence	[leaf 382]
By cause of which men wolde hym reuerence	
That of his worschepe rekkith he but lyte	
His ouere sloppe nys nat worth a myte	633
As in effect to hym so mote I go	
It is al baudit & to-tore also	
Whi is thyn lord so slottysch I the preye	
And is of power betere cloth to beye	637
If that his deede a-cordit with his speche	
Tel me that & that I the be-seche	
// Whi quod this ȝeman wherto axe ȝe me	
God help me so for he schal neuere the	641
But I wele nat a-wowe that I seye	
And therefore kepe it secre I ȝow preye	
He is to wis in feyth as I be-leue	
That is ouerdone it wele nat preue	645
Aryght / as clerkis seyn it is a vice	
Wherfore in that I helde hym lewid & nyce	
ffor whan a man hath ouergreet a wit	
fful ofte hym happith to mysusen it	649
So doth myn lord & that me greuyth soore	
God it amende I can sey ȝow na moore	
Therof no fors goode ȝeman quod oure hoost	
Syn of the cunnyng of thyn lord thow wost	653

Telle how he doth I preye the hertyly 654
 Syn that he is so crafty & so sly
 Wheere dwellyn 3e / 3if it to tellyn be
 In the subarblis of a toun quod he 657
 Lurkyng in hernys & in ¹lanys blynde [*1. first lounys*]
 Where as these robbouris & these theuys by kynde
 Holdyn here priue ferful residence
 As they that dore nat schewe here presence 661
 So fare we 3if I schal seye the sothe
 Now quod oure hoost 3it lat me speke to the
 Whi art thou so discolouryd in thyn face
 Petir quod he god 3ene it harde grace 665
 I am so vsed in the fuir to blowe
 That it hath chaunged myn colour I trowe
 I am not wone in no myrour to pry 669 [*leaf 382, back*]
 But swynke sore & lerne multeplye
 We blundere euere & poure in the fuyr
 And for al that we fayle of oure desyr
 ffor euere we lakke oure conclusioun
 To mache folk we doon illusyoun 673
 And borwe gold be it a pound or two
 Or ten or twelve or manye summys mo
 And makyn hem to wenyn at the leste weye
 That of a pound we coudyn make tweye 677
 3it is it fals but ay we han good hope
 It for to doon & after it we grope
 But that science is so fer vs be-foren
 We mow not al-thogh we haddyn it sworn 681
 It ouyrtake it slyt away so faste
 It wele vs make beggeris at the laste
 // Whil this 3eman was thus in his talkyng
 This chanoun drow hym neer & herde alle thyng 685
 Which this 3eman spak . for suspecioun
 Of menys speche / euere hadde this chanoun
 for Catoun seyth he that gilty is [*Concine esse sibi.*]
 Demyth alle thyng is seyde of hym I-wis 689

That was the cause he gan so nygh hym drawe 690
 To his ȝeman to herkenyn al his sawe
 And thus he seyde vn-to his ȝeman tho
 Hold thow thyñ pees & spek no wordis mo 693
 ffor ȝif thow do thow schat it dere a-beye
 Thow slaunderyst me / heere in this cumpaynye
 And ek discouerist that thow schuldist hide
 ȝa quod oure ost telle on whatso betyde 697
 Of al this thretyng relke nat a myte
 Infeyth quod he namore I do but lyte
 And whan this chanoun saw it wolde nat be
 But his ȝeman wolde telle his pryuyte 701
 He fledde a-wey for verray sorwe & schame
 A quod the ȝeman here schal aryse game
 Al that I can a-non now wele I telle 704
 Syn he is goon the foule fend hym quelle [Leaf 383 out out
of the Camb. MS.]
 [ffore neuere here aftere wolle with hym mete [Sloane 1685, leaf
167, back]
 ffor peny ne for pounde I be-hete
 he ȝat me brouȝt/ fyrst/ in to ȝat game
 Er/ ȝat he deyde sorowe haue he & shame 709
 ffor hit ys. earnest/ to me by my fayȝe
 ȝat fele I wele what so ony man saythe
 And ȝit for alle my smert and alle my greef /
 And alle my sorowe laboure and myschef 713
 I coupe neuere leue hit / in no wyse
 Nowe wolde god my wytte myȝt / suffice
 To tellen alle ȝat longethe to ȝat arte
 But nathles ȝit wylle I telle you part 717
 Syȝens ȝat my lorde ys gone I wolle not spare
 Suche ȝenge as I knowe I wille declare

Here endith ȝe Prologge

[THE PREAMBLE.]

[Sloane 1685, on leaf 167, back.]

and be-gynneþe þe tale

Wyth þis Chanon dwellyd haue I seuen ȝeero
 And of hys science neuere þe nere 721
 And þat I hade I haue loste þerby
 And god woote so hathe mony mo þan I
 There I was wonte to be riȝt fresshe & gay
 Of cloþinge and of gode array 725
 Nowe may I were aȝn hose vpon myne hede
 And where my coloure was bothe fressh & reede
 Nowe it ys wan and of a len hewe
 Who so hit vseþe sore shalle he rewe 729
 And of my swynke blered ys myn eyee
 Lo whiche avauntage hit ys to multiply
 þat slydyng science hathe me made so bare
 That I haue no gode where þat euere I fare 733
 And ȝit / I am endetted so þer by
 Of golde þat I haue borrowed truly
 þat whyle I lyue hit/ shalle I quyte nevere
 lat euery man by ware by me for euere 737
 what manere man þat casteth hym þer to
 yf/ he contynewe I holde hys thryfte y-do.
 [But so helpe me god ther/-by schaff he noght wyne.
 But empten his/ purs/ & make his/ wittis/ thynne. 741
 And whan he thorough his/ madnesse & folye/
 Hath lost his/ owne good thorough iopardye.
 Than he exitith other/ men therto. 744
 To lese her/ good as/ hym self hap do.] [Harl. 1758, leaf 145]
 ffor vnto shrewes Ioye hit ys and ese [leaf 16^v]
 To haue hir/ felawes in peyne and disese

CAMBRIDGE 544 (3-T. 552) [this page, Sloane 1685]

Thys was I oones lerned of a Clerke [Sloane 1685]
 Of þat no Charge I wolde speke of oure werke 749
 whan we bene þere as we shaft exercise
 Oure Eluysshe crafte we seem wonder/ wyse
 Oure termes ben so clergial and so queynte
 I blowe þe fyre tylle þat myn hert/ feynte 753
 what/ shulde I telle ecche proporcioun
 Of/ þenges whiche þat we worchen vppoun
 As on fyue or sixe vnces may wele be 756
 Of siluere or of som oþere quantite] [Sloane 1685 extract ends]
 And beye me to telle ȝow the namys [Camb. MS Gg. 4. 27, leaf 384]
 Of orpemynt brend bonys / Iren squamys
 That in to poudere grounde been ful smal
 And in an erthene pot how put is al 761
 And salt I-put in & also papeer
 Ey-fore these poudervis that I speke of heer
 And weel I-keuered with a laumpe of glas
 And of muche othir thyng whiche there was 765
 And of the pot & glasis enlutyng
 That of the ayr myghte passe out nothyng
 And of the esy fuyr & smert also
 Whiche that was mad & the care & wo 769
 That we hadde in oure mateeris sublymyng
 And in a-malgamyng & calcenyng
 Of quik siluyr I-clepede Mercurye Crude
 ffor alle oure slytis we cunne not concludo 773
 Of oure orpemynt & sublimyd mercurye
 Oure groundyn lytarge ek & the porphurye
 Of eche of these / of ounces a certeyn
 Noght helpith vs oure labour is in veyn 777
 Ne ek oure spiritis ascencioun
 Ne oure matieris that lyn al fyx a-doun
 Mowe in oure werkynge no thyng vs awayle
 ffor lost is al oure labour & trauayle 781
 And al the cost a twenty deuelleweye
 Is lost also which we on it leye

Ther is also ful manye anothir thyng
 That is vnto oure craft aperteynyng 785
 Thow I be ordere / hem nat reherce can
 By cause that I am a lewede man
 That wele I telle hem as they come in mynde
 Thow I ne can nat sette hem in hir¹ kynde [hr altered] 789
 As bole armonyak verdegres boras
 And sunderi vessellys mad of erthe & glas
 Oure vrynallis & oure discensories
 Violys / Crosletis / & sublymatories 793
 Cucurbites / & alembikes eek
 And othere swiche / deere I-nogh a leek
 Not nedyth it for to reherse hem alle [leaf 284, back]
 Wateris rubifynge & bolis galle 797
 Arsenyk Salarmoniak & bronston
 And erbis coude I telle ek manyon
 Of Egremoyne Walerian & lunarye
 And othere sweche / If that me leste tarye 801
 Oure laumpis brennyng bothe nyght & day
 To brynge aboute oure craft ȝif that we may
 Oure furneys ek of Calcinacioun
 And of oure wateris albifacacioun 805
 Vnslekkid lym chalk & gleyer of an ey
 Pouderis dyuerce Aschis donge / pisse & cley
 Cerede pokettis Sal petyr vitriole
 And dyuerse feris mad of wode & cole 809
 Sal tartere altaly / And Sal preparaat
 And combust matiers / & coagulaat
 Cley mad with hors heer or manis & oyle
 Of Tartere Alumglas. berme wort & argoyle 813
 Rosealger & othere matieris enbibyng
 And ek of othere matieris / encorpanyng
 And of oure siluyr citrynacioun
 Oure cymentyng / & formentacyoun 817
 Oure ingotis testis & manyon mo
 I wele ȝow telle as was me taught also

// The foure spiritis & the bodyis seuene
 By ordere As ofte herde I myn lord hem nemene 821
 The fyrste spirit quik siluys callid is
 The secunde orpemynt & the thredde I-wis
 Sal Armonyak & the fourte brunston
 The bodyis seuene lo hem ek here a-non 825
 Sol gold is & luna syluyr whe treepe
 Mars yryn . Mercurie quik siluyr we clepe
 Saturnus led & Iupiter is tyn
 And Venus Copir be myn fadir kyn 829
 This cursede craft who so wele excercyse
 He schal no good han that hym may suffyse
 ffor al the good he spendyth theere aboute
 He lese schal therof haue I no doute 833
 Ho so that lystyth outyn his folye [leaf 385]
 Let hym come forth & lerne multeplye
 And euery man that hat ought in his cofere
 Lat hym apere & wexe a phylisosphere 837
 Ascauns that craft is so lyght to lere
 Nay nay god wot al be he monk or frere
 Prest or chanoun or ony othir whit
 Thow he sete at his bok day or nygh[t] 841
 In lernynge of this eluyssch nyce loore
 Al is in veyn & parde meche moore
 To lerne a lewede man this sotylete
 ffy spek nat therof for it wele nat be 845
 And kunne he lettereure or cunne he non
 As in effect he schal fynde it al oon
 For bothe to be myn saluacioun
 Concludyn as in multiplicacyoun 849
 I-lyche weel / whan they han al I-do
 This is to seyn they fayle bothe twe
 // 3it forgat I to make rehersayle
 Of wateris coresif & of lemayle 853
 And of bodyis mollyficacioun
 And also of here induracioun

Oyles absolucioun / & metal fusible
 To tellyn al wolde passyn any bible 857
 That ower is / wherefore as for the beste
 Of alle ¹ these namys now wele I me reste [*word scratcht out*]
 ffor as I trowe I haue ȝow told I-nogh
 To reyse a fend al loke he neuere so rogh 861
 // A nay lat be the philisopheris stoon
 Elixer clepid / we sekyn faste echon
 ffor hadde we hym we were sekyr I-nogh
 But on to god of heuene I make a wow 865
 ffor al oure craft whan we han al I-do
 And al oure sleyghte he wele nat come vs to
 He hath I-mad vs spende mechil good
 ffor sorwe of whiche almost ¹ we wexe wood 869
 But that good hope crepith in oure herte
 Supposynge euere thow we sore smerte
 To be releuyd by hym aftyrward / [leaf 385, back,
 Swich supposynge & hope is scharp & hard 873
 I warne ȝow wel it is to sekyn euere
 That future temps that made men to disseuere
 In trust therof from al that euere they hadde
 ȝit of that art they can not wexe sadde 877
 ffor vn-to hem it is a bittyr swete
 So semyth it for ne hadde they but a schete
 Whiche that they myghte wrappe hem in a nyght
 And a bakke for to walke in be day light 881
 They wolde hem selue / & spendyn on this craft
 They can not stynte til no thyng be laft
 And euere more where that euere they goon
 Men may hem knowe by smel of bronston 885
 ffor al the world they styngyn as a got
 Here sauour is so rammysch & so hot
 That thow a man² from hem a myle bee
 The sauour wele enfecte hem trustyth me [some letters
 scratcht out] 889
 Lo thus be smellynge & thredbare aray
 ȝif that men lyste these folk knowe may

And ȝif a man wele aske hem pryuyly
 Whi that they been clothid so vn-thriftly 893
 They righ a-non wele rounne in his ere
 And seyn ȝif that they espied were
 Men woldyn hem sle by cause of here science
 Lo thus these folk betrayen innocence 897
 Passe ouer this I go myn tale vnto
 Er than the pot be on the fyre I-do
 Of metallis with a certeyn quantite
 Myn lord hem tempereth & no man but he 901
 Now he is goon I dar say boldely
 ffor as men saye he can do craftly
 Algate I wot wel he hath swich a name
 And ȝit ful ofte he rennyth in a blame 905
 // And wete ȝe how ful oftyn it happith soo
 The pot to-brekith & farwel al is go
 These metallis been of so greet violence
 Oure wallis mowe not make hem resistance 909
 But ȝif they were wrought of lym / & ston [leaf 386]
 They perce so & thour the wal they gon
 And some of hem synke in-to the ground
 Thus haue we lost be tymys manye a pound 913
 And some are skaterede in the flor a-boute
 Some lepe in-to the rof / with-outyn doute
 Thow that the fend nat in the sight hym schewe
 I trowe he with vs be that ilke schrewe 917
 In helle where as he is lord & syre
 Ne is there more wo ne more rancour ne yre
 Whan that oure pot as I haue sayd /
 Euery man chit / & halt hym euelle a-payd 921
 //Some seyn it was a-long on the fyr makyng
 Some seydyn nay / it was on the blowyng
 Thanne was I aferid / for that was myn offis
 Straw quod the thredde / ȝe been lewede & nys 925
 It was nat tempered as it aughte to be
 Nay quod the forte stynt & lestene to me

By cause oure fyr was not mad of bech
 That is the cause & othir noon so theech 929
 I can not telle wheron it was long
 But wel I wot greet stryf is vs a-mong
 // What quod myn lord there is no more to done
 Of these perilis I wele be war eft sone 933
 I am rygh sekyr that the pot was crased
 Be as be may be 3e no thyng a-mased
 As vsage is lat swepe the flor aswythe
 Pluk vp 3oure hertys & beth glad & blythe 937
 The mullok on an hep I-swepid was
 And on the flor I-caste a canevas
 And al the mullok in a seue I-throwe
 And syftid & I-pikid manye a throwe 941
 // Parde quod on / sumwhat of oure metal
 3it is ther heere they that we haue nat al
 And thow this thyng mys happe as now
 A-nothir tyme it may be weel I-now 945
 Vs muste putte oure good in auenture
 A marchant parde may not al-vey endure
 Trustythy me wel in his prosperite [leaf 386, back]
 Sumtyme his good is drouned in the se 949
 And sumtyme comyth it saf vn-to the londe
 Pes quod myn lord the nexte tyme wele I fonde
 To brynge oure craft al in a-nothir plit
 And but I do sere lat me han the wit 953
 There was defaute in sumwhat wel I wot
 A-nothir seyde the fuyr was ouyr hot
 But be it hot or cold I dare seye this
 That we concludyn euere more amys 957
 We fayle of that whiche that we woldyn haue
 And in oure madnesse euere more we raue
 And whan we been to-gederis euerichon
 Euery man semyth a salamon 961
 But alle thynges whiche that schynyth as the gold Non tenens
 Nis nat gold / as I haue herd told aurum &c.

Ne eueri appil that is fayr at eye	
Ne is nat good / what so men clappe or crye	965
Righ so lo faryth it a-mongis vs	
He that semyth the wiseste be Iesus	
Is most fol whan it comyth to the pref	
And he that semyth treweste is a thef	969
That schal 3e knowe er that I from 3ow wende	
By that I of myn tale haue mad an ende	

[*No break in the MS.*]

[*THE TALE.*]

// There is a chanoun of religioun
 A-mongis vs wolde enfecte al a toun 973
 They it as gret were as was nynyue
 Rome Alysaunder Troye / & othere thre
 Hise sleightis & his infinit falsenesse
 There coude no man write as I gesse 977
 Thow that he myghte leue a thousand 3eer
 In al this world of falshed nys his per
 ffor in hise termys he so wel hym wyndis
 And spekyn hise wordis in so slye kyndis 981
 Whan he comune schal with ony wight
 That he wele make hym dote a-non ryght
 But it a fend be as hym seluyn is
 fful manye a man hath he begyled er this 985
 And wele 3if that he leue may a while [leaf 387]
 And 3it men ride & goon ful manye a myle
 Hym for to seke & haue his acqueyntaunce
 Not knowynge of his false gouernaunce 989
 And 3if 3ow liste to 3eue me audyence
 I wole it telle / here in 3oure presence
 But worschepful Chanony[s] religious
 Ne demyth nat that I slau[n]dere 3oure hous 993
 Al thow myn tale of a chanoun be
 Of euery ordere sum schrewe is pardee
 That god forbede that al a cumpayny
 Schulde rewe a synguler manys foly 997
 To slaundere 3ow is nothyng myn entent
 But to correcte that is mys I-ment

This tale was nat only told for 3ow
 But for othere mo 3e wete wel how 1001
 That a-mongis cristis apostellis twelwe
 There was no traytour but Iudas hym selue
 Thanne why schulde the remenaunt han blame
 That gilteles were / be 3ow seye I the same 1005
 Saue only this 3if 3e wele herkene me
 If ony Iudas in 3oure couent be
 Remeuyth hym be tymys I 3ow rede
 If schame or los may causen ony drede 1009
 And beth nothyng displesid I 3ow preye
 But in this cas herkenyth what I schal seye
 // In lundene was a prest an annueler
 That therin dwellede hadde manye a 3er 1013
 Whiche was so plesaunt & so seruysable
 Vn-to the wif where as sche was at table
 That sche wolde suffere hym no thyng for to paye
 ffor bord ne clothing wente he neuere so gaye 1017
 And spendyng siluyr hade he righ I-now
 Therof no fors I wele procede as now
 And telle forth myn tale of the Chanoun
 That brougte this prest to confusioun 1021
 // This false Chanoun cam vp on a day
 Vn-to this prestis chaumbere where he lay
 Be-sekyng him to lenyn hym a certeyn [leaf 287, back] 1025
 Of gold & he wolde quite it hym ageeyn
 Lene me a mark quod he but dayis thre
 And at myn day I wele it quytyn the
 And If so be that thow me fynde fals
 A-nothir day do hange me by the hals 1029
 // This man¹ hym tok a mark & that aswythe [1st monk] 1033
 And this chanoun hym thanked ofte sythe
 And tok his leue & wente forth his weye
 And at the thredde day brougte his monye
 And to the prest tok his gold a-geyn
 Wherof this prest was wondir glad & fayn

Certis quod he no thyng a-noyeth me
 To lene a man a nobele or to or thre 1037
 Or what thyng were in myn possessioun
 Whan he so trewe is of condicioun
 That in nowise he breke wele his day
 To swich a man I can neuere seyn nay 1041
 // What quod this chanoun schulde I be ontrewē
 Nay that were a thyng I-falle were al of newe
 Trouthe is a thyng that I wele euere kepe
 Vn-to that day In whiche that I schal crepe 1045
 [In to my graue or elles god for-bede [Floane MS 1695, leaf 172]
 Beleueth pis as sykere as ys youre crede]
 God thanke I & in good tyme be it seyde
 That there was neuere man zit euele apayed 1049
 ffor gold ne siluyr that he to me sente
 Ne neuere falshed in myn herte I mente
 And sere quod he now of myn pryuyte
 Syn 3e godly han ben on to me 1053
 And kythed to me so gret gentillesse
 Sumwhat to kythe with 3oure kyndenesse
 I wele 3ow schewe & 3if 3ow lystē to lere
 I wele 3ow teche pleyntly the manere 1057
 How I can werke in philosophie
 Takith good hed 3e schul wel sen at I3e
 That I wele don a maystrie er I go
 // 3e quod the prest / 3e sere & wele 3e so 1061
 Marie therof I preye 3ow hertely
 At 3oure comaundement trewely
 Qu[o]d the chanoun & ellis god for-beede [leaf 388]
 Lo how this thef coude his seruyse bede 1065
 fful soth it is that swich profered seruyse
 Stynkyth as wytnesseth these olde wise
 And that ful sone I wele it veryfye
 In this chanoun rote of alle trecherye 1069
 That eueremore delit hath & gladnesse
 Sweche fendely thougtis in his herte inpresse.

How cristis peple he may to myschef brynge
 God kepe vs from his false dissymulynge 1073
 // Not wiste this prest with hom that he delte
 Ne of his harm comynge he no thyng felte
 O sely prest o sely innocent
 With coueytyse a-non thow schat ben blent 1077
 O graceles ful blynde is thyn conceyte¹ [1. first conceyte]
 No thyng art thow war of the disseyte
 Whiche that this fox I-schapyn hat to thee
 Hise wyly wrenchis / thow ne mayst not fle 1081
 Wherfore to the conclusioun
 That referith to thyn confusioun
 Vnhappi man a-non I wele me hie
 To tellyn thyn vnwit & heigh folye 1085
 And ek the falsenesse of that othir wreche
 As fer forth as that myn conyng wele streche
 // This Chanoun was myn lord 3e wolden wene
 Sire hust in feyth & by the heuenys queene 1089
 It was a nothir Chanoun & not he
 That can an hunderede fold more subtylete
 He hath betrayed folkis sundery tyme
 Of his falsenesse it dullyth me to ryme 1093
 Euere whan that I speke / of his falshede
 ffor schame of hym mynne chekis waxen reede
 Algatis they begynne for to glowe
 ffor rednesse haue I non righ wel I knowe 1097
 In myn visage for fumys dyuerse
 Of metallis whiche as 3e han herd me reherse
 Consumyd & wastid han myn rednesse
 New tak hed of this Chanounnys cursedenesse 1101
 Sere quod he to the prest let 3oure man gon [leaf 208, back]
 ffor quik siluyr that we hadde it a-non
 And lat hym bryngyn ouuncis two or thre
 And whan he comyth as faste schul 3e se 1105
 A wondyr thyng whiche 3e say neuere er this
 // Sere quod the prest it schal ben don I-wis

He bad his seruau^t / fechyn hym this thyng
 And he al redy was at his bedyng 1109
 And wente hym forth & cam a-non a-geyn
 With this quik syluyr sot[h]ly for to seyn
 And tok these ouncis thre to the Chanoun
 And hem ¹leyde fayre & weel a doun [11^{first} h] 1113
 And bad the seruau^t colis for to brynge
 That he a-non myght go to hese werkynge
 The colis right a-non weren I-fet
 And this Chanoun tok out a croslet 1117
 Of his bosum & schewed it the prest
 This instrument wheche that thow sest
 Take in thyn hand / & put thyn self ther-inne 1120
 Of this quiksiluir [an vnce and here be-gynne] [Sloane 1685, 17173:
 In name of cryst to wexe a philysophere *half the line serait out in Camb. MS.*
 There ben but fewe to whiche that I wolde profere
 To schewyn hem thus meche of myn science
 ffor 3e schul sen here be experience 1125
 That this quik siluyr I wele mortifye
 Rygh in 3oure sighte a-non with-outyn lye
 And make it as good siluer & as fyn
 As there is ony in 3oure pors or myn 1129
 Or ellis where & make it malliable
 And ellis heldith me fals & vn-stable
 Amongis folk for euere to appere
 // I haue a poudere here that coste me ful dere 1133
 Schal make al good for it is cause of al
 Myn kunnyng whiche that I 3ow schewe schal
 Voydith 3oure man & lat hym be ther oute
 And schet the dore whil we ben a-boute 1137
 Oure pryuyte that no man vs espye
 Whilis that we werke in this philosephie
 Al as he bad fulfyld was in dede [leaf 380]
 This ilke seruauⁿ[t] a-non ryght out 3eede 1141
 And his maystyr schette the dore a-non
 And to here labour spedyly they gon

This prest at this chanonys biddy[n]g
 Vp-on the fer a-non sette this thyng 1145
 And blew the fuyr & besiede hym ful faste
 And this chanoun in-to the croslet caste
 A poudere not I wherof that it was
 I-mad othir of chalk othir of glas 1149
 Or sumwhat eft / was nat worth a flye
 To blynde with this prest & bad hym hye
 The colis for to couche al a-boue
 The croslet for in tokenynge I the loue 1153
 Quod the chanoun thyne owene handis two
 Schul werche alle thynges whiche that schal here be do
 Graunt mercy quod the prest & was ful glad
 And couchede cole as that the chanoun bad 1157
 And whil he besi was this fendeli wreche
 This false chanoun the foule fend hym feche
 Out of his bosum tok a bechewe cole
 In which ful subtilly was mad an hole 1161
 And there in was put of siluyr lymayle
 An ounce & stoppid was with-outyn fayle
 This hole with wex to putte the lymayl in
 And vndyr-stondith that this false gyn 1165
 Was not mad there but it was mad byfore
 And othere thyngis that I schal telle more
 Here afterward which that he with hym broughte
 Er he cam ther hym to begile he thoughte 1169
 And so he dede er than they wente a twynne
 Til he hadde ternede hym coude he not blynne
 It dullede me whan I of hym speke
 On his falsehed fayn wolde I be wreke 1173
 3if I wiste how but he is her & ther
 He is so varyaunt he abit nower
 But takyth hed seris now for godis lowe
 He tok his cole of which I spak a-boue 1177
 And in his hand he bar it pryuely [leaf 380, back]
 And whilis the prest couchede besili¹ [first pryuely]

The colis as I tolde ȝow er this
 This chanoun seyde frend ȝe don a-mys 1181
 This is nat couched as it oughte be
 But sone I schal amendlyn it quod he
 Now lat me medle therewith but a while
 ffor of ȝow haue I pete be seynt gyle 1185
 ȝe been rygh hot I se wel how ȝe swete
 Haue here a cloth & wipe away the weete
 And whilis that the prest wipede his face
 This chanoun tok his cole with sory grace 1189
 And leyde a-boue vp on the mydward
 Of the croset & blew wel aftyrward
 Til that the colys begynne faste brenne
 Now ȝeue vs drynke quod the Chanoun thanne 1193
 As swythe al schal be wel I vndirtake
 Sitte we doun & lat vs merye make
 And whan that this chanouns bechene cole
 Was brent al the lemayle out of the hole 1197
 In-to the croset fyl a-non a-doun
 And so it muste nedis be resoun
 Syn it so euene a-boue couchede was
 But therof ^{as} wyste the prest allas 1201
 He demede alle the colis lyche goode
 ffor of the sleyghte he nothyng vndyrstode
 And whan this alcamystre saw his tyme
 Rise vp quod he sere prest & stand by me 1205
 And for I wot weel Ingot haue ȝe non
 Goth walkyth forth & bryngeth a chalk ston
 ffor I wele make it of the same schap
 That is an Ingot / ȝif I may han hap 1209
 And brynge ek with ȝow a bolle or a panne
 fful of watyr & ȝe schul wel se thanne
 How that oure besynesse schal thryue & preue
 And ȝit for ȝe schal han non mys-beleue 1213
 Ne wrong conceite of me in ȝoure absence
 I wele not ben out of ȝoure presence

But gon <i>with</i> 3ow & come <i>with</i> 3ow a-geyn	[leaf 390]
The chambere dore schortly for to seyn	1217
They openede & schette & wente here weye	
And forth <i>with</i> hem they caryedyn the keye	
And come ageyn <i>with</i> -outyn ony delay	
What schulde I taryen al the longe day	1221
He tok the chalk & schop it in the wise	
Of an Ingot as I schal 3ow deuyse	
I seye he tok out of his owene sleue	
A teyne of syluyr euele mote he cheue	1225
Whiche that ne was but an ounce of weighte	
And taketh hed now of his owene sleighte	
He schop his Ingot in lenthe & in breede	
Of this teigne <i>with</i> -outyn ony drede	1229
So slyly that the prest it nat espide	
And in his sleue a-non he gan it hide	
And from the fuyr he tok vp his mater	
And in the Ingot put it <i>with</i> merye cheer	1233
And in the watyr vessel he it caste	
Whan that hym leste & bad the prest as faste	
Loke what there is put in thyn hand & grope	
Thow fynde schalt there syluyr as I hope	1237
What deuyll of helle schulde it ellis be	
Schauynge of syluyr syluyr is parde	
// He put his hand in & tok vp a teyne	
Of silluyr fyn & glad in euery veyne	1241
Was this prest whan he seyg[h] that it was so	
Goddis blyssyngis & hise moderis also	
And alle halwis haue the sere chanoun	
Seyde the prest & I here malysoun	1245
But & 3e vouchen saf to techyn it me	
This nobelle craft & this sotylete	
I wele been 3oure in al that euere I may	
// Quod the chanoun 3it wele I make asay	1249
The secunde tyme that 3e may takyn hede	
And been expert of this / & in 3oure nede	

A-nothir day assay in myn absence
 This disciplyne & this crafty science 1253
 Let take a-nothir vnce quod he tho [leaf 390, back]
 Of quyk syluyr with-outyn wordis mo
 An[d] do therwith as 3e han don er this
 Whith that othyr which that now syluyr is 1257
 // The prest hym besyed in al that euere he can
 To doon as this Chanoun this cursede man
 Comaundede hym & faste blew the fyr
 ffor to come theffect of his desyr 1261
 And this chanoun rygh in the meene while
 Al redy was this prest eft to begyle
 And for a cuntenaunce in his hand he bar
 An holmene stikke / taak keepe & be war 1265
 In the ende of which an ounce & nomore¹ [¹ first namare]
 Of silvir lemail put was as byfore
 Was in his cole / & stoppid with wex weel
 ffor to kepe in his lymayl euerydel 1269
 And whil the prest was in his besynesse
 This chanoun with his stikke gan hym dresse
 To hym a-non & his poudere caste in
 As he dede er ²the deuyl out of his skyn [² t. first d] 1273
 Hym turne I preye to god for his falsehede
 ffor he was euere fals in thought & dede
 And with this stikke a-boue the Croslet
 That was ordeynyd with that false Iet 1277
 He styre³ the colis til relente gan [³ ty altered]
 The wex a-3en the fer as euery man
 But it a fol be wot wel it mot neede
 And al that in the stikke was out 3ede 1281
 And in the croslet hastyliche it fel
 // Now goode sere what wele 3e bet than weel
 Whan that this prest was begiled ageyn
 Supposynge nought but trouthe sothe to seyn 1285
 He was so glad that I can not expresse
 In no manere his trouthe & his gladnesse

And to the Chanoun he proferede eft sone
 Body & good 3e quod the Chanoun sone 1289
 Thow pore I ¹ be crafty thow schat me fynde [b altered]
 I warne the 3it is there more be-hynde . .
 Is there ²ony copyr / herinne seyde he³ [leaf 301] [→ in the cor-
 rector's hand]
 3a quod the prest / sere I trowe wel there be 1293
 Ellis go beye vs sum & that aswythe
 Now goode sere go thyn wey an hithe
 He wente his wey & with this copar cam
 And this chanoun it in his handis nam 1297
 And of that copar weyed vp but an ounce
 Al to symple is myn tunge to pronounce
 As mynystre of myn wit the doubilnesse
 Of this Chanoun rote of alle cursedenesse 1301
 He semede frendely to hem that knewyn hym not
 But he was feenly bothe in werk & thouzt
 It deryeth me to telle of his falsenesse
 And neuer the les 3it wele I it expresse 1305
 To the entent that men may be war therby
 And for non othir cause trewely
 // He putte his Ounce of copir in the croslet
 And on the fer aswythe he hath it set 1309
 And cast in poudyr & made the prest to blowe
 And in his werkynge for to stoupe lowe
 As he dede er & al was but a Iape
 Rygh as hym lyste the prest he made 1313
 And afterward in the Ingot it caste
 And in the pazne put it as the laste
 Of watyr / & in he putte his owene hand
 And in his sleue as 3e be-forynhand 1317
 Herde me telle he hadde a syluyr teyne
 He slyly tok it out this cusede heyne
 Vnwetynge this prest of this false craft
 And in the pannys boteme he hath it laft 1321
 And in the watyr rounbelynge to & fro
 And wondyr pryuyly tok vp also

The copyr teyne nought knowynge this prest
 And hedde it & hym hente by the brest 1325
 And to hym spak & thus seyde in his game
¹sToupith a-doun by god 3e be to blame [1 s later]
 Helpith me now as I dede 3ow whil er
 Put in 3oure Hand & lokyth what is ther 1329
 This prest tok vp the syluyr teyn a-non [leaf 391, back]
 Thanne seyde the chanoun lat hym gon
 With these thre teynys ²which thatwe han wrought² [²—³ corr.]
 To sum gold smyth & loke 3if they been ouzt 1333
 ffor be myn feyth I nolde for myn hood
 But 3if there were siluyr fyn & good
 And that aswithe preuyd schal ²it be² //
 // Vn-to the goldsmyth with these teynys thre 1337
 They wente & putte these teynys in asay
 To fier & hamyr ne myghte no man sey nay
 But that they were as hem oghte bee
 // This sottede prest ho was gladdere than he 1341
 Was neuere brid gladdere a-3en the day
 Ne nyghtyngale in the sesoun of may
 Was neuere non that leste bet to synge
 Ne lady lustiere in carolyng 1345
 Or for to speke of loue & womanhede
 Ne knyght in armys to don an hardy dede
 To standyn in grace of his lady dere
 Than hadde this prest this sory craft to lere 1349
 And to the Chanoun thus he spak & seide
 ffor loue of god that for vs alle deyede
 And as I may deserue it vn-to 3ow
 What schal this receypt coste tellith me now 1353
 // By oure lord quod this Chanoun it is dere
 I warne 3ow wel / for saue I & a frere
 In ³Ingelond there can no man it make [2 s first l]
 No fors quod he now sere for godys sake 1357
 What schal I paye tellith me I preye
 I-wis quod he it is wol deere I seye

Sire at on word 3if that 3ow leste it haue
 3e schul paye fourty pound so god me saue 1361
 And nere the frenchepe that 3e dede er this
 To me 3e schuldyn paye more I-wis
 This prest the summe of fourty pound anon
 Of noblis fette & tok hem euerichon 1365
 To this Chanoun for this ilke resseit
 Al his werkyng was but fraude & disseid
 Sire prest quod he / I kepe to han no loos [leaf 306]
 Of myn craft for I wolde it kept weere clos 1369
 And as 3e loue me kepith it secre
 ffor and men knewyn al myn subtilete
 By god they woldyn haue so gret enuye
 To me by cause of myn philosophie 1373
 I schulde been deed there were non othir weye
 God it for-bede quod the prest what sey3e
 3it hadde I leuere to spendyn al myn good
 Whiche that I haue & ellis wexe I wood 1377
 Than that 3e schuldyn fallyn in swich myschef
 ffor 3oure goode wil sere haue 3e rygh good pref
 Quod the chanoun & farewel graunt mercy
 He wente his wey & neuere the prest hym sey 1381
 Aftyr that day & whan the prest schulde
 Makyn assay at swych tyme as he wolde
 Of this resseit farewel it wolde not be
 Lo thus be-lapid & begiled was he 1385
 Thus made he his introductioun
 To brynge folk to distruccioun
 // Considerith serie / how that in eche estat
 By-twixe men & gold there is debat 1389
 So fer forth that onethis is there non
 This multiplynge thus blent manyon
 That in good fey I trowe that it be
 The cause grettest of swich skarsete 1393
 Philisopheris spekyn so mystily
 In this craft that men may not come therby

ffor ony wit that men han now on dayis
 They mowe weel cheteryn as don Iayis 1397
 And in here termys sette here lust & peyne
 But to here purpos schul they neuere atteyne
 A man may lightly lerne 3if he haue ought
 To multiplye & turne his good to noght 1401
 Lo swich a lukere is in this lusty game
 A manys murthe it wolde turne in-to grame
 And emptyn grete & heuy pursis
 And makyn folk for to purchase cursis 1405
 Of hem that han here good there-to I-lent [leaf 392, back]
 O fy for schame they that han been brent
 Allas can they nat fien the feris hete
 3e that it vse I rede 3e it lete 1409
 Lest 3e lese al / for bet than neuere is late
 Neuere to thryue were to longe a date
 Thow 3e prolle ay 3e schul it neuere fynde
 3e been as bold as is bayard the blynde 1413
 That blunderith forth & peril castyth non
 He is as bold to renne ageyn a ston
 As for to gon besydis in the weye
 So fare 3e that multiplye I seye 1417
 3[i]f that 3oure eye can not seen a ryght
 Loke that 3oure mynde lakke not 3oure sight
 ffor thow 3e loke neuere so broode & stare
 3e schul no thyng wyne on that chaffare 1421
 But waste al that 3e may rape & renne
 With-drawe the fuyr lest it to faste brenne
 Medelyth no more with that art I meene
 ffor 3if 3e don 3oure thrift is goon ful cleene 1425
 And rygh aswithe I wele 3ow tellyn heere
 What that 3e philisopheris seyn in this mateere
 // Lo thus seyth arnold of the newe toun
 As his rosarie makyth mencyoun 1429
 He seyth riȝt thus with-outyn ony lye
 There may no man Mercurye mortifye

But ȝif it be with his brotheris knowelechyng
 How that he / which that fyrst seyde this thing 1433
 Of philosophieris fadir was / hermes
 He sey how that he dragoun douteles
 Ne deyeth nat but ȝif that he be slayn
 With his brothir & that is for to sayn 1437
 By dragoun mercurye & non othir
 He vndyr-stod & brymston by his brothyr
 That out of sol & luna weere I-drawe
 And therefore tak heed / seyde he to myn sawe 1441
 Lat no man besye this art for to seche
 But ȝif that he thentencioun & speche
 Of philosophieris vndyrstonde can [leaf 593]
 An[d] ȝif he do he is a lowede man 1445
 ffor this science & this cunnyng quod he
 Is of the secre of the secretis parde
 // Also there was a disciple of plato
 That on a tyme he seyde his maystir to 1449
 As his bok Senyor wele bere witnesse
 And this was his demaunde in sothfastnesse
 Teelle me the name of the pryue stoon
 And plato answerde vn-to hym a-noon 1453
 Take the ston that Titanos men name
 Whiche is that quod he Magnasia is the same
 Seyde plato ȝa syre & is it thus
 This is ignotum per ignocius 1457
 What is magnacia goode sere I ȝow preye
 // It is a watyr that is mad I seye
 Of elementis foure quod Plato
 Telle me the rooche goode sire quod he tho 1461
 Of that watyr ȝif that it be ȝoure wil
 Nay nay quod plato serteyn that I nyl
 // The philosophieris sworn were euërichon
 That they schulde discouere it on to non 1465
 Nor in the bok it write in no manere
 ffor on to cryst it is so lef & deere

That he wele not that it discouered be
 But wheere it likyth to his deitee 1469
 Men for to enspire & ek for to defende
 Whom that hym likith lo this is the ende
 Thanne conclude¹ I thus syn that god of heuene [¹ in *first* hit]
 Ne wele not that the philisopheris neuene 1473
 How that a man schal come vn-to this stoon
 I rede as for the beste lat it gon
 ffor ho so makyth good his aduersarye
 As for to werkyn ony thyng In contrarye 1477
 Of his wil sertis neuere schal he thryue
 Thow that he multyplicie terme of lyue
 And there a ppynt for endit is myn tale
 God sende euery trewe man bote of his bale 1481

Here is endit the chanounnys manys tale [leaf 598, back]

[*Slight break in the MS.*]

GROUP H. FRAGMENT IX.

§ 1. THE MANCIPLE'S HEAD-LINK.

CAMBRIDGE MS.

Heryth the merye wordys of the Host to the cok of
Lundene.

[on leaf 393, back]

[Gap of two lines in the MS.]

W Ote ȝe not where there stant a lityl toun
Which¹ that I-clepid is Bobbe vp & doun
Vndyr the ble in Cauntyrbury weye
Theere gan oure ost for to lape & pleye 4
And seyde seris what doun is in the myre
Is there no man for preyere ne for hire
That wole a-wake oure felawe here be-hynde
A thef myghte ful lightly hym robbe & bynde 8
Se how he nappith so how for¹ Cokkis bonys [¹ word scratcht out]
That he wele falle from his hors at onys
Is that a cok of lundene with myschaunce
Do hym come forth he knowith his penaunce 12
ffor he schal telle a tale be myn fey
Al thow it be not worth a botel hey² [² otel hey, later?]
A-wake thow cok quod he god ȝeue the sorwe
What eylyth the to slepe by the morwe 16
Hast thow had fien al nyght or art thow dronke
Or hast thow with sum quene al nyght I-swonkyn
So that thow mayst nat holdyn vp thyn hed
This cok that was ful pale & no thing red 20
Seyde to oure hoost so god me blysse
As there is fallyn on me swich heynesse
Not I not why that me were leuere slepe
Than the beste galoun wyn in chepe 24

CAMBRIDGE 567 (6-T. 576)

// Wel quod the Maunciple ȝif it may doon ese 25
 To the sere Cook & to no whight displese
 Whiche that here rydyth in this cumpaynye
 And that oure host wele of his curteysye 28
 I wele as now excuse the of thyn tale
 ffor in good fey thyn visage is ful pale
 Thynne eyne daswe ek as that me thynkith
 And weel I wot thyn breth ful soure stynkith 32
 That schewith weel thow art nat weel disposed [leaf 304]
 Of me certeyn thow schalt nat been I-glosed
 Se how he ganyth lo this dronkene wight
 As thow he wolde swelwe vs a-noon right 36
 Hold clos thyn mouth man by thyn fadyr kyn
 The deuyl of helle set his foot ther in
 Thyn cursede breth wele enfecte vs alle
 ffy stynkyng swyn fy foule mote the be-falle 40
 A takyth hede seris of this lusty man
 Now swete seris wole ȝe Iuste at the fan
 There-to me thynkyth ȝe been weel I-schape
 I trowe that ȝe dronkyn han wyn ape 44
 And that is whan men pleyen with a straw
 And with his speche the Cook wex wroth & wraw
 And on the Manciple he gan nodde faste
 ffor lak of speche & doun the hors hym caste 48
 Wheere as he lay tyl that the hym vp tok
 This was a fayr chiuache of a cook
 Allas ne hadde holde hym bi his ladil
 And er that he ageyn were in his sadil 52
 Theere was greet schowyng / bothe two & fro
 To lyfte hym vp & meche care & wo
 So vnwery was this sorye pallede gost
 And to the mauncyple thanne spak oure hoost 56
 By-cause drynk hat *dominacioun*
 Vp-on this man by myn saluacioun
 I trowe lewedely he wolde telle his tale
 ffor were it wyn or old / or moysti ale 60


That he hath dronkyn he spekyth in his nose 61
 And sneseth faste & ek he hath the pose
 He hath also to don moore than I-nogh
 To kepe hym & his capil out of the slow 64
 And If he falle from his capil eft sone
 Thanne schal we alle han I-nogh to done
 To lifyn vp his heuy dronkene cors
 Telle on thyn tale of hym make I no fors 68
 // But jit Manciple In feyth thow art to nyce
 Thus opynly repreue hym of his vyce
 Anothir day he wele paraurenture [leaf 394, back]
 Reclayme the & brynge the to loure 72
 I mene he speke wele of smale thyngis
 As for to pynche at thynne rekenyngis
 That were nat onest 3if that it come to pref
 // No quod the Manciple that were a greet myschef 76
 So myght he lyghtely brynge me in the snare
 3it hadde I leuere payen for the mare
 Whiche he rit on than he schulde with me st'yue
 I wele nat wrathe hym also mote I thy rue 80
 That that I spak I seyde but in borde
 And wete 3e weel I haue heere in a gorde
 A draght of wyn 3a of a ripe grape
 And right a-noon 3e schul seen a good Iape 84
 This cok schal drenke therof If I may
 Vp peyne of deth he wele nat sey me nay
 And certeynly to tellyn as it was
 Of this vessel this Cook drank faste allas 88
 What nedith hym he drank I-now by-forn
 And whan he hadde poupid in this horn
 To the manciple he tok the gorde a-geyn
 And of that drenk the Cook was wondyr fayn 92
 And thankede hym in swich wyse as he coude
 Thanne gan oure hoost to laghe wondyr loude
 And seyde I se weel it is necessarie
 Where that we goon / we good drynk ^[1...1 corrected] with vs carie 96

ffor that wele turne rancour & disese. 97
 To a-cord & loue & manye a wrong appese.
 O Bacus I-blyssede 'be thyn name.¹ [1-1 corrected]
 That so canst turne earnest in-to game. 100
 Worchipe & thank be to thyn deite.
 Of that matiere 3e gete namore of me.
 Telle on thyn tale manciple I the preye.
 Weel sere quod he herkenyth what I schal seye. 104

[The remainder of the page is blank.]

Here begynneth the Manciple hys tale [leaf 395]

[Painting of the Manciple on horseback.]


 Han phebus dwellede heere in this erthe adoun
 As olde bokys makyn mencioune
 He was the moste lusti bacheleere
 In al this world & ek the beste archere 108
 He slow Phitoun the serpent as he lay
 Slepynge a-geyn the sunne vp-on a day
 And manye a nothir¹ noble worthi dede
 He with his bowe ²wroughte as 3e may rede³

Pleeyen he coude on euery menstrelsyne
 And syngyn that it was a melodye

[1 t altered]
 [2 w first b]
 [3 rede first bere]

To heryn of his cleere voys the soun
 Sertis the kyng of thebes Amphioun 116

That *with* his syngyng wallede that cete
 Koude neuere syngyn half so wel as he
 Therto he was the semylyeste man
 That is or was sithe that the world be-gan 120

What nedith it hise feturis to discryue
 ffor in this world was non so fayr on lyue
 He was therwith fulfylde of gentylesse
 Of honour & of parfyt worthynesse. 124

// This phebus that was flour of bachilleri^e [leaf 395, back]

As wel in fredom as in chyualrye
 ffor his disport in signe ek of victorye
 Of phitoun so as tellyth vs the storye 128

Was wont to beryn in his hand a bowe
 // Now hadde this phebus in his ⁴hous a ⁵Crowe [⁴o, ⁵C altered]
 Whiche in a cago he fosterede manye a day
 And taughte it speke as men teche a Iay 132

Whit was this crowe as is a snow whit swan	133
And countyrfetid the speche of euery man	
He coude whan he schulde telle a tale	
Therwith in al this world non nyghtynghale	136
Ne coude by an hunderede thousent deel	
Syngyn so wondir meryely & weel	
// Now hadde this phebus in his hous a wyf	
Whiche that he louede moore than his lyf	140
And nyght & day dede euere his diligence	
Hire for to please & don hire reuerence	
Saue only the sothe that I schal sayn	
Ialus he was & wolde haue kep here fayn	144
ffor hym were loth byiapid for to bee	
And so is euery wight in swich degre	
But al in ydyl for it auaylyth noght	
A good wif that is slene in werk & thought	148
Schulde not been kept in noon a-wayt certeyn	
And trewely the labour is in veyn	
To kepe a schrewe for it wele nat bee	
This holde I for a verray vanytee	152
To spille labour for to kepe wivis	
Thus wrytyn olde clerkis in here lyuys	
But now to purpos as I ferst began	
This worthi phebus doth al that he can	156
To plesyn here / wenyng that sweche plesaunce	
And for his manhede & hise gouernaunce	
That no man schulde haue put hire from hire grace	
But god it wot there may no man embrace	160
As to discryue a thyng / whiche that nature	
Hath naturelly set in a cryature	
// Take any thyng & put it in a cage	[leaf 396]
And do al thyn entent & thyn corage	164
To fostere it tenderely with mete & drynk	
Of alle deynteis that thow canst be-thynk	
And keepe it also clenly as thow may	
Al thow his cage of gold be neuere so gay	168

ȝit hath this bryd be twenty thousand fold	169
Leuere in a forest that is rude & cold	
Gon ete wermys & sweche wrechedenesse	
ffor euere this bryd wele doon his busynesse	172
To escapyn out of his cage ȝif he may	
His lyberte this brid desiryth ay	
// Lat take a Cat & fostere hym weel with mylk	
And tendere flesch & make his couche of silk	176
And lat hym seen a mous goon by the wal	
A-non he weywith Milk & flesch & al	
And eueri deynte that is in that hous	
Swich apetit hath he / to ete a mous	180
Loo heere hat lust his dominacioun	
And apetit flemyth discrecioun	
// A sche wolf hath also a dyuers kynde	
The lewedeste wolf that sche may fynde	184
Or lest of reputacioun that wele sche take	
In tyme whanne hire lust to han a make	
// Alle these ensaumplis speke I by these men	
That been ontrewē & no thyng by wemen	188
ffor men han euere a lykerous apetit	
On lowere thyng to parfornyn here delyt ¹	[¹ delyt corrected]
Than on here wyuys ben they neuere so fayre	
Ne neuere so trewe ne neuere so debonayre	192
fflesch is so newefangil with myschaunce	
That we ne cunne in nothyng han plesaunce	
That sounyth in-to wertew only whyle	
This phebus which that thoughte on no gyle	196
Disceyuede was for al his Iolyte	
ffor vndyr hym a-nothir hadde sche	
A man of litil reputacioun	
Not worth to phebus in comparisoun	200
The more harm is it ofte happith so	[leaf 326, ba-k]
Of whiche there comyth meche harm & wo	
And so be-fel that phebus was absent	
His wif a-non hath forth his leman sent	204

Hire leman Certis this is a knauych speche	205
ffor ¹ 3euyth it me & that I 3ow be-seche	[? r. first 3]
The wyse plato seyth as 3e may reede	
The word mote nede a-corde with the dede	208
3if men schal telle propirly a thyng	
The word mot Cosyn be to the werkyng	
I am a boystouȝ man ryght thus seye I	
Theere is no differens trewely	212
Be-twixe a wyf that is of high degre	
3if of hire body disonest sche be	
[And a pouer/ wenche othir/ than this/. [Harl. 1756, U ^o 202, bk]	
If/ it so be thei wirke bothe a mys/.]	216
But that the gentile in hire stat a-boue	
Sche schal be clepid his lady as in loue	
And for that othir is a pore woman	
Sche schal be clepid his wenche or his leman	220
And god it wot myn owene deere brothir	
Men leyn that on as as lowe / as lyth that othir	
// Righ so by-twixe a titeles tyraunt	
And an outlawe or a thef ² erraunt [? or corrected]	224
The same I seye there is no difference	
To alysaundere was told this sentence	
That for the tyraunt is of grettere myght	
By force of meyne for to slen doun ryght	228
And brennyȝ hous & hom & make al pleyn	
Lo therfore is he clepid a capitayn	
// And for the outlawe hat but smal meyne	
And may not doon so gret an harm as he	232
Ne bryȝge a cuntre to so greet myschif	
Men clepe hym an outlawe or a thef	
But for I am a man not textuel	
I wele not telle of textys neuere a del	236
I wele go to myn tale as I be-gan	
Whan Phebus wif hath sent for hire leman	
Anon they wroughtyn al here lust volage	
The white Crowe that heng ay in the cage	240

Beheld here werk & seyde neuere a word [leaf 397]
 And whan that hom was come Phebus the lord
 This Crowe song Cokhow cokhow cokhow¹ [1 w. first we]
 // What brid quod Phebus what song syngist thow 244
 Ne were thow wone so meryely to synge
 That to myn herte it was a reioysynge
 To here thyn voys allas what Ioye is this
 By god quod he I synge nat a-mys 248
 Phebus quod he for al thyn worthynes
 ffor al thyn beute & thyn gentiles
 ffor al thyn song & thyn menstralsye
 ffor al thyn waytyng blered is thyn eye 252
 With on of lytyl reputacioun
 Nogh[t] worth to the in computacioun
 The mountenaunce of a gnatte so mot I thryue
 ffor on thyn bed thyn wif I saw hym swyue 256
 What wele 3e more the crowe a-non hym tolde
 By sadde tokenys & bi wordis bolde
 How that his wif hadde doon hire lecherye
 Hym to gret schame & to greet vilenye 260
 And tolde hym oftyn he saw it with hise yen
 // This Phebus gan a-woyward for to wryen
 And thoute his sorweful herte brast a-to
 His bowe he bente & sette therin a flo 264
 And in his yre his wif thanne hath he slayn
 This is theeffect there is no more to seyn
 ffor sorwe of which he brak his menstrelcie
 Bothe harpe & lute geterne & sauterye 268
 And ek he brak hise arwis & his bowe
 And aftyr that thus spak he to the crowe
 // Traytour quod he with tunge of Scorpious
 Thow hast me brought to myn confusioun 272
 Allas that I was² wrought why nere I ded [2 was correcte.]
 O deere wyf o gemme of lustiheed
 That were to me so sad / & ek so trewe
 Now lyst thow deed / with face pale of hewe 276

fful gyltales that durste I swere I-wis	277
O rakele hand to don so foule a-mys	
O troubele wit O yre recheles	[leaf 307, back]
That on auysid smytist gilteles	280
¶ O wantrust ful of fals suspeciou	
Where was thyn wit & thyn discrecioun	
O eueri man be war of rakilnesse	
Ne trowe no thyng <i>with</i> -oute gret witenesse	284
Smyt nat to sore er than 3e wetyn why	
And beth auysed weel & sobirly	
Er 3e doon only execucioun	
Vp-on 3oure yre for suspeciou	288
Allas a thousent folk han rakil yre	
fully fordon & brough hem in the myre	
Allas for sorw I wele myn seluyn sle	
And to the crowe o false thef quod he	292
I wele the quite a-non thyn false tale	
Thow sunge whilhom lich a Nyghtyngale	
Now schalt thow false thef thyn song forgon	
An ek thynne white federis euerichon	296
Ne neuere in al thyn lyf ne schalt tow speke	
Thus schal men on a traytour been a-wreke	
Thow & thynne ospryng / Schul been blake	
Ne neuere swete noyse schul 3e make	300
But euere crye a-zen tempest & reyn	
In tokenynge that thour the myn wif is slayn	
And to the Crowe he styrt & that a-non	
And pullede hise white federis euerychon	304
And made hym blak & raft hym al his song	
And ek his speche & out ate dore hym along	
Vnto the devil whiche I hym be-take	
And for this cas been alle crowis blake	308
¶ Lordyngis by this exsauple I 3ow preye	
Beth war & takyth kep what that I seye	
∴ Ne tellyth neuere no man In 3oure lyf	
How that a nothir man hath dyght his wyf	312

He wele þow hatyn mortally certeyn	313
Dauȝ Salomon as wise clerkis seyn	
Techith a man to kepe his tunge weel	
But as I seyde I ne am not tixtuel	316
But natheles that taughte me myn dame	[leaf 396]
// Myn sone thynke on the Crowe a godis name	
Myn sone kep weel thyn tunge & kep thyn frend	
A wekede tunge is werse than a feend	320
Myn sone from a feend men may hem blysse	
Myn sone god of his endeles goodnesse	
Wallede a tunge with teth & lippis ek	
ffor man schulde hym a-vise what he spek	324
Myn sone ful ofte for to meche speche	
Hath manye a man been spilt as clerkis teche	
But for lytil speche auysely	
I no man schent to speke generally	328
Myn sone thyn tunge schuldist thow restreyne	
At alle tymys but whan thow dost thyn peyne	
To speke of god in honour & preyere	
// The fyrste vertu sone ȝif thow wilt leere	332
Is to restreyne & kepe weel thyn tunge	
Thus lernede childeryn whan that they ben ȝonge	
Myn sone of mekyl spekyng euele avysed	
There lasse spekyng hadde I-now suffised	336
Comyth meche harm it was me told & taught	
In mechil speche synne wantyth naught	In multi-loquē non de- est peccatum.
Wist thow wh[e]rof rakyl tunge seruyth	
Right as a swerd forkyttyth & for-keruyth	340
An arm on two myn deere sone rygth so	
A tunge kyttyth frendsche[pe] al atwo	
A Iangelere is to god abamynable	
Reede salomon so wys & honorable	344
Reede Daunyth in hise psalmys rede Senekke	
Myn sone spek nat but with thyn heed thow bekke	
Dissymule as thow weere def ȝif that thow heere	
A Iangelere speke / of parlyous mateere	348

The flemyng seyth & lerne it ȝif the leste	349
That lytil lāngelyng causyȝh meche reste	
Myn sone ȝif thou no wekede word hast seyȝd	
The thar nat drede the for to been by-wreyȝd	352
But he that hath mysseyȝd / I dare weel sen	
He may by no weye clepe his word a-geyn	
Thyng that is seyȝd / is seyȝd & forth it goth	[leaf 398, back]
Thow hym repente or be hym lef or loth	356
He is his thral to whom that he hath sayȝd	
A tale of whiche he is now euele apayed	
Myn sone be war & be non autour newe	
Of tydyngis whedyr they been false or trewe	360
Where so thou come a-mongis highe or lowe	
Keek weel thyn tunge & think vp-on the Crowe	362

Here is endit the Mauncipell tale/

GROUP I. FRAGMENT X.

§ 1. THE BLANK-PARSON LINK.

[This is really a link between some unwritten Tale and the Parson's. It has been made into the Manciple-Parson Link (or Feoman-Parson by the Christ-Church MS) by Chaucer's copiers, though not meant for it.]

CAMBRIDGE MS.

And here folwyn

the wordys of chaucer to the host

[on leaf 398, back]

BY that the Manciple hadde his tale I-endid
The sunne from the south lyne was descendid
So lowe that he ne was not to myn sight
Degreis nynne & twenty as in hight 4
Ten of the klok it was tho as I gesse
ffor eleuene fote or lytil more or lesse
Myn schadew was at tilke tyme as there
Of swiche feet as in myn lenthe partede weere 8
In sexe feet equal of proporcyoun
Therwit[h] the ¹monys exaltacyoun¹ [1—1 over an example]
I mene libra alwey gan assende
As we were enterynge at a thorpis ende 12
ffor which oure host as he was wone to gye
As in this cas this Ioly cumpaynye
Seyde in this wise lordyngis euerichon
Now lakkyth vs no talys mo than on 16
ffulfillyd is myn sentence & myn decre
I trowe that we han herd of eche deg[r]e
Almost is fulfylde al myn ordenaunce
I preye to god so zeus hym righ good chaunce 20
That tellyth tis tale to vs lustily
¶ Sere prest quod he art tow a vicary
Or art a Persoun sey soth by thyn fey
Be what thow be ne breke thow nat oure pleye² [2 leaves 399 and 400 are cut out]

CAMBRIDGE 579 (6-T. 589)

- [ffor euery man saue thou hath tolde his/ tale/. [Harl. 1758,
leaf 204, bk]
 Vn-bocle & schewe vs/ what/ is/ in thi male.
 ffor truly me thyneketh be thi chere.
 Thou schuldist knyht/ vp weH/ a gret/ matere. 28
 Telle vs/ a fable a-non for cockis/ bones/.
 This/ Person answerde aH/ at/ ones.
 Thou getist/ fable non y-tolde for me.
 ffor Poule that/ writeth vn to Tymothe. 32
 Repræuyth hem that/ waifen sothfastnesse.
 And tellen fablis/ & suche wrecchidnesse.
 Whi schulde I schewen draf out/ of/ my feste.
 When I maie schewe whete if/ that/ me leste. 36
 ffor whiche I seie if/ that/ thou list/ to here.
 Moralite & vertuous/ matere.
 And then that/ ye wolen 3eue me audience.
 I woH/ fuH/ feyne at/ cristes/ reuerence. 40
 Don you plesauunce leefuH/ as/ I can.
 But trustith weH/ I am a sothryn man.
 I can noght/ geste rom ram ruf bi lettre.
 Ne god woot/ rym holde I but liteH/ bettre. 44
 And therfore if/ you list/ I woH/ noght/ glose.
 I woH/ you telle a merye tale in prose.
 To knyht/ vp aH/ this/ feste & make an ende.
 And ihesu for his/ grace/ witt/ me sende. [leaf 205] 48
 To schewe you the weie in this/ viage.
 Of/ thilke parfite glorious/ pilgrymage.
 That/ hight/ hierusalem celestiaH/.
 And if/ ye vouche saf/ a-non ye schaH/. 52
 Begynne vp on my tale for whiche I preie.
 Telle your/ a-vys/ I can no better/ seie.
 But/ natheles/ this/ meditacion.
 I put/ hit/ aye vndir/ correccion. 56
 Of/ clerkis/ for I am noght/ text/ weH/.
 I take but/ the sentence trustith weH/.
 Therfore I make protestacion.
 That/ I woH/ stonde to correccion. 60

THE PARSON'S TALE.

A TREATISE ON PENITENCE, IN 3 PARTS:

- Part I. On Penitence; and its 1st requisite Contrition (A) (p. 593—612).
 Part II. On its 2nd requisite, Confession (B) (p. 612—679).
 Part III. On its 3rd requisite, Satisfaction (C) (p. 679—684), with the Writer's Leave-taking and Retractions (p. 684—85).

PART I. (p. 593—612).

ON PENITENCE, AND ITS 1st REQUISITE, CONTRITION.

Proem on Jeremiah vi. 16. The Tale is to be on *Penitence* as a full noble way to lead folk to Christ, and is to treat of

- i. 'what is Penitence' (p. 594).
 - ii. 'whennes it is cleped Penitence'. [*not in the Tale.*]
 - iii. 'in how manye maneres been the acciouns or werkynge of Penitence' (p. 594-5).
 - iv. 'how many speses ther been of Penitence' (p. 595).
 - v. 'whiche thynges apertenen and bihouen to Penitence' (p. 595—682: nearly all Parts I and III, and all Part II).
 - vi. 'whiche thynges destourben Penitence' (at end of Part III, p. 682) (p. 593).
- i. Penitence defined, by a. St Ambrose; b. 'som doctour'; c. the writer. Its requisites: 1. bewailing of sins; 2. purpose to have shrift, to do satisfaction, never to sin again, to continue in good works (p. 594).
- [ii. *not given.*]
- iii. The 3 actions of Penitence: 1. Baptism after sin; 2. not to do deadly sin after baptism; 3. not thus to do venial sin (p. 594-95).
- iv. The 3 speses or kinds of Penitence: 1. Solemn (to be put out of church, or do open penance); 2. Common (to go naked on pilgrimage); 3. Private (p. 595).
- v. The 3 necessities or requisites for Penitence (p. 596—682):
- A. Contrition of heart (p. 596—612).
 - B. Confession of mouth (Part II, p. 612—679).
 - C. Satisfaction (Part III, p. 679—682).
- Penitence avails against 3 things, by which we wrath Christ (p. 595).
- A. Contrition is the root of Penitence, whose stem bears branches and leaves of Confession, and fruit of Satisfaction.
- Contrition also bears a seed of grace, whose heat draws men to God. (Simile of the child and his nurse's milk.)
- Penance is the tree of life (p. 596).

Four Points to be known about Contrition:

1. What it is; 2. the causes that move a man to it; 3. how to be contrite; 4. what it avails the soul (p. 597).
2. The 6 Causes that should move a man to Contrition:
 - a. Remembrance of Sins (p. 597-8).
 - b. Whoso does sin is the Thrall of Sin (p. 598-99).
 - c. Dread of the Day of Doom and the Pains of Hell (p. 599—604). These described: the Doom (p. 599-600); Job's 'lond of mysese and of derknesse' (p. 600-1); the 3 shames in hell against (1) 'Honours, (2) delices, and (3) riches' (p. 611); poverty in 4 things: no treasure, food, clothing, or friends (p. 602); and no delights of the 5 senses. The pain shall be eternal (p. 603). Hell is orderless (p. 603-4). The 7 causes why the damnd have lost all hope (p. 604).
 - d. Remembrance of the good works we've left undone, and the loss of the good works done while we were in sin (p. 604-6). Deadly sin wipes out all good works formerly done (p. 605); and no good works can be done in deadly sin (p. 605-6). The new French song, *J'ai tout perdu mon temps* (also quoted in Chaucer's late poem of *Fortune*).

- e. Remembrance of Christ's suffering for our sins (p. 606). In man's sin, every ordinance is turned up-so-down (p. 607). For this disorder Christ sufferd (p. 608).
- f. The hope of 3 things: 1. Forgiveness of Sins, 2. the Gift of Grace to do well, 3. the Glory of Heaven (p. 609).
- 3. How to be contrite. Contrition must be universal and total: for sins of thought, for desires against God's law, for wicked words as well as wicked deeds (p. 610). Contrition must be anguious and continual (p. 609-11).
- 4. How Contrition helps the soul. It sometimes delivers a man from sin; destroys the prison of hell; cleanses the soul; changes the son of Wrath to the son of Grace (p. 611-12).

PART II (*no. v. continued*).B. CONFESSION (THE 2ND REQUISITE FOR PENITENCE)
(p. 612-679).

- B. Confession. § 1. (l. 317) 'what is confession' (p. 612).
- § 2. 'whether it oghte nedes be doon or noon' (p. 672-9).
- § 3. 'whiche thynges been couenable to verray Confession' (p. 674-79).

CONFESSION, § 1.

- 1. 'Confession is verray shewyng of synnes to the preest' (l. 318) (p. 612). We must understand too
 - a. (l. 321) 'whennes that synnes spryngen' (p. 612-15).
 - b. 'how they encreessen' (p. 615-16; 672-74).
 - c. 'whiche they been' (p. 616-672).
- 1.a. Sin sprang from the fall of Adam (p. 612). The legend of Adam and Eve told (p. 613). From Adam we took Original Sin, and were born sons of eternal damnation; but Baptism rescues us; though we keep liability to temptation, or Concupiscence (p. 613-14).
- Concupiscence*, or the nourishing and occasion of sin. St Paul and St Jerome's temptations (p. 614-15).
- 1.b. How Sin grows in a man. 1. by Concupiscence; 2. Subjection to the Devil; 3. Hesitation; 4. Doing, the Sin becoming Actual (p. 615-16).
- 1.c. Sin is a. venial, b. deadly (or mortal).
 - a. 1. Venial Sin defined. It skips into Deadly Sin. (Simile of the drops of water into a vessel's hold drowning the ship;) (p. 616).
 - b. 1. Deadly Sin defined (p. 617).
 - a. 2. Of divers small venial sins, hardly thought sins (p. 617-18); eating, drinking, talking, too much; using your wife too much; not visiting the sick (p. 617); talking vanities at church, &c. (p. 618). Cure of venial sins by love to Christ, prayer, confession, good works, receiving the Sacrament, holy-water, &c. (p. 618).
- 1.c. b. 2. *The Seven Deadly Sins*. The Chieftains, head and spring, of all other Sins (p. 619).
 - i. Pride (p. 619-26), and its Remedy (p. 626-8).
 - ii. Envy (p. 628-30), and its Remedy (p. 630-1).
 - iii. Ire or Anger (p. 631-42), and its Remedy (p. 642-5).
 - iv. Accidie or Sloth (Discontent, Ennui) (p. 645-49), and its Remedy (p. 650-1).
 - v. Avarice or Covetousness (p. 651-7), and its Remedy (p. 657-8).
 - vi. Gluttony (p. 658-9), and its Remedy (p. 660).
 - vii. Lechery (p. 660-8), and its Remedy (p. 668-72).
- 1. PRIDE (p. 619-626). Its 16 (and more) Twigs. 1. Disobedience, 2. Boasting, 3. Hypocrisy, 4. Despite, 5. Arrogance (p. 619), 6. Impudence, 7. Swelling of Heart (rejoicing in harm done), 8. Insolence, 9. Elation, 10. Impatience, 11. Contumacy, 12.

A private kind of pride (the Host's Wife's and Wife of Bath's), wanting to go to offering first, &c. (p. 620).

Two kinds of Pride, *a.* 'within man's heart', *b.* without; *b.* being the sign of *a.*, 'as the gaye leefsel atte Taverne is sign of the wyrr that is in the Celer'¹ (p. 620-21), *b.* outside pride.

a. in dear clothing, 1. superfluity of it: its cost, furring, chisel-holes, dragging in the dung, waste of material (p. 621), unfitness for giving to the poor: 2. scantness of it: showing men's privy members, and buttocks (like a she-ape's rump), and the former as half-flayd, in parti-coloured hose*. The 'outrageous array of Women' (p. 623).

β. in horses (p. 623), and vicious grooms to tend 'em; plate-harness, &c.

γ. in household: keeping too many retainers or servants, who oppress the poor (p. 624).

δ. in table: not asking the poor to feasts; having burning and ornamented dishes⁴; too costly cups, &c., and too choice minstrelsy (p. 624).

What Pride sins are deadly, and what venial (p. 624).

The Sources of Pride (p. 624): goods of Nature, Fortune, Grace (p. 624). The Folly of Pride in any of these goods of Nature:

'we ben alle of o fader and of o mooder, and . . . of o nature'.

The general signs of *Gentleness*. (The flies call'd 'bees', and their stingless king) (p. 625); 3 gifts of Grace; 3 of Fortune.

The brittleness of popular praise⁵ (p. 626).

The Remedy against Pride.

Humility or Meekness, and its 3 kinds: in 1. heart, 2. mouth, 3. works. 4 kinds of each of these (p. 626-27).

ii. *ENVY* (p. 627-30): defined by the Philosopher and St Augustine.

It springs from Malice (p. 627).

Malice; 2 kinds of: 1. hardness of heart, or recklessness; 2. opposing truth (p. 627).

The 2 kinds of Envy (p. 628): 1. sorrow at other men's prosperity; 2. joy at other men's harm: whence comes

Backbiting; 5 kinds (p. 628): 1. praise with a *but* at the end; 2. turning well-meant things upside down to ill ones; 3. lessening a neighbour's goodness; 4. putting one man above another; 5. glad listening to scandal (p. 628).

Grudging or murmuring (p. 628): 1. against God (p. 629); 2. Murmuring from avarice, 3. from pride, 4. from envy; 5. among Servants, who say 'the Devil's *Paternoster*'; 6. Murmuring from ire or hate: thence, *a.* Bitterness of Heart, *b.* Discord, *c.* Scorning; *d.* Accusing (p. 629); *e.* Malignity (p. 630).

The Remedy against Envy (p. 630-31).

Love of God and one's neighbour. How a man shall love his neighbour. How an enemy is included in the name 'neighbour' (p. 630). 3 Remedies of Love, against 3 deeds of Hate (p. 631). Love is the medicine that casts out the venom of Envy from man's heart (p. 631).

iii. *IRE* or *ANGER* (p. 631-42), and its 2 kinds: *a.* good Ire or Wrath (p. 632); *b.* wicked Ire, and its 2 kinds: sudden ire, and ire of malice aforethought (p. 632-33).

Three Shrews that forge in the Devil's furnace: Pride, Envy, and Contumely (p. 633).

¹ Melibe-Monk Link, B. § 11; and General Prologue, A.

² Chaucer's father no doubt had a sign outside his wine-shop or tavern in Thames Street, London.

³ The outspoken and somewhat coarse abuse of the new fashions in dress is a great change from Chaucer's admirable Third-Period chaff of the moral short-comings of the monks and friars, &c., in the Prologue and middle Tales. If this is not change of man, it's change of mood.

⁴ Chaucer must have seen plenty of these when he was page, valet, and squire.

⁵ Compare Chaucer's *Gentleness*, &c. ⁶ Compare Clerk's Tale, Part VI, st. 138.

Wrath takes away a man's wit and spiritual life (p. 634).

Fruits of Wrath: 1. Hate. 2. War and wrong. 3. Manslaughter, *a.* spiritual; *b.* bodily (p. 634).

a. The 3 kinds of spiritual Manslaughter (3, call'd 6 in MSS. p. 634): 1. by Hate. 2. by Backbiting. 3. Giving wicked Counsel, by Fraud (p. 634).

b. bodily Manslaughter: slaying with your tongue, giving orders or counsel to slay a man (p. 634).

Manslaughter in deed: its 4 (that is, 7) kinds (p. 635): 1. by law: a Justice condemning a man to death; 2. justifiable homicide, in defence of one's own life; 3. by misadventure: shooting an arrow, &c.; 4. a woman overlying her child; 5. a man making a woman barren by drinks, &c., killing the foetus within her, shedding his seed in the wrong place; a woman killing the child in her womb; 6. a woman killing her child (after birth) for shame; 7. a man by lechery or blows killing a foetus.

(Sixteen) other sins coming from Ire or Anger.

1. blaming or despising God, as hazarders do (*Cp. Pardoner's Tale*) (p. 635); and those who treat of the Sacrament of the altar irreverently (p. 636).

2. Attry anger: making angry false excuses for sin.

3. Swearing, which dismembers Christ (p. 636).

a. Of lawful Swearing, before a Judge: its 3 conditions, and its motives; *b.* God's name and Christ's, not to be taken in vain (p. 637); *c.* swearing for gentility or manliness (p. 638); *d.* swearing suddenly; *e.* of Adjuration and Conjurat[i]on by enchanter[s] and necromancer[s]; *f.* of Divination by Dreams, &c.; *g.* of Charms for Wounds and Maladies (p. 638).

4. Lying (p. 638), and its 6 kinds.

5. Flattering. How Flatterers are the Devil's Nurses, his Enchanter[s] and Chaplain[s] (p. 639).

6. Cursing that comes of irous heart: Malison.

7. Chiding and Reproach (p. 640); (specially a chiding wife¹) (p. 640-41).

8. Scorning (p. 641).

9. Giving wicked Counsel (p. 641).

10. Sowing and making Discord (p. 642).

11. Double tongue (p. 642).

12. Betraying of Counsel (p. 642).

13. Menace.

14. Idle words.

15. Jangling (chattering) (p. 642).

16. Japing (joking) (p. 642-43).

The Remedy against Anger (p. 643-5). Debonairtee and Patience (p. 643). Four kinds of grievances, and their remedies: 1. wicked words, 2. loss of goods, 3. harm of body, 4. outrageous labour (p. 644).

Incentives to Patience. Story of the Philosopher and Child (p. 644-45). Obedience comes from Patience (p. 645).

iv. ACCORDIE, or SLOTH (Discontent, Ennui) (p. 645-49), is an enemy to the 3 states of man,—1. innocence (p. 645), 2. prayer (p. 646), 3. grace;—and to one's livelihood. Its 12 bad consequences (p. 646): 1. Sloth (and its remedy); 2. Dread to begin good works (p. 646); 3. Wanhope, or Despair (and its Remedy) (p. 647); 4. Somnolence (p. 648), and 5. Negligence, or 6. Recklessness, and the Remedy for each; 7. Idleness; 8. *Tarditas*, or tarrying before turning to God (p. 649); 9. Lachesse, or giving up a good work begun; 10. Coldness; 11. Undevotion; 12. Worldly sorrow (p. 649).

The Remedy against Accordie (p. 650-51): Fortitude or Strength, and its 5 kinds. 1. Magnanimity² or great Courage; 2. Faith or Hope; 3. Assurance; 4. Magnificence; 5. Constancy (p. 651).

¹ Does Chaucer here refer to his former wife?

² Miswritten 'Magnificence' in Ellesmere and Lansdowne MSS.

- v. **AVARICE** (p. 651-57). The difference between Avarice and Covetousness (p. 651); and between an Idolater and an avaricious man (p. 652). Of Covetousness, and lords' extortion from their bondmen: "humble folk been Cristes freendes" (p. 652-53). The Duty of lords to their thralls or churls. Of those that pillage Holy Church (p. 653-54); lords who plunder the poor are like wolves (p. 654). Of Deceit between Merchant and Merchant (p. 654). Of honest bodily Merchandise (the surplus of one country may be sent to help another) (p. 654). Of spiritual Merchandise, or Simony, and its 2 kinds (p. 655),—thieves that steal Christ's souls get livings (p. 655-56);—Hasardry or Games of Chance (p. 656). Other outcomes of Avarice (p. 656): 1. Lying, 2. Theft (bodily and spiritual) (p. 656-57), 3. False Witness, 4. False Oaths (p. 657).

The Remedy against Avarice (p. 657): Mercy and Pity, and reasonable Liberality (p. 658). Of foolish largess (p. 658).

- vi. **GLUTTONY** (p. 658-59), and its 5 kinds (p. 659): 1. Drunkenness, or the burial of man's reason; 2. a troubled spirit; 3. bad way of eating; 4. distemperd bodily humours; 5. forgetfulness. Or, as St Gregory says, 1. eating too soon; 2. eating too delicate food; 3. taking too much; 4. troubling too much about cooking food; 5. eating greedily: these are the 5 fingers of the devil's hand (p. 659).

The Remedy against Gluttony (p. 660): Abstinence, and its fellows. Temperance, Shame, Content with plain food, Moderation, Sobriety, Sparing (p. 660).

- vii. **LECHERY** (p. 660). Its punishment in the Old Testament (p. 660). Adultery, and the desire of it (p. 661-62).

The 5 fingers of the Devil's other hand (p. 662); 1. foolish looking; 2. villainous touching; 3. foul words; 4. kissing (old dotards, and dry dogs at a rose-tree (p. 662); and how a man should love his wife); 5. the stinking deed of lechery (p. 663). Its kinds: 1. Fornication. Taking a maid's maidenhead, or 100th fruit (p. 663). 2. Adultery, defined. 3. Harms following from it: *a.* breaking of faith; *b.* theft (of the wife's body from her husband (Joseph and Potiphar's wife), and of her soul from Christ); *c.* breaking God's commandment, and defouling Christ (p. 664). Of Harlots and Bawds (p. 665). Adultery is set between Theft and Manslaughter. More kinds of Adultery: 1. by Men bound by Religious Vows, &c.; 2. those in Holy Orders (p. 665). Lecherous Priests are like a free Bull in a town, and they eat raw flesh of folk's wives and daughters (p. 666); 3. by man and wife copulating for pleasure only (p. 667); 4. copulation with kinsfolk, spiritual (or godchildren) or fleshly (blood relations). 5. the abominable unmentionable sin; 6. Pollution, of 3 kinds: 1. too rank humours; 2. weakness (p. 667); 3. evil thoughts (p. 668).

The Remedy for Lechery (p. 668): I. Chastity and Continence.

1. in Marriage. (The true effect of Marriage. One husband to have one wife (p. 668). How a man should behave to his wife (p. 669). How the wife should be subject to her husband (p. 669), and be moderate in behaviour, discreet in words, &c. (p. 669-70). The 3 causes for which man and wife may copulate (p. 670): *a.* begetting of children; *b.* to pay the mutual debt of their bodies; *c.* to avoid lechery (p. 670). The 4th cause, pleasure, is deadly sin (p. 670-71).)
2. In Widowhood; 3. Virginity (p. 671).

- II. Special avoidance of causes of lechery: *a.* eating and drinking; long sleeping; *b.* the person who'd tempt you (p. 671-72). (I wish I could tell you the Ten Commandments; but it's too high doctrine (p. 672).) [End of *Confession*, § 1, *c.*] Sin is in heart, mouth, deed, by the 5 Wits (p. 672).

- § 1.5. (see p. 615-16.) The 7 Circumstances that encrease or aggravate sins (p. 672). 1. the person who sins (male or female, &c.); 2. the kind of sin (fornication or homicide); 3. the place it was committed in (as in a church, by a priest) (p. 673); 4. for what motive; 5. the number of times it was committed; 6. by what temptation; 7. how it was committed; and all other circumstances (p. 674).

CONFESSION, § 2, § 3 (p. 674-79).

Profitable Confession, and its 4 (= 3) Conditions (p. 674):

1. sorrowful bitterness of heart (p. 674); its 5 signs: *a.* shamefastness (like the Publican's) (p. 675); *b.* humility; *c.* fulness of tears (p. 675); *d.* no hesitation (like the Magdalen) for shame; *e.* obedience to receive penance laid on you (p. 675).
 2. speedy Confession (p. 676); its 4 Conditions: *f.* that it be well thought over; *g.* the greatness and number of sins must be understood; *h.* the sinner must be contrite, and *i.* avoid occasions of sins.
 3. Shrift must be made to one man, not more (p. 676).
- True Shrift, and its 10 Conditions* (p. 677): 1. that it be of free will; 2. that it be lawful (both sinner and priest, Popish); 3. that it be not despairing of Christ's mercy; 4. that a man accuse himself only, and not another; 5. that it be not lying (accusing oneself of sins never committed) (p. 678); that it be by one's own mouth, and not by letter; 7. that the sin be not painted with fair words; 8. that the shrift be to a discreet priest; 9. that the shrift be not made for vain-glory, but for fear of Christ; 10. that the shrift be not made suddenly, for a joke (p. 678). You may be shriven more than once for the same sin; and should be houseled once a year (p. 679).

PART III (no. v. continued, and no. vi.).

SATISFACTION (THE 3RD REQUISITE FOR PENITENCE) (p. 679-684).

In *a.* Alms. *β.* bodily punishment.

- a.* Alms and its three kinds (p. 679): 1. Contrition of heart. 2. Pity for one's neighbour's faults. 3. Giving good counsel to other's souls and bodies (food, visits in prison, burial). These Alms should be done privily, if possible (p. 680).

- β.* Bodily Punishment (Penance), of 4 kinds: 1. Prayers (chiefly of the Paternoster, whose expounding I leave to Masters of Theology) (p. 680). 2. Watching, and its 3 kinds: forbearing, *a.* meat and drink, *b.* worldly jollity, and *c.* deadly sin (p. 681). 3. Fasting, and its 4 kinds: Liberality to poor folk; spiritual gladness of heart; not grudging at fasting; reasonable eating. 4. Virtuous teachings, or Discipline: *a.* by word, writing, or example; *b.* by wearing hairshirts, &c., next your skin, scourging yourself, taking evils and injuries patiently (p. 682). [End of no. v. in Part i; p. 593.]

- vi. The 4 Things that disturb Penance [no. vi. or last §, of p. 593 at foot] (p. 682). 1. Dread, and its remedy. 2. Shame, and its remedy. 3. Hope: *a.* of long life, and *b.* consequent overconfidence in Christ's mercy (p. 683). 4. Wanhope, or Despair of Mercy; its 3 kinds: *x.* from great and long continued sin; *y.* from falls-back into sin; *z.* from not being able to persevere in goodness (p. 683).

The fruit of Penance (p. 683-4).

EPILOGUE.

The Author's Leave-taking, and Lament over, and Withdrawal of, his Sinful Books, &c. (p. 684-85).

(FOR CAMBRIDGE 583 b)

[Harl. MS 1758, leaf 205, for Cambr. MS.]

[There are no paragraph-breaks in the MS, but Tyrwhitt's are kept in the print for convenience sake. The many curls, tags, and lines, to final o/, t/, g/, ll/, r/, s/, t/ in Harl. 1758, are not printed here.]

[Harl. 1758, on leaf 205]

[And begynneth the tale.

Ier. 6°. State super vias & videte & interrogate de semitis antiquis que sit via bona & ambulate in ea & inuenietis refrigerium animabus vestris.

[75] **O**ur swete lord god of heuyn þat no man wolt perische, but wiþ þat we comen alle to þe knoweliche of hym. & to the blisful lif þat is perdurable. [76] Amongscheth vs bi þ^e prophet Ieremie. þat seith in this wise. [77] ¶ Stondith vp on þ^e weies & seeth & axeþ of olde pathees. þat is to seyn of olde sentences whiche is þ^e good weie. [78] & walkip in þat weie & ye scholen fynde refreschyng for your soulis. & cetera. [79] ¶ Manye ben þe weies espirituels þat ledyn folk to our lord ihesu crist & to the Regne of glorie. [80] Of whiche weies ther is a full noble weie & a full couenable whiche maie noght faile to man ne to woman that thorogh synne hath mys goon fro the right weie of Hierusalem celestiaþ. [81] And this weie is clepid penytence. of whiche men schuldyn gladly herkyn & enquere with all his hert [82] to wite what his penaunce & whens it is clepid penytence. & in how many maneres ben the accions of worchyng of penytence [83] & how manye spices ther ben of penytences & whiche thynges a-pertenyn & bi-houyn to penytence. ¹Whiche thynges distourben penytence.

[Nota de penitencia. .ii.]

HARL. 1758 (for Cambridge 584) (6-T. 593) [leaf 205, bk]

[84] Seynt Ambrose seith that penytence is the <sup>¶ What is peny-
tence</sup> playnyng of man for the gilt that he hath doon. & no more to doon ony thyng for whiche hym ought to playne.

[85] ¶ And som doctour seith. Penytence is the weyment-
yng of man that sorwith for his synne & pyneth
hym self for he hath mys doon. [86] Penytence with
certeyn circumstaunces is very repentaunce of man that
holdeþ hym self in sorow & other payne for his giltes.

[87] & for he schall be verye penytant. he schall first
be-weilen the synnes that he hath doon. And stidfastly
purposid in his herte to haue schrift of mouthe. & to

don satisfaccion [88] & neuyr to do thyng. ffor whiche
hym oughte more to be-weile or to compleyne & to con-
tynue in good werkis or ellis his repentaunce maie noght

a-vaille. [89] ¶ ffor as seith seynt Isidre. He is a iaper & ¶ Isidrus.

a gabber & no very repentaunt man that ofte sone doth
thyng for whiche hym ought to repent [90] wepyng

& noght for to styntet to do synne may noght a-vaille. [91] ¶ But
natheles men schulen hope that at euery tyme that man
falleth be it neuyr so ofte that he may arise thorogh peny-
tence if he haue grace. ¶ But certeynly hit is gret doute.

[92] for as seith seynt Gregorie. vnnethes ariseth he out ¶ Gregorius.
of his synne that is charged with the charge of yueþ vsage.

[93] ¶ And therefore repentaunt folk that stynte for to
synne & for to lete synne er that synne for-lete hym. holi-
chirche holdith hem siker of her sauacion. [94] And

he that synneth & verrily repentith hym in his last ende.
Holi chirche yet hopith his sauacion bi the gret
mercy of our lord ihesu crist for his repentaunce but
take the sikerer weie. & þ^e more certeyn.

[95] ¶ And now sethyns I haue declarid you what
thyng is penytence. Now schulen ye vndirstonde that ther <sup>¶ Tres sunt ac-
cions peni-
tencie
1^a. accion of
penytence.</sup> ben thre accions of penytence. [96] ¶ The first is
that if a man be baptiste after that he hath
synned. [97] seynt Austyn seith. but he be penytence ¶ Augustinus.
for his olde synfuþ lif he may not be-gynne the newe

clene lif. [98] ffor certis if he be baptised with out penytence of his olde gilt. he receyueþ þ^e mark of baptisme. but not the grace ne the remysson of his synnes till he haue verraye repentaunce. [99] ¶ Another defeaute is this that men doon deedly synne after that ¶ 2. *action.* thei haue receyued baptisme. [100] The prid defeaute ¶ 2. *action.* is that men fallen in venyaft synnes aftir her baptisme. fro daie to daie. [101] Ther of seith seynt Austyn. ¶ *Augustine* that penytence of good & humble folk is the penytence of euery daie.

[102] ¶ The spices of penaunce ben thre! that oon ¶ *The spices of penytence.* of hem is solempne. Another is comune. & the .3. is pryue. [103] ¶ Thilk penaunce that is so- ¶ *of penance solempne.* lempne is in two maneres. as is to be put out of holy chirche in lente for slaughter of childryn & suche maner thyng. [104] ¶ Another is when a man ¶ *Of open penance.* hath synned openly of whiche synne the fame is openly spoken in the contre. ¶ And then holy chirche bi Iugement distreyneth hym for to do penaunce opene. [105] Som penaunce is that preestis enioynen¹] ^{¶ Harl 1758 extract mss.} 2 men in certeyn cas / As for to goon paraenture nakid in pilgrymage ^{¶ Cambr. MSS. leaf 401.} or barefot. [106] ¶ Pryue penaunce is thilke that men doon alday for certeyn synys that been priue / of whiche we schryue vs pryuely / & receyue priue penaunce

[107] ¶ Now schalt thou vnderstonde what is behoffy & necessarie to verray perfit penytence & this stant on thre thyngis. [108] Contrycioun of herte / Confessioun of mouthe / & Satisfaccioun / [109] For whiche seyth seynt Iohn Crisostomus ¶ Penytence constrynyth a man to accepte benyngnely euery payne that is enioyned hym. with contricioun of herte & schrifte of mouthe. with Satisfaccioun. And in werkynge of alle manere humylite / [110] And this is freutful penytence a-geyn .iiij. thyngis. in wheche we wrethe oure lord Ihesu cryst / [111] this is to seyne / by delyt in thynkyng / by recheles-nesse in spekyng And be wikkede synful werkynge / [112] And a-geyn these

wekede giltis is penytence that may be likkenyd vntil a tree

[113] ¶ The rote of this tre is contricioun / that hydyth
hym in the herte that is verray repentaunt / righ as
the rote of a tre: hydyth hym in the erthe. [114] ¶ Of the
rote of contricioun spryngith a stalke that berith braunchis
& leuys of Confessioun & freut of satisfaccioun [115]
¶ for whiche Crist seyth in his gospel / Doth digne freut of
penytence / for by this freut may men knowe this
tree / & not by the rote that is hid in the herte
of man ne bi the braunchis ne by the leuys of Confessioun.
[116] And therefore oure lord Ihesu Crist seyth thus by
the freut of hem: schul ȝe knowyn hem. [117] ¶ Of this
roote ek spryngith a seed of grace the whiche seed: is
modir of sekyrnesse / & this seed is egre & hoot /
[118] the grace of this seed spryngith of god thourw re-
membraunce of the day of doome / & on the peynys of
helle [119] ¶ Of this mateere seyth Salomon that in
drede of god / man forletyth his synne / [120] the heete
of this seed is the loue of god / & desyrynge of the
Ioye perdurable / [121] this heete drawith the herte of
man to god / & doth hym hate his synne / [122] For
sothly there is nothyng that saurith so weel to a child
as the mylk of his noryce / ne no thyng is ¹ to hyre selvyne:²
more abomynabele / [. [¹ a *selvyne* corrected] . .

.
.
.
. [² *nd* corrected] . .

. *no gap in the MS.*] [125] for
sothly the lawe of god: is the loue of god / For whiche
Dauid the prophete seyth / I have lowyd thyn lawe / & hatid
wekedenesse And³ he that louyth god: kepith his lawe & his
word / [126] This tre saw the prophete danyel / in spiryt
vp-on the auysiou of Nabugodonosor whanne he con-
seyled / hym to do penytence [127] Penaunce is the tre
of lyf / to hem that it resceyuyne / And he that holdyth hym

in verray penyntence is blyssid aftyr the centence of Salomon /

[128] ¶ In this penitence / or contricioun / man schal vnderstondyn .iiij. thyngis That is to seyne what is contricioun / & whiche been the causis that meyn a man / to Contricioun / & how he schulde been contryte / & what Contr[i]cioun awaylyth to the Soule / [129] ¶ Thanne is it thus / that contricioun is the verray sorwe that a man resceyuyth in his herte for hise synnys with sad purpos / to schryue hym & to do penaunce & neuere moore to do synne / [130] And this sorwe schal been in this maneere / as seith seynt bernard /. It schal ben heuy & greuous / & ful scharp & poygnaunt in herte. [131] ¶ ffyrst for man hath a-gilt his lord / & his Creature / & more scharp & poynaunt for he hath [.] [132] *no gap in the MS.*] wrathid / & agilt hym that bought hym / that with his precious blod hath delyuered vs from the bond of synne / & from the crouwelte of the deuyl And from the peynys of helle

[133] ¶ The causys that oughtyn to meue a man to contricioun: been sexe / ¶ ffyrst a man schal remembre hym of hise synnys / [134] but loke that thilke remembraunce / be to hym no delyt / be no weye / but gret schame & sorwe for hise synnys / ffor Iob seith synful men don werkys worthy of Confescioun / [135] & therefore seith esechie ¶ I wele remembre me alle the zerys of myn lyf in the bittirnesse of myn herte / [136] ¶ And god seith in the apocalipse ¶ Remembre 3ow from whene 3e been falle / for by-fore that tyme that 3e synned: 3e were the childeren of god / & lemys of the regne of god / [137] but for 3oure synne 3e been wexen thral. & foul & menbris of the deuyl / hate of aungeh / Schlaundere of holy cherche And foode of the false serpent / perpetuel mater of the fer of helle [138] / & 3it moore foul & abomynable for the trespasyn so ofte tyme as doth an hound / that retornyth to ete his spewynge / [139] And 3it

been 3e more foulere: for 3oure longe contynnyng therin / &
 3oure synful vsage / for whiche 3e been rotyn in 3oure
 synne: as beste in his dunge [140] Sweche manere of
 thoughtis makyn a man to haue schame of hise synnys /
 & no delit / As god seyth by the prophete Ezechiel /
 [141] 3e schal remembre 3ow of 3oure weis / And thi
 schul displese 3ow sothly / Synnys been the weyis that
 ledyn folk to helle [142]

THe secunde cause that oughte to meue a man
 to haue disdeyn of synne: is this / as seith seint
 Petyr / who so that doth synne is thral of synne / &
 synne puttyth a man in gret thraldam / [143] And ther-
 fore seyth the prophete Ezechiel / I wente sorweful in
 disdeyn of myn self ¶ Certis weel ouzte a man /
 haue disdayn of synne & withdrawyn hym from that
 thraldam & vilenye / [144] And lo what seyth Seneca /
 in this maters he seith thus ¶ Thow I wiste that
 / neythir god ne man ne schulde neuere knowe it / 3it
 wolde I haue disdayn for to do synne / [145] And the
 same Seneca also seyth / I am born to grettere thyngis /
 than to ben thral to myn body. or than for to makyn of myn
 body a thral / [146] ne a foulere thral may no man
 maken of his body: than for to 3euyne his body
 to synne / [147] Al were it the fouleste cherl or the
 fouleste woman / that leuyth & lest of vaw / 3it is he
 thanne more foul & moore in seruitute / [148] euere
 from the heyere degre that man fallyth: the more is he
 thral / & the moore to god & to the world vile & abomyn-
 nable / [149] ¶ O goode god wel oughte man haue greet disdeyn
 of synne / sythe that thorw synne / there he was fre /
 now is he makid bonde / [150] And therefore seyth seynt
 Augustyn ¶ If thow haue disdayn of thyn seruau[t] / 3if he
 haue gilt or synne Haue thow thanne disdayn / that thow
 thyn self schuldyst doon synne / [151] take reward of thyn
 value / that thow ne be to foul to. thyn self // [152]
 Also weel auzte they thanne haue disdayn / to been

seruauntys & thralles to synne & soore been aschamyd /
 of hem self / [153] that ¹god of his endeles goodnesse /
 hat set hem in high estat or zeuyn hem wit strenthe /
 hele of body / beute prosperite / [154] &
 boughte hem from the deth with his herte blood that
 they so onkendely azens his gentilesse / quytn hym so
 vileynly to slanthere of here owene soules. [155] O
 goode god / the wemen that been of greet beute.
 remembrith þow of the prouerbe of salomon / he seyth
 [156] & likkenyth a fayr woman þat is a fol of hire body:
 lik to a ryng of gold / þat were in the groyn of a sowe /
 [157] ffor rygh as a Sowe wrothith in eueryche ordure: so
 wrothith sche hire beute / in stynkyng ordure of synne [158]

THe thredde cause þat oughte to meue a man
 to contrycioun: is drede of the day of dome & of the
 horrible peynys of helle / [159] ffor as seynt Ierom seith
 At every tyme that me remembrith of the day of dome: I
 quake. [160] for whan I ete or drynke or what so euere I
 do / euere semyth me that the trumpe sounyth in myn ere.
 [161] Ryseth 3e vp that been dede & comyth to the
 Iugement. [162] O goode god meche ouȝte a man to
 drede / swich a Iugement/ there as we schul been alle
 as seynt poule seyth by fore the cete of oure lord Ihesu
 Cryst / [163] where as he schal makyn a general con-
 gregacioun / where as no man may Been absent / [164] for
 certis there auaylith non esoyne ne excusacioun /
 [165] And not only that oure faultis schuln ben
 Iugit. but that alle oure werkis schuln opynly
 been knowe / [166] And as seyth seynt Bernard / There ne
 schal no pledynge auayle ne no slyȝte / we schul zeue
 rekenynge / of every Idele wod [167] there schul we han
 a Iuge / þat may not ben disseyued ne corrupt / And why /
 ffor certis al oure thouȝtis been discryued as to hym /
 ne for preyer ne for mede he schan not ben corrupt /
 [168] And therefore seyth salomon / the wrethe of god
 [. no gap in the MS.]

ne wele not spare no wight / for preyere ne for ȝifte / And
therefore at the day of dome / there is non hope to escape /
[169] wherefore as seyth seynt Anselm ¶ Ful gret
angwisch schul the synful soulis haue at that tyme
[170] there schal the sterne & wrothe Iuge / sitte a-boue /
& vndyr hym the horryble pit of helle / opyn to di-
stroyen hem that mot beknowyn here synnys / whiche
synnys opynly ben ʼschewid by-foryn god / & beforyn
euery cryature / [171] And on the left syde / mo deuyllis
than herte may bethynke / For to harye & drawe /
the synful soulys to the pit of helle / [172] And with-
inne the hertis of folk. schal be the bytynge concieȝce
And withoute folk. schal be the world / al brennyng /
[173] whedyr schal thanne the wrechede synful man fle
to hidyn hym certys he may not hidyn hym / he muste
come forth & schewyn hym / [174] For certis as seyth
seynt Ierom / the erthe schal caste hym out of hym /
& the se also / & the eyr also / that schal ben ful of
thundyr clappis / & lyghtenyngis [175] ¶ Now sothly
ho so wele remembre hym / of these thyngis / I geesse
that his synne schal not turne hym in-to delyt / but to greet
sorwe for drede of the peyne of helle / [176] And ther-
fore seyth Iob to god ¶ Suffere lord that I may a while
beweyle / & wepe or I go / wit oute returnyng to the
derke lond / keuerred with the derrykenesse of deth / [177]
to the lond of mysese & of derkenesse / where as there is the
schadewe of deth / where as there is non ordere of
ordynauce / but gresely drede that euere schal laste / [178]
Lo heere may ȝe seen / that Iob preyede of respit / a while /
to bewepe & wayle his trespassis / For certis on ʼday of
respit. is betere than al the trespass of this world [179] And
for as meche as a man may aquyte hym self byfore god /
by penytence in this world & not by tresore / therfore
schulde he preye to god to ȝeue hym respit / a while to
be-wepe & wayle hise synnys. [180] ffor certis alle
the sorwe that a man myȝte make from the begynnynge

of this world. nys but a lyte thyng at regard at the sorwe
of helle [181] ¶ The cause why that Iob clepith helle
the lond of derknesse [182] Vndyrstonde that he
clepith it lond or erthe for it is stabeled / & neuere schal
fayle /. derk: for he that is in helle schal fayle
lyzt material /. [183] for certis the derke lygh[t] that schal
come out of the fyr that euere schal brenne / schal turne
hem al to peyne that is in helle / for it schewith hym to the
horribledeuillys / that hym turnementyn / [184] couerid with
the derkenesse of deth / that is to seyyne / he that is in
helle: schal haue defaute of the syzte of god / ffor certis
the sigh[t]e of god / is the lyf perdurabele / [185] The derke-
nesse of ¹deth: ben the synys that the wrechede
hath don. whiche that disturbyn hym to seen the sase
of god. ryght as the derke cloude / by-twixen vs & the
sunne [186] ¶ Lond of mysese / by cause that there been
.iiij. maneris of defautis a-zen .iiij. thyngis / that folk
of this world han in this present lyf / that is to seyne.
honouris. delycia. and richesis / [187] ¶ A-geyns honour
haue þey in helle schame & confusoun / [188] for wel ȝe
wote that men clepyn honour the reuerence that men
doth to man / but in helle is non honour ne reuerence /
for certis. no more reuerence schal be doon / there to a
kyng: than to a knawe / [189] for wiche god seith by
the prophete Ieromye / Thilke folk that me dispysyn / schul
been in dispit. [190] ¶ Honour is ek clepid gret lord-
schepe / there schal no man seruyn othir but of harm &
turnement / Honour is ek clepid gret dignetee / & hegh-
nesse: but in helle schul they ben al fortrodyn with deuyllys /
[191] As god seyth / the horyble deuyllys schul gon &
comyn vp on the hondis / of dampnede folk And this
is for as meche / as the heyre that they were in this present
lyf. the more schul they been abatyd and defouled in
helle / [192] ¶ A-geyns the richesse of this world schul
they han myseyse / of pouerte / & that schal been
in foure / [193] In defaute of tresore / of whiche

that dauyth seyth. The riche folk that enbrasedyn / & onedyn
 al here herte / to tresore of this world / schul slepyne in the
 slepyng of deth And no thyng ne schal they fynde / in
 here handis of al here tresore / [194] ¶ And more ouyr the
 mysesse of helle schal been in defaute of mete / &
 drynk / [195] for god seyth thus be Moyses / They schul
 been wastid / with hungyr And the bryddis of helle schul
 deuoure hem with bittere deth / And the galle of the
 Dragoun / schal been here drynk / And the venyn of the
 dragoun schal ben here morsellys [196] ¶ And ferthere ouyr /
 here mysesse schal been in defaute of clothyng / for they schul
 ben nakyd in body as of clotyng saue the fyre in whiche
 they brenne & othere feltys / [197] And nakede schul
 they been of soule of alle manere vertuis / whiche that
 is the clothyng of soule / Where ben thanne the gaye
 robis / & the softe schetis / & the smale schertis / [198]
 ¶ Lo what seyth god of hem / bi the Prophete Isaye /
 that vndyr hem schul be strowede mothis / An here
 couertouris schul been of wermys / of helle / [199] ¶ And
 ferthere ouyr / here mysesse schal ben in defaute of
 frendis / for he is nat pore that hath goode frendis /
 but there ne is no frend / [200] for neythir god ne no
 cryature schal been here frend / and eueriche of hem
 schal hatyn othir with dedly hate / [201] the sonys &
 the dougteryn schul rebellyn a-geyns fadyr & modyr /
 and kenrede a-geyns kenrede / And chydyn & dispysyn
 euerich a-geyn othir bothe day & nyght / as god seyth
 by the prophete Michias / [202] & the louynge childeryn
 that whilom louedyn / so fleschly eueryche of hem othir
 woldyn euerich of hem etyn othir / 3if they myzte / [203] for
 how schulde they louyn hem to-gedere in the payne of helle /
 whan they hatid euerich of hem othir in the prosperite of
 this lyf / [204] for troste wel her fleschely loue was dedly hate.
 as seith the prophete Dauid. Who so that louyth wikkede-
 nesse he hatyth his soule [205] And ho so hatyth
 his owene soule / certis he. may louyn non othir with

in no manere [206] And therfore in helle is no solas /
 ne no frenschepe / but euere the more flesly kenredis
 that been in helle / the more cursedenesse / the more chyd-
 yngis / & the more dedly hate there is / amongis hem
 [207] ¶ And ferthere ouyr / they schul haue defaute of alle
 manere delycis / for sertis delycis been aftyr the apetitis
 of the fyue wittis As Sighte. Herynge. Smellynge / Sauour-
 inge / & touchyng / [208] but in helle here syghte schal ben
 ful of derknesse / & of smok & therfore ful of
 terys / And here Herynge ful of waymentyng / & of
 grochyng of teth as seyth Ihesu Crist. [209] Here nose-
 therlys schul be ful of stynkyng. ¶ And as seith
 Isaye the prophete here sauouringe schal been ful of bittere
 galle / [210] And touchyng of al here body / I-keuerede
 with fyr / that neuere schāl quenche / & wit wermys
 that neuere schal deyen. As god seyt by the mouth of
 Isaye [211] And for as meche / as they schul nat wene /
 that they may deye for peyne / And by here deth fle from
 peyne. / That may they vndyrstonde in the word of Iob
 that seyth. there ¹as is the schadewe of deth / [212] Certis
 a schadewe hat the liknesse of the thyng of whiche it is
 schadewid / but schadewe is not the same thyng / of whiche it is
 shadewe [213] riȝt so faryth the peyne of helle / it is
 lyk deth for the horrible anguysch / And / why for it
 peynyth hem euere As thow men schulde deye a-non / but
 certis þey schul not deye / [214] For as seyth seynt
 Gregory / To wreche caityuys / schal been deth with-oute
 deth & ende with-outyn ende / & defaute with-oute
 faylyng / [215] for here deth schal alwey lyuyn / & here
 ende schal euere more begynne / And here defaute schal nat
 fayle / [216] And therfore seyth seynt Iohn the
 Euangelist // They schul folwe deth And they schul
 not fyndyn hym / And þey schul desyre to deye & deth
 schal fle from hem / [217] And ek Iob seyth there
 is non ordere of rewele / [218] And al be it so that god hath
 creat / alle thyngis in ryȝt ordere & no thyng with-

outyn ordere / but alle thyng beē ordeyned / & noum-
bered but ȝit natheles / þey that beē dampned / ben ne
thyng in ordere / ne holdyn non ordere / [219] for the
erthe ne schal bere hem no freut / [220] For as the prophete
Dauid seith god schal distroye the freut of the erthe as
fro hem ne the watyr schal ȝeue hem no moysture / ne
the ayr no refreschyng / ne fer no lyght [221] ffor as
seith seynt Basilie / the brennyng of the fuyr of this
world / schal god ȝeuyñ in helle to hem that beē dampnyd /
[222] but the lyȝt & the clernesse schal be ȝeuyñ in
heuene / to hise childeryñ / righ as the goode men ȝeuyñ
flesch to here childeryñ / & bonye to here houndis / [223]
And for they schul haue non hope to escape / seyth seynt
Iob at the laste. there schal horrow And gresely drede
dwelle / with-outyn ende [224] ¶ Horrow is al wey drede
of harm / that is to come / And þis drede schal euere dwelle /
in the hertis of hem that beē dampned / & therefore
han they lore al here hope for .viij. causis / [225] ¶ first
for god that seyth / here Iuge schal ben with-oute mercy to
hem / & they may not plesyn hym / ne none of hise
halwis / ne they ne may ȝeue no thyng for here raunsum /
[226] ne they schul¹ [1 haue no vois to speke to hym. Ne thei
may noght fle fro peyne. Ne thei haue no goodnes in
hem that thei may schewe to delyuer hem fro peyne. 208, back]

[227] ¶ And therefore seith Salamon. The wicked man ¶ Salamon.
dyeth & when he is deed he schall haue non hope to
escape fro peyne. [228] Who so aschamed is well wolde vn-
diristonde these peynes. & bi-tynke hym well that he
hath deseruyd. thilk peynes for his synnes. Certis he
schulde haue more talent to sike & to wepe. then for
to syngen & to pleie. [229] ¶ ffor as seith Salamon ¶ Salamon.
who so that hadde the science for to knowe the peynes that
ben establisched & ordeyned for synne he wolde make
sorow. [230] Thilke science as seith seynt Austyn ¶ Augustine.
maketh a man to weymentyn in his harte.

[231] ¶ The fourþe poynt that ought make a man .4. cause.

CAMBRIDGE, p. 595 (6-T. 604), AND HARL. 1758

haue contricion is the sorowfull remembraunce of the gode that he hath lost to don here in erthe & eke the gode that he hath lorn. [232] ¶ Sothly the gode werkis that he hath loste. either thei ben the gode werkis that he wroght er he felt in to deedly synne. Or ellis the gode werkis that he wroght while he laye in synne. [233] ¶ Sothly the gode werkis that he dide bi-forn that he felt in synne ben alle mortefied & astonyed & dullid bi the ofte synnyng. [234] ¶ That other gode werkis that he wroght whiles he laye in synne thei ben outerly deed as to the lif perdurable in heuyn. [235] then thilke gode werkis that ben mortified by ofte synnyng whiche gode werkis he did whiles he was in charite. ne mowen neuyr quyken a-yen with-outyn verrye penytence. [236] ¶ And þer-of seith god bi the mouthe of Ezechiel þat is the rightfull man retorne a-yen from his rightwisnes & to werke wickednes schaft he lyue [237] nay. for alle the gode werkis that he haþ wrozt ne schulen neuyr be in remembraunce for he schaft dye in his synne. [238] And vp on thilke Chapitre seth seynt Gregorye thus. þat we schulde vnderstonden this pryncipally. [239] That when we doon deedly synne. hit is for noght than to reherce or drawe in to memorie the gode werkis that we han wroght bi-forne. [240] ffor certis in the werkyng of deedly synne ther is no triste to no good werke þat we han doon to-forn. that is to seyne as for to haue ther-by the lif perdurable in heuyn [241] [.]
.
. *no gap in the MS.*] whan we han contricion. [242] ¶ But sothly the gode werkis that men doon whiles that thei ben in deedly synne. for as meche as thei weryn doon in deedly synne thei may neuyr quyken a-yen. [243] ¶ ffor certis thyng that neuyr had lif may neuyr quyken. ¶ And natheles aþ be hit that thei ne a-vaille noght to han the lif perdurable. yet a-vailen

HARL. 1758 (for Cambridge 596) (6-T. 606)

thei to a-breggen of the peyne of belle or ellis to getyn
 tempera^{ll} richesse. [244] Or ellis that god wo^{ll} the
 rather enlumyn & lightne the herte of the synfu^{ll}
 man to han repentaunce [245] & eke thei a-vailen
 for to vsen a man to doon good werke that the fende
 haue the lasse power of his soule. [246] ¶ And thus the
 curteis lord ihesu crist ne wo^{ll} that no good werke
 be loste. for in som what it schaff a-vaille. [247] but for as
 meche [as] the gode werkis that ¹men doon whiles thei ^[leaf 200, Harl. 1758.]
 ben in good lif ben alle mortefied be synne folwyng
 ¶ And eke sethyns alle the gode werkis that men doon
 whiles thei ben in dedly synne ben outerly deede
 as for to haue the lif perdurable. [248] We^{ll} may that man
 that no gode werke ne doth. syng thilke fresche song.
 Lay tout perdu moun tēps & moun labor. [249] ¶ ffor
 certis synne bireuyth a mannys goodnesse & nature
 & eke the goodnesse of grace. [250] ¶ fforsothe
 the grace of the holy gost fareth as fyre that may noght
 ben yde^{ll}. for fire faileth a-non as hit for-lesith his wirc-
 yng [. no gap
 in the MS.] [251] then lesith the synfu^{ll} man the goodnes
 of glorie. That only is be-hight to good men that labouren
 & werken [252] we^{ll} may he be sorye then. that
 owith a^{ll} his lif to god as long as he lyueth hath lyved &
 eke as long as he schaff lyue that no goodnes ne hath
 to paie with his dette²] ³to god / to whom he owith al his ^[Harl. extract ends.]
 lyf. [253] for truste wel he schal ȝeue a-countys as seyth
 seynt Bernard. of alle the godis that han be ȝeuyⁿ hym
 in this present lyf and how he hath hem dispendit
 [254] not so meche that here ⁴schal not periche & here ^[4--4 Radd out, but still visible.]
 of is heed⁴ ne a moment of an oure / ne schal not perissche
 that he schal ȝeue of it a rekenyng. [255]

THe fyfte thyng that oughte to meue a man to V^a
 Contrycioun is remembraunce of the passioun that oure

lord ihesu crist sufferede for oure synys / [256] ffor as
 seyth sey[n]t Bernard / whil that I leue I schal han remem-

HARL. 1758 AND CAMBRIDGE, p. 597 (6-T. 606) [Camb. leaf 406]

braunce / of the trauaylis / that oure lord crist sufferede in
 prechyng [257] his werynesse in trauaylyng / hise tempt-
 acionys whan he fastide / Hise longe wakyng whan he
 preyede / Hise teris whan that he wepte for pete of
 good peple [258] ¶ the wo & the schame / & the
 filthe that men seydyn to hym / of the foule spittyng
 that men spittyn in his face / of the buffetys that men ȝeue
 hym / of the foule mowis that men ȝeue hym / & of the foule re-
 preuys that men to hym sede / [259] of the naylys
 with the whiche he was nayled to the cros / and of al the
 remenaunt of his passioun / that he sufferede for myne synnys
 & no thyng for hyse gilt / [260] ¶ And ȝe schul vndyr-
 stonde / than in manys synne / is euery manere ordere /
 or ordenaunce turned / vp so doun / [261] for it is soth
 that god & resoun / & sensualyte / & the body of man
 been ordeyned that euerych of these foure thyngis
 schulde haue lo[r]dschepe ouer that othir [262] As thus /
 god schulde haue lordschepe ouer resoun / & resoun ouyr
 sensualite / & sensualite ouyr the body of man
 [263] ¶ But sothly whan man synnyth / Al this ordere &
 ordenaunce is turned vpsodoun / [264] And therfore
 thanne for as meche / as the resoun of man ne wele nouȝt been
 subiect ne obeysaunt to god that is his lord by ryȝt there-
 fore leseth it the lo[r]dschepe that it schulde haue ouyr
 sensualite / & ek ouer the body of man / [265] And
 why for sensualite rebellyth / thanne a-geyns resoun ¹And
 by that weye leseth resoun the lordschepe / ouer sensualite /
 & ouyr the body. [266] for ryȝt as resoun is rebel to
 god / rygh so is sensualite / rebel to resoun and
 the body also / [267] And certis this disordenaunce &
 this rebelloun oure lo[r]d Ihesu crist aboute vp-on his
 precious body / Ful deere And herkenyth in which wise /
 [268] for as meche / thanne as resoun is rebel to god / ther-
 fore is man worthi to han sorwe / & to be ded /
 [269] This sufferede oure lord Ihesu cryst for man Aftyr that
 he hadde be betrayed of his disciple And distreyned / and

boundyn so that his blod brast out at euery nayl / of hise
handis as seyth seynt Augustyn [270] ¶ And ferthere ouyr
for as meche as resoun of man wele / not doute sensu-
alite whan it may therfore is man worthy / to haue schame.
And this sufferede oure lord Ihesu cryst for man whan they
spitte in his visage [271] ¶ And ferthere ouyr / for as
meche as the caytyf body of man is rebel
bote to resoun / & to sensualite / therfore is it worthy the
deth / [272] And this sufferede oure lord Ihesu Crist
vp-on the cros / where as was no part of his body
fre / with-oute gret pyne / & bittyr passioun / [273]
And al this sufferede Ihesu crist that neuere forfeitid //
And therefore resonably may be seyde of Ihesu
in this manere ¶ To meche am I pynyde for the
thyngis that I neuere deseruyd / And to meche defouled /
for schenschepe that man is worthy to haue / [274] And ther-
fore may the synful man / weel seye / as seyth seynt Bernard /
acused be the bittyrnesse of myn synne / for whiche there
müste been suffered so meche bittyrnesse / [275] ffor certis
after the dyuerce discordaunce / of oure wekedenesse:
was the pascioun of Ihesu cryst ordeyned / in dyuerse thyngis /
[276] ¶ As thus /. Certis synful manys soule: is betrayed
of the deuyll be coueytyse of temperel prosperite / &
skornyde be disseid whan that he cheseth fleschely delycis / And
3it is it turmentid by inpacience / of aduersite & be-spit
be seruage & subieccioun of synne / & at the laste it is
slayn fynally / [277] for his disordenaunce of synful man:
was Ihesu crist fyrst betrayed / and after that was he bounde
that cam for to onbynde us of synne & of pyne [278]
¶ Thanne was he bescorned / that only schulde a ben
honoured / in alle thyngis [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] [279]
¶ Thanne was his visage / that ouzte be desyred
of alle mankynde / in whiche visage aungellis / desire to
loke: vileynly be-spit [280] ¶ Thanne was he scorgit
that no thyng hadde a-gilt / And fynally thanne was he
Crucified / & slayn / [281] thanne was accompleed / the

word of ysaye ¶ He was woundit for
 oure mysdedis / & defoulid by oure felonyes. [282]
 ¶ Now sithe that Ihesu crist tok vp on hym self / the
 peyne of al oure wekkedenesse: Meche ouȝte synful
 man wepyn / & be-waylyn that for hise synnys: goddis sone
 .vj.^a of heuene schulde al this peyne endure [283] The .vj.
 thyng that schulde meue a man to contricioun: is the hope
 of .iij. thyngis that is to seyne forȝeuenesse of synne /
 And the ȝifte of grace weel for to do And the glorie of
 heuene / with whiche god schal gerdounnyn man / For hise
 goode dedis / [284] And for as meche as Ihesu crist
 ȝeuyth vs these ȝiftis of hise largenesse & of his souereyn
 bountee. therefore is he clepid *Iesus*¹ nazarenus rex
 iudiorum [285] Ihesu is to seyne sauour / or sal-
 uacioun on whom men schul han forȝeuenesse as they schul
 hope of here synnys / whichiche that is properly saluacioun of
 synnys [286] And therefore seyde the aungel to Ioseph // Thiow
 schalt clepe his name *Ihesus* that schal saue his peple / of here
 synnys / [287] and here of seyth seynt petir Theree is
 non othir name vnder heuene that is ȝeue to ony man /
 by whiche a man may be sauȝd / but only *Ihesus*. [288]
Nazarenus / is as meche for to seyne as flouryschyng in
 whiche a man schal hope that he that ȝeuyth hym remysioun
 of synnys schal ȝeue hym ek grace / weel to do ¶ ffor
 in the ²flour is hope of freut tyme comyng / And in
 the forȝeuenesse of synne / hope of grace weel to do [289] I
 was at the dore of thyn herte seyth *Ihesus* / & clepede for to
 entere / he that openyth to me schal haue forȝeuenesse / of
 synne / [290] I wele entere in to hym be myn grace / And
 soupe with hym by the goode werkis that he schal doon /
 whiche werkis been the fode / of which / & he schal soupe
 with me by the greete Ioye / that I schal ȝeue hym / [291]
 ¶ Thus man schal hope / for hise werkis of penaunce / that
 god schal ȝeue hym his regne / as he behetyth hym in his
 gospel

[¹ MS. Iho]

[292] NOW schal a man vnderstonde in which

CAMBRIDGE 600 (8-T. 609) [² leaf 607, back]

manere schal ben his contricioun / ¶ I seye that it schal
 be vnyuersel / & total A man schal be /
 uerray repentaunt for alle hise synnys / that he hath doon / in
 delit of his theut for delit is ful parlious / [293] For there
 ben two maneris of consentynges /. that on of hem is /
 clepid consentynge of affeccioun / whan a man is moeuyd
 to do synne / & thanne delytith hym longe for to thynkyn on
 that synne / [294] & his resoun aperseuyth it weel / that
 it is synne ageyns the lawe of god / and ȝit his resoun
 refreynyth not his foule delit / or talent. thow he se wel
 apertely that it is synne / & ageyns the reuerence of god. Althow
 his resoun ne consente not to don that synne in dede:
 [295] ȝit seyn some doctourys / that swich delyt that
 dwellith longe / it is ful parlious al be it neuere so lite /
 [296] And also a man schulde sorwe namely for al
 that he hath desyred a-geyn the lawe of god / with
 parfit consentynge of his resoun / for therof is no doute /
 that it is dedly synne / [297]
 *no gap in the MS.* that it is first in manys
 thouȝt / And aftyr that in his delyt & so forth in to
 consentynge & in to dede [298] ¶ Wherfore I feere that
 manye man / ne repentyn hem neuere of sweche thoughtys &
 delycys / ne neuere schryuyn ¹hem of it / but only of the
 dede of greete synnys outward / [299] wherfore I seye
 that sweche wekede thouȝtis & wekkede delitis / been
 subtyl begilouris of hem that schul been dampned / [300]
 Moore ouer a man ouȝte to sorwe / for hese wekede
 wordys / as wel as hise wikkede dedis / For certis
 the repentaunce of a sengeler synne & not repentaunt for alle
 hise othere synnys / or ellis repente hym of alle hise
 othere synnys & not of a senguleer synne may not
 auayle / [301] for certis god almyȝti is al good &
 therfore / othyr he forȝeyth al or ellis ryȝt noght [302]
 And herof seyth seynt augustyn /. I wot certeynly [303] that
 god is enemy to euery synnere / & how thanne he
 that observit on synne / schal he han forȝeuenesse of the

othere synnys: Nay [304] ¶ And ferthere
ouyr / Contricioun schal been wondyr sorweful And an-
guyssous / & therefore ȝeuyth hym god pleylny his
mercy / And therefore whan myn soule was angwissous /
with-inne me / I hadde remembraunce of god / that
myn preyere myȝte come to hym [305] ¶ ferthere ouyr /
Contricioun muste be contynewel / & that man haue stede-
fast purpos to schryue hym & to amende hym of
his lyf / [306] For sothly whil contricioun lastith man
may euere haue hope of forȝeuenesse / & of this comyth
hate of synne that distroyeth synne bothe in hym self
& ek in othere folk / as his power [307] ¶ for whiche
seyth dauid / he that louyn god hatyn wekkedenesse / for
trustith weel / for to loue god: is for to loue that he louyth /
& hate that he hatith /

[308] ¶ The laste thyng that we schal vnderstonde:
is this / whereof auaylyth contricioun / I seye
that sumtyme Contricioun delyueret man from synne /
[309] of whiche that dauid seyth / I seye quod Dauid /
that is to seyn. I purpose it fermely / to schryue me / And
thow lord relesedyst myn synne / [310] And rygh so
as contricioun auaieth nouȝt with-oute sad purpos of
schrifte / If man haue oportunyte / rygh so lite worth is
schrifte or satisfaccioun with-outyn contricioun [311] ¶ And
more ouer Contricioun distroyet the prysoun of helle /
& makyth week & feble alle the strenthis of the
deuyllis / and restorith the ȝiftys of the holy gost / &
of alle goode werkys / [312] & it clenseth the soule of
synne / & delyuerith the soule from the pit of helle /
& from the cumpayny of the deuyll / & from the seruage
of synne / & restorith it to alle godis spiritueles &
to the cumpayny & communicoun of holy cherche / [313]
And ferthere it makith hym that whilhom was
sone of yre / to be sone of grace / And alle these thyngis
been prouyd by holy writ [314] ¶ And therefore he that
wolde settyn his entent to teche thyngis he were ful

wis // ffor sothe he schulde not thanne in al his lyf
 haue corage to synne / but geue his body & al his herte
 to the seruyse of Ihesu crist / & therof don hym
 homage [315] For sothly oure swete lord / Ihesu Crist
 hath spared vs so debonerly in oure folyis / that 3if he ne
 hadde pete of manys soule / a sory song we myghte alle
 synge /

Explicit prima pars penitencie Et sequitur / secunda
 pars eiusdem.

[316]

THe secunde partie of penytence is Confessioun
 that is signe of Contricioun / [317] Now schul 3e
 vnderstonde / what is Confessioun & whethir
 it oughte nedis be doon or non And whiche
 thyngis ben nede to verray Confessioun

[318] ¶ fyrrst schalt thu vnderstonde that Confessioun is
 verray schewyng of synnyng to the prest / [319] this is to
 seyne verray: for he muste confessyn hym of alle the
 condiciounys that belongyn to hese synnyng/as ferforth as he
 can / [320] al muste be seyde / & nothyng excused / ne
 hid ne forwrappid / & nou3t anaunte the of thyng goode
 werkys [321] ¶ And fartherre ouyr it is necessarye / to vnder-
 stonde whens that synnyng spryng / And how they
 entere / & whiche they ¹been

[322] ¶ Of the spryngyng of synnyng / seyth seynt poul
 in this wyse / That ry3t as by a man / Synne enterede ferst
 in to this world / And thour that synne deth / ryght so
 thilke deth / endtred in alle man that sennen [323]
 And this man was .adam. by whom synne enterede in to
 this world / whan he brak the comaundement of god /
 [324] and therefore he that fyrrst was so myghty / that he
 ne schulde nat a deyed / becam swichon that he muste
 nedis deye whedyr he wolde or non / And al his progenye
 in this world / that in thilke man synnedyn [325] ¶ Loke
 that in stat of innocence whan Adam & Eue

were makid in paradys / & nothyng haddyn schame
of here nakedenesse [326] how that the serpent that was
most wyly of alle othere bestis / that god hadde makyd /
seide to the woman / why comanded god to ȝow
that ȝe schulde nat ete of euery tre in paradys / [327] The
woman answerede / of the freut quod sche of the treis
in Paradys we fedyn vs But sothly of the freut of the
tre that is in the myddyl of paradys / god forbad vs
for to ete / ne nought touche it / lest perauenture we schulde
deye [328] ¶ The serpent seyde to the woman / Nay
nay ȝe schul not deye / of detht / ffor sothe god wot that
what day that ȝe ete therof / ȝoure eyen schul openyn
& ȝe schul been as goddys / knowynge good & harm /
[329] The woman thane ¹saw þat the tre was godd
to fedynge & fair to þ^e eyen & delitable to
sight Sche tok of the freut & et it &
ȝaf to hire husbonde & he et / & a-non þ^e eizen of
hem bothe openedyn / [330] And whan þat they knewin
that þei were nakede they sowedin of fegelevis a manere
of brech to hidyn here membris / [331] There may ȝe
se that dedly synne hath ferst suggestioun of the
feend as schewith heere by the Naddre¹ And afterward
the delyzt of the flesch as schewith heere by eue / And
after that consentynge of resoun: as schewith heere by
Adam // [332] For troste weel thow it so weere / that the
fend temtede .eue. that is to seyne the flesch / & the
flesch hadde delyt in the beute of the freut / defended /
ȝit sertis tyl that resoun that is to seyne adam / con-
sentede to the etynge of the frut: ȝit stood he in the estat
of Innocence // [333] ²Of thilke Adam: toke we thilke
synne orygynal / for of hym fleschly: descended be we alle /
& engendrede of vyle / & corrupt mateere / [334] And
whan the soule is put in oure body / righ a-noon is con-
tract orygynal synne / And that that was ferst but only
payne of concupescence / is after-ward bothe payne &
synne / [335] & therfore ben we alle born / sonys of

[—¹In corrector's
hand, over an
erasure.]

wrathe / & of dampnacioun / perdurable / ȝif it neere baptisme /
 that we resseyvyn / whiche be-nemyth vs the culpe . but for
 sothe the pyne dwellith with vs as to temptacioun / whiche
 peyne hyghte concupiscence / [336] this Concupiscence /
 whan it is wrongfully disposed / or ordeyned in man / it
 makyth hym coueyte by coueytise of flesch / flesschely synne
 be syghte of hise eyen / as to erthely thyngis / And
 eek coueytise of heynesse / be pryde of herte

[337] ¶ Now as to spekyn of the ferte coueytise
 that is Concupiscence / aftyr the lawe of oure membris /
 that weere lafully I-makede / And be ryghtful Iuge-
 ment / of good / [338] I seye for as meche / as man is nouȝt
 obeysaunt / to god that is his lord / therfore is the flesch to
 hym dysobeysaunt / thorw Concupiscence / ¹ whiche is
 clepid norisschyng of synne & occasioun of synne /
 [339] Therefore al the while / that a man hath withinne hym
 the pyne of concupiscence¹ / it is impossible / but he be
 temptid sumtyme / & meuyd in his flesch to synne /
 [340] & this thyng may not falle as longe as he leuyth /
 it may weel waxe feble & fayle be vertew of baptisme /
 and by the grace of good thorw penytence / [341] but
 fully schal it neuere quenche / that he schal sum-
 tyme be meuyd / in hym self but he were al refreyned be
 seknesse or by malefice of socerye / or colde drynkis
 [342] ¶ ffor lo what seyth seynt Paul / the flesch coueytith
 a-ȝen the spyryt / & the spirit ageyn the flesch / they
 been so contrarye / & so stryuyng that a man may nat
 alwey don as he wolde [343] ¶ The same Seynt Poule
 Aftyr his greete / penauce / in watyr & in lond / in ² watyr
 be nyght / & be day in gret peril & in greet pyne
 In lond in femyn & thurst / & cold & clothis /
 & onys stooned / almost to the deth [344] ȝit seyde he
 .allas I caytif man / ho schal delyuere me from the prysoun
 of myn caytyf body / [345] And Seynt Ierom whan he
 long tyme hadde wonyd / in deserð / where as he hadde noon
 cumpaynye / but of wilde bestes / where as he hadde
 [1-¹ repeated in MS.] CAMBRIDGE 605 (6-T. 614) [2 leaf 410]

no mete but erbis / and watir to his drink ne no bed
 but the nakede erthe / ffor whiche his flesch was blak / as an
 Ethiopen / for hete & nygh distroyed / for cold / [346]
 ȝit seyde he / that the brennyng of lecherye / boylede in al
 his body / [347] wherfore I wot wel sekryrly that they
 ben disseyuede / that seyn that they ben not temptid in
 here body [348] witnesse of seynt Iame / the apostelle
 that seyth / that euery wȝt is temptid in his owene Con-
 cupiscence / that is to seine that euery of vs hath mater
 & occasioun to be temptid / of the norysshynge of synne /
 that is in his body / [349] And therefore seyth seynt Iohn
 the ewangelist/ ȝif that we seyn that we been with-out
 synne we disseyuyn oure seluyn / & treuthe is not in vs
 [350] ¶ Now schal thou vnderstonde / [. . .]
 how synne wexeþ And encreseth in man ¶ The ferste
 thyng is thilke noryschynge of synne / of whiche I spak
 by-fore / thilke fleschely concupiscence / [351] and aftyr
 that comyth subieccioun / of the deuyll / this is to seyne
 the deuyllis bely with wheche he blowyth / in man the fer
 of fleschely concupiscence / [352] And aftyr that a man be-
 thyntyth hym whethir he wele do or noo the ilke thyng
 to wheche he is temptid / [353] And thanne if that a
 man with-stande / & weyue the ferste entisyngis of hise
 flesch / & of the feend / thanne is it no synne And ȝif
 so be that he do not so / thanne fleit he a noon / a flaume /
 of delit / [354] and thanne is it good to be war / & kepe
 hym weel or ellys he wele / fallyn a noon in to consentynge / of
 synne / And thanne wele he do it ȝif he may / haue tyme
 & place / [355] and of this mater seyth Moyses . be
 the deuyll in this manere ¶ The fend seyth I wele
 chase & pursue the man be wekede sulieccioun /
 & I wele hente hym be meuyng or steri[n]g of
 synne / & I wele departe myn preyse or myn prey by de-
 liberacioun / & myn lust schal be accomplischid / in delit /
 I wele drawe myn swered / in consentynge / [356] for certis
 rygh as a sward / departyth a thyng in to pecis / righ

so consentynge departith god fro man / And thanne
wele I sleen hym with myn hand / in dede of synne / thus
seyth þe fend [357] For certis thanne is a man al
deed / in soule / & thus is synne accompleeschid with temp-
tacioun / bi delyt & be concentynge / & thanne is the
synne clepid actual

[358] ¶ forsothe synne is in two manerys / othis
it is venyal or dedly / synne / Sothly whan man louth
ony thyng more than Ihesu Crist oure creature: thanne
is it / dedly synne / And venyal synne / is it / ȝif man loue
Ihesu Crist lesse than hym ouȝte / [359] forsothe the
dede of this venyal synne is wol parlyous / for it amenuseth
the loue that a man schulde haue / to good moore & more.
[360] And therefore ȝif a man scharge hym self / with manye
sweche venyal synnys / certis but ȝif so be that he sum-
tyme dyscharge / hym of hem þe schrifte the mowe ful
lightly / amensyn in hem al the loue that he hath / to Ihesu
crist / [361] & in this wyse skippith venyal in to dedly
synne / For certis the more that a man schargyth hys soule
with venyal synnys: the moore is he enolynyd to
dedly synne [362] And therefore lete vs not be to negligent
to discharge vs / of venyal synnys / for the prouerbe seith
That manye smale makyn a greet [363] ¶ And herkene
this ensauple / A greet wawe of the se comyth sumtyme
with so greet a violence / that it drenchith the schip /
And the same doth sumtyme the smale dropis
of watir that enteryn thorw a lytil crauas in the
thurrok & in the boteme of the schip If men ben so
negligent that men ne scharge hem not be tyme /
[364] And therefore al thow there be a differens be twethe
these two causys / of dren¹chyng: algate the schip is
drenkt [365] ¶ Ryght so faryth it sumtyme / of dedly
synne / And of noyouse venyal synne / whan they
multiplie in man / so greetly that theyilke wordely thyngis
that helouyth thorw whiche he synnyth he synnyth venyally /
is as greet in his herte / as the loue of god / or moore / [366]

And therefore the loue of euerithyng/that is not be set in god/
ne doon principally for godis sake: al thow a man
loue it lasse than god / ȝit is it venyal synne / [367] And
dedly synne / whan the loue of ony thyng/ wegheth
in the herte of man / as meche as the loue of god or
moore / [368] ¶ Dedly synne as [seyth] seynt austyn /
is whan a man turnyth his herte from god / whiche that is
verray souereyn bounte / that may not schauinge / &
ȝewith his herte to thyng that may schauinge & flitte
[369] & certis / that is euery thyng saue god of heuene
for soth is ȝif a man ȝeue his loue / whiche that
he owith al to god / with al his herte / vn-to a creature /
certis as meche of his loue as he ȝeuyth to that ilche
creature / so meche he be-reuyth from god / [370] And ther-
fore doth he synne / for he that is dettour to god /
ȝildyth not al his dette to god / that is to seyne / al the
loue of his herte

[371] ¶ Now sithe man vndyrstonde / generally whiche
is venyal synne thanne is it couenable / to telle specially
of synnys whiche that manye a man / parauenture ne
demyth hem no synnys & schryuyth hym not of the
same synnys / And ȝit natheles they been synnys
[372] Sothly as these clerkis wryte / this is to seyne
that at euery tyme / that man etith or drenkyth moore than
suffiseth to the sustenance / of his body in carteyn he doth
synne / [373] And ek whan he spekyth more than
hym nedith / it is synne ek / whan he herkenyth not¹ be-
nygnely to the compleynt of the poore / [374] ek whan
he is in hele of body / And wele not faste whan othere folk
faste / with-oute cause resonable / eek whan he slepith
more than nedith / or whan he comyth be thilke enchesoun
to late to cherche / or to ²othere werkis of charitee / . [375]
eek whan he vseth his wif with-outyn souereyn desyr
of engenderure to the honour of god / or for the entent
to ȝilde his wif the dette of his body / [376] Ek
whan he wele not visite the sike or the prisounner / ȝif he may /

[¹ not later]

CAMBRIDGE 608 (6-T. 617)

[² leaf 411, back]

[382] ¶ Now schal men vndirstonde that al be it so
that non erthely man / may eschewyn alle venyal synnys: ȝit
may he refreyne hym by the brennyng loue that he
hath to oure lord / Ihesu crist/ And by preyeris & confessioun
& othere goode werkys / so that it schal but litil greue /
[383] For as seith seynt Augustyn / ȝif a man loue god
in swich manere / that al that euere he doth is in the
loue of god [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] werrayly / for he
brennyth in the loue of god / [384] loke how meche that
a drope of watyr / that fallyth in a furneyis ful of feer
awaylyth / or greuyth / so meche anoyeth a venyal
synne to a man / that is parfit in the loue of Ihesu
Crist [.
.
.
no gap in the MS.] be resseyuynge ek of holy watyr /
by almesse dede by general confessioun of Confiteour
at the masse / and at Compelyn / And be blyssynge of
Besschopis & of Prestis & by othere goode werkys.¹

[¹ leaf 412 is cut out of the Cambr. MS.]

[Harl. MS. 1758, leaf 212, back.]

De Superbia et eius dependencijs circumstancijs
spectantibus

[387]

Now is it bi-houeli thyng to tellen whiche ben
dedly synnes. that is to seie. kaitifnesse
of synnes alle they renne in colis. But in
dyuers maner. Now ben thei clepid kaitifes.
ffor as meche as thei ben chief & spryngen of
alle other synnes. [388] ¶ Of the rote of these .4. synns.
Then is pride the generall rote of alle harmes ¶ ffor of
this rote spryngen certeyn branchis. as. Ire. Enuye.
Accidie. or slewthe. Auarice or couetise to comyn
vndirstondyng. Gloteny & lecherie. [389] And
eueryche of these cheef synnes hath his branchis & his
twigges as schall be declarid in her chapitres folwyng.

[Of Pride, and its Twigs.]

[390] ¶ And thogh so be that no man can telle vtterli
the nombre of the twigges & of the branchis that cometh of
pride. yet wolt I schewe a partie of hem as ye schullen
vndirstondyn. [391] ¶ Ther is. inobedience. Auauntyng.
Iprocrisie. Dispite. Arregaunce. Impudence. Swellyng of
herte. Insolence. Elacion. Inpacience. Strif. Contumacie.
Presumpcion. Irreuerence. Pertynacie. Veynglorie. And
manye another twigge that I can noȝt declare. [392] Ino-
bedience is he that disobeieth for dispite to the comaunde-
ment of god & to his souereynes & to his gostly
ffadir. [393] ¶ Auauntour is he: that bosteth of the harme
or of the bounte that he hath done. [394] Ipocrisie is
he that hideth hym to schewe hym suche as he is &
schewith hym suche as he is not. [395] ¶ Dispitous
is he that hath disdeyn of his neighboris. that is to
seyn of his euyng cristen or hath dispite to do that
he ought to do. [396] ¶ Arrogaunt is he. that thanketh
that he hath thilke bountees in hym that he hath not. Or

HARL. 1758 (for Cambridge 610) (6-T. 619)

weneth that he schulde haue hem be his desertis. Or
 ellis that he demeth that he be þat he is not. [397] ¶ Im-
 pudent is he that for his pride hath no schame for his
 synne. [398] ¶ Swellyng of herte is he that when a man
 reioiseth hym of harme that he hath doon. [399] ¶ Inso-
 lent is he that dispiseth in his Iugement alle other
 folk as to regarde of his value & of his connyng & of
 his spekyng & of his beryng. [400] Elacion is when
 that he ne may neither suffre to haue maistrie ne felawe. [401]
 ¶ Inpacient is he that wolt noght ben taught ne vndir-
 nome of his vices. ¶ And be strife werreieth trouthe wetyngly
 & defendeth his folye. [402] ¶ Contymax is he that
 thorough his indignacion is a-yens eueryche auctorite or
 power of hem that ben his souereyns. [403] ¶ Pre-
 sumpcion is he that when a man taketh an emprise that
 hym ought noght to do. Or ellis he may it noght do. & that
 is called Surquedrie. ¶ Inreuerence is when men don noght
 honour ther as hem ought to doon & waiteth to be
 reuerencid. [404] ¶ Pertynacie is whan a man defendith
 his folye. & trusteth to mechiht to his owne witte. [405]
 ¶ Veynglorie is / for to haue¹] ²pompe & delit in his
 temperel heynesse / & gloryfye hym in wordely
 estatys [406] ¶ Iangelyng is / whan man spekith to
 meche be-fore folk / & clappyn as a melle And take no
 kep what they seye /

[¹ Harl. 1758 *extract ends*]

[407] And ȝit is there a preue spice / of pryde that
 wayth fyrst for to be saluyd: er than he wele salue / al be he
 lesse worthi than that othir is / parauenture / And ek he
 waitith or desyrith to sitte / or ellis goon a-boue hym in
 the weye / or kisse pax / or been ensensed / or goon to
 offerynge by-fore his neighebores / [408] & sweche semblable
 thyngis / a-geyns his deute parauenture / but that he hath
 his herte / & his entent in swich a proud desir to be
 magnyfyed & honoured / by-forn the peple. [² Cambr. MS. leaf 418]

[409] ¶ Now be there two manere of pride that
 on of hem is with inne the herte of a man And that

HARL. 1758, AND ²CAMBRIDGE, p. 611 (6-T. 620)

othir is with oute / [410] of whiche sothtly these for-
 seyde thyngis & mo than I haue seyde / apertenyn to
 pryde / that is in the herte of man / And that othere spicis
 of pryde. been with-oute / [411] but neuere the les that on
 of these spicis / of pride: is sygne of that othir riȝt
 as the gay ¶ Leuesel at the tauerne: is signe of the wyn /
 that is in the seler / [412] & this is in manye thyngis /
 as in speche & cuntenaunce / & in outrageous aray / of
 clothyng / [413] For certis ȝif there hadde be no synne
 in clothyng: Crist wolde not sosoone haue notid / & spokyn of
 the clothyng of the riche man in the gospel [414] &
 as seyth seynt Gregory / that precious clothyng is cou-
 pable / for the derthe of it / & for his softenesse / &
 for his strangenesse & degisynesse / & for the super-
 fluyte or for the inordinat skarsenesse of it [415]
 ¶ Allas may man nat seen as in oure dayis the synful
 costelewe aray of clothyng / & namely in to meche
 superfleuyte / or ellis in disordenat skarsenesse

[416] ¶ As to the ferste synne in superfleuyte of
 clothyng / whiche that makith it so deere to harm of the
 peple / [417] nat only the cost of the enbroudyng /
 the degyse endentyng / or barryng / owndyng. palyng /
 wyndyng or bendyng ¹& semblable wast / of clothyng
 in vanyte / [418] But there is also the costelewe furring in
 hire gounys / so meche pounsounnyng / of chesellis to make
 holys / so meche daggyng of scheris / [419] forth-with /
 the superfleuite in lenthe / of the forseide gounys / trayl-
 yng in the dunge / & in the myre / on horse & ek on
 foote as weel of man as of woman / that al thilke
 traylyng is verrayly as in effect wastid consumyd thred-
 bare & rotyn with donge / rather than it is ȝeue to
 the poore / to greet damage of the forseide poore / folk
 [420] & that in sundery wise / this is to seyne / that the
 more the cloth is wastid: the more mote it coste / to
 the peple for the skarsenesse [421] And ferthere ouyr
 ȝif so be that they wolde ȝeue swiche pounsode / &

daggede clothynge to þ^e pore peple / it is not conuenyent
 to were for here estat ne sufficient to be to here necescite /
 to kepe hem from the distemperaunce of the firmament.
 [422] ¶ Vp-on that othir syde / to speke of the disord-
 ynat skarsenesse / of clothynge as been these cuttede
 sloppis or haunseleynys / that thorw here schortnesse
 keuere not the schameful membris / of man to wekede
 eentent / [423] Allas some of hem schewyn the boce of
 here schap / & the horyble swollyne membris / that semyth
 lyk the maladie of hirnya in the wrappynge of here hosyn /
 [424] And ek the buttokis of hem / farn as thow it were
 the h[y]ndere part of a sche Ape in the fulle of the moone
 [425] And moore ouyr the wrechede swollene membris /
 that they schewe thorw disgisyng in departynge of
 here hosyn / in whit & red / semyth that half here schame-
 ful preue menbris were flayn / [426] & ȝif so be that
 they departyn here hosyn in othere colouris / as is whit
 & blew / or with whit & blak / or blak & reed and so
 forth / [427] thanne semyth it as be variauns of colourys
 that half here preue membris been corrupt
 by the fier of seynt Antonye / or by cankre ¹or othir
 swich myschaunce [428] ¶ Of the hyndere part of here
 buttokys it is ful horryble for to se / for certis in that
 partye of here body / there as they porgyn here styngynge
 ordure / [429] that foule partie schewe they to the peple /
 proudly in dispit / of honeste / which honeste that
 Ihesu crist & hise frendis obserued to schewyn in here
 lyue [430] ¶ Now as of the outrageous aray of women /
 god wot that thogh the visage of some of hem seme
 ful chast & debonayre / ȝit notyfie they in here aray or
 atyr / likerousnesse & pride / [431] I sey not that
 honeste in clothynge of man or woman is uncon-
 able / But certis the superfluite / or disordenat skantite
 of clothynge / is repreuable / [432] Also the synne of
 ornament or of apparayle / is in thyngis that apperteignyn
 to rydyng / As in to manye delicate horsis that been holdyn

for delit that been so fayre fatte & costlewe / [433]
 & also in manye a vicious knaue / that is susteynd by
 cause of hem. In to coryous harneys / as in sadelis
 croperis / peitrelis / & brydelys kouered with precious
 clothynge & riche barris & platis of gold / and of
 syluyr [434] ¶ For whiche god seith be zacharie the
 prophete. I wel confounde / the rideris of sweche hors /
 [435] These folk take lytil reward of the rydyng of
 goddis sone / of heuene / & of his harneis whan he rod /
 vp-on the asse / And ne hadde non othir harneys but
 the poore clothis of hise disciplis / ne we ne reede not
 that euere he rod / on othir beste [436] I spake this
 for the synne of superfluyte / & not for resonable
 honeste whan resoun it requyreth [437] ¶ And ferthere
 ouyr/certis pryde is gretly notified/in holdynge of greet meyne/
 whan they been of lytil profit or of ryzt no profit /
 [438] & namely whan that meyne is felonous / & damage-
 ous to the peple / by hardynesse of greet lordschep / or by
 weye of offys [439] ¶ For certis sweche lordis / selle
 thanne here lordschep / to the deuyl of helle / whan they
 susteyne the wikkedenesse of here meyne [440] ¶ Or ellis
 whanne these folk of lowede degre / as thilke that holdyn
 ostelryis / suste¹ne the theffte of here hostelleris /
 & that is in manye manere / of disseytis /
 [441] thilke manere of folk been the flyis / that folwyn
 the hony or ellis the houndis that folwyn the carayn / sweche
 manere of folk folwyn strangelyn spiritually here lordschepis /
 [442] for whiche thus seyth dauyd the prophete ¶ Wikkede
 deth mote come to sweche lordschepis / And god ȝeue that
 they mote discendyn in to helle al down / for in herere
 housis been inquiteis / & schrewedenessis / & noght god
 of heuene / [443] & certys til dey doon a-mende-
 ment / ryght as god ȝaf his benysoun to Pharaο / bi the
 seruyse of Iacob / & to laban bi the seruyse of Ioseph :
 so god wele ȝeue his malysoun to sweche lordschepis
 that sustene the wikkedenesse of here seruauantis / but they

come to a-mendement [444] ¶ Pryde of the table apperyth
ek ful ofte / For certis riche men been clepid to festis /
& poore folk been put a-vey & rebukid [445] And also
in exces of diuerse metis & drynkis & namely
sweche manere bake metis / & dischemetis brynyng with
wildefeer / peynted & castellid with paper / &
semblable wast / so that it is abisioun for to thynke / [446]
& ek in to gret preciousnesse of vessel & coryouste
of menstralsie by whiche a man is sterid the moore to
delycis / of lecherye / [447] 3if it so be that he sette thelesse his
herte vp-on oure lord Ihesu crist / certeynly it is a
synne. & certeynly the deuyllis myght is so greet
in this cas / that a man myghte lighteli by hem falle in to
a dedly synne. [448] The especes that souredyn of pryde /
sothly whan they sourdyn of maleis ymagyned auysed
& forcast or ellis of vsage by dedly synne / it is
no doute / [449] & whanne they souredyn bi frelte on-
auysed / sodeynly / & sodeynly withdrawen a-geyn alle been
they greuous / synnys / I gesse that they been nat
dedly [450] ¶ Now myghte men aske wherof Pride
souredith & spryngit / And I seye that it spryngith
sumtyme of the goodis of nature / And sumtyme of
the goodis of fortune / And sumtyme of the goodis of
grace / [451] Certis the goodis of nature ¹stondyn
outirly in goodis of body or goodis of soule [452]
Certis goodis of body: been hele of body /
strenthe delyuynesse / Beute genterye / Fraunchise /
[453] Goodis of nature of the soule: been good wit /
scharp vndirstondyng / subtyl engyn / uertu naturel / good
memorye / [454] Goodis of fortune been rychchess
hei degreis of lordschepes / preysynge of the peple / [455]
Goodis of grace been science / power to suffere
spirituel tranayle / benygnetee vertuous contemplacioun /
withstondyng of temptacioun / & semblable thyngis /
[456] of whiche forseide goodis / certis it is a ful greet
folye / a man to prydyn hym in onye of hem / alle [457]

¶ Now as for to spekyn of goodis of nature god wot that sumtyme we han hem in nature / as meche to oure damage as to oure proffit / [458] As for to spekyn of hale of body: certis it passith ful lyghtely / & ek it is ful oftyn enchesyn of the seknesse of oure soule / ffor god wot that the flesch is a wel greet enemy to the soule / And therefore the more that the body is hol the moore be we in peril to falle [459] ¶ Ek for to pride hym in his strenthe / of body: it is an high folye ffor certis the flesch / coueythith a-geynes the spirit And ay the moore strong that the flesch is / the soryere may the soule be [460] And onyral this strenthe of body / & wordily hardynesse / causeth ful ofte manye a man to peril & myschaunce [461] ¶ Ek for to pryde hym of his genterye / is wol greet folye for ofte tyme the gentrye of the body / benymyth the gentrie of the soule / And ek we been alle of oon / fadyr / & of on modir / & alle we been of on mater rotyn & corrupt / bothe riche & poore / [462] Forsothe on manere genterye is for to preyse / that aparaylyth manys corage / with vertuys & moraliteis / & makith hym cristis child / [463] ffor truste weel that ovir what man that synne hath maystrye he is a verray cherl to synne

[464] ¶ Now been there general signys of gentilessis / as eschuyng of viciis / and ribaudye & seruage of synne in word ¹in werk & contenance [465] & vsinge vertu curtaysie & clennesses & to be libel / that is to seyne large be mesur for thilke that passith mesur: is folye & synne / [466] A nothir is to remembre hym of bounte / that he of othere folk hath resseyued / [467] A nothir is to be buxsome to hese sogettis / wherof seith Senec / there is no thyng moore conabale to a man of hey estat / than debonayrete & pete / [468] And therefore these flyes that men clepe beis / Whan they make here kyng: they chese on that hath no prikke wherwith he may styng // [469]

A nothir is a man to haue a noble herte / & a diligent
 to atteyne to here vertuous thyngis [470] ¶ Now certis
 a man to pride hym in the goodis of grace / is ek an
 outrageous folye for thilke ȝiftis of grace / that schulde
 a turnyd hym to goodnesse / And to medicyne turnyth
 hym to venym and to confusioun as seith seynt gregory //
 [471] Certis also ho so prydith hym in the goodis of
 ffortune! he is a ful greet fol / for sumtime is a man a ryȝt
 greet lord be the morwyn / that is a caytif & a wreche
 or it be euyñ [472] And sumtyme the richesse of a man!
 is cause of his deth Sumtyme the delicis of a man! is
 cause of the greuouse seknesse thour whiche he deyeth /
 [473] Certis the comendacioun of the peple / is sum-
 tyme ful fals & ful brethil for to triste / this day they
 preise / to morwe they blame. [474] god wot desir to
 haue commendacioun of the peple hath caused deth to
 manye a besi man [475] ¶ Now sithe that so is / that ȝe han
 vndirstonde what is pride / & whiche been the spicis of
 it / And whens pride sordith & spryngith /

*Remedium contra peccatum Superbie (in the
 margin).*

[476] Now schul ȝe vndirstonde whyche is the remedye a-
 ȝens pride ¶ Humylite or [. . . . no gap in the MS.]
 meknesse / [477] is the remedye Ageyns Pride / that is vertu
 thorw whiche a man hat verray knowelechyng of hym self. &
 heldith of hym self no prys ne deynte / as in regard of hise de-
 sertys / considerynge euere his frelte [478] ¶ Now be there thre
 maneris of humilitee. as humylite in herte / And othir
 humylite in his mouth. the thredde in hise werkis /
 [479] The humilite in herte! is in foure maneris / that
 on is whan a man holdyth hym self as nygh wroth
 bi-fore god of heuene / A nothir is whan he dispiseth

non othir man / [480] The thredde is whan he ne
rekke nat thow men holde hym not worth / the
ferthe is whan he ne is not sory of his humyliacioun / [481]
Also the humylite of mouth: is in iiij. thyngis / in
a-tempre speche / And in humylite of speche / And
whan he knowith with his owene mouth that he is
swich as he thynkith that he is / in his herte / Anothir
is whan he preyseth the bounte of a nother man / and
no thyng therof amenuseth / [482] Humylite ek in
werk / is in .iiij. manerys / The fyrste is whan he puttyth
othere men bi-foryn hym / the secunde is to chese the
loweste place oueral / The thredde is. gladly to assente
to good conseyll / [483] The forte is to stonde gladly to
the award / of hise souereynys or of hym that is in heyere
degree /. Certeyn this is an greet degree of humylite.

(Below are two painted figures: one "Insulda", a man in a green dress, riding a
clawed feline animal (a wolf) biting a bone; the other, "Charite", a woman with a
3-crowned mitre on her head, carrying a winged and flaming (or bleeding) heart in her
left hand, a staff in her right. See the Society's Chaucer Autotypes, Part 2.)

[484]

A

ftyr pride wele I speke of the foule synne of enuye /
whiche that is as by the word of the philysofere
Sorwe of othere menys prosperite // And aftyr the
word of seynt Augustyn / it is sorwe of othere manys
wele / And the Ioye of othere menys harm // [485]
This foule synne is platly a-geyns the holy gost /
[. no gap in the MS.] 3it natheles
for as meche / as bountee. pertenyth properly to the
holy gost / & enuye comyth properly of maleys / ther-
fore it is propirly a-geyn the bounte of the holygost //
[486] Now hath Maleys .ij. spicis that is to seyne
hardynesse / of herte in wekedenesse or ellis the fleesch of
man is so blynd that he considerith not that he is in
synne / or rekkith not that he is in synne whiche
is the hardynesse of the deuyl [487] That othir
spice of enuye / is whan that a man werreyeth trouthe
whan that he wot that it is trouthe / & ek whan
he werreyeth the grace that god hath 3oue to his

And al this is by enuye // [488] Certis
thane is enuye the werste synne that is / For sothly
alle othere synnys / been sumtyme onli a-geyns on special
vertu / [489] But certis enuye / is a-geyns alle othere wertuis
a-geyns alle goodnesse / for it is sory of alle the
bounteis / of his neghebour And in this manere / it is
dyuerse from alle othere synnys [490] For weel onethe
is there ony synne / that it ne hath sum delit in it self /
saue only enuye / that euere hat in it self / Angwissch &
sorwe // [491] The spicis of enuye ben these / theere is
ferst sorwe of othere menys goodnesse / & of his pros-
perite / & prosperite is kyndeli mater of ioye /
Thanne is enuye a synne a-geyns kynde / [492] The
secunde spice of enuye / is Ioye of othere menys harm /
& that is proprely lyk to the deuyll that euere reioyeth
hym of othere manys harm [493] ¶ Of these two spycys /
comyth bakbytynge And this synne of bakbitynge/or detrac-
tyoun hath serteyn spicis / as thus sum man preyseth his
neighbour by a wekede entent [494] For he makyth
alwey a wekkede knotte / at the laste ende [.
. *no gap in the MS.*] that is digne of moore
blame / than worth ¹is al the preysynge / [495] The secunde
spice is that ȝif a man be goode / & doth or seyth a
thyng to good entent / the bakbitere wele turne al thilke
goodnesse vp so doun / to hise schrewede entent / [496]
The iij is to amenuse the bounte / of his neighe-
boure / [497] The ferthe spice of bakbytynge is this
that ȝif men speke goodnesse of a man / thanne wele the
bakbitere seyn / Parfey ȝit swich a man is bet than he /
in dispreysynge of hym that men preysse / [498] The
fifte spice is this / for to concete gladly & herkene
gladly to the harm that men speke of othere folk this
synne is ful gret / And ay encreseth aftyr the wekkede
entent/ of the bakbytere [499] ¶ Aftyr bakbytynge comyth
grochyng / or murmuracioun & sumtyme it sp[r]yngith
of inpacience / a-geyns god & sumtyme a-geyns man /

[500] A-geyns god it is whan a man / grochith ageyns
the peyne of helle / or ageyns pouerte / or los of catel
or a-geyns reyn or tempest or ellis grochyn that schrewis
han prosperite or ellis that goode men han ad-
uersite / [501] And alle these thyngis schulde men suffere /
paciently / for they come by the ryghful Iugement / &
ordenaunce of god / [502] Sumtyme comyth grochyng of
aueryce As Iudas grochede a-geyns the Magdelyne / whanne
sche a-noynted the heued of Cryst with here
precious onyment / [503] this maner murmour is swich
as whan man grochith of goodnesse that hym self
doth / or that othere folk doon of here owene catel / [504]
Sumtyme comyth murmour of pryde / as whan Symon
the pharyse grochede a-geyns the Magdalyn whanne
sche aprochede / to Ihesu Crist / & wepte at his feet / for hire
synnys [505] And sumtyme it sordyth of
enuye / whan men discoueryn a manys herm / that was
preue / or beryth hym on hande thyng that is fals [506]
¶ Murmure ek is ofte a-mongis seruauantis / that grochyn
whan here souereynys biddyn hem don lefful thyng
[507] & for as meche as they dar not opynly with seye
the comaundementis of here souereynys / 3it wele seyn
¹seyn harm & groche & murmure pryuyli for verray
despit / [508] whiche wordis men clepe the deuyllis
pater *noster* thow so be that the deuyl hadde
neuere no pater *noster* but that lewede folk zeue it swich
a name [509] ¶ Sumtyme it comyth of yre or
prive hate / that norschith rancour in herte / as afterward
I schal declare [510] ¶ Thanne comyth ek bittirnesse / of
herte / thorw whiche bittirnesse euery good dede of his
neighebour semyth to hym bittyr & onsaucury [511]
¶ Thanne comyth discord that vnbyndith alle manere
of frenchepe / Thanne comyth scornynge as whanne a
man seketh occasioun to anoyen his neighe-
bour / al do he neuere so weel [512] ¶ Thanne comyth
accusynge / As whan a man seketh occasioun to anoyen his

neihebour whiche that is lik the craft of the deuyll
 that wayth bothe nyght & day to acusyn vs alle
 [513] ¶ Thanne comyth malignete / thour whiche a man
 noyeth his neighebour / priuily zif he may / [514] & If he
 not ne may algate his wilke wil schal not fayle /
 as for to brenne his hous pryuyly. or enpoyssoune or sle
 these bestis or semblable thyngis

[1—] Ouer an erasure in
 the corrector's hand.]

[In the margin :] *Remedium contra Inuidiam.*

[515] **N**ow wele I speke of the¹ remedye a-geyns this foule
 synne of enuye ffyrst is the loue of god
 principal & louynge of his neghebour as hym self ¶ ffor
 sothly that on ne may not been with-outyn that othir /
 [516] And troste weell that in the name of thy name / of thyn
 neghebour: thow schalt vndyrstonde the name of thyn
 brothir / for certis we han on fadyr fleschely / & on
 modyr ¶ That is to seyne Adam. & Eue. & ek on fadir
 spirituel / that is god of heuene [517] ¶ Thi
 neighebores art thow holde for to loue & willyn hym alle
 goodnesse / And therefore seith god loue thin neghebores / as
 thyn self / that is to seyenne to saluacioun bothe of lyf &
 soule [518] ¶ And more ouer thow schat loue hym in
 word / & in benygne amonestynge & schastysynge /
 & conforte hym in hise annoyis ¶ And preye for hym with
 al thyn herte [519] ¶ And in dede thow schat loue hym
 in swich wyse / that thow schat doon to hym in charite:
 as thow woldist that it were doon to thyn owene persone /
 [520] & therfore thow² [schalt not doon hym no damage
 in wicked worde ne harme in his bodie ne in his catell
 ne in his soule bi entisyng of wicked ensample. [521]
 Thou schalt not desiren his wif non of his thynges.
 Vndirstonde eke that in the name of thi neighebores is com-
 prehendid his enemye. [522] ¶ Certis a man schalt loue
 his Enemye for the comaundementis of god. & sopli thi
 frende schalt thou loue in god. [523] I seie thyn
 Enemye schalt þou loue for goddis sake bi his comaunde-

[² leaf 418 is cut
 out of the Cambr.
 MS.]

[³ Harl. 1768, on
 leaf 215, back,
 fills in.]

ment. ffor if it were reson þat man schulde hate his
 Enemye. forsothe god schulde not take vs to his loue:
 that ben his Enemyes [524] a-yens thre maner of
 wrongis that his Enemye doth to hym. he schaff do thre
 thynges. as þus. [525] ¶ A-yens hate & rancour of herte.
 he schaff loue hym in herte. Ayen chidyng & wicked
 wordis he schaff praie for his Enemye ¶ Ayens the wicked
 dede of his Enemye he schaff doon hym bounte. [526] ffor
 crist seith. Loueth your Enemyes & preieth for hem
 that speke you harme. And eke for hem that you chacen
 & pursewyn & doth bounte to hem that you haten.
 Lo thus commaundeth vs our lord ihesu crist to do
 to our Enemyes. [527] ¶ ffor sothli nature dryueth vs
 to loue our frendis. And parfaie our Enemyes han
 more nede to love then our frendis. And thei that
 muste nede haue. certis to hem schaff men do good-
 nes. [528] & certis in thilke dede haue remem-
 braunce of the loue of ihesu crist that died for his
 Enemyes. [529] ¶ And in as meche as thilke loue is the
 more greuous to parfourme. so meche is more
 gret the merite. & therfore the louyng of our
 Enemye hath confoundid the venyme of the deuyt
 [530] ffor as the deuyt is discomfited be humylite.
 Right so is he woundid to the deth bi the loue of our
 Enemye. [531] Certis then is loue the modecyne that
 caccheth out the venyme of Enuye fro mannes hert. [532]
 The spices of this pas schuff ben more largeli in her
 chapiters folwing /

¶ De Ira [*from margin*]

[533]

After Enuye wof I declare the synne of Ire. ffor
 sothli who that hath Enuye vp on his neighbore.
 a-non comenli he wof fynde hym mater of
 wrapthe in worde or in dede a-yens hym¹ to whom
 he hath Enuye. [534] ¶ And as wof cometh Ire of
 HARL. 1758 (for Cambridge 622) (6-T. 631)

[¹ leaf 216, Harl.
MS. 1758]

Pride as of Enuye. ffor sothli he that is proude or Enuyous is lightli wroth.

[535] This synne of Ire aftir the discryuyng of seynt Austyn. is wicked wille to ben a-vengid bi word or bi dede [536] ¶ Ire aftir this Philosophre. is ¶ *Philosophus* the feruent blood of man quyked in his herte thorogh whiche he wolt harme to hym that he hitteth. [537] ¶ ffor certis the herte of man bi enchaüfyng & meuyng of his blood wexith so trouble that he is oute of all Iugement of reson. [538] But ye schullen vndirstonde that Ire is in two maneres. That oon of hem is good & that other is wicked. [539] ¶ The good Ire is bi ielousie of goodnes thorogh the whiche a²] ^{¶ Harl. MS. 1758 ends.]} man is wroth with wikkedenesse & ageyn wekkedenesse And therefore seyth a wis man that Ire is bet than play / [540] this ire is with debonoyrete & it is wroth withoute bittyrnesse / not wroth ageyns the man: but wroth with the mysdede of man As seyth the prophete dauid. Irascimini et nolite peccare. [541] Now vndirstondith that wekede yre is in two manerys that is to seyne sodeyn yre / or hastif Ire with-outyn a-visement & consentynye of resoun / [542] The menyng & the sens of this / is that the resoun of a man / ne consente not to thilke sodeyn yre / & thanne is it venyal [543] ¶ Anothir yre is / ful wekkede that comyth of felonye of herte auysed & cast be-forn wit wikkede wil to don vengeance / & therto his resoun consentith and sothly this is dedly synne / [544] this yre is so displeaunt to god that it distorbelyth his hous / & chaseth the holy gost out of manys soule / & wastyth & destroyeth the liknesse of god. that is to seyne the vertu that is in manys soule / [545] & put in hym the lyknesse of the deuyll / & be-nemyth the man from god that is his ryghtful lord [546] this ire is a ful greet plesaunce to the deuyll for it is the deuyllis furneys that is eschafid / with the fyr of helle / [547] for certis

HARL. 1758, AND CAMBRIDGE, p. 623 (6-T. 632) [¶ Camb. II 419]

ryȝt so as fyr is moore myȝty to distroye ertheli
 thyngis / than ony othir elemen / ryȝt so Ire is myty to
 distroye alle spirituel thyngis / [548] loke ho that
 fuȝr of smale gledys that been almost dede vndir aschyn
 welyn quekyn a-geyn whan they been touchede / with
 brynston / right so Ire wele eueremore quekyn a-geyn /
 Whan it is touchid by the pryde that is couered in
 manys herte [549] for certis fyr ne may not come
 out of no thyng but if it were fyrst in the seme thyng
 naturelly as fyr is drawyn out of flyntys with styl.
 [550] And ryght so as pryde is manye tyme matire of yre:
 righ so is rancure noryce & kepere of Ire // [551] There is
 a manere ¹of tree as seith seynt Iaydre that whan men
 make fyr of the ilke tre & kouere the colis with
 aschyn / sothly the feer of it wil lastyn ale a ȝeere or more /
 [552] And riȝt so farith it of rancure / what it is
 coueryd in the hertis of summe men certeyn it wele
 laste perauenture / from oon Esterne day On tyl a nothir
 esterne day / & moore / [553] but certis thilke man
 is ful fer from the mercy of god al thilke while.

[554] In this forseide deuyllis furneyns / there
 forgyn iij schrewis / Pryde that ay blowyȝth & encresith
 the feer by chydyng & welkede wordis / [555] thanne
 stondith Enuye And holdyȝth the hooȝte yryn in the fyr vp-on
 the herte of man / with a peyre of longe tongis: of long rancur
 [556] And thanne stant the synne of contumelye or
 stryf & cheest & baterith & forȝith by vileyns
 repreuynȝis [557] Certis this cursede synne a-noyeth
 bothe to the man hym self & ek to his neigheboȝre /
 for sothly almost al the harm that ony man
 doth to his neigheboȝre comyȝth of wraȝthe / [558] ffor
 certis outrageous wraȝtha doth al that euere the
 deuyl comaundyȝth hym / For he ne sparith noȝthyr
 crist ne his swete modyr / [559] & in his ouȝ-
 ragious angir / & Ire Allas ful manyon /
 that tyme felyȝth in his herte / ful wikkedely

bothe of cryst & of hise seyntis / & ek of alle hise halwys.
 [560] Is nat this a cursed vœ. ȝis certis allas it be-nemyth
 from man his wit & his resoun / & al his debonayre
 lyf spirituel that schulde kepe his soule // [561]
 Certis it be-nemyth ek goddis due lordschepe. &
 that is mannys soule / & the loue of hise neigheboris //
 It stryuyth ek alday ageyn trouthe / it reuyt hym the
 quyetē of his herte & subuertith his soule.

[562] Of Ire comith these stynkende gendruris
 Fyrst hate that is old wrathe / Discord thurh whyche
 a man for-sakith his olde frend / that he hath lound ful
 longe / [563] And thaune comyth werre & euery
 maneere of wrong that man doth to his neghebour in
 body or in catel. // [564] Of this cursed synne of Ire
 comyth ek manslaughtre / And vndirstonde weel that
 homycide that is manslaughtre is in dyuerse thyngis. sum
 manere of homycide is spirituel. & sum is ¹bodyly. [565]
 Spirituel manslaughtre: is in .vj. thyngis. Fyrst bi
 hate as seyth seynt Iohn that he that hatith his brothyr
 is homycide [566] homycide is ek bi bakbitynge of
 whiche bakbiteris seyth Salomon that they han two
 swardis / with whiche they sleen heere neigheborys / for-
 sothe as wikke is it to be-neme hym his goode name / as
 his lyf. [567] Homycide is ek in ȝeuyngē of wikkede
 conseyll be fraude / As for to ȝeue conseyll to areyse
 wrongful customys / & talagis [568] of whiche seith Salo-
 mon / Leoun rorynge & Bere hungry: been lik to the crewel
 lordschepis in whiche lordschepis holdyngē or abregyngē of the
 schepe or the heere of the wagis of seruauantis / or ellis in
 vsure or in withdrawyngē of the almesse of poore folk /
 [569] ffor whiche the wyse man seyth ffedith hym that
 almost deyeth for hungir. ffor sotly but ȝif thou feede hym
 thou slest hym. And alle these been dedly synnys / [570]
 Bodily manslaughtre is this / whan thou slest hym with thy
 tunge. In othere manere: as whan thou comaundist to
 sleen a man / or ellis ȝeuyst hym conseyll to sleen a

man. // [571] Manslaughtre in deede is in foure maneris /
 that oon is by laue ryght as a Iustise dampnyth
 hym that is coupable to the deth. but let the Iustise
 been war that he do it ryghtfully & that he do it not
 for delit to spille blood / But for kepyng of ryghtwis-
 nesse [572] Anothir homycide is doon for
 necessite / as whan a man sleth a nothir / in his defendaunt /
 And that he ne may non othirwise askape [.
 [573] *no gap in the MS.*] with-
 oute slaughtre of his aduersarye / [. . . *no gap in the MS.*]
 he doth synne & he schal bere penaunce as for dedly
 synne // [574] Ek ȝif a man be cas or aventure schete
 an arwe or caste a stoon with whiche he sleth a man
 he is homycide. [575] Ek ȝif a woman by neklygence
 ouyrlȝe hire child in hire slepyng it is homycide / &
 dedly synne / [576] Ek whan man disturblith con-
 cepcioun of a child & makith a woman outhir barayn
 be drynkyng of venenouse erbis / thorw whiche sche may
 not conseyue / or sleth a child be drynkis / or
 ellis putty[t]h certey[n] material thyngis / in here secre
 placys to slen the child [577] or ellis doth onkyndely
 synne by whiche man ¹or woman sleth here nature
 in manere or in place there as a child may not ben con-
 seyuyd / Or ellis ȝif a woman hath conseyuyd & hurt
 hire self & sleth the child ȝit is it homycide
 [578] What seye we ek of women that morderyn
 here childeryn for dreed of wordely schame certis an
 horrible homycide / [579] omycide is ek ȝif a man ap-
 rocheth to a woman by desir of lecherye thorw whiche the
 child is perschid / or ellis smythitt a woman wetyngely
 thour wheche sche sleth hire child / Alle these been homy-
 cidis / & horrible dedly synnys / [580] ȝit comyth there of
 Ire manye mo synnys / as weel in word as in thought &
 in dede as he that arrettith vp-on god / or blamyth god
 of thyng of whiche he is hym self gilty. or dispiseth
 god / & alle hise halwys As doon these cursede hasardourys

in dyuerse cuntreis / [581] this cursede synne doon they /
 whan they felyn in here herte / ful wekkedely of god &
 of hise halwys. // [582] Also whan thei tretyn onreuerently
 the sacrement of the auteer / thilke synne is so gret
 that vnnethe may it be releid / but that the mercy of
 god passith alle hise werkys / it is so greet / & he so
 benyngne [583] Than comyth of yre an attery angir /
 whan a man is scharply amonestid in his schryfte to for-
 lete synne / [584] Thanne wele he been angry / &
 answeyryng hokyrly / and angryly or defende or excuse
 his synne / by onstedfastnesse of his flesch / or ellis he
 dede it for to holde cumpany with hise felawys / or
 ellis he seyde the feend entisede hym / [585] or ellis he
 dede it for his ȝouthe. or ellis his complexioun is so
 coragious that he may not forbere / or ellis it is his
 destenye as he seyth in to a certeyn age / or ellis he
 seith it comyth hym of gentyllesse of hise Auncestris
 And semblable thyngis // [586] Alle thesse manere of folk
 so wrappyn hem in here synnys / that they ne welen not
 delyuere himself // ffor sothly no wigh that excuseth
 hym wilfully of his synne: may not be delyuered of his
 synne til that he mekely beknowith his synne [587]
 After this ¹thanne comyth swerynge that is expres
 a-geyn the comaundement of god / And this be-fallith ofte
 of Angir & of yre. [588] God seyth thow schat not
 take the name of thyn lord god in veyn / or in Idil. Also
 oure lord Ihesu crist seyth by the word of seynt Mathew /
 [. no gap in the MS.] [589] Ne wil ȝe
 not swere in alle maner nothir be
 heuene: for it is godis trone. ne be erthe for it is the
 bench of his feet / Ne be Ierusalem for it is the cyte of
 a greet kyng / ne be thyn heed for thow ne canst not
 make an heer nothir whit ne blak [590] But seyth be ȝoure
 word .ȝe. ȝe. &. nay. nay. And what that is moore
 it is of euyl / thus seith Crist / [591] ffor Cristis sake sweryth
 nat so synfully in dismembrynge of crist by his soule.

herte. bonys. & body. for certis it semyth that 3e
 thynke that cursede Iewis / ne dismembredyn not
 I-nough the preciouise persone of crist / but 3e dismembryn
 hym moore / [592] And 3if so be / that the lawe com-
 pelle 3ow / to swere thanne rewelyth 3ow aftyr the lawe of
 god / in 3oure swerynge as seyth Ieromye .4°. c°.
 [. no gap in the MS.] Thow
 schalt kepe iij condiciounnys ¶ Thow schat swere in trouthe
 in dom & in righwisnese / [593] this is to seyne
 thow schalt swere sooth / ffor euery lesyng is a-geyns crist /
 for Crist is verray trouthe / and thyngk wel this that
 euery greet swerere nat compellid lafully to swere /
 the wounde schal nat departe / from his hous / whil he
 vseth swich onlefful swerynge [594] ¶ Thow schalt sweryn
 ek in dom / whan thow art constreyned by thyn domys
 man to witnesse the trouthe [595] Ek thow schalt
 not swere for enuye / ne for fauour / ne for meede /
 but for ryghwisnesse for declarynge of it to
 worschepe of god & helpe of thyn euyn-
 cristene / [596] And therefore euery man / that
 takith goddis name in Idyl or falsely sweryth with
 his mouth or ellis takyth on hym the name of Crist /
 to be callid a cristene man / And lyuyth a-geyns Cristis
 lyuyng & his techyng / alle they take goddis name
 in ydyl [597] loke ek what seyth seynt Petyr
 Actuum .4°. c°. Non est aliud nomen sub celo. & . c°.
 There is non othyr name seith seynt Petyr / undyr heuene /
 3euynt to men wherwith they ¹mowe be sauid / that is to
 seyne but the name of Ihesu Crist /. [598] Tak kep ek
 how that the name so precious is of Ihesu Crist / as seyth seynt
 Poule / ad Philipenses 2°. In nomine Ihesu & c. / That in
 the name of Ihesu euery kne of heuynly creaturys /
 erthely & of helle / schulde bowe / for it is so hey
 & so worschepeful that the cursede fend in helle schulde
 tremble to here it nemene it / [599] Thanne
 semyth it that men that swere so horribly bi his

blissede name that they dispise it / more boldely /
than the cursede Iewys / or ellys the deuyll that
tremblith whan he herith his name

[600] ¶ Now certis sythe that swerynge but ȝif it be
laufully doon / is so heyly defendit/ moche werse is
forswerynge falsely / And ȝit needeles /

[601] what seye we ek of hem that delite hem
in swerynge [. *no gap in the MS.*]
/othis. And what of hem that of verray
vsage ne cese not to swere greete othis / al be the cause
nat worþ a straw / certis this horrible synne / [602]
Swerynge sodeynly is ek a greet synne /
[603] But let vs go now to that horrible synne swerynge
of adiuracioun as don these false en-
chauntouris or nigramanciens in bacenys ful of watyr or
in a brygh sward / in a cerkele / or in a fir or in the schuldir-
bon of a scheep / [604] I can nat seyn but that they
doon cursedely & dampnably a-geyns crist & al the
feith of holy cherche /

[605] ¶ What seyn we of hem that beleyn on
dyuynalis / as be flight or be noyse of briddis / or of
bestis / or by sort bi Griomancye be dremys by chirkyng
of doris / or krakyng of housys / by gnawynge of rattis /
and sweche manere wrechedenesse / [606] Certis al this
thyng is defendyt/ bi god & holy cherche / for
whiche thei been acursed / til thei come to a-mendement
that on swich felthe besettyn here be-leue / [607] Charmys
for woundis / or maladie of men / or of bestis / if they
takyn any effect / it may be parauenture that god sufferith
it for folk schulde ȝeue the moore feith / & reuerence to
his name

[608] ¶ Now wele I speke of lesyngis / whiche gener-
ally is fals sygnyfiance / of word in entent to disseyuyn
his euene cristene / [609] Some lesyngis of whiche
there comyth non auantage to no wight / And sum¹ lesyng
turnyth to the ese or profit of a man & to

damage of anothyr man. [610] A nothir lesyng
for to saue his lyf or his catel [. . . *no gap in MS.*] comyth
of delit for to lye / for swich delit they wele forge a long
tale / & peynte it with alle circumstauncis / where
al the ground of the tale is fals / [611] sum lesyng
comyth for he wele sustene his word Sum lesyng
comyth of recheles-nesse / with-outyn a-visement and sem-
blable thyngis /

[612] Lete vs now touche the vice of flaterye /
wiche ne comyth not gladly but for dreded or for coueytise
[613] ¶ fflaterye is generally wrongful preysynge. fflater-
eris been the deuyllis Noricis / that norischyn his childeryn /
with mylk of lesyngerye / [614] Forsothe Salamon soith
that flaterye is wers than detraccioun / for sumtyme de-
traccioun / makith an haunteyn man / been the moore humble /
for he dredith detraccioun ¶ But certis flaterye that makyth
a man / to enhauntyn his herte and his cuntenance /
[615] Flatereris been the deuyllis enchantourys / for
they make of a man to weene of hym self been lyk that he
ne is nat lyk / [616] They been lik to Iudas that be-traysyn
[. *no gap in the MS.*] a man to selle hym
to his enemy / that is to the [. . . [617] . . . *no gap in
the MS.*] deuyllis chapilleynys / that syngyn euere placebo /
[618] I rekene flatrye in the spicis of yre / for ofte
tyme gif on man be wroth with a nothyr thanne wele
he flatere sum wight to susteyne hym in his querel /

[619] speke we now of swich cursynge as comyth
of yrous herte ¶ Malisoun generally may be seyde euery
manere pouwer of harm Swich cursynge bereuyth euery man
from the regne of god / as seith seynt poule / [620] And ofte
tyme swich cursynge wrongfully returnyth a-geyn to
hym that curseth. as a brid that turnyth a-geyn to his
owene nest / [621] And ouer alle thynges / men oughte
eschewe to curse here childeryn and ȝeue to the deuyll
here engenderure as fer forth as in hym is / certis it is
greet peril & greet synne.

[622] ¶ Lote vs thanne speke of chydyng & reproche /
 whiche been ful greete woundis in manys herte / for
 they onsewe the semys of frenschepe / in mannys herte
 [623] ffor certis vnnethe may a man pleylny been
 accordit ¹with hym that hym opynly hath reuyld / &
 repreuyd and disclaundered / ¶ This a ful gresely synne
 as crist seyth in the gospel / [624] & take kepe now
 that he that repreuyth his neighebore ¶ or he repreuyth
 hym by sum harm of peyne that he hath vp-on his body /
 as mesel crokid harlot or by sum synne that he hath doon .
 [625] Now ȝif he repreue hym by harm of peyne:
 thanne turnyth the repref to Ihesu crist / for peyne is
 seynt by the ryȝtwise sonde of god & by his sufferaunce /
 be it meselerie or maym or maladye / [626] & ȝif he
 repreue hym on-charitably of synne / as thow holour thow
 dronkelewe harlot / & so forth / thanne parteynyth that
 to the reioysynge of the dewil / that euere hath Ioye
 that men doon synne / [627] And certis chidyng may
 not come but of a vilens herte / for aftyr the
 haboundauns of the herte spekyth the mouth ful ofte /
 [628] And ȝe schul vndirstonde / that loke by onyweye / <sup>Ex abundancia
cordis os loquitur</sup>
 whan ony man schal chastise a nothir that he be war
 of chydyng or repreuyng / For trewely but he be
 war he may ful lyghtely quekyn the fer of angir / & of
 wraethe whiche schulde quenche / & parauenture
 sleth hym that he mygh[t]e chastise with benyng-
 nete / [629] ffor as seith Salomon / The amyable tunge is
 the tre of lyf / that is to seyne the lyf spirituel / And
 certis a dislaue tunge sleth the spyritis of hym that
 repreuyth. And ek of hym that is repreuyd / [630] lo
 what seyth seynt augustyn / There is no thyng so lyk the
 deuyllis child / as he that ofte chidith [. . *no gap in MS.*]
 ¶ I seruauant of god behoue not to chide / [631] And
 how that chydynd / by a vilens thyng / by-twixe alle
 manere folk that is it certis most on-conable
 bi-twixe a man & his wif for there is neuere reste

And therefore seyth Salomon. An hous that is onkeured
 & droppynge / & a chidyng wif been lyke /
 [632] ¶ A man that is in a droppynge hous / in manye
 placis / thow he eschewe the droppynge in on place.
 it droppyth on hym in anothir place / so farth it by
 a chidyng wif / but ȝif sche schide hyn in on place
 [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] [633] ¹And therefore betere is
 a morsel of breed with Ioye: than an housful of
 delicis with chidyng seith Salomon / [634] Seynt
 Poule seyth / ȝe women be ȝe subiectis to ȝoure hous-
 bondis as byhouyth in god / And ȝe men louyth ȝoure
 wiuis. ad Colonienses .3^o. [1 "a man" repeated in MS.]

[635] ¶ Afterward speke we of skornynge whiche is a
 wekkede synne / And namely whan he skornyth a man² for
 hise goode werkis / [636] ffor certis sweche skornerys
 faryn lik the foule toode that may not endure to
 smelle the sote sauour / of the vyne whan it
 floryschith / [637] these skornerys been partynges felauis /
 with the deuyl / ffor they han Ioye whan the deuyl
 wynnyth / & sorwe whan he lesith / [638] they been
 aduersaryis of Ihesu crist / for they hatyn that he louyth /
 that is to seyne saluacioun of soule /

[639] Speke we now of wekkede conseyll / [. . .
 . . . *no gap in the MS.*] whiche is a traytour for he disseuyth
 hym that trustith in hym ¶ Vt Achitofel ad Absolonem /
 But natheles / ȝit is his wekkede conseil fyrst a-geyn hym
 self / [640] [. . .
 . . . *no gap in the MS.*] that he that
 wele a-noye a-nothyr man / he anoyeth ferst hym self
 [641] And men schal vnderstonde that man schal not
 take his conseyll of false folk ne of angry folk ne of
 greuous folk ne of folk that louyn specially to meche
 wordely folk / namely in conseylynge
 of soulys //

[642] ¶ Now comyth the synne of hem that sowyn &
 makyn discord a-mongis / folk whiche is a synne that

crist hateþ vttyrly & no wondir is / for he deyede
for to make concord / [643] And moore schame do they to
crist than dedyn they that hym crucefyed / for god
louth louth bettere that pes be a-mongis folk than
he deyede his owene body. whiche that he ȝif for vnyte.
therefore been they lekkenyd to the deuyll / that euere is
aboute to make discord /

[644] ¶ Now comyth the synne of double tunge whiche
as spekyn fayre be-foryn folk & wikkedely by-hynde / or
ellis they make semblaunt / as thogh they spoke of
good entencion or ellis in game / & pley. and ȝit they
speke of wekkede entent' //

[645] ¶ Now comyth bewreyinge of con'seyl thourw
whiche a man is diffamyd certis onethe may he restore the
damage //

[646] ¶ Now comyth Manace / that is an opyn folye / for
he that oftyn manacith : he thretheth moore than he may
performe / ful ofte tyme /

[647] ¶ Now comyn ydele wordis [.
. no gap in the MS.] And ek of hym
that herkenyn tho wordys / or ellys Idele wordis been
tho that been nedeles or with-outyn entent of naturel
profit [648] And al be it that ydele wordys / been sum-
tyme uenyal synnys ȝit schuldyn men doutyn hem / for we
schul ȝeue rekenynge of hem be-fore god

[649] ¶ Now comygh Iangelynge / that may not been with-
outyn synne And as seyth Salomon it is a synne of a-pert
folye / [650] And therefore a Philisophre seyde whan
men axede hym how men schulde plesse the peple /
And he answerde do manye goode werkis / And speke fewe
Iangelys

[651] ¶ Aftyr this comyth the synne of Iaperys / that
been the deuylls apis / for they make men to laughe at
here folye / & at here Iaperyes / as folk doon at the gaudis of
an Ape / whiche Iaperis diffendyth seynt poule [652] Loke
how that vertevous wordis & holye confortyn hem

that traunaylyn in the seruyse of Crist: And right soo confortyn
the vileyns wordis & knakis of Iaperis hem that
traunayly in the seruyse of the dewil ¶ [653] These been
the synnys that comyth of the tunge / that comyn of yre
& of othere synnys

[*The Remedy against Ire*]

[654] **T**He remedie ageyns yre / is vertue þat men
clepyn mansuetude / that Ihon de Bonania clepith
debonayrete / & ek a nothir vertu that men callyn
pacience / or suffraunce /

[655] ¶ Debonoyrete / withdrawith & refrayn-
yth / the sterynge & the meuyng of manys corage / in his
herte in swich maneere / that they ne skippe nat out be
angir / ne by lyre [656] ¶ Sufferaunce sufferith sweetely alle
the anoyauncis & the wrongis / that men doon to man
outward [657] ¶ Seynt Ierome seith thus of debonayrete
that it doth noon harm to no wyȝt ne seith ne for non
harm that men doon ne seyn / he ne eschafyth not
a-geyn resoun / [658] This vertue comyth sumtyme of
nature. for as seyth the philisophere As man is a quik
thyng by nature debonayre & trefable / to goodnesse /
but whan debonayrete is enformyd / of grace thanne is
it the more worth

[659] ¶ Pacience is a-nothir remedye a-geyns yre / and
is a vertu that sufferith swetly euery mannes goodnesse /
& is not wrooth for non harm that is doon to hym
[660] ¶ The Philisophre seyth that pacyence is thilke
vertu that sufferyth debonayrely alle the outragis of
aduercite / & euery wikkede word [661] This vertu
makyth a man lik to god & makyth a man goddys
owene deere child / as seith Crist this vertu discomfortith
thyn enmy & therefore seith the wise man / ¶ If thou
wilt / venquasche thyn enemy lerne for to suffere / [662] And
thow schal vndirstonde that man suffere .iiij. manere

of greuauuncys in outward thyngis a-geyns the wheche .iiij.
he mote haue .iiij. maneere of paciencis

[663] The ferste greuauunce is of wekke wordis.
thilke sufferede Ihesu Crist with-oute grochyng ful
patiently whanne the Iewis dispisedyn hym
ful ofte [664] ¶ Suffere thow therfore patiently / for the
wise man seith If thow stryue with a fool. thow
the fool be wroth or thow he laughe: algatis
thow schalt haue no reste / [665] ¶ That othyr greuauunce
outward / is to haue damage of thyn catel. Theere ageyns
sufferede Crist/ ful patiently: whan he was dispoyled of al
that he hadde / in this lyf. And that nas but hise clothis /
[666] ¶ The .iiij. greuauunce is a man to hauen harm in
his body. That sufferede Crist ful patiently in al his
passioun [667] ¶ The .iiij. greuauunce is this in outrageous
labour in werkis wherfore ¹I seye that folk that
makyn here seruauuntys to traunayly to greuously or out of
tyme as on halydayis Sothly they doon greet synne
[668] ¶ Hereageyns sufferede crist ful patiently &
taughte vs pacyence / whan he bar vp-on his blyssede
schuldyr the cros on the whiche he schulde suffere
dispitous deth/ [669] Heere may men lerne to been
pacienc. ffor certis nat only cristene men been pacienc
for loue of Ihesu crist And for gerdoun of the blisful
lyf that is perdurable But certis the olde paynemys that
neuere were cristene commendyn & vsyn the vertue
of paciencie

[670] ¶ A Philisophre vp-on a tyme that wolde a
bete his disciple / for his greete trespas / ffor whiche he was
Ameuyd / & broughte a 3erde to skoure the
child. [671] & whan the child say the 3erde. he
seyde to his Maystyr / what thynke 3e to do. I wele beete
the quod his maystir for thyn correccioun / [672] Forsothe
quod the child 3e oughte ferst to corecte 3oure self that
haue lost al 3oure paciencie for the gilt of a child.
[673] fforsothe quod the maystyr al wepyng thow

seist soth. haue thow the 3erde myn deere sone &
corekte me for myn Inpacience [674] ¶ Of pacience comyth
obedience / thorw whiche a man is obedient to Crist &
to alle hem to whiche he oughte to been obedyent in Crist /
[675] And vndyrstond weel that obedyence is parfit
whan that a man doth gladly And hastyly with good
herte entyerly al that he schulde do [676] ¶ Obedyence
generally is to parforme the doctryne of god &
of hise souereynys to whiche hym oughte to been obeysaunt
in al ryghtwisnesse

De Accidia¹[¹ leaf 425 is cut out.]

[² Harl. MS.
1758, on leaf
219, back.]

[677]
[³ **A** ftir the synnes of Ire I wold
speke of the synnes of Accidie. ffor Enuye
blyndeth the herte of a man & Ire troubllyth a
man. & Accidie makith hym heuy thoughtfuht
& wrawe. [678] ¶ Enuye & Ire maken bitternes in herte
whiche bitternes is modir of Accidie. & be-nymeth hym
the loue of all goodness. Then is Accidie the
anguysche of a trouble herte. And seynt Austyn seith.
it is a-noie of goodnes & anoye of harme. [679] ¶ Certis
this is a dampnable synne. ffor it doth wrong to ihesu
crist. in as meche that he nymeth the seruyce that men
ought to do to ihesu crist with all diligence. As seith Salomon.
[680] But Accidie doth non suche diligence. he doth
all thyng with a-noie & wrawnes. slaknes
& excusacion & with dulnes & vnluste ¶ ffor
whiche the book seith. A-cursid be he that doth the
seruyce of god negligently. [681] Then is Accidie

¶ Augustinus ./

¶ Salamon ./

be-forn þat he fell
in to synne.

¶ Of .3. maners
of Estat of man
¶ Estat of Inno-
cencie ./

¶ Estat of syn-
fulle men ./

enemye to eueri estate of man ffor certis the estate of
man is in .3. maners. [682] ¶ Either it is the estate of
Innocence as was the estate of Adam. biforn that he felle in to
synne in whiche estate he was holdyn to wirche as in
heryng & honouryng of god [683] ¶ Another estate
is the Estate of synfuht men in whiche estate men ben holdyn

CAMBRIDGE, p. 636, AND HARL. 1758 (6-T. 645)

to labour in praiyng to god for amendement of her
 [.] *no gap in the MS.* ¶ *Etat of grace.*
 synnes [684] ¶ Another estate is the estate of grace in
 whiche estate he is holdyn to do werkis of penytence. And
 certis to alle thes thynges is Accidie Enmye & con-
 trarie. ffor he lounth no besynes at all. // [685] ¶ Now
 certis this foule synne Accidie is eke a full gret enuye
 to the lifode of the body. for it hath no puryaunce
 a-yen tempera^{tt} necessite. ffor it is for-sleuthe & for-
 sloggeth & distroieth alle godis temperallis bi
 rechilnes.

[686] ¶ The .4. thyng is. that Accidie is like hem ¶ *Accidie is lik*
 that ben in the peyne of helle. bi cause of her slouthe *to hem but ben*
 & of her heynes. ffor thei that ben dampned ben *in the peyne of*
 so boun^{de} that thei ne may well do ne well *helle.*
 thenke. [687] ¶ Of Accidie cometh first that a man is *[leaf 220, Harl.*
 anoied & encombrid to don eny goodnes & *MS. 1758]*
 maketh that god hath abhominacion of suche
 Accidie. as seith seynt Ion. ¶ *Johannes.*

[688] ¶ Now cometh sleuthe that wold not suffre non ¶ *Of Sleuthe /*
 hardnes ne no penaunce. ffor sothe slouthe is so
 tendir & so delicate. As seith Salomon. That he wold not ¶ *Salomon.*
 suffre non hardnes ne penaunce & therfore he
 schendith all that he doth [689] ¶ a-yens this rotyn ¶ *Remedium.*
 hertid synne of Accidie & slouthe schulde men
 excercise hem self to don good werkis & manli
 & vertuouli cacchen corage well to don. thenk-
 yng that our lord ihesu crist quyteth euerye good² ¶ *[Harl. extract*
³ deede be it neuere so lytil // [690] ¶ Vsage of labour is a *ende.]*
 greet thyng for it makyth as seyth seynt Bernard / the *[Cambr. be-*
 labourer to haue stronge armys & harde senewis / And *gins.]*
 slouthe makyth hem feble & tendre [691] ¶ Thanne comyth
 dreed to begynne to werke onye goode werkis / for
 certis he that is enclyned to synne: hym thynkyth it
 is to greet an enpryse / for to vndyrtake to doon werkis
 of goodnesse / [692] And castith in his herte / that the

HARL. 1758, AND CAMBRIDGE, p. 637 (6-T. 646) [leaf 426]

circumstauncis of goodnesse / [.]

. . . *no gap in the MS.*] as seyth seynt. gregory ./

[693] ¶ Now comyth wanhope that is dispeyr of the
merci of god // that comyth sumtyme of to meche out-
ragious sorwe / & sumtyme of to meche drede ymagyn-
yng / that he hath don so meche synne that it wele
not auayle hym thow he wolde repente hym / and
forsake synne / [694] thorw whiche dispeyr or drede
he abandownyth al his herte to euery manere synne / As seyth
seynt Augustyn [695] whiche dampnable synne / 3if that
it contynewe on to his ende it is clepid synnyng in the
holygost / [696] This horrible synne is so parlous
that he that is dispeyred / there ne is no felenye ne no synne
that he doutith for to do / As schewede weel be Iudas /
[697] Certis a-bouyn alle synnys / thanne is this synne
most displeant to Crist And most aduersarye [698]
¶ Sothly he that dispeyrith hym is lyk the coward /
champioun recreaunt tat seyth creaunt withoutyn nede //
Allas allas nedeles / is he recreaunt /
and nedeles dispeyred / [699] Certis the merci of god is
euere redy to the penytent / And is a-bouyn alle hyse werkis
[700] Allas can not a man be-thynken hym / of the gospel
of seynt. Luk .iiij. where as Cryst seyth / that as weel schal
theree been Ioye in heuene vp-on a synful man that doth
penytence than vp-on a .90. & 19 ryghful men that
neuere ne dede synne Ne nedyn no penytence [701]
¶ Loke ferthere in the same gospel the Ioye & the
feste of ¹the goode man / that hadde lost his sone whan
his sone with repentaunce was returned to his fadyr //
[702] Can they not remembre hem ek that as seyth
seynt Luk .33°. how that the thef that was hangit
be syde Ihesu crist seyde. Lord remembre of me whan
thow comyst in-to thy regne. [703] ffor soth seyde
Crist I sei to the / to day schalt tow be with me in
paradys / [704] Certis there is non so horryble synne of

man that it ne may in his lyf been destroyed be penytence /
 thorw vertu of the passioun of the deth of cryst /
 [705] Allas what nedyth men thanne for to been dispeyred
 sithe that his mercy so redy is / & large. Axe & haue
 [706] ¶ Thanne comyth sompnolence / that is sluggy
 slumbrynge / whiche makyt a man been heuy & dul in
 body & soweles And this synne comyth of slouth /
 [707] And Certys the tyme that by weye of resoun / man
 schulde not slepyng / that is by the morw but ȝif there were
 cause resonable [708] For sothly the morwe tyde is
 most conable A man to seye hise preyeris / & for
 to thanke his god / & for to honoure god / And to
 ȝeuyn almesse to the poore / that comyth fyrst in the name
 of crist // [709] lo what seyth Salomon. Who so wele
 by the morwe a-wake to seke me he schal fynde /
 [710] ¶ Thanne comyth negligence / or rechelesnesse /
 that rekyth of nothyng and how that ignoraunce / be
 modir of alle harm / Certis negligence is the noryche /
 [711] Negligence ne doth no fors whan he schal doon
 a thyng whedyr it be doon wel or euile /

[712] ¶ Of the remedye of these two synnys as seyth
 the wise man / that he that dredith god / ne sparyth nough[t]
 to don that hym auȝte to don [713] And he that louth
 god he wele doon diligence to plesse god by hise werkis /
 And enforce hym self with al his myght weel for to doon .
 [714] Thanne comyth Idyllnesse / that is the ȝate of alle
 harmys / An Idyl man is lik a place that hath none
 wallys / the deuylis may entre on euery syde / or shete
 at hym at discouert by temptacyoun on euery syde /
 [715] This ydillnesse is the thurrok of alle wekked / &
 vy lens thoutys & of alle Ianglys truffis / & of
 alle ordure / [716] Certys this. the heuene ys ȝevyn to hem that
 wil labouryn / & not to ydil folk / Ek dauid seyth
 that they ne been not in the labour of men / ne they schul
 nat been whippid wth men / that is to seyne in purgatorye //

[717] ¶ Certis thanne semyth it they schul been turmentid /
with the deuyt in helle / but ȝif they doon penytance //

[718] Thanne comyth the synne that men clepyen
tarditas as whan a man is so laterede or tarynge / er
he wele turne to god / And certis that is a greet folye
he is lyk hym that fallyth in the deyth & wil non
aryse [719] And this vice comyth of fals hope / that
he thynkith that he schal leue longe / but that hope
faylith ful ofte

[720] ¶ Thanne lacchesse that is he / whan that he
begynnys / ony good werk / Anon he wele forlete it And
stynte as doon they that haue ony wight to gouerne /
and ne take of hym no moore keep / a non as they fynden
ony contrarye or any anoy / [721] these been the newe
schepperdys that letyn here scheep wetyngely go renne to
the wolf that is in the brerys / ne do no fors of here owene
gouernaunce [722] of this comyth pouerte / & distrucceoun
bothe of spirituel & temperel thyngis / thanne comyth
a maner coldnesse / that fresith al the herte of man /
[723] Thanne comyth ondeuocioun / thowr whiche a man is
so blent. And as seyth seynt Bernard / hat swich langour / in
soule that he may neythyr / reede ne synge in holy cherche /
ne heere ne thynke of no deuocioun / ne traualye with
hise handys in no good werk that it nys to hym vnsauourry
And al appallid / [724] thanne wexith he slow &
slombry and soone wele be wroth / And sone is enclynynd
to haate & to enuye / [725] ¶ Thanne comyth the synne of
wordely sorwe / swich as is clepid tristicia / that sleth
man as seyth seynt Poul / [726] ffor certis swich sorwe
werktyth to the deth of the soule & of the body also
ffor therof comyth that a man is a-noyed / of his owene lyf.
[727] wherfore swich sorwe. schortyth ful ofte the lyf of
man / er that his tyme is come by weye of kynde ./

Remedium contra peccatum Accidie.

[728]

A Gayns this oryble synne of acydye & the braunchis of the same: Theere is a vertu that is callyd fortitudo / or strenthe that is an affeccioun thour whiche a man dispiseth noyouse thyngis [729] ¶ This vertu is so myghty and so vigerous / that it dar withstonde myghtyly and wysely keepe hym self from perilis that been wekkede / & wrastele a-geyn the sautys of the deuyl [730] for it enhaunsith & enforseth the soule rygh as accidie: abatith & makith it feble ¶ ffor this ffortitudo may endure by long sufferauce the trauaylis that been couenable

[731] This vertu hath manye spicis ¶ the ferste is clepid magnanymtee that is to seyne greet corage ¶ ffor certis there behouyth greet corage a-geyns Accidie ¶ lest that it ne swelwe not the soule by the synne of sorwe / or distroye it by wan hope. [732] this vertu makith folk vndyrtake harde thyngis & greulouse thyngis by his owene wil wysely & resonably [733] And for as mechil / as the deuyl figtith a-geyns a man more by queyntise & by slouthe: than by strenthe / therfore a man schal withstonde hym by wit & by resoun. & by discrecyoun [734] ¶ Thanne are theere the vertuis of feyth / & hope in god / & hise seyntis to accomplishe the goode werkis in the whiche he purposith fermely to contynue [735] ¶ Thanne comyn seurete / or sekynnesse. And that is whan a man ne doutyth no trauayle in tyme comynge of the goode werk that he hath begunne [736] ¶ Thanne comyth magnificence ¶ That is: [2] to seyn when a man doth & performeth gret werkis of goodnes that he hath bigonne & that is the ende whi that men schulde do gode werkis. ffor in the accomplesyng of good werkis lith þ^e grete guerdon. ¶ [737] Then is ther Constaunce that is stablenes of corage & this schulde ¶ Of Constaunce. / be in herte bi stedfast feith & in mouthe & in.

[1 leaves 428 and 429 are cut out of the Cambr. MS.]
[2 Harl. MS. 1768, on leaf 221.]

beryng & in chere & in dede. [738] Eke ther ben
 mo speciall thynges & remedies a-yens Accidie in dyuers werkis
 & in consideracions of the peyne of helle & of the
 ioye of heuyn & in the truste of the grace of the holi-
 gost that wol yeuyn hym myght to performan his
 entente /

¶ De Auaricia /

[739]

¶ Paulus /

Aftir Accidie wol I speke of Auarice & of
 Couetise. Of whiche synne seith seynt Poule
 that the rote of alle synnes is Couetise. &
 Thymoth. 6°. [740] ffor sothli when that the herte
 of man is confoundid in hit self & trouble & that the
 soule hath lost the counfort of god. þen seketh he an
 ydeit solace of worldli thynges.

¶ Augustinus ./

[741] ¶ Auarice aftir the scripcion of seynt Austyn.
 is a licorousness in herte to haue ertheli thynges.
 [742] Som other folk seyn. that Auarice is for to
 purchace manye ertheli thynges. & no thyng yeue
 to hem that han nede. [743] ¶ & vndirstonde thou
 well that Auarice is noght onli in lond ne Cateit but som-
 tyme in science & in glorie & in euery maner of
 outragious thynges is Auarice & Couetise [744] ¶ And
 the difference be-twixe Auarice & Couetise is this.
 Couetise is for to coueite suche thynges as thou
 hast not. And Auarice is for to withholde & kepe suche
 thyngis as thou hast with-uten rightfult nede. [745] ¶ Sothli
 this Auarice is a synne that is fult dampnable. ffor all holi
 writ cursith it & spekith a-yens hit. ffor it doth

¶ The difference
 betwixe Auarice
 & Couetise ./¶ leaf 231, back,
 Harl. MS. 1768]

wrong to ihesu crist. [746] ffor it bireuyth¹ hym the Loue
 that men to hym owyn & turnyth hit bakwarde a-yn
 all reson [747] & makith that the Auaricious man
 hath more hope in his Cateit. than in ihesu crist. ¶ And
 [.
 no gap in the MS.] [748] therfore seith

HARL. 1768 (for Cambridge 642) (6-T. 651)

seynt Poule *Ephesios* .5°. That an Auaricious man haþ more ¶ *Paulus* /
his hope in thraldom of Ydolatrie.

[749] what difference is bitwixe an ydolastre & ¶ Difference be-
an Auaricious man. But þat an ydolastre & an Auaricious man twixe an Ydol-
peraunture ne hath but a mawmet or two & the Auaricious man stre & an Auar-
hath manye. ffor certis euerye fforeyn in his cofre is his ous man ./
a mawmet [750] & certis the synne of mawmetrie is
[. . . . no gap in MS.] that god in þe ten comaunde-
mentis. As berith witnes in *Exodi. capitulo* .20. [751] Thou
schalt haue no fals goddis bi-forn me. Ne þou schalt make
to the no grauyn thyng. thus is an Auaricious man that
loueth his tresour a-forn god An ydolastre [752] thorogh
his synne of Auarice & of couetise comen this
hard lordschipes thorogh whiche men ben streyned
bi tailages customes & cariages more then her
dewte or reson is. ¶ And ellis take thei of her bonde
men amercementis whiche myghten more resonabli be
clepid extorcions then amercementis. [753] Of whiche
amercementis & raunsonyng of bonde men som
lordis stiwardis seyn that it is rightfuþ. ffor as meche as
a cheerþ hath no temperaþ thyng that it ne is his lordis
as they seyn. [754] ¶ But certis thes lordes don
wrong that bireyn her bonde folke thynges. that thei
neuyr ne yaf hem. *Augustinus. de. civitate. libro* .9°. [755] ¶ *Augustinus* ./
¶ Soth is that the condicion of thraldom. & the first
cause of thraldom is for synne. *Genesis* .5°. ¶ *Genesis* .5°.

[756] ¶ Thus may ye seen that the gilte deseruyth
thraldom. but not nature. [757] Wherefore these lordis
ne schulden not meche glorifie hem in her lordschip.
sethyn that bi naturaþ condicion. thei ben lordis ouyr
her thrallis. but for that thraþ-dom cam first by *deserte* of
synne [758] ¶ And further ouyr there as the lawe seith.
that temperaþ godis of bonde folke ben the godis
of her lordschipes. Ye that is for to vndirstonde. the godis
of the Emperour to defende hem in her right. but not
to robbe hem ne to reue hem. / [759] ¶ And therfore

HARL. 1768 (for Cambridge 643) (6-T. 652)

¶ *Seneca.* / seith Seneca. Thi prudence schulde lyue benyngli with thyn thrallis. [760] thilke that thou clepist thyn thraff. ben goddis peple ffor humble folke ben cristes frendis. thei ben *contubernyafl* with the lorde.

[761] ¶ Thenke eke that suche seed as cherlis spryngen. of suche seed spryngen lordis. As wefl may the cherle be sauyd. as the lord. [762] The same deth that taketh the cherle. the same deth takith the lorde. ¶ Wherfore I rede do right so with thi cherle as thou woldist thi chirle did with the. if thou were in his plite. [763] Euery synfufl man is a cherle to synne. I rede the certis that thou lord thou wirche in suche wise that thi cherlis rather loue the than drede the. [764] I wote wefl there is degre a-boue degre as reson is & skill is that men don her deuyr ther as it is dewe. But certis extorcions & dispites of your vndirlynges is dampnable.

[765] ¶ And further ouyr vndirstonde wefl that Conquerours or tirauntis make fufl often thrallis of hem that ben born of as roiafl blood. as ben thei that hem *conquernyn*. [766] ¶ This name of thraldom was neuyr knowe erste. till that Noe seide that his sone Canaan schulde be thraff to his bretheryn for his 'synne

¶ *Genesis. 10.*
Maledictus
Canaan seruus
seruorum erit
fratribus suis /
[*leaf 222, Harl.*
MS. 1753]

[767] ¶ What seie we than of hem that pilen & don extorcions to holi chirche ¶ Certis the swerde that men yeuyn first to a knyzt when he is newe dobbid. signyfieth that he schulde defende holy chirche & noght robbe hit. And who so doth is a traitour to crist. [768] As seith seynt Austyn. Thei ben deuyls wolvis that stranglen the scheep of ihesu crist & don wers than wolvis. [769] ¶ ffor sothli when the wolfe haf fufl his wombe: he stynteth to

¶ *How knyght-*
hode schulde
defende holi
chirche. /

¶ *Augustinus.* /

¶ *Of pilours &*
distroiers of holi
chirche goodis. /

strangle scheep. But sothli the pilours & distroiers of godis of holi chirche ne do not so for thei ne stynte neuyr to pilen. [770] ¶ Now as I haue seide sethyns so is that synne was first cause of thraldom. then it is

HARL. 1758 (for Cambridge 644) (6-T. 653)

thus that thilke tyme that all the worlde was in synne. then was all this worlde in thraldom & in subieccion. [771] But certis sethyns the tyme of grace cam. God ordeyned that som folk schulde be more hye in estate & hye degree & som folke more lowe & that eueriche schulde be seruyd in his estate & in degre. [772] And therefore in some contrees ther thei ben thrallis when thei han turned hem to the feith. thei maken her thrallis fre out of thraldom. And therefore certis the lord owith to his man. that the man owith to his lorde. [773] ¶ The Pope clepith hym self *seruaunt* of *seruauntis* of god. But for as meche as the state of holi chirche ne myght not han be. ne the comune profite myght han be kept in pees & reste in erthe. But if god had ordeyned that some men han heyer degre & som men lowir [774] ¶ Therfore was souereyne ordeyned to kepe & maynten & defende her vndirlynges or her sogettis in reson as fer forth as it lith in her power & noght to distroie hem ne as ferforth confounde. [775] ¶ Wherfore I seie that thilke lordis that ben thilke wolvis that de¹] ²vouryn the possessiouns or the catel of pouere men wrongfully with-oute mercy or mesure. [776] They schul receyue by the same mesure that they han mesured to poore folk the mesure of Ihesu crist but it be amendid [777] ¶ Now comyth deceyt be-twixe Marchaunt and Marchaund ¶ And thowschat vndirstonde that marchaundise is in manye maneris / that on is bodyly & that othir is gostely: that on is honest & lefful: & that othir is dishonest & onleful. [778] Of thilke bodyly marchaunddyse that is lefful & honest is this there that god hath ordeyned / that a rem or a cuntre is suffisaunt to hym-self: thanne is it honest & lefful that of haboundaunce of this cuntre that men helpe a nothir Cuntre that is more nedy. [779] And therefore there mote been marchauntis to brynge from that oon cuntre to that othir hire march-

[¹ Harl. MS. 1758
extract ends.]
[² Cambr. MS.,
leaf 430]

aundyse / [780] That othyr marchaundyse that men
 hauntyn / with fraude & trecherye And deceyt with
 lesyngis & falso othis is cursed & dampnable
 [781] ¶ Espirituele marchaundyse is proprily symonye
 that is ententyf desyr / to beyen thyng espirituel that is
 thyng that aparteneth to the seyntewarye of god / & to
 cure of the soule [782] ¶ This desir 3if so be that a
 man do his dilygence to parforne it / al be it that his
 desir take noon effect. 3it is it to hem a dedly
 eyne. & 3if he be ordered. he is irregulere / [783] Certis
 Symonye is clepid of Symon magus / that wolde a
 bouzt for temperel catel / the 3ifte that god hadde 3ouyn
 by the holy gost to seynt Petyr. & to the apostellis /
 [784] And therfore vndyrstond that by that he that
 sellyth & he that beyeth thyngis espirituel been
 clepid Symonyals / be it be catel be it be procuryng /
 or by fleschely preyere of hise frendis. fleschely frendis
 or spyrituel frendis / [785] Fleschely in two manerys
 as by kenreede or othere frendis sothly 3if they preye
 for hym that is not worthi & able it is Symonye 3if he
 take the benefice / and 3if he be worthi & able: there
 is non. [786] ¶ That othir maner is / whan men or
 women preyen for folk to auauncyn hem only for
 wekede fleschely affeccionz that they han vn-to the persone
 & that is foul symonye / [787] But certis in ceruyce
 for whiche men 3euyn thyngis espirituel on to here
 seruauantis / it mote been vndirstande that the seruyce
 mote been honest & ellis nat / And ek that it be
 with-outyn bargaynyng & that the parson be able /
 [788] ffor as seith Seigne Damasye / Alle the synys of the
 world at regard of this synne arn as thyng of nough /
 for it is the gretteste synne that may ben aftyr the synne
 of luyfer & of antecryst / [789] ffor by this syne god
 forlesyth the cherche & the soule that he bouzte with
 his precyous blood / By hem that 3euyn cherchis / to hem
 that been notdigne [790] for they putte in theuys handis / that

stelyn the soulis of Ihesu cryst And distroyen the patry-
 monye [791] Be sweche indigne prestis & curatis /
 han lewede men lesse reuerence of the sacramentis of
 holy cherche. And swe[che] 3eueris of cherchis: putte
 the 3eueris of cryst out / & puttyn in the cherche the
 deuyllis owene sone / [792] they sleen the soulys
 that lambis schulde kepe / to the wolf that that strangelyth
 hem And therfore schul they neuere han part
 of the pasture of lambis that is the blysse of
 heuene. [793] Now comyth hasardrye with hise apor-
 tenancis. as tablis. & rafles / of sweche comyth deceit
 false othis chydngis / And alle raunnesse. blasphemynge
 And renayinge of god / And hate of hise neghebourys. wast
 of goodis. Mis spendynge of tyme. & sumtyme man-
 alauztere. [794] Certis hasardourys ne mow not been
 with-oute greet synne / [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] [795]
 Of Auaryce comyn ek lesyngis. thefte. fals witnessse. & false
 othis ¶ And ȝe that vndirstonde that these been greete synnys
 & expres a-geyn the comandementis / of god as I haue
 seyð / [796] ffals wytnesse: is in word & ek in deede
 By word as for to reue thyn neighebour his goode name
 bi thyn false witnessynge / or by-reuen hym his catel or his
 herytage / by thyn false witnessyng ¹whan thou for yre or
 for mede or for envie berist fals witnessse or accusist
 hym. or excusest hym by thyn false witnessse. Or ellis ex-
 cusist thyn self falsely / [797] ware ȝow ȝe quest mongeris / &
 Notarijs Certis for fals witnessenge was Susanne in ful
 greet sorwe & peyne & manye a nothir mo. [798] ¶ The
 synne of thefte is ek expres. a-geyns goddis heste / & in
 two maneris corporel or spirituel / [799] [Corporel]
 As for to take thyn neigheborys catel a-geyns his wil /
 be it be forse or be sleyghte / be it be met or be mesure
 [800] by stelynge ek of false endytementis vp-on hym / &
 in borwyng of thyn neghebouris catel / in entente neuere
 to paye it a-geyn / & semblable thyngis / [801] Es-
 pirituel thefte is sacrilege that is to seyne / hurt-

yngre of holy thyngis sacrede to crist / in two
maneris / be resoun of the holy place As cherchis or
cherche hawys / [802] ffor whiche euery vileyns syane that
men doon in swich placis / May ben clepid sacrilege / or
euery violence in the semblable placis / ¶ Also they that
withdrawyn falsely the rightis that longyn to holy
cherche [803] and plesynge / and generally Sacrylege
is to reuyn holy thyng out of holy place or onholy
thyng out of holy place / or holy thyng out of on-
holy place

Releuacio contra peccatum Auaricie.

[804]

NOw schul 3e vndirstonde that the releuynge of
auarice is mysericorde & pete largely takyn /
¶ And men myghtyn axen why that mysericorde
& pete is releuynge of Auaryce [805] ¶ Certis the
Auaricious man / Schewith no pete ne myseri-
corde to the nedful man / for he delitith hym in the keepynge of
hes tresor & not in the rescowynge or in the releuynge of his
cuene cristene & therfore speke I first of mysericorde
[806] thanne is Miserycorde as seith the philisophere
a vertu be whiche the corage of a man is sterid bi the
[. . . no gap in the MS.] mysessed [807] ¶ vp-on which
mysericorde / folwith pete / in parfornynge of charytable
werkis of myse^rricorde [808] And certis these thyngis
meuyn a man to mysericorde of Ihesu crist that he 3af
hym self for oure gilt And sufferede deth for mysericorde /
And forgaf oure original syne [809] And therby
releseth vs from the peynys of helle & amenuseth the
peynys of purgatorye by penytence / & 3euynth grace
weel to do and at the laste the blysse of heuene [810] ¶ The
specis of mysericorde been as for to lene & for to
3oue And to for3euyn & to relesyn and for to han
pete in herte / & compassioun of the myschif of his

eueue cristene and ek to chastise there as is neede
 [811] A nothir maneere of remedye ageyns auaryce: is
 resonable largesse But sothly heere be-howith the con-
 sideracioun of the grace of Ihesu crist & of his
 temperel goodis And ek of the goodis perdurable
 that crist ȝaf to vs [812] & to han remembraunce of
 the deth that he schal resceyue he not wharne wheere ne
 how and ek that he schal forgoon al that he hath /
 saue only that he hath spendid in goode werkis /

[813] But for asmeche as some folk been onmesur-
 able / men oughte to eschewe fol largesse that men
 clepyn wast. [814] ¶ Certis he that is fol large / he
 ȝeuyth not his catel but he lesith his catel Sothli
 wat thyng that he ȝeuyth for veynglorye as to
 menstrallis & to folk to beryn his renoun in the
 world he hath synne therof & non almesse
 [815] Certis he leseyth foule his good / that he ne sekyth
 with the ȝifte of his good no thyng but synne.
 [816] he is lyk to an hors that that sekyth rather to drynkyn
 drouy or trouble watyr than for to drynke watyr of the
 cleere welle. / [817] ¶ And for as meche as they [. . . .
no gap in MS.] schulde not ȝeuyyn to hem apartenynth thilke
 malicioun that Crist schal ȝeuyyn at the day of dome to
 hem that schuln be dampned

Sequitur Gula

¹ [Two figures, of a man, 'Glutenye', riding on a bear or sloth, and of a woman, 'Abstinence', crowned and halo'd, with a jug in the right hand, and a flower in the left. See *the Society's Chaucer Autotypes*, Part 2.]

[818]

Aftir Auarice comyth Glutenye whiche is expres ek
 a-geyns the comaundement of god Glutenye/ is
 vnmesurable appetit to ete or to drynke or ellis to don
 I-now to the onmesurable appetit / & disorderneyd
 coueytise to etyn or to drynke [819] ¶ This synne
 corrupid / al this world as is weel schewyd in the
 synne of adam & of eue. Loke ek what seyth seynt
 poule of glutenye. [820] Manye seyth seynt Poule goon of

whiche I haue ofte seyde to þow & now I seye it wepyng
 that been the enemyis of the croys of crist of
 whiche the ende is deth and of whiche here wombe is
 here god & here glorye in confusioun of hem that so
 deuouryn erthely thyngis [821] he that is vsaunt to
 this synne of glotenye he ne may no synne withstonde
 he mot been in seruage of alle viciis / for it is the deuillis
 hord there he hydith hym and restith [822] this
 synne hat manye spicis / ¶ The ferste is dronkenesse /
 that is the horrible sepulture of manys resoun / And ther-
 fore whan a man is dronkyn: he hath lost resoun &
 this is dedly synne // [823] ¶ But sothly whan a
 man is not woned to strong drynk & parauenture ne
 knowith not the strentle of the drynk or hath febilnesse
 in his heed / or hath trauayled / thour whiche he drekyth
 the moore / Al be he sodeynly cauȝt with drynk it is no
 dedly synne but venyal [824] ¶ The secunde spece of
 glotenye is // that the spirit of a man / wexeth al trouble
 for dronkenesse: bereuyth hym the discrecioun of his wit.
 [825] ¶ The thredde spece of Glotenye is whan a man
 deuourith his mete / & hath not ryghtful manere of etynge.
 [826] ¶ The fourte is whan thour the greete habund-
 aunce of his mete. the humuris in his body been dis-
 temperede [827] ¶ The fifte is forȝetefulnesse be too meche
 drynkyng for whiche sumtyme a man forȝetith on the
 morwe what he dede at eyn or on the nyght be-forȝ

[828] ¶ In othere manerys been distynit the specis of
 glotenye aftyr seynt Gregorye ¶ The ferste is for to etyn be-
 fore tyme of etynge ¶ The secunde is whan a man get hym
 to delicat mete or drynk. [829] ¶ The thredde whan
 men takyn ouyr mesure ¶ The forte is
 curiositee with greet entent to makyn & apparaylyn
 his mete ¶ The fifte is for to ete gredileche. [830] ¶ These
 been the fyue fyngerys of the deuyllis hand be whiche
 he drawyth folk to synne

[1 MS. repeats hope to haue the blyss of heuene ¶ The felawis of abstynence been
 2Attemperauce. that holdith]

Remedium contra peccatum Gule

[831]

Ageyns glotonye is the remedie Abstynence as
 seyth Galiene / but that holde I not meritorye / 3if
 he do it only for the hele of the body. Seynt
 Augustyn wele that abstynence bedoon for vertu &
 not for vice / but with pacyence. [832] Abstynence he seyth is
 lytil worth but 3if a man haue ryght good wil therto & but it be
 enforced bi pacience / And be charite & that men don it for
 godis sake And in 1hope to haue the blyss of heuene

[833] ¶ The felawis of abstynence been attemper-
 auce / that holdith¹ the meene in alle thyngis. Ek
 schame that eschewith al disoneste ¶ Sufferaunce that
 sekith no ryche metis ne drankys / ne doth no fors of too
 outrageous apparaylynge of mete. [834] Measure also
 that restreynyth by resoun the dislaue appetit of etynge /
 Sobirnesse also that restreynyth the outrage of drynk.
 [835] Sparynge also that restreynyth the delicat man as is to
 sitte longe at his mete & softly wherfore some folk
 stondyn of here owene wil to etyn at the lasse leysur.

[Two paintings, "Lecherye," seated on a goat, with a sparrow (both animal's types
 of lechery) on her right forefinger, and "Chastite" standing on the rump and forepaws
 of some launny couchant tusked animal, with a spear in her hand.]

Sequitur de peccato Luxurie

[836]

Afyr glotonye comyth Lecherye For these
 two synys been so nygh Cosynys / that ofte tyme
 thei wele not departe god [837] wot This synne
 is ful displeaunt thyng to god For he seyde hym
 self. Do no lecherye And therfor he putte greete
 peynys a-geyn this synne in the olde lawe / [838] ¶ If
 woman thral were takyn in this synne sche schulde
 been betyn with stonys to the deth. And 3if sche weere a gentil
 weman sche schulde be slayn with stonys / And if sche
 we're a bischopis doughtyr sche schulde been brent by
 godis comaundement. [839] ferthere ouyr bi the
 synne of lecherye god drenkte al the world / at the

diluge / and after that he brente .v. ceteis with thundyr
lyth & sank in to helle

[840] ¶ Now lat vs speke of that stynkende
Synne of lecherye. that men clepe auouterye of weddede
folk / that is to seyne that ȝif that on of hem be weddit
or ellis bothe. [841] Seynt Ioon seyth auouteryis
schuln been in helle in a stark breynnyng fere
of bronston [. *no gap in the MS.*] for the
stynk of here ordure [842] ¶ Certis the brekyng of
this sacramentis is an horrible thyng / it was makyd of
god hym self in Paradys. & confermed be Ihesu crist. as
witnesseth seynt Mathew / in the gospel / A man schal lete
fadir & modyr / & takyn hym to his wif / And they
schuln ben two in on flesch. [843] This sacrament be-toke-
nyth the knyttyng to-gedere of Crist & of holy chirche /
[844] And nat only that god forbad auoutrye in dede.¹
but ek he comaundede that thow schuldist not coueyte thyn
neyhebouris wif. [845] And in this heste seyth seynt
augustyn: is forbodyn alle manere coueytise to doon
lecherye. lo what seyth seynt Mathew in the gospel. That
ho so seth a woman to coueytise. of his lust he hath
doon lecherye with hire in herte / [846] Heere may ȝe
seen that nat only the dede of this synne / is forbodyn.
but ek the desir to doon that synne / [847] This cursede
synne a-noyeth greuously hem that it hauntyn. & ferst
to here soule. for he obligeth it to synne. & to peyne of
deth that is perdurable [848] On to the body anyeth
it greuously also. ffor it dreyeth hym And wastith hym also &
schyndyth hym. And of his blood he makyth sacrificie to the
deyl of helle it wastith his catel [.
[849] *no gap in
the MS.*] on women. // ȝet it is a foulere thyng whan that
for swich ordure wemen spendyn vp-on men here catel
& here substance. [850] This synne as seyth the prophete /
bereuyth man & woman here goode fame & al here
honour / & it is ful plesaunt to the deyl. For therby

[¹ MS. *adde in
text*, Non concu-
piscas uxorem
proximi tui (on
an erasure).]

wynnyth he the more party of this world
 [851] And ryght as a marchaunt delytith hym most
 in chaffare that he hath most auau[n]tage of. ryght
 so delytith the feend in this ordure

[852] ¶ Thys is that othir hand of the deuyl with .v.
 fyngerys / to cache the peple to his vilanye / [853] The
 ferst fyngir is / the fool lokyng of the fool woman.
 And of the fool man. that sleth rygh as the Baselycok
 sleth folk by the venyn of his syth. for the coueytise
 of eyen: folwith the coueytise of the herte. [854] ¶ The
 secunde fyngir is the vyleyns touchyng in wekede
 manere And therefore seyth Salomon. that ho so
 touchith a woman or handelith: he farth lyk to hym
 that handelyth the skorpyoun that styngith & sodeynly
 sleth thour his enuenymyng. As ho so touche
 warm pych. it schent hise fyngerys [855] The thredde is
 foule wordys. that farth lyk fuyr that rygh a-non
 brennyth the herte. [856] The fourte fynger is. the
 kyssyng. And trewely he weere a greet fool that wolde
 kysse the mouth of a brennyng ouene or of a forneys
 [857] And moore folys been they. that kessyn in vilenye.
 for that mouth is the mouth of helle. and namely these
 olde dotardys holouris ȝit wole they kisse
 and smatere hem thow they may nat doon. [858] Certis they
 been lyke to houndys. for an hound whan he comyth by
 the roser. or by othere beauteis. thow he may not
 pisse. ȝit wele he heue vp his leg and make a cun-
 tenau[n]ce to pisse. [859] And for that manye men wenyth.
 that he may not synne for no lykerousnesse that he doth
 with his wif. Certis ȝit the opynyoun is fals God wot a
 man may sleen hym self. with his owene knyf And make
 hym self dronke of his owene ale or of his owene wyn. [860]
 Certis be it wif be it child. or ony wordely thyng that he
 louth by-for god. it is his maumet. & he is an ydolastre.
 [861] Man schulde louyn his wif by dyscrecyoun
 paciently. & attemprelly. And thanne is sche as they it

weere his systir. [862] ¶ The fyfte fyngir of the deuyllys hand: is the styntyng dede of lecherye. [863] Certis the .v. fyngyr of glotenye the fend put in the wombe of a man. And with his fyue fyngerys of lecherye: he grypyth hym by the regnys / for to throwyn hym in-to the furneys of helle. [864] there as they schal have ¹the fyre that euere schal laste / & wepyng & waylyng & scharp hongir & thurst grymnese of deuyllys / that schuln al to-trede hem with-outyn [. . . *no gap in MS.*] ende. [865] ¶ Of lecherye as I seyde Sourdyn dyuerse spechis / as fornycacioun. that is between man & woman that been not maried. And this is dedly synne. and a-geyns nature. [866] Al that is enemy & distruxioun to nature: is a-geyns nature [867] parlay The resoun of a man tellyth eek hym weel that it is dedly synne. ffor as moche as god forbad lecherye And seynt poule ȝeuyth hem the regne that ne is dewe to no wyȝt But to hem that don no dedly synne. [868] A nothir synne of lecherye is: to bereue a maydynhede. for sertis he that so doth: he castyth a maydyn out of the heyeste degre that is in this present lyf. [869] And be-reuyth hire the ilke precyouse freut that the book clepith the hunderede freut I ne can seye it noon othere weyis in engelisch but in latyn it hyȝte Centesimus fructus [870] Certis he that so doth is cause of manye damagis & vylenyis mo than ony man can rekene. ryght as he sumtyme is cause of alle damagis that bestis doon in the feeld / that brekyn hegis of the closeure / thorw whiche he distroyeth that may not been restored. [871] ffor certis no more may maydynhede: [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] than an arm that is smetyn from the body may returne a-geyn & wexe. [872] Sche may haue mercy this wete I weel / ȝif sche haue wil to don penytence / but neuere schal it be that sche nas corupt. / [873] And al it so be. that I haue spoke sumwhat of avouterye: it is good to schewyn perilyls that longyn to a-outerye. ffor to eschewe that foule

synne // [874] Auouterye in latyn is for to seyne aprochyng
of othere manys bed / thorw whiche / tho that whilom
weere on flesch Aboundone here bodyis to othere personys.
[875] Of this synne as seyth the wyse man folwyn
manye harmys. Fyrst brekyng of feyth. And certis in
feyth is the keye of cristendom [876] And what that
feyth is brokyn & lorn: sothly cristendam stant
veyn. And withoutyn frent. [877] this syne is ek a
thefte. for thefte generally is as to reue a wight his thyng
ageyns his wil [878] ¹Certis this is the fouleste thefte
that may be / whan a woman stelyth hire body from
hire husbonde & ȝeuyth it to hire holour / to defoulyn
hire And stelyth hire soule from cryst / & ȝeuyth it to
the deuyll / [879] this is a foulere thefte than for to breke a
cherche & stele away the chalys ¶ ffor these auoutyeris
brekyn the temple of god / spirituelly & stelyn the vessel
of grace that is the body & the soule / For whiche Crist
schal distroye hem as seyth seynt poule. [880] ¶ Sothly
of this thefte doute greetly Iosep whan that his lordys
wif preyede him of vylenye / whan he seyde lo myn lady
how myn lord hath take to me vndyr myn warde al that he
hath in this world / ne nothyng of his thyngis is out of
myn power but only ȝe that been hise wyf [881] And
how schulde I thanne do this wekedenesse & synne so
horyble a-geyns god. & a-geyns myn lord / god it for-beede
Allas al to lytil is swich trouthe now I-founde [882] The
thredde harm is the fylthe thorw whiche they breke
the comaundement of god / & defoule the auctour of
matrymonye that is cryst [883] for certis in so meche
as the sacrement of maryage is so noble & so dygne: so
meche is it grettere synne for to brekyn it for god
made maryage in paradys In the estaat of innocence to
multyplye mankynde in the seruyse of god / [884] and
therefore is the brekyng therof the more greuous / Of whiche
brekyng comyn false eyrys ofte tyme that wrongfully
occupye meny eritage And therefore god wele putte

hem out of the regne of heuene that is herytage to goode folk. [885] ¶ Of this brekyngge comyth ek that folk that onwar weddyn or synnyn with here owene kenrede / And namely thilke harlotys / that hauntyn bordelys / of this folk: women mowe be lykenede to a comune gonge wheere as men porgin here ordure. [886] // What sey we ek of putruse that lyuyn by the horryble synne of putrye And constreynyn women to ȝeuyñ to hem a certeyn rente of here bodyly putrye. 3a sumtyme of his owene wif or his child as doon these boudys. Certys these 'been cursede synnys [887] ¶ Vnderstonde ek that auouterye is set in the ten comaundementis be-twixe thefte & manslaughter; there for it is the gretteste thefte that may be for it is thefte of body & of soule / [888] and it is lyk to homycide / for it keruyth a too / & brekyth atwo: hem that ferst were makid o flesch. And therefore by the olde lawe of god: they schulde been slayn / [889] But natheles by the lawe of Ihesu crist that is lawe of pite / whan he seyde to the woman that was foundyn in auouterye / & schulde han ben slayn with stonys aftyr the wil of the Iewys as was here lawe. Go *quod* Ihesu crist & haue no more wil to synne or wille no more to synne. [890] ¶ Sothly the vengeance of Auouterye: is awaridit to the peynys of helle. but if so be that that it be disturbit bepenytence [891] ¶ It been there moore spicis of these cursede synne / as whan that on of hem is relygious / or ellis bothe / or of folk that been entrid in-to ordere. as subdekene / dekene. & preest / or ospitallerys / And euere the heyre that he is in ordere: the moore is the synne [892] ¶ The thyngis that gretly aggregyn here synne: is the brekyngge of here awowe of chastite whan they resceyuyñ the ordere. [893] And fethere ouyr soth is that holy ordere is cheef of al the tresore of god / & his especial sygne & marke of chastite to schewe that they been ioyned / to chastite whiche that is most precious lyf that is / [894] and these orderede folk been specially tytelede to god / and of [.

.
 *no gap in the MS.*] his
 peple / for they leuyn of the peple. [.

 . . *no gap in the MS.*] [895] Prestis been aungellys / as by
 the dignetee of here mysterie but forsothe seynt Poule
 seyth that Sathanas transformede hym in an angel of
 lyght. [896] Sothly that preest that hauntyth dedly
 synne he may been lykkened to the aungel of derknesse
 transformed hym in to the aungel of lygh. he semyth Aungel
 of lyght but forsothe he is aungel of derknesse
 [897] Sweche prestis been the sonys of belyal as
 seyth in the book of kyngis / that they weere the
 sonys of Belyal that is the deuy1. [898] Belial is to seyne
 with-outyn Iuge / And so farn they. hem thynkyth
 they been free and haue no Iuge no moore. than hath a fre
 1 bole / that takyth euery cow of the toun that hym likyth /
 [899] So farn they be wemen / for riȝt as on
 fre bole is I-nowgh for al a toun: riȝh so is a wekkede
 prest corupcioun I-now for al a parisch or for al a
 cuntre / [900] these prestis as seyth the bok ne
 kunne not mynystre the mysterie of presthode to the peple / ne
 god ne knowe they not / they ne helde hem nat a-payd / as
 seith the book of sodyn flesch that was to hem offered: but they
 take by forse the flesch tat is raw. / [901] Sertis so
 these schrewis / ne holde hem nat apayed / of rostede flesch
 & sode flesch[h] with whiche the peple fedyth hem with
 greet reuerence / but they wele haue raw flesch of folkys
 wyuys / And here douȝteris / [902] And sertis these
 wemen that consentyn to here harloterye: doon gret
 wrong to crist & to holy cherche & alle halwys &
 to alle soulis. for they bereue alle these hym that schulde
 worschepe cryst & holy cherche & preye for cristene
 soulis [903] And therfore han sweche prestis / & here
 lemanys ek that consentyn to here lecherye: the malysoun
 of al the court cristene til they come to a-mendement.

[904] ¶ The thredde spece of anouterye: is sumtyme be-twixe
a man & his wif / And that is whan they take no reward
in here assemblynge: but only to here fleschly delit / as
seyth seynt Ierome / [905] and ne rekkyn of no thyng but
that they been assemblit / bi cause that they been maryed /
al is good I-now as thynkyth to hem / [906] but in swich
folk / hat the deuyl power as seit the aungel Raphael
to Thobie / for in here assemblynge they putte Ihesu
crist out of here herte & ȝeuyñ hem self to alle ordure.
[907] The forte spece is the assemblynge of hem that been
of [. *no gap in the MS.*] oon affynyte. Or
ellis of hem with whiche here faderis / or here kenrede
han delid / in the synne of lecherye / this synne makyth
hem lyk to houndys that take no keep to kenrede.
[908] And certis parentele is in two manerys othir
gostely oth[ir] fleschly. Gostly as for to dele with his
gossib. [909] for rygh so as he that engenderyth a child /
is his fleschely fadyr: rygh so is his godfadyr his fadyr
esspyrtuel. for whiche a weman may in no lasse synne
assemble with hire gossib than with hire owene fleyschely
brothyr. [910] ¶ The fyfte spece is. thilke abo'mynable
synne of whiche abhomynable synne that no man onethe
oughte speke of [.
[911]
. *no gap in*
the MS.] horrible synne [.
. *no gap in the MS.*] that schynyth on the
myxene. [912] A nothir synne apartenyth to lecherye that
comyth slepynge and this synne comyth ofte to hem
that been maydenys And ek to hem that been corrupt
& this synne men clepyn polucioun that comyth of iij
manerys / [913] Sumtyme of languyschyng of body for
the humouris been to ranke & habundant in the body
of man / Sumtyme of Infyrmyte for the febillesse of the
vertu retentyf / as Phisyk makyth mencyoun Sumtyme of
surfeit of mete & drynk. [914] And sumtyme of

vyleyns thoughtys that been enclosede in mannys mynde
whan he gooth to slepyñ / whiche may not been withoutyn
synne / For whiche men muste kepe hem wysely / or ellis
men may synne ful greuoualy.

Remedium contra peccatum luxurie

[915]

Now comyth the remedie a-geyns lecherye & that
is generally chastite & contynence that re-
streynyth alle dysordenees meouyngis that comyn
of fleschely talentys [916] And euere the gretter
meryt schal he han / that most restreynyth the
wekede eschewyngis of the ordure of this synne And this is in
two manerys that is to seyne chastite in maryage and chastyte
in wedewehode / [917] Now schalt thou vnderstonde that
matrymonye is lefful assemblynge of man &
woman that resseyuyñ be wertu of this sacrament the
bond thurgh whiche they may not be departid in al here
lyf that is to synne whiche that they leuyn bothyn.
[918] This as seyth the bok is a ful greet sacrament /
god makede it as I haue seyð in paradys / And wolde hym
self been born in maryage / [919] & for to halwyn in maryage
he was at a weddyng where as he turnede watyr in to
wyn / whiche was the ferste myrakele that he wrougte / in
erthe by-forñ hise dissyplys / [920] Trewe effect of
maryage / clensyth fornycaacyoun / & replenyschith holy
cherche of goode lynage / for that is the ende ¹ of maryage
& chaungith dedly synne in to venyal synne be-twixen
hem that been I-weddyt / & makyth the hertis of on
of hem that been I-weddyt as weel as the bodyis
[921] Verray maryage was establysschid / by
god er that synne began. whan naturel lawe was in his
ryghtepoynt in paradys. ¶ And it was ordeynyd / that oon man
schulde han but oon woman And on woman but on man
As seyth seynt augustyn by manye resonys /

[922] ffyrst for maryage is figurd be-twixxe crist &

holy cherche / & that othir is for a man is heuyd of
 a woman. algate by ordenaunce it schulde be so.
 [923] For if a woman hadde mo men than oon: thaune
 schulde sche haue mo heuedys than on / And that were an
 horyble synne / by-forn god / And ek A woman ne
 myghte not / plesse two manye men at onys and also
 theere schulde neuere been pees ne reste amongis hem / for
 eueryche wolde axe his owene thing [924] ¶ And
 ferthere ouyr no man schulde knowe his owene en-
 genderure ne ho schulde haue his erytage / And the
 woman schulde been the lesse be-louyd / for the tyme that
 sche weere comeynt to manye men

[925] ¶ Now comyth how that a man / schulde bere hym
 with his wif & namely in two thyngis / that is to
 seyne in sufferaunce & reuerence as shewith crist
 whan he made ferst woman / [926] for he ne made hire
 not of the heed of Adam: for [sche] schulde not cleyme to
 greet lorschepe / [927] For theere as the woman hath the
 maystrye: sche makyth to greet disray Theere nedyn none
 exsaumplis of this / the experience day be day
 oughte I-now suffyse. [928] ¶ Also certis god ne made not
 woman / of the foot of Adam / for sche schulde not ben
 holdyn to lowe / for sche can not pacyently suffere / but god
 made woman of the ribbe of man: for woman schulde
 been felawe on to man. [929] Mans schulde beryn hym vnto his
 wif / in feyth in trouthe / & in love as [seyth] seynt
 Poule that a man schulde louyn his wif as crist lovede
 holy cherche that louede it so weel that he deyede for it /
 So schulde a man for his wif If it weere neede.

[930] ¶ Now how that a woman schulde been subiect
 to hyre housbonde / that tellyth seynt Petyr fyrst¹ in obedi-
 ence / [931] And ek as seyth the Decree a woman that
 is wif as longe as schche is a wyf sche hath non
 autorite to swere ne bere witnesse with oute leue of
 hire husbonde that is here lord/ algatis he schulde be so
 be resoun / [932] sche schulde ek seruyn hym in alle

CAMBRIDGE 661 (8-T. 670)

for to exemplace thilke brennynges delit ¹they rekke neuere how ofte Sootly it is dedly synne. And that with sorwe some folk wale peynyn hem more to doon: than here apetit suffisyth.

[944] ¶ The secunde manere of chastite is / for to been a cleene wedewe / & eschewe the enbrasyngis of man / And desyre the enbrasyngis of Ihesu crist / [945] These been tho that han been wyuys And han forgetyn here husbandys. And ek women that han doon lecherye. & been resseyuyd be penytence. [946] And certis gif that a wyf coude kepyn hire al chast by lycence of hire husbonde / So that sche ȝeue noon occasioun that he agilte it were to hire a greet merite. [947] This manere of women that obseruyn chastite [. no gap in the MS.] in clothynge & in cuntenaunce abstinent in etynge & drynkynges in spekynges & in dedes they been the vessel or the Boyste of the blyssede Magdelyn that fulfillyth holy cherche of good odour [948] ¶ The iij manere of chastite: is vyrgynyte / & it be-houyth that it be holy in herte and cleene of body thanne is sche spouse to Ihesu crist. And sche is the lyf of aungellis / [949] Sohe is the preysynge of this world / And sche is as these martyrys egalyte / sche hat in hire that tunge may not telle / ne herte thynke / [950] Virgynyte bar oure lord Ihesu crist. And virgyne was hym selue.

[951] ¶ Anothir remedye ageyn lecherye is this / specyally to withdrawe sweche thyngis as ȝeun occasioun to thilke vilenye as ese etynge & drynkynges. ffor certis whan the pot boylyth strongely: the beste remedye is to withdrawe the feer [952] Slepynge longe in greet quyete: is ek a gret noryce to lecherye

[953] ¶ A nothir remedye a-geyn lecherye is that a man or a woman eschewe the cumpaygnye of hem be whiche he doutyth to been temptyd / For al be it so / that the dede is withstonden ȝit is there greet temptacioun

[954] Sothly a whit wal al thow it brenne not
with stekynge of a candele: ȝit is the wal blak of the
lyght. [955] Ful ofte tyme I reede that no man ful truste in
his owen perfeccioun. but he be strengere than Sampson. or
holwere than Danyel. And wisere than Salomon

[956] ¶ Now aftyr that I haue declared / ȝow as I can
the seuene dedly synnys / And some of here braunchis. &
here remedyis. Sothly ȝif I coude I wolde telle ȝow the
ten Comaundementis. [957] but so high doctryne I lete to
deuynes. Natheles I hope to god they been touchede in this
treyte eueryche of hem alle. /

Sequitur iij.^a pars Penitencie 'Decem mandata'

[¹ iij^a and ² ~~1~~
corrected.]

[958] **N**ow foras meche as the secunde partye of penyence
stant in confessioun of mechil as I be-gan in the
ferste chapitere I seye seynt Augustyn seyth /
[959] Synne is euery word / & euery dede & al that
men coueyte ageyn the lawe of Ihesu crist And
this is for to seyne. in herte in mouth & in dede by the fyue
wittys / that is by herynge syghte smellynge tastynge
or sauourynge and felynge [960] ¶ Now is it good to
vndyrstondyn ¶ That þat aggreggith mechil euery synne /
[961] Thow schat considere what that thow art that dost
that synne / Whedyr thow be male or femele / ȝong. or
old / gentil. or thral / fre. or seruauant. hol or sek /
weddit or sengele / ordered. or onordered / wis. or fol.
Clerk. or Seculer / [962] yf sche be of thyn kynrede. bodyly
or gostely or noon / ȝif ony of thyn kenrede haue synned
with hire or non And manye mo thyngis

[963] ¶ A nothir circumstaunce is this / Whethir it be
doon in fornyacioun or in auouterye / or non. [. . . .
. . . *no gap in the MS.*] in manere of homycide or non /
horrible greete synnys. or smale & how longe thow hast
contynued in synne [964] ¶ The thredde circumstaunce is
the place there thow hast do synne. Whethyr in othere

menys hovs or in thyn owene. In feeld or in cherche
 or in cherche hawe. in cherche dedicat or non /
 [965] ffor if the cherche be halwyd. And man or woman
 spyllle his kynd *witthinne* that place be woye of synne / or be
 wekede temptacioun / the cherche is entretydede [. . .
 *no gap in the MS.*] [966] And the
 prest that dede swiche. the terme of al his lyf he
 schulde not synge no masse. & 3if he dede he schulde
 dodedly synne. at enery tym that he schuldes synge ¹messe.
 [967] ¶ The fourte circumstaunce is by sweche medya-
 tourys or be sweche messangerys / as for entysement or for
 consentement to bere compaygnye with fals schepe. for
 manye a wreche for to bere compaignye wele go to the
 deuyll of helle [968] wherfore they that eggyn or con-
 sentyn / to the synne been partenerys of the synne / And
 of the temptacyoun of the synnere

[969] ¶ The fifte circumstaunce is / how manye tymys
 that he hath synnyd / 3if it be in his mynde / & how ofte
 that he hath falle / [970] for he that hath ofte falle in synne /
 he dispiseth the mercy of god / and encresith his synne
 And is vnkynde to cryst / And he wexeth the moore feble
 to withstonde synne / & synnyth the moore lyghtely /
 [971] & the lattere aryseth / & is the moore eschew for
 to schryue hym / an namely to hym that is his con-
 fessour. [972] For whiche that folk whan they falle a-geyn
 in there olde folyis othir they for3ete here olde confessouris
 al outrelly or ellys they departyn here schrifte in dyuers
 placcis But sothly sweche departede schrifte deseruyth no
 mercy of god / of hise synnys [973] The sexte Circum-
 staunce is why that a man synnyth as by temptacyoun /
 & 3if hym selue procure the ilke temptacyoun or by the ex-
 ctyngne of othere folk. or if he synne *with* a woman by
 force or by hire owene assent [974] orr 3if the woman
 maugre hire heed / hath been aforced or non / this
 schal sche telle. for coueytise or for pouerte / &
 3if it was hire procuryngne or non & swiche manere

harneyes [975] ¶ The Seuynte circumstance / is in what manere he hath doon his synne / or how that sche haue sufferede that folk han don to hire [976] & the same schal the man telle with alle circumstauncys And whedyr he hath synnyd with comoun bordel women or noon / [977] or don his synne in holy tymys or non In fastyng tyme or non / or by forn his schrifte / or after his laste schrifte / [978] and hath parauenture brokyn therfore his penaunce enioyned be whos helpe & whos conseyll / by sorcerye / or craft al must ben told [979] ¶ Alle these thyngis after that they been greete¹ or smale engreggyn the coneyence of man & ek of the prest that is thyn Iuge may the betere been auysed of his Iugement in 3euyng of thyn penance & that is after thyn contrycoun [980] ¶ ffor vndyrstonde wel that after that tyme that a man hath defouled his bapteme by synne if he wele come to saluacioun / there is non othir weye but be penytence & schryfte and satisfaccioun / [981] & namely by the two / if there be a confessour to whiche he may schryue hym / And the threde If he haue lyf to parforne it

[982] ¶ Thanne schal men loke and consydere that 3if he wele make a trewe & a profitable confessioun there muste been .iiij. condisciounys / [983] ffyrst it moote been in sorweful [.]

. *no gap in the MS.*
bittyrnesse of myn herte / [984] this condicioun of bittyrnesse hath .v. signys The ferste is that confessioun mote been schamefast not for to couere ne hyde his synne / for he hath a-gilt his god & defouled his soule. / [985] And herof seyth seynt Augustyn / the herte trauallyth for schame of his synne & for he hath greet schamefastnesse he is digne to haue greet mercy of god [986] ¶ Swych was the confessioun of the Publican that wolde not heue vp hise eyen to heuene for he hadde offendit god of heuene / for whiche schamefastnesse he hadde a-non the mercy of god / [987] And therof seith

seyñ Augustyn that sweche schameful folk been next
 forȝeuenesse & remyscioun [988] ¶ A nothir sygne is
 humylite in confessioun of whiche seyth seynt Petyr /
 Humblith ȝow vndyr the mygh of god / the hond of god
 is myghty in confessioun / for therebi god forȝeyth the
 thynne synys / for he alone hath the power / [989] & this
 humylite schal been in herte / & in signe outward / for
 rygh as he hath humylite to god in his herte / rygh so
 schulde he humble his body outward / to the prest that sittyth
 in godis place / [990] For which in no maner seth that
 Crist is Souereyn & the prest meene & Mediatour be-
 twethe Crist & the synnere. And the synnere is the laste
 be weye of resoun / [991] thanne schulde not the synnere sitte
 as heye as the Confessour: but knele ¹ by-forn hym or at
 hise feet / but if maledye disturbe it / for he schal not take
 kep who sit there: but in whois place that he sittyth.
 [992] A man that hath trespassed to a lord / & comyth for to
 axe mercy / & makyn his acord / & sette hym doun a-non
 by the lord / men wolde holde hym outrageous & not
 worthy so sone to haue remyscioun ne mercy. [993] The
 thredde signe is how that thynschrifte schulde ben ful of teerys
 if man may / & ȝif he may not wepyñ with his bodily eyen.
 let hym wepe in herte / [994] swich was the confessioun
 of seynt petir / for aftyr that he hadde forsake ihesu Crist
 he wente out & wepte ful bittyrly [995] ¶ The ferthe
 signe is that he ne lette not for schame to schewyn
 his confessioun [996] Swich was the confessioun of
 marye Maudelyn that ne sparede for no shame of hem that
 weryn at the feste for to go to oure lord ihesu Crist & beknowe
 to hym here synys // [997] ¶ The fifte signe is that a man
 or a woman be obeysaunt to resceyue the penaunce that
 hem is enioynyd / ffor certis Ihesu Crist for
 the giltyis of man was obeysaunt to the deth

[998] ¶ The secunde condicioun of verray confessioun
 is that it be hastyly don / For certis if a man hadde a
 dedly wounde. euere the lengere that he taryede to wariche

hym self / the more wolde it corupte & haste hym to
 his deth / & ek the wounde wolde be the werse to
 hele. [999] And rygh so faryth synne that long
 tyme is in a man o-nschewid / [1000] Certis a man oughte
 hastily schewyn hise synnys for manye causys as for dred
 of deth that comyth off the sodeynly / & no serteyn what
 tyme it schal be ne in what plase / And ek the drechyng
 of on synne drawyth in a-nothir / [1001] & ek the lenger
 that he taryeth / the ferther he is from crist / And ȝif hea-byde
 to his laste day / skarsely may he schryue hym or re-
 membre hym of hise synnys or repente for the
 greuous maledye of his deth [1002] And for as meche / as
 he ne hath not in his lyf herkenyd Ihesu Crist [. . . .
 no gap in the MS.] at his laste
 day & skarsely whil he herkenyth hym [1003] And
 vndyrstonde that this condycioun / muste haue .iiij.¹ thyngis
 ¶ Thyn schryfte muste been purueyed by-for & a-vysed /
 for wekede haste doth no profit / And that a man can
 schryue hym of hise synnys be it of pryde or of enuye &
 so forth with the spechis & circumstauncis [1004] & that
 he haue comprehendit in his mynde the noumbre & the
 gretnesse of hise synnys / & how longe that he hath leyn
 in synne / [1005] & ek that he be contrit of hise synnys
 & in stedefast purpos with the grace of god neuere eft to
 falle in synne. And ek that he dreede & countrewayte
 hym self that he fle the occasiounys of synne / to wheche he
 is enchynyed / [1006] Also thow schalt schryue the of alle
 synnys to on man / & not a parcel to oo man / &
 a parcel to a nothir man ¶ That is to vndyrstonde / en entent
 to departen thyn confessioun / as for schame or dred for it
 is but strangelyng of thyn soule / [1007] For certis ihesu
 crist is entyerey al good / in hymnys non imperfeccioun And
 therefore othir he forȝeuyth al parfitly or neuere a
 del. [1008] I sey not if thow be assygnit to the
 pentauncer for certeyn synne / that thow art bounde to
 schewyn hym alle the remenaunt of thyne synnys / of wheche

thow hast be schreuyⁿ of to thyn curat but if it lyke to the /
 of thyn humylite / this is no departyng of schrifte
 [1009] ¶ Ne I seye not there is a spice of dyuysiouⁿ of confes-
 siouⁿ / that if thow haue lycence for to schryue the to a dis-
 creet & to an onest prest / wheere the lykyth & by lycence
 of thyn curat that thow ne mayst wel schryue the to hym
 of alle thynne synnys / [1010] but lat no blot been by-hyndyn
 ¶ Lat non synne been on-told as fer as thow hast remem-
 braunce / [1011] And whan thow schat be schreuyⁿ to thyn
 curat telle hym ek alle the synnys that thow hast doon
 syn thow were last Ischreue / this is no wekede entent / of
 dyuysiouⁿ of schrifte

[1012] Also the verray schrifte axeth certeyn con-
 dyciouⁿnys / fyrst that thow schryue te by thyn fre wil.
 noght constreynyd / ne for schame of folk / ne for maledye
 ne sweche thyngis / for it is resoun that he that trespassith
 by his fre wil: that by his ¹fre wil confesse his
 synne / [1013] & that noon othir man telle his synne
 but hym self / ne he ne schal not nayte ne denye his synne /
 ne wrathe hym agay[n] the prest/ for his amonestyng
 to leue synne [1014] ¶ The secunde condiciouⁿ is that thyn
 schrifte be be lauweful. that is to seyne that thow schryuyst
 the & ek the prest/ that heryth thyn confessiouⁿ / been
 verrayly in the feith of holy cherche / [1015] & that a
 man ne be not despeyred / of the mercy of Ihu Cryst / As
 caym or iudas / [1016] And ek a man mote acuse
 hym selue of his owene trespass / & not a-nothir but he
 schal blame & wyte hym self / & his owene malyce / of his
 synne / & noon othir. [1017] but natheles / if that
 a-nothir man be occasiouⁿ / or entysyng of his synne or the
 estat of a persone / be swich thour his synne / that it is
 aggreggit or ellis that he may not pleyⁿly schryue hym
 but he telle the persone w^{ith} whiche he hath synnyd /
 thanne may he telle [1018] so that his entente be not
 to bakbyte the persone / but only to declare his con-
 fessiouⁿ

[1019] ¶ Thow ne schalt not ek / make none lesyngis / in
 thyn confessioun for humilite paraunture to seyn
 that thow hast doon synnys of whiche thow were
 neuere gilty in [1020] for seynt augustyn seyth / if that
 thow be causa of thyn humilite makyst lesyngis
 on thyn self / thow ne were not in synne be-forn /
 ȝit art thow thanne in synne thour thyn speche [1021]
 ¶ Thow muste ek schewe thyn synne by thyn owene propere
 mouth but thow be wexe dounb. & nat by no
 lettere / for thow that hast don the synne / thow schalt haue
 the schame therfore [1022] ¶ Thow schalt nat ek
 peyntyn tyn confessioun / by fayre subtile wordis / to couere
 the more thyn synne / ffor thanne begilyst thow thyn self / &
 nat the prest / thow muste telle it platly be it
 neuere so foul ne so horrible / [1023] Thow schalt ek
 schryue the to a prest that is discreet to conseyle the / &
 ek thow schat not schryue thee for veynglorye / ne for
 ypocrise / ne for non cause but only for the doubte of
 ihesu Crist / & the heele of thyn soule / [1024] thow
 schat nat ek renne sodeynly to the prest to telle hym
 thyn synne lyghtly ¹as ho so tellit a iape or a tale / but
 auysely & with gret deuocioun [1025] And generally
 schryue the ofte if thow ofte falle & a-ryse by
 confescioun / [1026] And thow thow schryue the oftene
 than onys of synne of whiche thow hast be schryuen it is
 the moore meryt / And as seyth seynt augustyn / thow
 schalt haue more lyghtely relesynge & grace of god /
 bothe of synne & of payne [1027] And certis onys a
 ȝeer at the leste weye it is laueful for to been houseled / for
 certys onys a ȝer alle thynges renouelyn

[1028] ¶ Now haue I told of verray confessioun
 that is the secunde party of penytence.

Tercia pars penitencie est Satisfaccio

[1029]

THe thredde partye of penytence is Satisfaccioun / & that stant most generally in almesse & in bodyly payne. [1030] ¶ Now be there three manere of alle manere of almesse / contricioun of herte Wheerea man offeryth hym self / to god / a-nothir is to haue pete / of defeaute of hise neigheboris / And the thredde is / in ȝeuynge of good conseyll gostely & bodily where men haue nede & namely sustenance of manys fode. [1031] And take that a man haue nede of these thyngis generally. he hath nede of fode / he hath nede of clothyng. and herberwe he hath nede of charitable conseyll. & visityng in prisoun / & in maladie / & sepulture of his dede bodi [1032] And if thou mayst not visite the nedeful with thyn persone visite hym bi thyn message & thynne ȝiftys [1033] these been general almessis or werkis of charyte of hem that hath temperel richessis or discrecioun in conseylyng ¶ Of these werkis schalt thou here at the day of dome /

[1034] These almessis schalt thou don of thynne owene *propere* thyngis and hastyly & priuily if thou mayst [1035] [. . . . *no gap in the MS.*] nat don it pryuyly thou schat not forbere it to don allmesse thou men seen it so that it be nat don for thank of the world / but for the thank only of ihesu Crist. [1036] For as witnessith seynt Matthev .c°. 5°. A cete may not been hid that is set on a greet mounteyn / ne men lyghte not a lanterne & putte it vnder a buschel / but men sette it vp on a candel stikke to ȝeuyn lyght to the men in the hous / [1037] Right so schal ȝoure lygh lightyn byfore men that th[e]y may seen ȝoure goode werkys & gloryfye ȝoure fadyr that is in heuene

[1038] Now as to spekyn of bodyly payne it stant in preyeris in wakyngis in fastyngis / in vertyuous

techyngis of orisounnys [1039] ¶ And ye schal vndyrstonde that orisounnys or preyeris is for to seyne a pitous wil of herte that redresseth it in good / And expresseth it by wil outward to romounnyn harmys & to haue thyngis espirituel & durable & sumtyme temporel thyngis / Of whiche orisounnys / certis in the orisoun of the paternoster / hath ihesu crist enclosed / most thyngis. [1040] Certis it is pryuyleged / of thre thynges in his dignetee. for whych it is more digne / than any othir preyere for that ihesu Crist hym self makede it [1041] & it is schort for it schulde be coud the moore lyghtely & for to with-holde it the more esyly in herte & helpyn hym self the moore oftene with the orysoun / [1042] & for a man schulde been the lasse werye to seyn it / & for a man may not excuse hym to lerne it / it is so schort & so esy / & for it comprehendyth in it self alle goode preyeris / [1043] The expocicioun of this holy preyere that is so excellent & digne: I be-take to these maystris of Theologie / saue thus meche wele I seyn thāt whan thou preyest that god schulde for-geyn the thyne giltys as thou for-geuyst hem that agyltyn to the / be ful weel war that thou ne be nat out of charyte / [1044] This holy orisoun amenuseth ek venyal synne / & therefore it apartenyth specially to penytence ^{[1] 'ordinatly—god,' repeated in MS.}

[1045] ¶ This preyere muste been trewely seyde / & in verray feyth & that men preye to god / ¹ordinatly & discretly & deuoutly & alwey a man schal putte his wil to be subiect to the wil of god ¹ / [1046] this orysoun muste ek be seyde / with gret humblesse / & ful pure honestee / & not to the anoyauce of any man or woman It muste ek be contynued with thyne werkys of charitee [1047] It auaylyth ek a-geyn the vicijs / of the soule / For as seyth seynt Ierome by fastynge been sauēd the vi²cys of the flesh / & be preyerys the vertu of the soule

[1048] After this thou schat vndyrstonde that bodyly preyere stant in wakyng / for ihesu Crist seith / wakyth & preyeth that 3e ne entre in wekkede

tamptacioun / [1049] 3e schulde vndyrstonde also that fastyng stant in thre thyngis / in forberyng of bodyly mete & drynk / & in forberyng of wordely iolytee / & in forberyng of dedly synne this is to seyne that a man schal kepe hym from dedly synne with al his myght /

[1050] Thow schalt vndyrstonde ek that god ordeynede fastyngis / And to fastyng partenyth iiij thyngis. [1051] largenesse to poore folk. gladnesse of herte espirituel nat to be angry ne a-noyed / ne groche for he fastith. And also rosonable our for to ete be mesour that is for to seyne / a man schal nat ete in on tyme / ne sitte the lengere at his table for he fastyth /

[1052] ¶ Thanne schalt thiow vndyrstonde that bodyly peyne stant in disciplyne or techyng be word / or by wrytyng / or in exsauple / also in weryng of heyrys or of stamyn or of habyrgeouns on here nakede flesch for crystis sake And sweche manere panauncis. [1053] but ware the wel that sweche manere penauncis on thyn flesch ne make the nat ouyr angry or a-noyed of thyn self / for betere is to caste a-wey thyn heyre / than to caste a-wey thyn sekyrnesse of Ihesu crist [1054] And therfore seyth seynt Poule / clothith 3ow as they that been chosyn of god / in herte of myserycorde / debonayrete / sufferaunce & swich manere of clothyng / of whiche ihesu Crist is more a-payd / than of heyrys / or haubergeouns or hauberkys

[1055] ¶ Thanne is disciplyne ek in knokkyng of thyn brest / in scorgyng with 3erdys / in knelyngis in tribulaciouns / [1056] in sufferyng paciently wrongis that been doon to the / & ek in pacient sufferaunce of maledyis or lesyng of wordely catel / or of wif or of child / or othere frendys

[1057] ¶ Thanne schalt thou vndyrstonde whiche thyngis disturben penaunce / & this is in .iiij. manerys / That is dreede. schame. hope & wanhope that is desperacioun [1058] ¶ And for to speke first of drede¹ for weche he

wenyth that he may suffere no penaunce [1059] There ageyns is remedye for to thynke that bodyly penau[n]ce is but schort & lytil / at regnard of the payne of helle. that is so crewel & so long that it lastyth with-outyn ende

[1060] ¶ Now a-geyns the schame that a man hath to schryue hym / & namely these ypocritis / that woldyn been holdyn so parsite / that they han non neede to schryue hem [1061] // A-gayns that schame schulde a man thynke / that be weye of resoun that he that hath not been aschamyd / to doon foule thyngis: certis hym oughtenot to been aschamyd to doon fayre thyngis / [. [1062] no gap in the MS.] & alle hese werkys to hym may no thyng been hid / ne couered / [1063] Men schulde ek remembre hem / of the schame that is to come at the day of dome / to hem that been nat penytent / & schryuyn in this present lyf / [1064] for alle the creatourys in erthe & in helle / schulyn seen aperly al that they hidyn in this world

[1065] ¶ Now for to speke of hem that been so necligent & slowe to schryue hem / that stant in two manerys / [1066] that on is for that he hopit to leue longe / & for to purche meche rychesse for his delyt & thanne he wolde schryue hym / And as he seyth hym self thanne tymely I-now / to come to schrifte / [1067] A-nothir is of surquiderye / .i.¹ necligent hope that he hath in cristis mercy. [1068] A-gayns the ferste vice / he schal thynke that oure lyf is in no sekyrnesse And ek that alle the rychessis in this world / been in auenture & passyn as a schadewe on the wal. [1069] & as seyth seynt Gregorye that it apertenith to the greete ryght-wisnesse of god that neuere schal the payne stynte of hem that neuere wolde withdrawe hem / from synne here thankis / but ay contynewe in synne / for thilke [. no gap in the MS.] perpetuel payne. [1. = *id est*]

[1070] ¶ Wanhope is in two maneris / the fyrste wanhope is in the mercy of crist / that othyr is / that they

thynke that they myghte nat longe perseuere in goodnesse // [1071] The ferste wanhope comyth of that he demyth that he hath synnyd so gretly & so ofte & so longe leyn in synne that he schal not been sauyd / [1072] Certis a-geyn that cursede wanhope / schulde he thynke that the passioun¹ of Ihesu Crist is more strong for to onbynde: than synne is strong for to bynde. [1073] ¶ Ageyns the secunde wanhope / he schal thynke that as ofte as he fallyth he may ary[s]e a-geyn by penytence & thow he neuere so longe haue leyn in synne / the mercy of Crist is euere more redy to resceyue hym to mercy. [1074] ¶ A-geyns the wanhope that he demyth / that he schulde nat longe perseuere in goodnesse / he schal thynke that the febilnesse of the deuyll may no thyng don but if men wele suffere hym [1075] And ek he schal han strenthe of the helpe of ihesu crist & of al holy chyrche / & of the protexioun of angelis ȝif hym leste // ^[¹ meryt corrected]

[1076] Thanne schal man vndyrstonde what is the meryt² of penaunce / & aftyr the word of ihesu Cryst it is the endeles blysse / of heuene / [1077] theree Ioye hat now ende no contrarite of woo / ne greuaunce / there alle harmys been passid of this present lyf / theree as is the sekynnesse from the payne of helle / theree as is the blysful company that reioysyn hem euere moo euereych of otheris Ioye / [1078] theree as the body of man that wilhom was foul & derk: is moore cler than is the sunne / theree as the body that whylom was sik frell & febele & mortal: is inmortal / & so strong & so hol that theree may no man apeyre it / [1079] theree as ne is neythr hungir thrust ne cold but euery soule replenyshed / with the syghte of the parfite knowynge of god [1080] ¶ This blysful regne / may men purchase by pouerte espirituel / & the glorie by lounesse / the plente of Ioye with hungir & thurst & the reste: by trauayle / & the lyf be deth & mortificacioun of synne /

Here takyt the makere of this bok his leue :-

[*Leaf 444 is torn out. Prol. to Legende follows.*]

[1081]

Now praiſe I to hem alle that/ herken this/ liteſt/ [*Harl. MS. 1758, leaf 230, back. Reg. 18 C. II. also has the Epilogue.*]
 tretis/orredeit. that/ if ther/ be anye thyng/ in it.
 þat liketh hem : that ther/ of thei thanken our/
 lord ihesu crist/. of/ whom procedith all/ witte &
 all/ goodnes/. [1082] And if ther/ be anye thyng that displeſe
 hem : I praiſe hem alſo that/ thei arecte it/ to the defaute of
 myn vnkonnyng/. & not to my witt/ that/ wolde fulfayne haue
 ſeide better if/ I had had kunnyng/. [1083] for our/
 book/ ſeith. All/ that/ is/ writen. is/ writen for our/
 doctryne & that is/ myn entente. [1084] ¶ Wherefore I
 beſeke you mekeli for the mercy of god that/ ye praiſe for
 me that crist haue mercy on me. & for yeue me my
 giltes/. [1085] & namli of my translacions/ &
 enditynges/ of worldli vanytees/. the² whiche I reuoke in my
 retracions/. [1086] ¶ As/ is/ the book/ of/ Troilus/. ¶ The
 book alſo of flame. ¶ The book/ of/ the .25. ladies/. ¶ The/
 book/ of/ the Duchesse. ¶ The book/ of/ ſeynt Valentynes/
 daie of the parlement/ of briddes/. ¶ The talis/ of Cauntir-
 burie that/ ſownen in to synne. [1087] The book/
 of/ the Lion. & manye anothir/ boke. if/ thei were in my
 remembraunce. And manye a ſong/. & mony a lecherous/
 laye. that/ crist/ for his/ gret/ mercy foryeue me the ſynne.
 [1088] ¶ But of the translacion of Boyce de conſolacione :
 & other/ bokis/ of/ Legendis/ of ſeyntes/ & Omelies/
 & moralite & deuocion [1089] þer of/ thanke/ I our/
 lord ihesu crist & his/ bleſſid modir/ & alle the
 ſeyntes/ of heuyn [1090] beſechyng/ hem that/ thei from
 hens/ forth vn to my lyues/ ende. ſende me grace
 be-waile my giltes/. & to studie to ſauacion of/
 my ſoule. And graunt me grace of verye penaunce con-

CAMBRIDGE, p. 675, AND HARL. 1758 (6-T. 684) [*leaf 231*]

fession & satisfaccion to don in this/ present/ lif
 [1091] thorough the benyngne grace of hym that is/ kyng/ of/
 kynges & preest/ of/ alle preestis/ that bought vs/
 with þ^e precious/ blood of/ his/ herte. [1092] so that I may
 be oon of hem at the/ daye of/ dome that/ schulen be sauyd.
 Qui cum patre. & *cetera*//

[later hand] [Edwarde Foxe oweythe this booke ex dono
 patris sui]

¶ Here/ endeth the/ book/ of/ the/ tales/ of Caunter-
 burye/. Compyled bi Geffroye/ Chaucers/. Of/ whos/
 soule/ Ihesu crist/ haue/ mercede/. ¶ AmeN quod
 Cornhylls. : .]

CAMBRIDGE MS. APPENDIX¹

OF PIECES AND CUTS NOT IN THE CAMBRIDGE MS.

University Library, Gg. 4. 27.

-
- | | PAGE |
|--|------------|
| 1. Appendix to Group A: the spurious <i>Tale of Gamelyn</i> , from the Sloane MS. 1685 | ... 1*-26* |
| [See <i>The Reader is asked to put a * to the nos. of these pages.</i>] | |
| 2. The genuine <i>Man-of-Law—Shipman Link</i> , Group B, § 3, p. 167 <i>Six-Text</i> , from the Sloane MS. 1685, British Museum. ("Twould have followd p. 166 above, had it been in the MS., Gg. 4. 27.) | ... 27* |
| 3. The genuine <i>Nun's-Priest's End-Link</i> , Group B, § 15, p. 301 <i>Six-Text</i> , from MS. Reg. 17 D xv, in the British Museum. ("Twould have followd p. 518 above, had it been in the Cambr. MS.) | ... 29* |
| 4. Drawings of the 23 <i>Tellers of the 24 Canterbury Tales</i> , copied from the Ellesmere MS., ² and cut on wood by Mr A. H. Hooper | |

¹ None of the pieces 1, 2, 3, is in the best MSS. of the Ellesmere, or A-type.

² The Ellesmere cuts can be arranged either in their order in the Ellesmere MS., or in the *Six-Text* order of the Tales. In the latter they'll be easier to find. See these two orders on p. 678.

Six-Test Order of Tales.

	Group
1. Knight	
2. Miller	
3. Reeve	A
4. Cook	
5. Man of Law	
6. Shipman	
7. Prioress	B
8. Chaucer	
9. Monk	
10. Nun's Priest	
11. Doctor	
12. Pardoner	C
13. Wife of Bath	
14. Friar	D
15. Sum'ner	
16. Clerk	
17. Merchant	E
18. Squire	
19. Franklin	F
20. Second Nun	
21. Canon's Yeoman	G
22. Manciple	H
23. Parson	I

Ellesmere MS. Order.

	Group
1. Knight	
2. Miller	
3. Reeve	A
4. Cook	
5. Man of Law	B
6. Wife of Bath	
7. Friar	D
8. Sum'ner	
9. Clerk	
10. Merchant	E
11. Squire	
12. Franklin	F
13. Doctor	
14. Pardoner	C
15. Shipman	
16. Prioress	
17. Chaucer	B ₂
18. Monk	
19. Nun's Priest	
20. Second Nun	
21. Canon's Yeoman	G
22. Manciple	H
23. Parson	I

2.

THE MAN-OF-LAW—SHIPMAN LINK.

here begynnethe þe prolooge of þe Squyere

[Sloane MS 1685, leaf 78]

O ure Oste vppon hys styroppys stode a none
And sayd gode men herknyth euereychon
Thys was a thyrfty tale for þe nones
Sir parysshe prest quod he for goddes bones 1166
Telle vs a tale as was þi forward yore
I see wale þat ye lernyd men in lore
Can moche gode by goddes dignyte
The parson hym answerid benedicite 1170
what aylithe þe man so synfully to swere
Oure Ost answeryd o lankyn be ye þere
I smylle a lollere In þe wynde quod he
howe godemen quod oure Ost herkenyth to me 1174
A-bidith for goddys digne passyon
ffor we shalle haue a predicacion
Thys lollere here wille preche some what
Nay by my fader soule þat shaft he not 1178
Seyde þe Squyere here shal he not preche
He shalle no gospel glosen here nor teche
he lyuythe alle in þe grete godhe
he wolde sowen som difficulte. 1182
Or sprynge CokkyH in oure clene corne
And þefore oste I warne þe byforn
By Ioly body shalle a tale telle
And I shalle blenken you so mery a belle 1186
That I shalle waken alle þis companye
But it shal not be of phylo[so]phye
Ne phillyas ne termes queynte of lawe
Ther ys but lytelle latyn in my mawe 1190
here endithe þe prolooge

[*The Squire's Tale follows in the Sloane MS.*]

3.

THE NUN'S PRIEST'S END-LINK.

[MS Reg. 17 D xv., leaf 284 (paper, † 1480).]

Sir Nonnes prist. our host sayde anon
 I-blessid be thy breche. and every stoon
SThis was a mery tale of chauntillier
 But be my trowth if thow were a secular 4640
 Thow woldest bien. a tredefoule aright
 For if thow have corage. as thow hast myght
 The were nede. of hennys as I wene
 Ya mo than .vij. tymes. seventene 4644
 Se whiche brawnes. hath this gentil prist
 So grete a nekke. and so large a brist
 He lokith as a sparhawke. with his Ien
 Hym nedith nat. his colours for to dyen 4648
 With brasil ne with grayne of portyngale
 Now *sir* faire fal yow. for youre mery tale
 And after that he. with ful myrry chiere
 Sayde vnto another as ye chul here

Here endith
 the tale of
 þe none
 prest/

[MS Reg. 17 D xv extract stops]

["the prolog of the Maunciple" follows in
 MS Reg. 17 D xv.]

DRAWINGS OF THE 23 TELLERS
OF THE
24 CANTERBURY TALES,

COPIED FROM THE ELLESMERE MS,

AND CUT ON WOOD,

BY

MR. H. HOOVER.

In this first issue, 1871, only 14 of the Cuts are given. The other 10 will follow in 1872. When the print of each MS is bound, the cut of each Teller of a Tale can be put at the beginning of his Tale, as in the Ellesmere MS, or by his description in the General Prologue, to contrast the artist's hand with the poet's; or, all the cuts can be put together before or after the Prologue, or at the end of the volume (as not part of the MS), according to the fancy of each Member.



THE MILLERE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 38, back.



THE KNYGHT.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 14.

(The brand on the horse's hip—M, ? for *Miles*—
is in ink, and probably by a later hand.)



THE COOK.
Ellesmere MS, leaf 51.



THE REVE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 46.



THE WYF OF BATHE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 76.



THE MAN OF LAWE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 54, back.



THE FRERE.
Ellesmere MS, leaf 80, back.



THE SOMONOUR.
Ellesmere MS, leaf 85, back.



THE CLERK OF OXFORD.

Ellenmere MS, leaf 92.



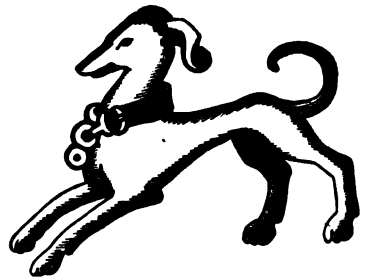
THE SHIPMAN.
Ellesmere MS, leaf 147, back.



THE PRIORESSE.
Ellenmere MS, leaf 152, back.



CHAUCER.
Ellesmere MS, leaf 157, back.



THE MONK.
Ellesmere MS., leaf 173.



THE NONNES PREEST.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 183.

4.

DRAWINGS OF
6 TELLERS OF 6 CANTERBURY TALES
AND 6 ALLEGORICAL FIGURES
FOR THE *PARSON'S TALE*

(BRING ALL THAT WERE NOT CUT OUT OF THE MS. BY SOME SCOUNDREL).

COPIED FROM MS. Gg. 4. 27, IN THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, CAMBR.,

AND CUT ON WOOD BY

MR W. H. HOOPER.

1. REEVE. 2. COOK. 3. WIFE OF BATIL. 4. PARDONER.
5. MONK. 6. MANCIPLE.

ALLEGORICAL FIGURES.

7, 8. ENVY AND CHARITY. 9, 10. GLUTTONY AND ABSTINENCE.
11, 12. LECHERY AND CHASTITY.



THE REEVE.

MS. Gg. 4. 27, Univ. Libr. Cambr., leaf 186.



· THE COOK OF LONDON
(with a raw on his Horse's ribs).

MS. Gg. 4. 27, Univ. Libr. Cambr., leaf 192, back.



THE WIFE OF BATH.

MS. Gp. 1. 27, Univ. Libr. Cambr., leaf 222.

